

RASHTRAPATI BHAVAN  
LIBRARY



Reg. No. 463 Vol. IV  
Clas. No. V(C)-P







(LIBRARY)

Class No.....

[illegible]





THE  
DIALOGUES OF PLATO  
*JOWETT*

Oxford University Press

*London Edinburgh Glasgow Copenhagen*

*New York Toronto Melbourne Cape Town*

*Bombay Calcutta Madras Shanghai*

Humphrey Milford Publisher to the UNIVERSITY

THE  
DIALOGUES OF PLATO

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH

*WITH ANALYSES AND INTRODUCTIONS*

BY

B. JOWETT, M.A.

MASTER OF BALLIOL COLLEGE

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

DOCTOR IN THEOLOGY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LEYDEN

*IN FIVE VOLUMES*

VOL. IV

THIRD EDITION

*REVISED AND CORRECTED THROUGHOUT, WITH MARGINAL ANALYSES  
AND AN INDEX OF SUBJECTS AND PROPER NAMES*

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS  
HUMPHREY MILFORD

*First Edition* 1871  
*Second Edition* 1875  
*Third Edition* 1892  
*Impression of* 1924

*This impression has been produced photographically by the  
MUSTON COMPANY from sheets of the Third Edition*

*Printed in England by* LOWE & BRYDONE, PRINTERS, LTD.,  
PARK STREET, CAMDEN TOWN, LONDON, N.W. 1

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PARMENIDES . . . . .	I
THEAETETUS . . . . .	107
SOPHIST . . . . .	281
STATESMAN . . . . .	409
PHILEBUS . . . . .	519





## PARMENIDES.



## INTRODUCTION AND ANALYSIS.

THE awe with which Plato regarded the character of 'the great' Parmenides has extended to the dialogue which he calls by his name. None of the writings of Plato have been more copiously illustrated, both in ancient and modern times, and in none of them have the interpreters been more at variance with one another. Nor is this surprising. For the Parmenides is more fragmentary and isolated than any other dialogue, and the design of the writer is not expressly stated. The date is uncertain; the relation to the other writings of Plato is also uncertain; the connexion between the two parts is at first sight extremely obscure; and in the latter of the two we are left in doubt as to whether Plato is speaking his own sentiments by the lips of Parmenides, and overthrowing him out of his own mouth, or whether he is propounding consequences which would have been admitted by Zeno and Parmenides themselves. The contradictions which follow from the hypotheses of the one and many have been regarded by some as transcendental mysteries; by others as a mere illustration, taken at random, of a new method. They seem to have been inspired by a sort of dialectical frenzy, such as may be supposed to have prevailed in the Megarian School (cp. Cratylus 346, 407 E, etc.). The criticism on his own doctrine of Ideas has also been considered, not as a real criticism, but as an exuberance of the metaphysical imagination which enabled Plato to go beyond himself. To the latter part of the dialogue we may certainly apply the words in which he himself describes the earlier philosophers in the Sophist (243 A): 'They went on their way rather regardless of whether we understood them or not.'

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

The Parmenides in point of style is one of the best of the Platonic writings; the first portion of the dialogue is in no way defective in ease and grace and dramatic interest; nor in the

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

second part, where there was no room for such qualities, is there any want of clearness or precision. The latter half is an exquisite mosaic, of which the small pieces are with the utmost fineness and regularity adapted to one another. Like the Protagoras, Phaedo, and others, the whole is a narrated dialogue, combining with the mere recital of the words spoken, the observations of the reciter on the effect produced by them. Thus we are informed by him that Zeno and Parmenides were not altogether pleased at the request of Socrates that they would examine into the nature of the one and many in the sphere of Ideas, although they received his suggestion with approving smiles. And we are glad to be told that Parmenides was 'aged but well-favoured,' and that Zeno was 'very good-looking'; also that Parmenides affected to decline the great argument, on which, as Zeno knew from experience, he was not unwilling to enter. The character of Antiphon, the half-brother of Plato, who had once been inclined to philosophy, but has now shown the hereditary disposition for horses, is very naturally described. He is the sole depositary of the famous dialogue; but, although he receives the strangers like a courteous gentleman, he is impatient of the trouble of reciting it. As they enter, he has been giving orders to a bridle-maker; by this slight touch Plato verifies the previous description of him. After a little persuasion he is induced to favour the Clazomenians, who come from a distance, with a rehearsal. Respecting the visit of Zeno and Parmenides to Athens, we may observe—first, that such a visit is consistent with dates, and may possibly have occurred; secondly, that Plato is very likely to have invented the meeting ('You, Socrates, can easily invent Egyptian tales or anything else,' Phaedrus 275 B); thirdly, that no reliance can be placed on the circumstance as determining the date of Parmenides and Zeno; fourthly, that the same occasion appears to be referred to by Plato in two other places (Theaet. 183 E, Soph. 217 C).

Many interpreters have regarded the Parmenides as a 'reductio ad absurdum' of the Eleatic philosophy. But would Plato have been likely to place this in the mouth of the great Parmenides himself, who appeared to him, in Homeric language, to be 'venerable and awful,' and to have a 'glorious depth of mind'? (Theaet. 183 E). It may be admitted that he has ascribed to an

Eleatic stranger in the Sophist opinions which went beyond the doctrines of the Eleatics. But the Eleatic stranger expressly criticises the doctrines in which he had been brought up; he admits that he is going to 'lay hands on his father Parmenides.' Nothing of this kind is said of Zeno and Parmenides. How then, without a word of explanation, could Plato assign to them the refutation of their own tenets?

The conclusion at which we must arrive is that the Parmenides is not a refutation of the Eleatic philosophy. Nor would such an explanation afford any satisfactory connexion of the first and second parts of the dialogue. And it is quite inconsistent with Plato's own relation to the Eleatics. For of all the pre-Socratic philosophers, he speaks of them with the greatest respect. But he could hardly have passed upon them a more unmeaning slight than to ascribe to their great master tenets the reverse of those which he actually held.

Two preliminary remarks may be made. First, that whatever latitude we may allow to Plato in bringing together by a 'tour de force,' as in the *Phaedrus*, dissimilar themes, yet he always in some way seeks to find a connexion for them. Many threads join together in one the love and dialectic of the *Phaedrus*. We cannot conceive that the great artist would place in juxtaposition two absolutely divided and incoherent subjects. And hence we are led to make a second remark: viz. that no explanation of the *Parmenides* can be satisfactory which does not indicate the connexion of the first and second parts. To suppose that Plato would first go out of his way to make Parmenides attack the Platonic Ideas, and then proceed to a similar but more fatal assault on his own doctrine of Being, appears to be the height of absurdity.

Perhaps there is no passage in Plato showing greater metaphysical power than that in which he assails his own theory of Ideas. The arguments are nearly, if not quite, those of Aristotle; they are the objections which naturally occur to a modern student of philosophy. Many persons will be surprised to find Plato criticizing the very conceptions which have been supposed in after ages to be peculiarly characteristic of him. How can he have placed himself so completely without them? How can he have ever persisted in them after seeing the fatal objections

*Parmenides.*  
INTRODUCTION.

which might be urged against them? The consideration of this difficulty has led a recent critic (Ueberweg), who in general accepts the authorized canon of the Platonic writings, to condemn the *Parmenides* as spurious. The accidental want of external evidence, at first sight, seems to favour this opinion.

In answer, it might be sufficient to say, that no ancient writing of equal length and excellence is known to be spurious. Nor is the silence of Aristotle to be hastily assumed; there is at least a doubt whether his use of the same arguments does not involve the inference that he knew the work. And, if the *Parmenides* is spurious, like Ueberweg, we are led on further than we originally intended, to pass a similar condemnation on the *Theaetetus* and *Sophist*, and therefore on the *Politicus* (cp. *Theaet.* 183 E, *Soph.* 217). But the objection is in reality fanciful, and rests on the assumption that the doctrine of the Ideas was held by Plato throughout his life in the same form. For the truth is, that the Platonic Ideas were in constant process of growth and transmutation; sometimes veiled in poetry and mythology, then again emerging as fixed Ideas, in some passages regarded as absolute and eternal, and in others as relative to the human mind, existing in and derived from external objects as well as transcending them. The *anamnesis* of the Ideas is chiefly insisted upon in the mythical portions of the dialogues, and really occupies a very small space in the entire works of Plato. Their transcendental existence is not asserted, and is therefore implicitly denied in the *Philebus*; different forms are ascribed to them in the *Republic*, and they are mentioned in the *Theaetetus*, the *Sophist*, the *Politicus*, and the *Laws*, much as Universals would be spoken of in modern books. Indeed, there are very faint traces of the transcendental doctrine of Ideas, that is, of their existence apart from the mind, in any of Plato's writings, with the exception of the *Meno*, the *Phaedrus*, the *Phaedo*, and in portions of the *Republic*. The stereotyped form which Aristotle has given to them is not found in Plato (cp. *Essay on the Platonic Ideas in the Introduction to the Meno*).

The full discussion of this subject involves a comprehensive survey of the philosophy of Plato, which would be out of place here. But, without digressing further from the immediate subject of the *Parmenides*, we may remark that Plato is quite serious in his objections to his own doctrines: nor does Socrates attempt to

offer any answer to them. The perplexities which surround the one and many in the sphere of the Ideas are also alluded to in the *Philebus*, and no answer is given to them. Nor have they ever been answered, nor can they be answered by any one else who separates the phenomenal from the real. To suppose that Plato, at a later period of his life, reached a point of view from which he was able to answer them, is a groundless assumption. The real progress of Plato's own mind has been partly concealed from us by the dogmatic statements of Aristotle, and also by the degeneracy of his own followers, with whom a doctrine of numbers quickly superseded Ideas.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

As a preparation for answering some of the difficulties which have been suggested, we may begin by sketching the first portion of the dialogue:—

126 Cephalus, of Clazomenae in Ionia, the birthplace of Anaxagoras, a citizen of no mean city in the history of philosophy, who is the narrator of the dialogue, describes himself as meeting Adeimantus and Glaucon in the Agora at Athens. 'Welcome, Cephalus: can we do anything for you in Athens?' 'Why, yes: I came to ask a favour of you. First, tell me your half-brother's name, which I have forgotten—he was a mere child when I was last here;—I know his father's, which is Pylampes.' 'Yes, and the name of our brother is Antiphon. But why do you ask?' 'Let me introduce to you some countrymen of mine, who are lovers of philosophy; they have heard that Antiphon remembers a conversation of Socrates with Parmenides and Zeno, of which the report came to him from Pythodorus, Zeno's friend.' 'That is quite true.' 'And can they hear the dialogue?' 'Nothing easier; in the days of his youth he made a careful study of the piece; at present, his thoughts have another direction: he takes after his grandfather, and has given up philosophy for horses.'

ANALYSIS.

127 'We went to look for him, and found him giving instructions to a worker in brass about a bridle. When he had done with him, and had learned from his brothers the purpose of our visit, he saluted me as an old acquaintance, and we asked him to repeat the dialogue. At first, he complained of the trouble, but he soon consented. He told us that Pythodorus had described to him the appearance of Parmenides and Zeno; they had come to Athens



*Par-*  
*menides.*  
ANALYSIS.

at the great Panathenaea, the former being at the time about sixty-five years old, aged but well-favoured—Zeno, who was said to have been beloved of Parmenides in the days of his youth, about forty, and very good-looking:—that they lodged with Pythodorus at the Ceramicus outside the wall, whither Socrates, then a very young man, came to see them: Zeno was reading one of his theses, which he had nearly finished, when Pythodorus entered with Parmenides and Aristoteles, who was afterwards one of the Thirty. When the recitation was completed, Socrates requested that the first thesis of the treatise might be read again.'

'You mean, Zeno,' said Socrates, 'to argue that being, if it is many, must be both like and unlike, which is a contradiction; and each division of your argument is intended to elicit a similar absurdity, which may be supposed to follow from the assumption that being is many.' 'Such is my meaning.' 'I see,' said 128 Socrates, turning to Parmenides, 'that Zeno is your second self in his writings too; you prove admirably that the all is one: he gives proofs no less convincing that the many are nought. To deceive the world by saying the same thing in entirely different forms, is a strain of art beyond most of us.' 'Yes, Socrates,' said Zeno; 'but though you are as keen as a Spartan hound, you do not quite catch the motive of the piece, which was only intended to protect Parmenides against ridicule by showing that the hypothesis of the existence of the many involved greater absurdities than the hypothesis of the one. The book was a youthful composition of mine, which was stolen from me, and therefore I had no choice about the publication.' 'I quite believe you,' said Socrates; 'but will you answer me a question? I should like to know, whether you would assume an idea of like- 129 ness in the abstract, which is the contradictory of unlikeness in the abstract, by participation in either or both of which things are like or unlike or partly both. For the same things may very well partake of like and unlike in the concrete, though like and unlike in the abstract are irreconcilable. Nor does there appear to me to be any absurdity in maintaining that the same things may partake of the one and many, though I should be indeed surprised to hear that the absolute one is also many. For example, I, being many. that is to say, having many parts or

members, am yet also one, and partake of the one, being one of seven who are here present (cp. Philebus 14, 15). This is not an absurdity, but a truism. But I should be amazed if there were a similar entanglement in the nature of the ideas themselves, nor  
130 can I believe that one and many, like and unlike, rest and motion, in the abstract, are capable either of admixture or of separation.'

Pythodorus said that in his opinion Parmenides and Zeno were not very well pleased at the questions which were asked. Nevertheless, they looked at one another and smiled in seeming delight and admiration of Socrates. 'Tell me,' said Parmenides, 'do you think that the abstract ideas of likeness, unity, and the rest, exist apart from individuals which partake of them? and is this your own distinction?' 'I think that there are such ideas.' 'And would you make abstract ideas of the just, the beautiful, the good?' 'Yes,' he said. 'And of human beings like ourselves, of water, fire, and the like?' 'I am not certain.' 'And would you be undecided also about ideas of which the mention will, perhaps, appear laughable: of hair, mud, filth, and other things which are base and vile?' 'No, Parmenides; visible things like these are, as I believe, only what they appear to be: though I am sometimes disposed to imagine that there is nothing without an idea; but I repress any such notion, from a fear of falling into an abyss of nonsense.' 'You are young, Socrates, and therefore naturally regard the opinions of men; the time will come when philosophy will have a firmer hold of you, and you will not despise even the meanest things. But tell me, is your meaning that things become  
131 like by partaking of likeness, great by partaking of greatness, just and beautiful by partaking of justice and beauty, and so of other ideas?' 'Yes, that is my meaning.' 'And do you suppose the individual to partake of the whole, or of the part?' 'Why not of the whole?' said Socrates. 'Because,' said Parmenides, 'in that case the whole, which is one, will become many.' 'Nay,' said Socrates, 'the whole may be like the day, which is one and in many places: in this way the ideas may be one and also many.' 'In the same sort of way,' said Parmenides, 'as a sail, which is one, may be a cover to many—that is your meaning?' 'Yes.' 'And would you say that each man is covered by the whole sail, or by a part only?' 'By a part.' 'Then the ideas have parts, and the objects partake of a part of them only?' 'That seems to

*Par-  
menides.*

ANALYSIS.

follow.' 'And would you like to say that the ideas are really divisible and yet remain one?' 'Certainly not.' 'Would you venture to affirm that great objects have a portion only of greatness transferred to them; or that small or equal objects are small or equal because they are only portions of smallness or equality?' 'Impossible.' 'But how can individuals participate in ideas, except in the ways which I have mentioned?' 'That is not an easy question to answer.' 'I should imagine the conception of ideas to  
132  
arise as follows: you see great objects pervaded by a common form or idea of greatness, which you abstract.' 'That is quite true.' 'And supposing you embrace in one view the idea of greatness thus gained and the individuals which it comprises, a further idea of greatness arises, which makes both great; and this may go on to infinity.' Socrates replies that the ideas may be thoughts in the mind only; in this case, the consequence would no longer follow. 'But must not the thought be of something which is the same in all and is the idea? And if the world partakes in the ideas, and the ideas are thoughts, must not all things think? Or can thought be without thought?' 'I acknowledge the unmeaningness of this,' says Socrates, 'and would rather have recourse to the explanation that the ideas are types in nature, and that other things partake of them by becoming like them.' 'But to become like them is to be comprehended in the same idea; and the likeness of the idea and the individuals implies another  
133  
idea of likeness, and another without end.' 'Quite true.' 'The theory, then, of participation by likeness has to be given up. You have hardly yet, Socrates, found out the real difficulty of maintaining abstract ideas.' 'What difficulty?' 'The greatest of all perhaps is this: an opponent will argue that the ideas are not within the range of human knowledge; and you cannot disprove the assertion without a long and laborious demonstration, which he may be unable or unwilling to follow. In the first place, neither you nor any one who maintains the existence of absolute ideas will affirm that they are subjective.' 'That would be a contradiction.' 'True; and therefore any relation in these ideas is a relation which concerns themselves only; and the objects which are named after them, are relative to one another only, and have nothing to do with the ideas themselves.' 'How do you mean?' said Socrates. 'I may illustrate my meaning in this way:

*Par-*  
*menides.*  
ANALYSIS.

one of us has a slave ; and the idea of a slave in the abstract is relative to the idea of a master in the abstract ; this correspondence of ideas, however, has nothing to do with the particular  
134 relation of our slave to us.—Do you see my meaning ?’ ‘Perfectly.’ ‘And absolute knowledge in the same way corresponds to absolute truth and being, and particular knowledge to particular truth and being.’ ‘Clearly.’ ‘And there is a subjective knowledge which is of subjective truth, having many kinds, general and particular. But the ideas themselves are not subjective, and therefore are not within our ken.’ ‘They are not.’ ‘Then the beautiful and the good in their own nature are unknown to us ?’ ‘It would seem so.’ ‘There is a worse consequence yet.’ ‘What is that ?’ ‘I think we must admit that absolute knowledge is the most exact knowledge, which we must therefore attribute to God. But then see what follows : God, having this exact knowledge, can have no knowledge of human things, as we have divided the two spheres, and forbidden any passing from one to the other :—the gods have knowledge and authority in their world only, as we  
135 have in ours.’ ‘Yet, surely, to deprive God of knowledge is monstrous.’—‘These are some of the difficulties which are involved in the assumption of absolute ideas ; the learner will find them nearly impossible to understand, and the teacher who has to impart them will require superhuman ability ; there will always be a suspicion, either that they have no existence, or are beyond human knowledge.’ ‘There I agree with you,’ said Socrates. ‘Yet if these difficulties induce you to give up universal ideas, what becomes of the mind ? and where are the reasoning and reflecting powers ? philosophy is at an end.’ ‘I certainly do not see my way.’ ‘I think,’ said Parmenides, ‘that this arises out of your attempting to define abstractions, such as the good and the beautiful and the just, before you have had sufficient previous training ; I noticed your deficiency when you were talking with Aristoteles, the day before yesterday. Your enthusiasm is a wonderful gift ; but I fear that unless you discipline yourself by dialectic while you are young, truth will elude your grasp.’ ‘And what kind of discipline would you recommend ?’ ‘The training which you heard Zeno practising ; at the same time, I admire your saying to him that you did not care to consider the difficulty in reference to visible objects, but only in relation to ideas.’

*Parmenides.*

ANALYSIS.

'Yes; because I think that in visible objects you may easily show any number of inconsistent consequences.' 'Yes; and you 136 should consider, not only the consequences which follow from a given hypothesis, but the consequences also which follow from the denial of the hypothesis. For example, what follows from the assumption of the existence of the many, and the counter-argument of what follows from the denial of the existence of the many: and similarly of likeness and unlikeness, motion, rest, generation, corruption, being and not being. And the consequences must include consequences to the things supposed and to other things, in themselves and in relation to one another, to individuals whom you select, to the many, and to the all; these must be drawn out both on the affirmative and on the negative hypothesis,—that is, if you are to train yourself perfectly to the intelligence of the truth.' 'What you are suggesting seems to be a tremendous process, and one of which I do not quite understand the nature,' said Socrates; 'will you give me an example?' 'You must not impose such a task on a man of my years,' said Parmenides. 'Then will you, Zeno?' 'Let us rather,' said Zeno, with a smile, 'ask Parmenides, for the undertaking is a serious one, as he truly says; nor could I urge him to make the attempt, except in a select audience of persons who will understand him.' The whole party joined in the request.

INTRODUCTION.

Here we have, first of all, an unmistakable attack made by the youthful Socrates on the paradoxes of Zeno. He perfectly understands their drift, and Zeno himself is supposed to admit this. But they appear to him, as he says in the *Philebus* also, to be rather truisms than paradoxes. For every one must acknowledge the obvious fact, that the body being one has many members, and that, in a thousand ways, the like partakes of the unlike, the many of the one. The real difficulty begins with the relations of ideas in themselves, whether of the one and many, or of any other ideas, to one another and to the mind. But this was a problem which the Eleatic philosophers had never considered; their thoughts had not gone beyond the contradictions of matter, motion, space, and the like.

It was no wonder that Parmenides and Zeno should hear the novel speculations of Socrates with mixed feelings of admiration

and displeasure. He was going out of the received circle of disputation into a region in which they could hardly follow him. From the crude idea of Being in the abstract, he was about to proceed to universals or general notions. There is no contradiction in material things partaking of the ideas of one and many; neither is there any contradiction in the ideas of one and many, like and unlike, in themselves. But the contradiction arises when we attempt to conceive ideas in their connexion, or to ascertain their relation to phenomena. Still he affirms the existence of such ideas; and this is the position which is now in turn submitted to the criticisms of Parmenides.

To appreciate truly the character of these criticisms, we must remember the place held by Parmenides in the history of Greek philosophy. He is the founder of idealism, and also of dialectic, or, in modern phraseology, of metaphysics and logic (Theaet. 183 E, Soph. 217 C, 241 D). Like Plato, he is struggling after something wider and deeper than satisfied the contemporary Pythagoreans. And Plato with a true instinct recognizes him as his spiritual father, whom he 'revered and honoured more than all other philosophers together.' He may be supposed to have thought more than he said, or was able to express. And, although he could not, as a matter of fact, have criticized the ideas of Plato without an anachronism, the criticism is appropriately placed in the mouth of the founder of the ideal philosophy.

There was probably a time in the life of Plato when the ethical teaching of Socrates came into conflict with the metaphysical theories of the earlier philosophers, and he sought to supplement the one by the other. The older philosophers were great and awful; and they had the charm of antiquity. Something which found a response in his own mind seemed to have been lost as well as gained in the Socratic dialectic. He felt no incongruity in the veteran Parmenides correcting the youthful Socrates. Two points in his criticism are especially deserving of notice. First of all, Parmenides tries him by the test of consistency. Socrates is willing to assume ideas or principles of the just, the beautiful, the good, and to extend them to man (cp. Phaedo 98); but he is reluctant to admit that there are general ideas of hair, mud, filth, etc. There is an ethical universal or idea, but is there also a universal of physics?—of the meanest things in the world as well as of

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

the greatest? Parmenides rebukes this want of consistency in Socrates, which he attributes to his youth. As he grows older, philosophy will take a firmer hold of him, and then he will despise neither great things nor small, and he will think less of the opinions of mankind (cp. *Soph.* 227 A). Here is lightly touched one of the most familiar principles of modern philosophy, that in the meanest operations of nature, as well as in the noblest, in mud and filth, as well as in the sun and stars, great truths are contained. At the same time, we may note also the transition in the mind of Plato, to which Aristotle alludes (*Met.* 1. 6, 2), when, as he says, he transferred the Socratic universal of ethics to the whole of nature.

The other criticism of Parmenides on Socrates attributes to him a want of practice in dialectic. He has observed this deficiency in him when talking to Aristoteles on a previous occasion. Plato seems to imply that there was something more in the dialectic of Zeno than in the mere interrogation of Socrates. Here, again, he may perhaps be describing the process which his own mind went through when he first became more intimately acquainted, whether at Megara or elsewhere, with the Eleatic and Megarian philosophers. Still, Parmenides does not deny to Socrates the credit of having gone beyond them in seeking to apply the paradoxes of Zeno to ideas; and this is the application which he himself makes of them in the latter part of the dialogue. He then proceeds to explain to him the sort of mental gymnastic which he should practise. He should consider not only what would follow from a given hypothesis, but what would follow from the denial of it, to that which is the subject of the hypothesis, and to all other things. There is no trace in the *Memorabilia* of Xenophon of any such method being attributed to Socrates; nor is the dialectic here spoken of that 'favourite method' of proceeding by regular divisions, which is described in the *Phaedrus* and *Philebus*, and of which examples are given in the *Politicus* and in the *Sophist*. It is expressly spoken of (p. 135 E) as the method which Socrates had heard Zeno practise in the days of his youth (cp. *Soph.* 217 C).

The discussion of Socrates with Parmenides is one of the most remarkable passages in Plato. Few writers have ever been able to anticipate 'the criticism of the morrow' on their own favourite notions. But Plato may here be said to anticipate the judgment

not only of the morrow, but of all after-ages on the Platonic Ideas. For in some points he touches questions which have not yet received their solution in modern philosophy.

The first difficulty which Parmenides raises respecting the Platonic ideas relates to the manner in which individuals are connected with them. Do they participate in the ideas, or do they merely resemble them? Parmenides shows that objections may be urged against either of these modes of conceiving the connection. Things are little by partaking of littleness, great by partaking of greatness, and the like. But they cannot partake of a part of greatness, for that will not make them great, etc.; nor can each object monopolise the whole. The only answer to this is, that 'partaking' is a figure of speech, really corresponding to the processes which a later logic designates by the terms 'abstraction' and 'generalization.' When we have described accurately the methods or forms which the mind employs, we cannot further criticize them; at least we can only criticize them with reference to their fitness as instruments of thought to express facts.

Socrates attempts to support his view of the ideas by the parallel of the day, which is one and in many places; but he is easily driven from his position by a counter illustration of Parmenides, who compares the idea of greatness to a sail. He truly explains to Socrates that he has attained the conception of ideas by a process of generalization. At the same time, he points out a difficulty, which appears to be involved—viz. that the process of generalization will go on to infinity. Socrates meets the supposed difficulty by a flash of light, which is indeed the true answer 'that the ideas are in our minds only.' Neither realism is the truth, nor nominalism is the truth, but conceptualism; and conceptualism or any other psychological theory falls very far short of the infinite subtlety of language and thought.

But the realism of ancient philosophy will not admit of this answer, which is repelled by Parmenides with another truth or half-truth of later philosophy, 'Every subject or subjective must have an object.' Here is the great though unconscious truth (shall we say?) or error, which underlay the early Greek philosophy. 'Ideas must have a real existence;' they are not mere forms or opinions, which may be changed arbitrarily by individuals. But the early Greek philosopher never clearly saw that true



*Par-  
menides.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

ideas were only universal facts, and that there might be error in universals as well as in particulars.

Socrates makes one more attempt to defend the Platonic Ideas by representing them as paradigms; this is again answered by the 'argumentum ad infinitum.' We may remark, in passing, that the process which is thus described has no real existence. The mind, after having obtained a general idea, does not really go on to form another which includes that, and all the individuals contained under it, and another and another without end. The difficulty belongs in fact to the Megarian age of philosophy, and is due to their illogical logic, and to the general ignorance of the ancients respecting the part played by language in the process of thought. No such perplexity could ever trouble a modern metaphysician, any more than the fallacy of 'calvus' or 'acervus,' or of 'Achilles and the tortoise.' These 'surds' of metaphysics ought to occasion no more difficulty in speculation than a perpetually recurring fraction in arithmetic.

It is otherwise with the objection which follows: How are we to bridge the chasm between human truth and absolute truth, between gods and men? This is the difficulty of philosophy in all ages: How can we get beyond the circle of our own ideas, or how, remaining within them, can we have any criterion of a truth beyond and independent of them? Parmenides draws out this difficulty with great clearness. According to him, there are not only one but two chasms: the first, between individuals and the ideas which have a common name; the second, between the ideas in us and the ideas absolute. The first of these two difficulties mankind, as we may say, a little parodying the language of the Philebus, have long agreed to treat as obsolete; the second remains a difficulty for us as well as for the Greeks of the fourth century before Christ, and is the stumblingblock of Kant's *Kritik*, and of the Hamiltonian adaptation of Kant, as well as of the Platonic ideas. It has been said that 'you cannot criticize Revelation.' 'Then how do you know what is Revelation, or that there is one at all?' is the immediate rejoinder. 'You know nothing of things in themselves.' 'Then how do you know that there are things in themselves?' In some respects, the difficulty pressed harder upon the Greek than upon ourselves. For conceiving of God more under the attribute of knowledge than we do, he was

more under the necessity of separating the divine from the human, as two spheres which had no communication with one another.

It is remarkable that Plato, speaking by the mouth of Parmenides, does not treat even this second class of difficulties as hopeless or insoluble. He says only that they cannot be explained without a long and laborious demonstration: 'the teacher will require superhuman ability, and the learner will be hard of understanding.' But an attempt must be made to find an answer to them; for, as Socrates and Parmenides both admit, the denial of abstract ideas is the destruction of the mind. We can easily imagine that among the Greek schools of philosophy in the fourth century before Christ a panic might arise from the denial of universals, similar to that which arose in the last century from Hume's denial of our ideas of cause and effect. Men do not at first recognize that thought, like digestion, will go on much the same, notwithstanding any theories which may be entertained respecting the nature of the process. Parmenides attributes the difficulties in which Socrates is involved to a want of comprehensiveness in his mode of reasoning; he should consider every question on the negative as well as the positive hypothesis, with reference to the consequences which flow from the denial as well as from the assertion of a given statement.

The argument which follows is the most singular in Plato. It appears to be an imitation, or parody, of the Zenonian dialectic, just as the speeches in the *Phaedrus* are an imitation of the style of Lysias, or as the derivations in the *Cratylus* or the fallacies of the *Euthydemus* are a parody of some contemporary Sophist. The interlocutor is not supposed, as in most of the other Platonic dialogues, to take a living part in the argument; he is only required to say 'Yes' and 'No' in the right places. A hint has been already given that the paradoxes of Zeno admitted of a higher application (pp. 129, 135 E). This hint is the thread by which Plato connects the two parts of the dialogue.

The paradoxes of Parmenides seem trivial to us, because the words to which they relate have become trivial; their true nature as abstract terms is perfectly understood by us, and we are inclined to regard the treatment of them in Plato as a mere straw-splitting, or legerdemain of words. Yet there was a power in them which fascinated the Neoplatonists for centuries afterwards. Something

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

that they found in them, or brought to them—some echo or anticipation of a great truth or error, exercised a wonderful influence over their minds. To do the Parmenides justice, we should imagine similar *ἀπορίαι* raised on themes as sacred to us, as the notions of One or Being were to an ancient Eleatic. ‘If God is, what follows? if God is not, what follows?’ Or again: If God is or is not the world; or if God is or is not many, or has or has not parts, or is or is not in the world, or in time; or is or is not finite or infinite. Or if the world is or is not; or has or has not a beginning or end; or is or is not infinite, or infinitely divisible. Or again: if God is or is not identical with his laws; or if man is or is not identical with the laws of nature. We can easily see that here are many subjects for thought, and that from these and similar hypotheses questions of great interest might arise. And we also remark, that the conclusions derived from either of the two alternative propositions might be equally impossible and contradictory.

When we ask what is the object of these paradoxes, some have answered that they are a mere logical puzzle, while others have seen in them an Hegelian propaedeutic of the doctrine of Ideas. The first of these views derives support from the manner in which Parmenides speaks of a similar method being applied to all Ideas. Yet it is hard to suppose that Plato would have furnished so elaborate an example, not of his own but of the Eleatic dialectic, had he intended only to give an illustration of method. The second view has been often overstated by those who, like Hegel himself, have tended to confuse ancient with modern philosophy. We need not deny that Plato, trained in the school of Cratylus and Heraclitus, may have seen that a contradiction in terms is sometimes the best expression of a truth higher than either (cp. *Soph.* 255 ff.). But his ideal theory is not based on antinomies. The correlation of Ideas was the metaphysical difficulty of the age in which he lived; and the Megarian and Cynic philosophy was a ‘*reductio ad absurdum*’ of their isolation. To restore them to their natural connexion and to detect the negative element in them is the aim of Plato in the *Sophist*. But his view of their connexion falls very far short of the Hegelian identity of Being and Not-being. The Being and Not-being of Plato never merge in each other, though he is aware that ‘determination is only negation.’

After criticizing the hypotheses of others, it may appear presumptuous to add another guess to the many which have been already offered. May we say, in Platonic language, that we still seem to see vestiges of a track which has not yet been taken? It is quite possible that the obscurity of the *Parmenides* would not have existed to a contemporary student of philosophy, and, like the similar difficulty in the *Philebus*, is really due to our ignorance of the mind of the age. There is an obscure Megarian influence on Plato which cannot wholly be cleared up, and is not much illustrated by the doubtful tradition of his retirement to Megara after the death of Socrates. For Megara was within a walk of Athens (*Phaedr.* 227 E), and Plato might have learned the Megarian doctrines without settling there.

We may begin by remarking that the theses of *Parmenides* are expressly said to follow the method of Zeno, and that the complex dilemma, though declared to be capable of universal application, is applied in this instance to Zeno's familiar question of the 'one and many.' Here, then, is a double indication of the connexion of the *Parmenides* with the Eristic school. The old Eleatics had asserted the existence of Being, which they at first regarded as finite, then as infinite, then as neither finite nor infinite, to which some of them had given what Aristotle calls 'a form,' others had ascribed a material nature only. The tendency of their philosophy was to deny to Being all predicates. The Megarians, who succeeded them, like the Cynics, affirmed that no predicate could be asserted of any subject; they also converted the idea of Being into an abstraction of Good, perhaps with the view of preserving a sort of neutrality or indifference between the mind and things. As if they had said, in the language of modern philosophy: 'Being is not only neither finite nor infinite, neither at rest nor in motion, but neither subjective nor objective.'

This is the track along which Plato is leading us. Zeno had attempted to prove the existence of the one by disproving the existence of the many, and *Parmenides* seems to aim at proving the existence of the subject by showing the contradictions which follow from the assertion of any predicates. Take the simplest of all notions, 'unity'; you cannot even assert being or time of this without involving a contradiction. But is the contradiction also the final conclusion? Probably no more than of Zeno's denial of

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

the many, or of Parmenides' assault upon the Ideas; no more than of the earlier dialogues 'of search.' To us there seems to be no residuum of this long piece of dialectics. But to the mind of Parmenides and Plato, 'Gott-betrunkene Menschen,' there still remained the idea of 'being' or 'good,' which could not be conceived, defined, uttered, but could not be got rid of. Neither of them would have imagined that their disputation ever touched the Divine Being (cp. Phil. 22 C). The same difficulties about Unity and Being are raised in the Sophist (250 ff.); but there only as preliminary to their final solution.

If this view is correct, the real aim of the hypotheses of Parmenides is to criticize the earlier Eleatic philosophy from the point of view of Zeno or the Megarians. It is the same kind of criticism which Plato has extended to his own doctrine of Ideas. Nor is there any want of poetical consistency in attributing to the 'father Parmenides' the last review of the Eleatic doctrines. The latest phases of all philosophies were fathered upon the founder of the school.

Other critics have regarded the final conclusion of the Parmenides either as sceptical or as Heracleitean. In the first case, they assume that Plato means to show the impossibility of any truth. But this is not the spirit of Plato, and could not with propriety be put into the mouth of Parmenides, who, in this very dialogue, is urging Socrates, not to doubt everything, but to discipline his mind with a view to the more precise attainment of truth. The same remark applies to the second of the two theories. Plato everywhere ridicules (perhaps unfairly) his Heracleitean contemporaries: and if he had intended to support an Heracleitean thesis, would hardly have chosen Parmenides, the condemner of the 'undiscerning tribe who say that things both are and are not,' to be the speaker. Nor, thirdly, can we easily persuade ourselves with Zeller that by the 'one' he means the Idea; and that he is seeking to prove indirectly the unity of the Idea in the multiplicity of phenomena.

We may now endeavour to thread the mazes of the labyrinth which Parmenides knew so well, and trembled at the thought of them.

The argument has two divisions: There is the hypothesis that

i. One is.

ii. One is not.

If one is, it is nothing.

If one is not, it is everything.

But is and is not may be taken in two senses .

Either one is one,

Or, one has being,

from which opposite consequences are deduced,

i. a. If one is one, it is nothing (137 C—142 B).

i. b. If one has being, it is all things (142 B—157 B).

To which are appended two subordinate consequences :

i. aa. If one has being, all other things are (157 B—159 B).

i. bb. If one is one, all other things are not (159 B—160 B).

The same distinction is then applied to the negative hypothesis :

ii. a. If one is not one, it is all things (160 B—163 B).

ii. b. If one has not being, it is nothing (163 B—164 B).

Involving two parallel consequences respecting the other or remainder :

ii. aa. If one is not one, other things are all (164 B—165 E).

ii. bb. If one has not being, other things are not (165 E to the end).

*Par-*  
*menides.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

137 'I cannot refuse,' said Parmenides, 'since, as Zeno remarks, we are alone, though I may say with Ibycus, who in his old age fell in love, I, like the old racehorse, tremble at the prospect of the course which I am to run, and which I know so well. But as I must attempt this laborious game, what shall be the subject? Suppose I take my own hypothesis of the one.' 'By all means,' said Zeno. 'And who will answer me? Shall I propose the youngest? he will be the most likely to say what he thinks, and his answers will give me time to breathe.' 'I am the youngest,' said Aristoteles, 'and at your service; proceed with your questions.'—The result may be summed up as follows:—

ANALYSIS.

i. a. One is not many, and therefore has no parts, and therefore is not a whole, which is a sum of parts, and therefore has neither beginning, middle, nor end, and is therefore unlimited, and there-

*Par-  
menides.*

ANALYSIS.

fore formless, being neither round nor straight, for neither round nor straight can be defined without assuming that they have parts; 138 and therefore is not in place, whether in another which would encircle and touch the one at many points; or in itself, because that which is self-containing is also contained, and therefore not one but two. This being premised, let us consider whether one is capable either of motion or rest. For motion is either change of substance, or motion on an axis, or from one place to another. But the one is incapable of change of substance, which implies that it ceases to be itself, or of motion on an axis, because there would be parts around the axis; and any other motion involves change of place. But existence in place has been already shown to be impossible; and yet more impossible is coming into being in place, which implies partial existence in two places at once, or entire existence neither within nor without the same; and how can this be? And more impossible still is the coming into being either as a whole or parts of that which is neither a whole nor parts. The one, then, is incapable of motion. But neither can 139 the one be in anything, and therefore not in the same, whether itself or some other, and is therefore incapable of rest. Neither is one the same with itself or any other, or other than itself or any other. For if other than itself, then other than one, and therefore not one; and, if the same with other, it would be other, and other than one. Neither can one while remaining one be other than other; for other, and not one, is the other than other. But if not other by virtue of being one, not by virtue of itself; and if not by virtue of itself, not itself other, and if not itself other, not other than anything. Neither will one be the same with itself. For the nature of the same is not that of the one, but a thing which becomes the same with anything does not become one; for example, that which becomes the same with the many becomes many and not one. And therefore if the one is the same with itself, the one is not one with itself; and therefore one and not one. And therefore one is neither other than other, nor the same with itself. Neither will the one be like or unlike itself or other; for likeness is sameness of affections, and the one and the same are different. And one having any affection which is other 140 than being one would be more than one. The one, then, cannot have the same affection with and therefore cannot be like itself

*Par-*  
*menides.*

ANALYSIS.

or other; nor can the one have any other affection than its own, that is, be unlike itself or any other, for this would imply that it was more than one. The one, then, is neither like nor unlike itself or other. This being the case, neither can the one be equal or unequal to itself or other. For equality implies sameness of measure, as inequality implies a greater or less number of measures. But the one, not having sameness, cannot have sameness of measure; nor a greater or less number of measures, for that would imply parts and multitude. Once more, can one be older or younger than itself or other? or of the same age with itself or other? That would imply likeness and unlikeness,

141 equality and inequality. Therefore one cannot be in time, because that which is in time is ever becoming older and younger than itself, (for older and younger are relative terms, and he who becomes older becomes younger,) and is also of the same age with itself. None of which, or any other expressions of time, whether past, future, or present, can be affirmed of one. One neither is, has been, nor will be, nor becomes, nor has, nor will become. And, as these are the only modes of being, one is not, and is not one. But to that which is not, there is no attribute or

142 relative, neither name nor word nor idea nor science nor perception nor opinion appertaining. One, then, is neither named, nor uttered, nor known, nor perceived, nor imagined. But can all this be true? 'I think not.'

i. b. Let us, however, commence the inquiry again. We have to work out all the consequences which follow on the assumption that the one is. If one is, one partakes of being, which is not the same with one; the words 'being' and 'one' have different meanings. Observe the consequence: In the one of being or the being of one are two parts, being and one, which form one whole. And each of the two parts is also a whole, and involves the other, and may be further subdivided into one and being, and is therefore not one but two; and thus one is never one, and in this way

143 the one, if it is, becomes many and infinite. Again, let us conceive of a one which by an effort of abstraction we separate from being: will this abstract one be one or many? You say one only; let us see. In the first place, the being of one is other than one; and one and being, if different, are so because they



*Par-*  
*menides.*  
ANALYSIS.

both partake of the nature of other, which is therefore neither one nor being; and whether we take being and other, or being and one, or one and other, in any case we have two things which separately are called either, and together both. And both are two and either of two is severally one, and if one be added to any of the pairs, the sum is three; and two is an even number, three an odd; and two units exist twice, and therefore there are twice two; and three units exist thrice, and therefore there are thrice three, and taken together they give twice three and thrice two: we have even numbers multiplied into even, and odd into even, and even into odd numbers. But if one is, and both odd and 144 even numbers are implied in one, must not every number exist? And number is infinite, and therefore existence must be infinite, for all and every number partakes of being; therefore being has the greatest number of parts, and every part, however great or however small, is equally one. But can one be in many places and yet be a whole? If not a whole it must be divided into parts and represented by a number corresponding to the number of the parts. And if so, we were wrong in saying that being has the greatest number of parts; for being is coequal and coextensive with one, and has no more parts than one; and so the abstract one broken up into parts by being is many and infinite. But the parts are parts of a whole, and the whole is their containing limit, 145 and the one is therefore limited as well as infinite in number; and that which is a whole has beginning, middle, and end, and a middle is equidistant from the extremes; and one is therefore of a certain figure, round or straight, or a combination of the two, and being a whole includes all the parts which are the whole, and is therefore self-contained. But then, again, the whole is not in the parts, whether all or some. Not in all, because, if in all, also in one; for, if wanting in any one, how in all?—not in some, because the greater would then be contained in the less. But if not in all, nor in any, nor in some, either nowhere or in other. And if nowhere, nothing; therefore in other. The one as a whole, then, is in another, but regarded as a sum of parts is in itself; and is, therefore, both in itself and in another. This being the case, the one is at once both at rest and in motion: at rest, 146 because resting in itself; in motion, because it is ever in other. And if there is truth in what has preceded, one is the same and

not the same with itself and other. For everything in relation to every other thing is either the same with it or other; or if neither the same nor other, then in the relation of part to a whole or whole to a part. But one cannot be a part or whole in relation to one, nor other than one; and is therefore the same with one. Yet this sameness is again contradicted by one being in another place from itself which is in the same place; this follows from one being in itself and in another; one, therefore, is other than itself. But if anything is other than anything, will it not be other than other? And the not one is other than the one, and the one than the not one; therefore one is other than all others. But the same and the other exclude one another, and therefore the other can never be in the same; nor can the other be in anything for ever so short a time, as for that time the other will be in the same. And the other, if never in the same, cannot be either in the one or in the not one. And one is not other than not one, either by reason of other or of itself; and therefore they are not  
 147 other than one another at all. Neither can the not one partake or be part of one, for in that case it would be one; nor can the not one be number, for that also involves one. And therefore, not being other than the one or related to the one as a whole to parts or parts to a whole, not one is the same as one. Wherefore the one is the same and also not the same with the others and also with itself; and is therefore like and unlike itself and the others, and just as different from the others as they are from the one, neither more nor less. But if neither more nor less, equally different; and therefore the one and the others have the same relations. This may be illustrated by the case of names: when you repeat the same name twice over, you mean the same thing; and when you say that the other is other than the one, or the one other than the other, this very word other (*ἕτερον*), which is attributed to both,  
 148 implies sameness. One, then, as being other than others, and other as being other than one, are alike in that they have the relation of otherness; and likeness is similarity of relations. And everything as being other of everything is also like everything. Again, same and other, like and unlike, are opposites: and since in virtue of being other than the others the one is like them, in virtue of being the same it must be unlike. Again, one, as having the same relations, has no difference of relation, and is

*Par-*  
*menides.*  
ANALYSIS.

therefore not unlike, and therefore like; or, as having different relations, is different and unlike. Thus, one, as being the same and not the same with itself and others—for both these reasons and for either of them—is also like and unlike itself and the others. Again, how far can one touch itself and the others? As existing in others, it touches the others; and as existing in itself, touches only itself. But from another point of view, that which touches another must be next in order of place; one, therefore, must be next in order of place to itself, and would therefore be two, and in two places. But one cannot be two, and therefore 149 cannot be in contact with itself. Nor again can one touch the other. Two objects are required to make one contact; three objects make two contacts; and all the objects in the world, if placed in a series, would have as many contacts as there are objects, less one. But if one only exists, and not two, there is no contact. And the others, being other than one, have no part in one, and therefore none in number, and therefore two has no existence, and therefore there is no contact. For all which reasons, one has and has not contact with itself and the others.

Once more, Is one equal and unequal to itself and the others? Suppose one and the others to be greater or less than each other or equal to one another, they will be greater or less or equal by reason of equality or greatness or smallness inhering in them in addition to their own proper nature. Let us begin by assuming smallness to be inherent in one: in this case the inherence is 150 either in the whole or in a part. If the first, smallness is either coextensive with the whole one, or contains the whole, and, if coextensive with the one, is equal to the one, or if containing the one will be greater than the one. But smallness thus performs the function of equality or of greatness, which is impossible. Again, if the inherence be in a part, the same contradiction follows: smallness will be equal to the part or greater than the part; therefore smallness will not inhere in anything, and except the idea of smallness there will be nothing small. Neither will greatness; for greatness will have a greater;—and there will be no small in relation to which it is great. And there will be no great or small in objects, but greatness and smallness will be relative only to each other; therefore the others cannot be greater or less than the one; also the one can neither exceed nor

be exceeded by the others, and they are therefore equal to one another. And this will be true also of the one in relation to itself: one will be equal to itself as well as to the others (*τὰλλα*). Yet one, being in itself, must also be about itself, containing and  
151 contained, and is therefore greater and less than itself. Further, there is nothing beside the one and the others; and as these must be in something, they must therefore be in one another; and as that in which a thing is is greater than the thing, the inference is that they are both greater and less than one another, because containing and contained in one another. Therefore the one is equal to and greater and less than itself or other, having also measures or parts or numbers equal to or greater or less than itself or other.

But does one partake of time? This must be acknowledged, if  
152 the one partakes of being. For 'to be' is the participation of being in present time, 'to have been' in past, 'to be about to be' in future time. And as time is ever moving forward, the one becomes older than itself; and therefore younger than itself; and is older and also younger when in the process of becoming it arrives at the present; and it is always older and younger, for at any moment the one is, and therefore it becomes and is not older and younger than itself but during an equal time with itself, and is therefore contemporary with itself.

153 And what are the relations of the one to the others? Is it or does it become older or younger than they? At any rate the others are more than one, and one, being the least of all numbers, must be prior in time to greater numbers. But on the other hand, one must come into being in a manner accordant with its own nature. Now one has parts or others, and has therefore a beginning, middle, and end, of which the beginning is first and the end last. And the parts come into existence first; last of all the whole, contemporaneously with the end, being therefore younger, while the parts or others are older than the one. But, again, the one comes into being in each of the parts as much as in  
154 the whole, and must be of the same age with them. Therefore one is at once older and younger than the parts or others, and also contemporaneous with them, for no part can be a part which is not one. Is this true of becoming as well as being? Thus much may be affirmed, that the same things which are older or

*Par-*  
*menides.*

ANALYSIS.

younger cannot become older or younger in a greater degree than they were at first by the addition of equal times. But, on the other hand, the one, if older than others, has come into being a longer time than they have. And when equal time is added to a longer and shorter, the relative difference between them is diminished. In this way that which was older becomes younger, and that which was younger becomes older, that is to say, younger and older than at first; and they ever become and never have become, for then they would be. Thus the one and others always 155 are and are becoming and not becoming younger and also older than one another. And one, partaking of time and also partaking of becoming older and younger, admits of all time, present, past, and future—was, is, shall be—was becoming, is becoming, will become. And there is science of the one, and opinion and name and expression, as is already implied in the fact of our inquiry.

Yet once more, if one be one and many, and neither one nor many, and also participant of time, must there not be a time at which one as being one partakes of being, and a time when one as not being one is deprived of being? But these two contradictory states cannot be experienced by the one both together: there must be a time of transition. And the transition is a 156 process of generation and destruction, into and from being and not-being, the one and the others. For the generation of the one is the destruction of the others, and the generation of the others is the destruction of the one. There is also separation and aggregation, assimilation and dissimilation, increase, diminution, equalization, a passage from motion to rest, and from rest to motion in the one and many. But when do all these changes take place? When does motion become rest, or rest motion? The answer to this question will throw a light upon all the others. Nothing can be in motion and at rest at the same time; and therefore the change takes place 'in a moment'—which is a strange expression, and seems to mean change in no time. Which is true also of all the other changes, which likewise take 157 place in no time.

i. aa. But if one is, what happens to the others, which in the first place are not one, yet may partake of one in a certain way?

*Par-*  
*menides.*

ANALYSIS.

The others are other than the one because they have parts, for if they had no parts they would be simply one, and parts imply a whole to which they belong; otherwise each part would be a part of many, and being itself one of them, of itself, and if a part of all, of each one of the other parts, which is absurd. For a part, if not a part of one, must be a part of all but this one, and if so not a part of each one; and if not a part of each one, not a part of any one of many, and so not of one; and if of none, how of all? Therefore a part is neither a part of many nor of all, but of an absolute and perfect whole or one. And if the others have parts, they must partake of the whole, and must be the whole of which they are the  
 158 parts. And each part, as the word 'each' implies, is also an absolute one. And both the whole and the parts partake of one, for the whole of which the parts are parts is one, and each part is one part of the whole; and whole and parts as participating in one are other than one, and as being other than one are many and infinite; and however small a fraction you separate from them is many and not one. Yet the fact of their being parts furnishes the others with a limit towards other parts and towards the whole; they are finite and also infinite: finite through participation in the one, infinite in their own nature. And as being finite, they are alike; and as being infinite, they are alike; but as being both  
 159 finite and also infinite, they are in the highest degree unlike. And all other opposites might without difficulty be shown to unite in them.

i. bb. Once more, leaving all this: Is there not also an opposite series of consequences which is equally true of the others, and may be deduced from the existence of one? There is. One is distinct from the others, and the others from one; for one and the others are all things, and there is no third existence besides them. And the whole of one cannot be in others nor parts of it, for it is separated from others and has no parts, and therefore the others have no unity, nor plurality, nor duality, nor any other number, nor any opposition or distinction, such as likeness and unlikeness,  
 160 some and other, generation and corruption, odd and even. For if they had these they would partake either of one opposite, and this would be a participation in one; or of two opposites, and this would be a participation in two. Thus if one exists, one is

*Parmenides.*

ANALYSIS.

all things, and likewise nothing, in relation to one and to the others.

ii. a. But, again, assume the opposite hypothesis, that the one is not, and what is the consequence? In the first place, the proposition, that one is not, is clearly opposed to the proposition, that not one is not. The subject of any negative proposition implies at once knowledge and difference. Thus 'one' in the proposition-- 'The one is not,' must be something known, or the words would be unintelligible; and again this 'one which is not' is something different from other things. Moreover, this and that, some and other, may be all attributed or related to the one which is not, and which though non-existent may and must have plurality, if the one only is non-existent and nothing else; but if all is not-being there is 161 nothing which can be spoken of. Also the one which is not differs, and is different in kind from the others, and therefore unlike them; and they being other than the one, are unlike the one, which is therefore unlike them. But one, being unlike other, must be like itself; for the unlikeness of one to itself is the destruction of the hypothesis; and one cannot be equal to the others; for that would suppose being in the one, and the others would be equal to one and like one; both which are impossible, if one does not exist. The one which is not, then, if not equal is unequal to the others, and inequality implies great and small, and equality lies between great and small, and therefore the one which is not partakes of equality. Further, the one which is not has being; for that which is true is, and it is true that the one is not. And so the one which is not, if remitting aught of the being of 162 non-existence, would become existent. For not being implies the being of not-being, and being the not-being of not-being; or more truly being partakes of the being of being and not of the being of not-being, and not-being of the being of not-being and not of the not-being of not-being. And therefore the one which is not has being and also not-being. And the union of being and not-being involves change or motion. But how can not-being, which is nowhere, move or change, either from one place to another or in the same place? And whether it is or is not, it would cease to be one if experiencing a change of substance. The one which is not, then, is both in motion and at rest, is altered and unaltered, and 163

becomes and is destroyed, and does not become and is not destroyed.

*Par-*  
*menides.*  
ANALYSIS.

ii. b. Once more, let us ask the question, If one is not, what happens in regard to one? The expression 'is not' implies negation of being :—do we mean by this to say that a thing, which is not, in a certain sense is? or do we mean absolutely to deny being of it? The latter. Then the one which is not can neither be nor become nor perish nor experience change of substance or place.

16 Neither can rest, or motion, or greatness, or smallness, or equality, or unlikeness, or likeness either to itself or other, or attribute or relation, or now or hereafter or formerly, or knowledge or opinion or perception or name or anything else be asserted of that which is not.

ii. aa. Once more, if one is not, what becomes of the others? If we speak of them they must be, and their very name implies difference, and difference implies relation, not to the one, which is not, but to one another. And they are others of each other not as units but as infinities, the least of which is also infinity, and capable of infinitesimal division. And they will have no unity or number, but only a semblance of unity and number ; and the least

165 of them will appear large and manifold in comparison with the infinitesimal fractions into which it may be divided. Further, each particle will have the appearance of being equal with the fractions. For in passing from the greater to the less it must reach an intermediate point, which is equality. Moreover, each particle although having a limit in relation to itself and to other particles, yet it has neither beginning, middle, nor end ; for there is always a beginning before the beginning, and a middle within the middle, and an end beyond the end, because the infinitesimal division is never arrested by the one. Thus all being is one at a distance, and broken up when near, and like at a distance and unlike when near ; and also the particles which compose being seem to be like and unlike, in rest and motion, in generation and corruption, in contact and separation, if one is not.

ii. bb. Once more, let us inquire, If the one is not, and the others of the one are, what follows? In the first place, the others will  
166 not be the one, nor the many, for in that case the one would be



*Par-  
menides.*

ANALYSIS.

contained in them ; neither will they appear to be one or many ; because they have no communion or participation in that which is not, nor semblance of that which is not. If one is not, the others neither are, nor appear to be one or many, like or unlike, in contact or separation. In short, if one is not, nothing is.

The result of all which is, that whether one is or is not, one and the others, in relation to themselves and to one another, are and are not, and appear to be and appear not to be, in all manner of ways.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

I. On the first hypothesis we may remark : first, That one is one is an identical proposition, from which we might expect that no further consequences could be deduced. The train of consequences which follows, is inferred by altering the predicate into 'not many.' Yet, perhaps, if a strict Eristic had been present, *οἷος ἀνὴρ εἰ καὶ νῦν παρῆν*, he might have affirmed that the not many presented a different aspect of the conception from the one, and was therefore not identical with it. Such a subtlety would be very much in character with the Zenonian dialectic. Secondly, We may note, that the conclusion is really involved in the premises. For one is conceived as one, in a sense which excludes all predicates. When the meaning of one has been reduced to a point, there is no use in saying that it has neither parts nor magnitude. Thirdly, The conception of the same is, first of all, identified with the one ; and then by a further analysis distinguished from, and even opposed to it. Fourthly, We may detect notions, which have reappeared in modern philosophy, e.g. the bare abstraction of undefined unity, answering to the Hegelian 'Scyn,' or the identity of contradictions 'that which is older is also younger,' etc., cp. 152, or the Kantian conception of an *a priori* synthetical proposition 'one is.'

II. In the first series of propositions the word 'is' is really the copula ; in the second, the verb of existence. As in the first series, the negative consequence followed from one being affirmed to be equivalent to the not many ; so here the affirmative consequence is deduced from one being equivalent to the many.

In the former case, nothing could be predicated of the one, but

now everything—multitude, relation, place, time, transition. One is regarded in all the aspects of one, and with a reference to all the consequences which flow, either from the combination or the separation of them. The notion of transition involves the singular extra-temporal conception of ‘suddenness.’ This idea of ‘suddenness’ is based upon the contradiction which is involved in supposing that anything can be in two places at once. It is a mere fiction; and we may observe that similar antinomies have led modern philosophers to deny the reality of time and space. It is not the infinitesimal of time, but the negative of time. By the help of this invention the conception of change, which sorely exercised the minds of early thinkers, seems to be, but is not really at all explained. The difficulty arises out of the imperfection of language, and should therefore be no longer regarded as a difficulty at all. The only way of meeting it, if it exists, is to acknowledge that this rather puzzling double conception is necessary to the expression of the phenomena of motion or change, and that this and similar double notions, instead of being anomalies, are among the higher and more potent instruments of human thought.

The processes by which Parmenides obtains his remarkable results may be summed up as follows: (1) Compound or correlative ideas which involve each other, such as, being and not-being, one and many, are conceived sometimes in a state of composition, and sometimes of division: (2) The division or distinction is sometimes heightened into total opposition, e. g. between one and same, one and other: or (3) The idea, which has been already divided, is regarded, like a number, as capable of further infinite subdivision: (4) The argument often proceeds ‘a dicto secundum quid ad dictum simpliciter’ and conversely: (5) The analogy of opposites is misused by him; he argues indiscriminately sometimes from what is like, sometimes from what is unlike in them: (6) The idea of being or not-being is identified with existence or non-existence in place or time: (7) The same ideas are regarded sometimes as in process of transition, sometimes as alternatives or opposites: (8) There are no degrees or kinds of sameness, likeness, difference, nor any adequate conception of motion or change: (9) One, being, time, like space in Zeno’s puzzle of Achilles and the tortoise, are regarded sometimes as continuous and sometimes

*Parmenides.*

## INTRODUCTION.

as discrete: (10) In some parts of the argument the abstraction is so rarefied as to become not only fallacious, but almost unintelligible, e.g. in the contradiction which is elicited out of the relative terms older and younger at p. 152: (11) The relation between two terms is regarded under contradictory aspects, as for example when the existence of the one and the non-existence of the one are equally assumed to involve the existence of the many: (12) Words are used through long chains of argument, sometimes loosely, sometimes with the precision of numbers or of geometrical figures.

The argument is a very curious piece of work, unique in literature. It seems to be an exposition or rather a 'reductio ad absurdum' of the Megarian philosophy, but we are too imperfectly acquainted with this last to speak with confidence about it. It would be safer to say that it is an indication of the sceptical, hyper-logical fancies which prevailed among the contemporaries of Socrates. It throws an indistinct light upon Aristotle, and makes us aware of the debt which the world owes to him or his school. It also bears a resemblance to some modern speculations, in which an attempt is made to narrow language in such a manner that number and figure may be made a calculus of thought. It exaggerates one side of logic and forgets the rest. It has the appearance of a mathematical process; the inventor of it delights, as mathematicians do, in eliciting or discovering an unexpected result. It also helps to guard us against some fallacies by showing the consequences which flow from them.

In the *Parmenides* we seem to breathe the spirit of the Megarian philosophy, though we cannot compare the two in detail. But Plato also goes beyond his Megarian contemporaries; he has split their straws over again, and admitted more than they would have desired. He is indulging the analytical tendencies of his age, which can divide but not combine. And he does not stop to inquire whether the distinctions which he makes are shadowy and fallacious, but 'whither the argument blows' he follows.

III. The negative series of propositions contains the first conception of the negation of a negation. Two minus signs in arithmetic or algebra make a plus. Two negatives destroy each other. This abstruse notion is the foundation of the Hegelian logic. The mind must not only admit that determination is negation, but must get through negation into affirmation. Whether this process

is real, or in any way an assistance to thought, or, like some other logical forms, a mere figure of speech transferred from the sphere of mathematics, may be doubted. That Plato and the most subtle philosopher of the nineteenth century should have lighted upon the same notion, is a singular coincidence of ancient and modern thought.

IV. The one and the many or others are reduced to their strictest arithmetical meaning. That one is three or three one, is a proposition which has, perhaps, given rise to more controversy in the world than any other. But no one has ever meant to say that three and one are to be taken in the same sense. Whereas the one and many of the Parmenides have precisely the same meaning; there is no notion of one personality or substance having many attributes or qualities. The truth seems to be rather the opposite of that which Socrates implies at p. 129: There is no contradiction in the concrete, but in the abstract; and the more abstract the idea, the more palpable will be the contradiction. For just as nothing can persuade us that the number one is the number three, so neither can we be persuaded that any abstract idea is identical with its opposite, although they may both inhere together in some external object, or some more comprehensive conception. Ideas, persons, things may be one in one sense and many in another, and may have various degrees of unity and plurality. But in whatever sense and in whatever degree they are one they cease to be many; and in whatever degree or sense they are many they cease to be one.

Two points remain to be considered: 1st, the connexion between the first and second parts of the dialogue; 2ndly, the relation of the Parmenides to the other dialogues.

I. In both divisions of the dialogue the principal speaker is the same, and the method pursued by him is also the same, being a criticism on received opinions: first, on the doctrine of Ideas; secondly, of Being. From the Platonic Ideas we naturally proceed to the Eleatic One or Being which is the foundation of them. They are the same philosophy in two forms, and the simpler form is the truer and deeper. For the Platonic Ideas are mere numerical differences, and the moment we attempt to distinguish between them, their transcendental character is lost; ideas of justice,

*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

temperance, and good, are really distinguishable only with reference to their application in the world. If we once ask how they are related to individuals or to the ideas of the divine mind, they are again merged in the aboriginal notion of Being. No one can answer the questions which Parmenides asks of Socrates. And yet these questions are asked with the express acknowledgment that the denial of ideas will be the destruction of the human mind. The true answer to the difficulty here thrown out is the establishment of a rational psychology; and this is a work which is commenced in the Sophist. Plato, in urging the difficulty of his own doctrine of Ideas, is far from denying that some doctrine of Ideas is necessary, and for this he is paving the way.

In a similar spirit he criticizes the Eleatic doctrine of Being, not intending to deny Ontology, but showing that the old Eleatic notion, and the very name 'Being,' is unable to maintain itself against the subtleties of the Megarians. He did not mean to say that Being or Substance had no existence, but he is preparing for the development of his later view, that ideas were capable of relation. The fact that contradictory consequences follow from the existence or non-existence of one or many, does not prove that they have or have not existence, but rather that some different mode of conceiving them is required. Parmenides may still have thought that 'Being was,' just as Kant would have asserted the existence of 'things in themselves,' while denying the transcendental use of the Categories.

Several lesser links also connect the first and second parts of the dialogue: (1) The thesis is the same as that which Zeno has been already discussing: (2) Parmenides has intimated in the first part, that the method of Zeno should, as Socrates desired, be extended to Ideas: (3) The difficulty of participating in greatness, smallness, equality is urged against the Ideas as well as against the One.

II. The Parmenides is not only a criticism of the Eleatic notion of Being, but also of the methods of reasoning then in existence, and in this point of view, as well as in the other, may be regarded as an introduction to the Sophist. Long ago, in the Euthydemus, the vulgar application of the 'both and neither' Eristic had been subjected to a similar criticism, which there takes the form of banter and irony, here of illustration.

The attack upon the Ideas is resumed in the *Philebus*, and is followed by a return to a more rational philosophy. The perplexity of the One and Many is there confined to the region of Ideas, and replaced by a theory of classification; the Good arranged in classes is also contrasted with the barren abstraction of the Megarians. The war is carried on against the Eristics in all the later dialogues, sometimes with a playful irony, at other times with a sort of contempt. But there is no lengthened refutation of them. The *Parmenides* belongs to that stage of the dialogues of Plato in which he is partially under their influence, using them as a sort of 'critics or diviners' of the truth of his own, and of the Eleatic theories. In the *Theaetetus* a similar negative dialectic is employed in the attempt to define science, which after every effort remains undefined still. The same question is revived from the objective side in the *Sophist*: Being and Not-being are no longer exhibited in opposition, but are now reconciled; and the true nature of Not-being is discovered and made the basis of the correlation of ideas. Some links are probably missing which might have been supplied if we had trustworthy accounts of Plato's oral teaching.

To sum up: the *Parmenides* of Plato is a critique, first, of the Platonic Ideas, and secondly, of the Eleatic doctrine of Being. Neither are absolutely denied. But certain difficulties and consequences are shown in the assumption of either, which prove that the Platonic as well as the Eleatic doctrine must be remodelled. The negation and contradiction which are involved in the conception of the One and Many are preliminary to their final adjustment. The Platonic Ideas are tested by the interrogative method of Socrates; the Eleatic One or Being is tried by the severer and perhaps impossible method of hypothetical consequences, negative and affirmative. In the latter we have an example of the Zenonian or Megarian dialectic, which proceeded, not 'by assailing premises, but conclusions'; this is worked out and improved by Plato. When primary abstractions are used in every conceivable sense, any or every conclusion may be deduced from them. The words 'one,' 'other,' 'being,' 'like,' 'same,' 'whole,' and their opposites, have slightly different meanings, as they are applied to objects of thought or objects of sense—to number, time, place, and to the higher ideas of the reason;—and out of their different meanings this 'feast' of contradictions 'has been provided.'

*Parmenides.*  
INTRODUCTION.

The *Parmenides* of Plato belongs to a stage of philosophy which has passed away. At first we read it with a purely antiquarian or historical interest; and with difficulty throw ourselves back into a state of the human mind in which Unity and Being occupied the attention of philosophers. We admire the precision of the language, in which, as in some curious puzzle, each word is exactly fitted into every other, and long trains of argument are carried out with a sort of geometrical accuracy. We doubt whether any abstract notion could stand the searching cross-examination of *Parmenides*; and may at last perhaps arrive at the conclusion that Plato has been using an imaginary method to work out an unmeaning conclusion. But the truth is, that he is carrying on a process which is not either useless or unnecessary in any age of philosophy. We fail to understand him, because we do not realize that the questions which he is discussing could have had any value or importance. We suppose them to be like the speculations of some of the Schoolmen, which end in nothing. But in truth he is trying to get rid of the stumblingblocks of thought which beset his contemporaries. Seeing that the Megarians and Cynics were making knowledge impossible, he takes their 'catch-words' and analyzes them from every conceivable point of view. He is criticizing the simplest and most general of our ideas, in which, as they are the most comprehensive, the danger of error is the most serious; for, if they remain unexamined, as in a mathematical demonstration, all that flows from them is affected, and the error pervades knowledge far and wide. In the beginning of philosophy this correction of human ideas was even more necessary than in our own times, because they were more bound up with words; and words when once presented to the mind exercised a greater power over thought. There is a natural realism which says, 'Can there be a word devoid of meaning, or an idea which is an idea of nothing?' In modern times mankind have often given too great importance to a word or idea. The philosophy of the ancients was still more in slavery to them, because they had not the experience of error, which would have placed them above the illusion.

The method of the *Parmenides* may be compared with the process of purgation, which Bacon sought to introduce into philosophy. Plato is warning us against two sorts of 'Idols of the

Den': first, his own Ideas, which he himself having created is unable to connect in any way with the external world; secondly, against two idols in particular, 'Unity' and 'Being,' which had grown up in the pre-Socratic philosophy, and were still standing in the way of all progress and development of thought. He does not say with Bacon, 'Let us make truth by experiment,' or 'From these vague and inexact notions let us turn to facts.' The time has not yet arrived for a purely inductive philosophy. The instruments of thought must first be forged, that they may be used hereafter by modern inquirers. How, while mankind were disputing about universals, could they classify phenomena? How could they investigate causes, when they had not as yet learned to distinguish between a cause and an end? How could they make any progress in the sciences without first arranging them? These are the deficiencies which Plato is seeking to supply in an age when knowledge was a shadow of a name only. In the earlier dialogues the Socratic conception of universals is illustrated by his genius; in the *Phaedrus* the nature of division is explained; in the *Republic* the law of contradiction and the unity of knowledge are asserted; in the later dialogues he is constantly engaged both with the theory and practice of classification. These were the 'new weapons,' as he terms them in the *Philebus*, which he was preparing for the use of some who, in after ages, would be found ready enough to disown their obligations to the great master, or rather, perhaps, would be incapable of understanding them.

Numberless fallacies, as we are often truly told, have originated in a confusion of the 'copula,' and the 'verb of existence.' Would not the distinction which Plato by the mouth of Parmenides makes between 'One is one' and 'One has being' have saved us from this and many similar confusions? We see again that a long period in the history of philosophy was a barren tract, not uncultivated, but unfruitful, because there was no inquiry into the relation of language and thought, and the metaphysical imagination was incapable of supplying the missing link between words and things. The famous dispute between Nominalists and Realists would never have been heard of, if, instead of transferring the Platonic Ideas into a crude Latin phrasology, the spirit of Plato had been truly understood and appreciated. Upon the term



*Parmenides.*

INTRODUCTION.

substance at least two celebrated theological controversies appear to hinge, which would not have existed, or at least not in their present form, if we had 'interrogated' the word substance, as Plato has the notions of Unity and Being. These weeds of philosophy have struck their roots deep into the soil, and are always tending to reappear, sometimes in new-fangled forms; while similar words, such as development, evolution, law, and the like, are constantly put in the place of facts, even by writers who profess to base truth entirely upon fact. In an unmetaphysical age there is probably more metaphysics in the common sense (i. e. more *a priori* assumption) than in any other, because there is more complete unconsciousness that we are resting on our own ideas, while we please ourselves with the conviction that we are resting on facts. We do not consider how much metaphysics are required to place us above metaphysics, or how difficult it is to prevent the forms of expression which are ready made for our use from outrunning actual observation and experiment.

In the last century the educated world were astonished to find that the whole fabric of their ideas was falling to pieces, because Hume amused himself by analyzing the word 'cause' into uniform sequence. Then arose a philosophy which, equally regardless of the history of the mind, sought to save mankind from scepticism by assigning to our notions of 'cause and effect,' 'substance and accident,' 'whole and part,' a necessary place in human thought. Without them we could have no experience, and therefore they were supposed to be prior to experience—to be incrustated on the 'I'; although in the phrasology of Kant there could be no transcendental use of them, or, in other words, they were only applicable within the range of our knowledge. But into the origin of these ideas, which he obtains partly by an analysis of the proposition, partly by development of the 'ego,' he never inquires—they seem to him to have a necessary existence; nor does he attempt to analyse the various senses in which the word 'cause' or 'substance' may be employed.

The philosophy of Berkeley could never have had any meaning, even to himself, if he had first analyzed from every point of view the conception of 'matter.' This poor forgotten word (which was 'a very good word' to describe the simplest generalization of external objects) is now superseded in the vocabulary of physical

philosophers by 'force,' which seems to be accepted without any rigid examination of its meaning, as if the general idea of 'force' in our minds furnished an explanation of the infinite variety of forces which exist in the universe. A similar ambiguity occurs in the use of the favourite word 'law,' which is sometimes regarded as a mere abstraction, and then elevated into a real power or entity, almost taking the place of God. Theology, again, is full of undefined terms which have distracted the human mind for ages. Mankind have reasoned from them, but not to them; they have drawn out the conclusions without proving the premises; they have asserted the premises without examining the terms. The passions of religious parties have been roused to the utmost about words of which they could have given no explanation, and which had really no distinct meaning. One sort of them, faith, grace, justification, have been the symbols of one class of disputes; as the words substance, nature, person, of another, revelation, inspiration, and the like, of a third. All of them have been the subject of endless reasonings and inferences; but a spell has hung over the minds of theologians or philosophers which has prevented them from examining the words themselves. Either the effort to rise above and beyond their own first ideas was too great for them, or there might, perhaps, have seemed to be an irreverence in doing so. About the Divine Being Himself, in whom all true theological ideas live and move, men have spoken and reasoned much, and have fancied that they instinctively know Him. But they hardly suspect that under the name of God even Christians have included two characters or natures as much opposed as the good and evil principle of the Persians.

To have the true use of words we must compare them with things; in using them we acknowledge that they seldom give a perfect representation of our meaning. In like manner when we interrogate our ideas we find that we are not using them always in the sense which we supposed. And Plato, while he criticizes the inconsistency of his own doctrine of universals and draws out the endless consequences which flow from the assertion either that 'Being is' or that 'Being is not,' by no means intends to deny the existence of universals or the unity under which they are comprehended. There is nothing further

*Par-*  
*menides.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

from his thoughts than scepticism (cp. 135 B, C). But before proceeding he must examine the foundations which he and others have been laying; there is nothing true which is not from some point of view untrue, nothing absolute which is not also relative (cp. Rep. vi. 507).

And so, in modern times, because we are called upon to analyze our ideas and to come to a distinct understanding about the meaning of words; because we know that the powers of language are very unequal to the subtlety of nature or of mind, we do not therefore renounce the use of them; but we replace them in their old connexion, having first tested their meaning and quality, and having corrected the error which is involved in them; or rather always remembering to make allowance for the adulteration or alloy which they contain. We cannot call a new metaphysical world into existence any more than we can frame a new universal language; in thought, as in speech, we are dependent on the past. We know that the words 'cause' and 'effect' are very far from representing to us the continuity or the complexity of nature or the different modes or degrees in which phenomena are connected. Yet we accept them as the best expression which we have of the correlation of forces or objects. We see that the term 'law' is a mere abstraction, under which laws of matter and of mind, the law of nature and the law of the land are included, and some of these uses of the word are confusing, because they introduce into one sphere of thought associations which belong to another; for example, order or sequence is apt to be confounded with external compulsion and the internal workings of the mind with their material antecedents. Yet none of them can be dispensed with; we can only be on our guard against the error or confusion which arises out of them. Thus in the use of the word 'substance' we are far from supposing that there is any mysterious substratum apart from the objects which we see, and we acknowledge that the negative notion is very likely to become a positive one. Still we retain the word as a convenient generalization, though not without a double sense, substance, and essence, derived from the two-fold translation of the Greek *οὐσία*.

So the human mind makes the reflection that God is not a person like ourselves— is not a cause like the material causes in nature, nor even an intelligent cause like a human agent—nor an

individual, for He is universal ; and that every possible conception which we can form of Him is limited by the human faculties. We cannot by any effort of thought or exertion of faith be in and out of our own minds at the same instant. How can we conceive Him under the forms of time and space, who is out of time and space? How get rid of such forms and see Him as He is? How can we imagine His relation to the world or to ourselves? Innumerable contradictions follow from either of the two alternatives, that God is or that He is not. Yet we are far from saying that we know nothing of Him, because all that we know is subject to the conditions of human thought. To the old belief in Him we return, but with corrections. He is a person, but not like ourselves ; a mind, but not a human mind ; a cause, but not a material cause, nor yet a maker or artificer. The words which we use are imperfect expressions of His true nature ; but we do not therefore lose faith in what is best and highest in ourselves and in the world.

‘A little philosophy takes us away from God ; a great deal brings us back to Him.’ When we begin to reflect, our first thoughts respecting Him and ourselves are apt to be sceptical. For we can analyze our religious as well as our other ideas ; we can trace their history ; we can criticize their perversion ; we see that they are relative to the human mind and to one another. But when we have carried our criticism to the furthest point, they still remain, a necessity of our moral nature, better known and understood by us, and less liable to be shaken, because we are more aware of their necessary imperfection. They come to us with ‘better opinion, better confirmation,’ not merely as the inspirations either of ourselves or of another, but deeply rooted in history and in the human mind.



# PARMENIDES.

## PERSONS OF THE DIALOGUE.

CEPHALUS.  
ADEIMANTUS.  
GLAUCON.  
ANTIPHON.  
PYTHODORUS.

SOCRATES.  
ZENO.  
PARMENIDES.  
ARISTOTELES.

Cephalus rehearses a dialogue which is supposed to have been narrated in his presence by Antiphon, the half-brother of Adeimantus and Glaucon, to certain Clazomenians.

Steph. 126 WE had come from our home at Clazomenae to Athens, and met Adeimantus and Glaucon in the Agora. Welcome, Cephalus, said Adeimantus, taking me by the hand ; is there anything which we can do for you in Athens ?

*Par-*  
*menides.*

CEPHALUS,  
ADEIMAN-  
TUS.

Yes ; that is why I am here ; I wish to ask a favour of you. What may that be ? he said.

Preface.

I want you to tell me the name of your half-brother, which I have forgotten ; he was a mere child when I last came hither from Clazomenae, but that was a long time ago ; his father's name, if I remember rightly, was Pyrilampes ?

The re-  
quest of  
the Clazo-  
menians.

Yes, he said, and the name of our brother, Antiphon ; but why do you ask ?

Let me introduce some countrymen of mine, I said ; they are lovers of philosophy, and have heard that Antiphon was intimate with a certain Pythodorus, a friend of Zeno, and remembers a conversation which took place between Socrates, Zeno, and Parmenides many years ago, Pythodorus having often recited it to him.

Quite true.

And could we hear it ? I asked.

Par-  
menides.

CEPHALUS,  
ADEIMAN-  
TUS,  
ANTIPHON,  
SOCRATES,  
ZENO.

Descrip-  
tive.

Nothing easier, he replied ; when he was a youth he made a careful study of the piece ; at present his thoughts run in another direction ; like his grandfather Antiphon he is devoted to horses. But, if that is what you want, let us go and look for him ; he dwells at Melita, which is quite near, and he has only just left us to go home.

Accordingly we went to look for him ; he was at home, and 127 in the act of giving a bridle to a smith to be fitted. When he had done with the smith, his brothers told him the purpose of our visit ; and he saluted me as an acquaintance whom he remembered from my former visit, and we asked him to repeat the dialogue. At first he was not very willing, and complained of the trouble, but at length he consented. He told us that Pythodorus had described to him the appearance of Parmenides and Zeno ; they came to Athens, as he said, at the great Panathenaea ; the former was, at the time of his visit, about 65 years old, very white with age, but well favoured. Zeno was nearly 40 years of age, tall and fair to look upon ; in the days of his youth he was reported to have been beloved by Parmenides. He said that they lodged with Pythodorus in the Ceramicus, outside the wall, whither Socrates, then a very young man, came to see them, and many others with him ; they wanted to hear the writings of Zeno, which had been brought to Athens for the first time on the occasion of their visit. These Zeno himself read to them in the absence of Parmenides, and had very nearly finished when Pythodorus entered, and with him Parmenides and Aristoteles who was afterwards one of the Thirty, and heard the little that remained of the dialogue. Pythodorus had heard Zeno repeat them before.

When the recitation was completed, Socrates requested that the first thesis of the first argument might be read over again, and this having been done, he said : What is 'your meaning, Zeno ? Do you maintain that if being is many, it must be both like and unlike, and that this is impossible, for neither can the like be unlike, nor the unlike like—is that your position ?

Just so, said Zeno.

And if the unlike cannot be like, or the like unlike, then according to you, being could not be many ; for this would

The contention of Zeno is, that being cannot be many, because, if it were, it would be like and

involve an impossibility. In all that you say have you any other purpose except to disprove the being of the many? and is not each division of your treatise intended to furnish a separate proof of this, there being in all as many proofs of the not-being of the many as you have composed arguments? Is that your meaning, or have I misunderstood you?

*Parmenides.*

SOCRATES,  
ZENO.

unlike at the same time, which is impossible.

128 No, said Zeno; you have correctly understood my general purpose.

I see, Parmenides, said Socrates, that Zeno would like to be not only one with you in friendship but your second self in his writings too; he puts what you say in another way, and would fain make believe that he is telling us something which is new. For you, in your poems, say The All is one, and of this you adduce excellent proofs; and he on the other hand says There is no many; and on behalf of this he offers overwhelming evidence. You affirm unity, he denies plurality. And so you deceive the world into believing that you are saying different things when really you are saying much the same. This is a strain of art beyond the reach of most of us.

'The many are not' is only another way of expressing the thesis of Parmenides that 'All is one.'

Yes, Socrates, said Zeno. But although you are as keen as a Spartan hound in pursuing the track, you do not fully apprehend the true motive of the composition, which is not really such an artificial work as you imagine; for what you speak of was an accident; there was no pretence of a great purpose; nor any serious intention of deceiving the world. The truth is, that these writings of mine were meant to protect the arguments of Parmenides against those who make fun of him and seek to show the many ridiculous and contradictory results which they suppose to follow from the affirmation of the one. My answer is addressed to the partisans of the many, whose attack I return with interest by retorting upon them that their hypothesis of the being of many, if carried out, appears to be still more ridiculous than the hypothesis of the being of one. Zeal for my master led me to write the book in the days of my youth, but some one stole the copy; and therefore I had no choice whether it should be published or not; the motive, however, of writing, was not the ambition of an elder man, but the pugnacity of a young one. This you do not seem to see,

A misunderstanding.



*Par-  
menides.*

SOCRATES,  
ZENO.

Socrates; though in other respects, as I was saying, your notion is a very just one.

I understand, said Socrates, and quite accept your account. But tell me, Zeno, do you not further think that there is an idea of likeness in itself, and another idea of unlikeness, 129 which is the opposite of likeness, and that in these two, you and I and all other things to which we apply the term many, participate—things which participate in likeness become in that degree and manner like; and so far as they participate in unlikeness become in that degree unlike, or both like and unlike in the degree in which they participate in both? And may not all things partake of both opposites, and be both like and unlike, by reason of this participation?—Where is the wonder? Now if a person could prove the absolute like to become unlike, or the absolute unlike to become like, that, in my opinion, would indeed be a wonder; but there is nothing extraordinary, Zeno, in showing that the things which only partake of likeness and unlikeness experience both. Nor, again, if a person were to show that all is one by partaking of one, and at the same time many by partaking of many, would that be very astonishing. But if he were to show me that the absolute one was many, or the absolute many one, I should be truly amazed. And so of all the rest: I should be surprised to hear that the natures or ideas themselves had these opposite qualities; but not if a person wanted to prove of me that I was many and also one. When he wanted to show that I was many he would say that I have a right and a left side, and a front and a back, and an upper and a lower half, for I cannot deny that I partake of multitude; when, on the other hand, he wants to prove that I am one, he will say, that we who are here assembled are seven, and that I am one and partake of the one. In both instances he proves his case. So again, if a person shows that such things as wood, stones, and the like, being many are also one, we admit that he shows the coexistence of the one and many, but he does not show that the many are one or the one many; he is uttering not a paradox but a truism. If however, as I just now suggested, some one were to abstract simple notions of like, unlike, one, many, rest, motion, and similar ideas, and then to show that

Differences  
between  
absolute  
ideas or  
natures,  
and the  
things  
which  
partake of  
them.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

these admit of admixture and separation in themselves, I should be very much astonished. This part of the argument appears to be treated by you, Zeno, in a very spirited manner; but, as I was saying, I should be far more amazed if any one  
130 found in the ideas themselves which are apprehended by reason, the same puzzle and entanglement which you have shown to exist in visible objects.

While Socrates was speaking, Pythodorus thought that Parmenides and Zeno were not altogether pleased at the successive steps of the argument; but still they gave the closest attention, and often looked at one another, and smiled as if in admiration of him. When he had finished, Parmenides expressed their feelings in the following words:—

Socrates, he said, I admire the bent of your mind towards philosophy; tell me now, was this your own distinction between ideas in themselves and the things which partake of them? and do you think that there is an idea of likeness apart from the likeness which we possess, and of the one and many, and of the other things which Zeno mentioned?

I think that there are such ideas, said Socrates.

Parmenides proceeded: And would you also make absolute ideas of the just and the beautiful and the good, and of all that class?

Yes, he said, I should.

And would you make an idea of man apart from us and from all other human creatures, or of fire and water?

I am often undecided, Parmenides, as to whether I ought to include them or not.

And would you feel equally undecided, Socrates, about things of which the mention may provoke a smile?—I mean such things as hair, mud, dirt, or anything else which is vile and paltry; would you suppose that each of these has an idea distinct from the actual objects with which we come into contact, or not?

Certainly not, said Socrates; visible things like these are such as they appear to us, and I am afraid that there would be an absurdity in assuming any idea of them, although I sometimes get disturbed, and begin to think that there is nothing without an idea; but then again, when I have taken

Parmenides  
asks  
Socrates  
whether he  
would make  
ideas of all  
things.

Socrates  
fears to  
extend his  
idealism to  
mud, dirt,  
etc.,

*Par-  
menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES

and is re-  
buked by  
Parmenides  
for exhibit-  
ing an un-  
philosophic  
temper.

up this position, I run away, because I am afraid that I may fall into a bottomless pit of nonsense, and perish; and so I return to the ideas of which I was just now speaking, and occupy myself with them.

Yes, Socrates, said Parmenides; that is because you are still young; the time will come, if I am not mistaken, when philosophy will have a firmer grasp of you, and then you will not despise even the meanest things; at your age, you are too much disposed to regard the opinions of men. But I should like to know whether you mean that there are certain ideas of which all other things partake, and from which they derive their names; that similars, for example, <sup>131</sup> become similar, because they partake of similarity; and great things become great, because they partake of greatness; and that just and beautiful things become just and beautiful, because they partake of justice and beauty?

Yes, certainly, said Socrates, that is my meaning.

Then each individual partakes either of the whole of the idea or else of a part of the idea? Can there be any other mode of participation?

There cannot be, he said.

The whole  
idea cannot  
exist in  
different  
objects at  
the same  
time;

Then do you think that the whole idea is one, and yet, being one, is in each one of the many?

Why not, Parmenides? said Socrates.

Because one and the same thing will exist as a whole at the same time in many separate individuals, and will therefore be in a state of separation from itself.

Nay, but the idea may be like the day which is one and the same in many places at once, and yet continuous with itself; in this way each idea may be one and the same in all at the same time.

I like your way, Socrates, of making one in many places at once. You mean to say, that if I were to spread out a sail and cover a number of men, there would be one whole including many—is not that your meaning?

I think so.

And would you say that the whole sail includes each man, or a part of it only, and different parts different men?

The latter.

Then, Socrates, the ideas themselves will be divisible, and

things which participate in them will have a part of them only and not the whole idea existing in each of them ?

That seems to follow.

Then would you like to say, Socrates, that the one idea is really divisible and yet remains one ?

Certainly not, he said.

Suppose that you divide absolute greatness, and that of the many great things, each one is great in virtue of a portion of greatness less than absolute greatness—is that conceivable ?

No.

Or will each equal thing, if possessing some small portion of equality less than absolute equality, be equal to some other thing by virtue of that portion only ?

Impossible.

Or suppose one of us to have a portion of smallness ; this is but a part of the small, and therefore the absolutely small is greater ; if the absolutely small be greater, that to which the part of the small is added will be smaller and not greater than before.

How absurd !

Then in what way, Socrates, will all things participate in the ideas, if they are unable to participate in them either as parts or wholes ?

Indeed, he said, you have asked a question which is not easily answered.

Well, said Parmenides, and what do you say of another question ?

What question ?

I imagine that the way in which you are led to assume one idea of each kind is as follows :—You see a number of great

32

objects, and when you look at them there seems to you to be one and the same idea (or nature) in them all ; hence you conceive of greatness as one.

Very true, said Socrates.

And if you go on and allow your mind in like manner to embrace in one view the idea of greatness and of great things which are not the idea, and to compare them, will not another greatness arise, which will appear to be the source of all these ?

*Par-  
menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

nor can  
objects  
contain  
only parts  
of ideas,  
for this  
would  
equally  
involve an  
absurdity.  
Things  
cannot  
become  
great or  
equal or  
small by  
addition of  
a part of  
greatness  
or equality  
or small-  
ness.

Ideas are  
given by  
general-  
ization.

But the  
general and  
its par-  
ticulars  
together  
form a new  
idea ;

*Par-  
menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

the new  
idea and its  
particulars  
another ;  
and so *ad  
infinitum*.

It is  
suggested  
that the  
ideas are  
thoughts  
only.—This  
solution is  
rejected.

It would seem so.

Then another idea of greatness now comes into view over and above absolute greatness, and the individuals which partake of it ; and then another, over and above all these, by virtue of which they will all be great, and so each idea instead of being one will be infinitely multiplied.

But may not the ideas, asked Socrates, be thoughts only, and have no proper existence except in our minds, Parmenides ? For in that case each idea may still be one, and not experience this infinite multiplication.

And can there be individual thoughts which are thoughts of nothing ?

Impossible, he said.

The thought must be of something ?

Yes.

Of something which is or which is not ?

Of something which is.

Must it not be of a single something, which the thought recognizes as attaching to all, being a single form or nature ?

Yes.

And will not the something which is apprehended as one and the same in all, be an idea ?

From that, again, there is no escape.

Then, said Parmenides, if you say that everything else participates in the ideas, must you not say either that everything is made up of thoughts, and that all things think ; or that they are thoughts but have no thought ?

The latter view, Parmenides, is no more rational than the previous one. In my opinion, the ideas are, as it were, patterns fixed in nature, and other things are like them, and resemblances of them—what is meant by the participation of other things in the ideas, is really assimilation to them.

But if, said he, the individual is like the idea, must not the idea also be like the individual, in so far as the individual is a resemblance of the idea ? That which is like, cannot be conceived of as other than the like of like.

Impossible.

And when two things are alike, must they not partake of the same idea ?

They must.

A fresh  
attempt.  
The ideas  
are  
patterns,  
and other  
things will  
be like  
them. But  
then there  
will be like-  
ness of the  
like to the  
like, and a  
common  
idea in-  
cluding  
both ; and  
so on *ad  
infinitum*.

And will not that of which the two partake, and which makes them alike, be the idea itself?

Certainly.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

Then the idea cannot be like the individual, or the individual like the idea; for if they are alike, some further idea  
133 of likeness will always be coming to light, and if that be like anything else, another; and new ideas will be always arising, if the idea resembles that which partakes of it?

Quite true.

The theory, then, that other things participate in the ideas by resemblance, has to be given up, and some other mode of participation devised?

Resem-  
blance  
must be  
given up.

It would seem so.

Do you see then, Socrates, how great is the difficulty of affirming the ideas to be absolute?

Yes, indeed.

And, further, let me say that as yet you only understand a small part of the difficulty which is involved if you make of each thing a single idea, parting it off from other things.

What difficulty? he said.

There are many, but the greatest of all is this:—If an opponent argues that these ideas, being such as we say they ought to be, must remain unknown, no one can prove to him that he is wrong, unless he who denies their existence be a man of great ability and knowledge, and is willing to follow a long and laborious demonstration; he will remain unconvinced, and still insist that they cannot be known.

What do you mean, Parmenides? said Socrates.

In the first place, I think, Socrates, that you, or any one who maintains the existence of absolute essences, will admit that they cannot exist in us.

Ideas  
would be  
no longer  
absolute, if  
they existed  
within us.  
And if  
without us,  
then they  
and their  
resem-  
blances in  
our sphere  
are related  
among  
themselves  
only and

No, said Socrates; for then they would be no longer absolute.

True, he said; and therefore when ideas are what they are in relation to one another, their essence is determined by a relation among themselves, and has nothing to do with the resemblances, or whatever they are to be termed, which are in our sphere, and from which we receive this or that name when we partake of them. And the things which are within our sphere and have the same names with them, are likewise

*Parmenides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

not to one  
another.  
For ex-  
ample, we  
must dis-  
tinguish  
the indi-  
vidual slave  
and master  
in the con-  
crete from  
the ideas of  
mastership  
and  
slavery  
in the  
abstract.

The truth  
which we  
have will  
correspond  
to the  
knowledge  
which we  
have ; and  
we have no  
knowledge  
of the  
absolute  
or of the  
ideas.

only relative to one another, and not to the ideas which have the same names with them, but belong to themselves and not to them.

What do you mean ? said Socrates.

I may illustrate my meaning in this way, said Parmenides :—A master has a slave ; now there is nothing absolute in the relation between them, which is simply a relation of one man to another. But there is also an idea of mastership in the abstract, which is relative to the idea of slavery in the abstract. These natures have nothing to do with us, nor we with them ; they are concerned with themselves only, and we with ourselves. Do you see my meaning ? 134

Yes, said Socrates, I quite see your meaning.

And will not knowledge—I mean absolute knowledge—answer to absolute truth ?

Certainly.

And each kind of absolute knowledge will answer to each kind of absolute being ?

Yes.

But the knowledge which we have, will answer to the truth which we have ; and again, each kind of knowledge which we have, will be a knowledge of each kind of being which we have ?

Certainly.

But the ideas themselves, as you admit, we have not, and cannot have ?

No, we cannot.

And the absolute natures or kinds are known severally by the absolute idea of knowledge ?

Yes.

And we have not got the idea of knowledge ?

No.

Then none of the ideas are known to us, because we have no share in absolute knowledge ?

I suppose not.

Then the nature of the beautiful in itself, and of the good in itself, and all other ideas which we suppose to exist absolutely, are unknown to us ?

It would seem so.

I think that there is a stranger consequence still.

What is it ?

Would you, or would you not say, that absolute knowledge, if there is such a thing, must be a far more exact knowledge than our knowledge ; and the same of beauty and of the rest ?

Yes.

And if there be such a thing as participation in absolute knowledge, no one is more likely than God to have this most exact knowledge ?

Certainly.

But then, will God, having absolute knowledge, have a knowledge of human things ?

Why not ?

Because, Socrates, said Parmenides, we have admitted that the ideas are not valid in relation to human things ; nor human things in relation to them ; the relations of either are limited to their respective spheres.

Yes, that has been admitted.

And if God has this perfect authority, and perfect knowledge, his authority cannot rule us, nor his knowledge know us, or any human thing ; just as our authority does not extend to the gods, nor our knowledge know anything which is divine, so by parity of reason they, being gods, are not our masters, neither do they know the things of men.

Yet, surely, said Socrates, to deprive God of knowledge is monstrous.

*Parmenides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

Another objection. God above has absolute knowledge. But if so, he cannot have a knowledge of human things, because they are in another sphere.

- 135 These, Socrates, said Parmenides, are a few, and only a few of the difficulties in which we are involved if ideas really are and we determine each one of them to be an absolute unity. He who hears what may be said against them will deny the very existence of them—and even if they do exist, he will say that they must of necessity be unknown to man ; and he will seem to have reason on his side, and as we were remarking just now, will be very difficult to convince ; a man must be gifted with very considerable ability before he can learn that everything has a class and an absolute essence ; and still more remarkable will he be who discovers all these things for himself, and having thoroughly investigated them is able to teach them to others.



*Parmenides.*

I agree with you, Parmenides, said Socrates ; and what you say is very much to my mind.

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES.

And yet, Socrates, said Parmenides, if a man, fixing his attention on these and the like difficulties, does away with ideas of things and will not admit that every individual thing has its own determinate idea which is always one and the same, he will have nothing on which his mind can rest ; and so he will utterly destroy the power of reasoning, as you seem to me to have particularly noted.

Very true, he said.

But, then, what is to become of philosophy ? Whither shall we turn, if the ideas are unknown ?

I certainly do not see my way at present.

Parmenides  
has ob-  
served  
Socrates  
to be  
untried in  
dialectic.

Yes, said Parmenides ; and I think that this arises, Socrates, out of your attempting to define the beautiful, the just, the good, and the ideas generally, without sufficient previous training. I noticed your deficiency, when I heard you talking here with your friend Aristoteles, the day before yesterday. The impulse that carries you towards philosophy is assuredly noble and divine ; but there is an art which is called by the vulgar idle talking, and which is often imagined to be useless ; in that you must train and exercise yourself, now that you are young, or truth will elude your grasp.

And what is the nature of this exercise, Parmenides, which you would recommend ?

That which you heard Zeno practising ; at the same time, I give you credit for saying to him that you did not care to examine the perplexity in reference to visible things, or to consider the question in that way ; but only in reference to objects of thought, and to what may be called ideas.

Why, yes, he said, there appears to me to be no difficulty in showing by this method that visible things are like and unlike and may experience anything.

He suggests  
that the  
consequences  
of the not  
being, as  
well as of  
the being  
of anything,  
should be  
considered.

Quite true, said Parmenides ; but I think that you should go a step further, and consider not only the consequences which flow from a given hypothesis, but also the consequences which flow from denying the hypothesis ; and that will be still better training for you.

What do you mean ? he said.

I mean, for example, that in the case of this very hypothesis

*Par-  
menides.*

SOCRATES,  
PARMENIDES,  
ZENO.

of Zeno's about the many, you should inquire not only what will be the consequences to the many in relation to themselves and to the one, and to the one in relation to itself and the many, on the hypothesis of the being of the many, but also what will be the consequences to the one and the many in their relation to themselves and to each other, on the opposite hypothesis. Or, again, if likeness is or is not, what will be the consequences in either of these cases to the subjects of the hypothesis, and to other things, in relation both to themselves and to one another, and so of unlikeness; and the same holds good of motion and rest, of generation and destruction, and even of being and not-being. In a word, when you suppose anything to be or not to be, or to be in any way affected, you must look at the consequences in relation to the thing itself, and to any other things which you choose,—to each of them singly, to more than one, and to all; and so of other things, you must look at them in relation to themselves and to anything else which you suppose either to be or not to be, if you would train yourself perfectly and see the real truth.

That, Parmenides, is a tremendous business of which you speak, and I do not quite understand you; will you take some hypothesis and go through the steps?—then I shall apprehend you better.

Socrates asks him to give an example of this process.

That, Socrates, is a serious task to impose on a man of my years.

Parmenides is at first disinclined to engage in such a laborious pastime; but at the request of the company he proceeds.

Then will you, Zeno? said Socrates.

Zeno answered with a smile:—Let us make our petition to Parmenides himself, who is quite right in saying that you are hardly aware of the extent of the task which you are imposing on him; and if there were more of us I should not ask him, for these are not subjects which any one, especially at his age, can well speak of before a large audience; most people are not aware that this roundabout progress through all things is the only way in which the mind can attain truth and wisdom. And therefore, Parmenides, I join in the request of Socrates, that I may hear the process again which I have not heard for a long time.

When Zeno had thus spoken, Pythodorus, according to Antiphon's report of him, said, that he himself and Aristo-

*Parmenides.*PARMENIDES,  
ZENO,  
ARISTOTELES.

teles and the whole company entreated Parmenides to give an example of the process. I cannot refuse, said Parmenides; and yet I feel rather like Ibycus, who, when in his old age, against his will, he fell in love, compared himself to an old racehorse, who was about to run in a chariot race, shaking with fear at the course he knew so well—this was his simile of himself. And I also experience a trembling when I remember through what an ocean of words I have to wade at my time of life. But I must indulge you, as Zeno says that I ought, and we are alone. Where shall I begin? And what shall be our first hypothesis, if I am to attempt this laborious pastime? Shall I begin with myself, and take my own hypothesis of the one? and consider the consequences which follow on the supposition either of the being or of the not-being of one?

By all means, said Zeno.

And who will answer me? he said. Shall I propose the youngest? He will not make difficulties and will be the most likely to say what he thinks; and his answers will give me time to breathe.

I am the one whom you mean, Parmenides, said Aristoteles; for I am the youngest and at your service. Ask, and I will answer.

Parmenides proceeded: i. a. If one is, he said, the one cannot be many?

Impossible.

Then the one cannot have parts, and cannot be a whole?

Why not?

Because every part is part of a whole; is it not?

Yes.

And what is a whole? would not that of which no part is wanting be a whole?

Certainly.

Then, in either case, the one would be made up of parts; both as being a whole, and also as having parts?

To be sure.

And in either case, the one would be many, and not one?

True.

But, surely, it ought to be one and not many?

It ought.

i. a. If the one is, it cannot be many, and therefore cannot have parts, or be a whole, because a whole is made up of parts;

Then, if the one is to remain one, it will not be a whole, and will not have parts?

No.

But if it has no parts, it will have neither beginning, middle, nor end; for these would of course be parts of it.

Right.

But then, again, a beginning and an end are the limits of everything?

Certainly.

Then the one, having neither beginning nor end, is unlimited?

Yes, unlimited.

And therefore formless; for it cannot partake either of round or straight.

But why?

Why, because the round is that of which all the extreme points are equidistant from the centre?

Yes.

And the straight is that of which the centre intercepts the view of the extremes?

True.

138 Then the one would have parts and would be many, if it partook either of a straight or of a circular form?

Assuredly.

But having no parts, it will be neither straight nor round?

Right.

And, being of such a nature, it cannot be in any place, for it cannot be either in another or in itself.

How so?

Because if it were in another, it would be encircled by that in which it was, and would touch it at many places and with many parts; but that which is one and indivisible, and does not partake of a circular nature, cannot be touched all round in many places.

Certainly not.

But if, on the other hand, one were in itself, it would also be contained by nothing else but itself<sup>1</sup>; that is to say, if it were really in itself; for nothing can be in anything which does not contain it.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

and having  
no parts it  
cannot have  
a beginning,  
middle, and  
end;  
nor any  
limit or  
form.

It is neither  
circular nor  
straight;

it does not  
exist in  
any place;

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *δν*.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Impossible.

But then, that which contains must be other than that which is contained? for the same whole cannot do and suffer both at once; and if so, one will be no longer one, but two?

True.

Then one cannot be anywhere, either in itself or in another?  
No.

it has  
neither  
rest nor  
motion.

Further consider, whether that which is of such a nature can have either rest or motion.

Why not?

Two forms  
of motion—  
(1) change  
of nature;  
(2) loco-  
motion.

Why, because the one, if it were moved, would be either moved in place or changed in nature; for these are the only kinds of motion.

Yes.

And the one, when it changes and ceases to be itself, cannot be any longer one.

It cannot.

It cannot therefore experience the sort of motion which is change of nature?

Clearly not.

Then can the motion of the one be in place?

Perhaps.

Two forms  
of loco-  
motion—(a)  
in a place;  
(b) from  
one place  
to another.

But if the one moved in place, must it not either move round and round in the same place, or from one place to another?

It must.

And that which moves in a circle must rest upon a centre; and that which goes round upon a centre must have parts which are different from the centre; but that which has no centre and no parts cannot possibly be carried round upon a centre?

Impossible.

But perhaps the motion of the one consists in change of place?

Perhaps so, if it moves at all.

The one  
does not  
admit of  
change of  
nature, nor  
of either  
form of lo-  
comotion;

And have we not already shown that it cannot be in anything?

Yes.

Then its coming into being in anything is still more impossible; is it not?

I do not see why.

Why, because anything which comes into being in anything, can neither as yet be in that other thing while still coming into being, nor be altogether out of it, if already coming into being in it.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Certainly not.

And therefore whatever comes into being in another must have parts, and then one part may be in, and another part out of that other ; but that which has no parts can never be at one and the same time neither wholly within nor wholly without anything.

True.

And is there not a still greater impossibility in that which has no parts, and is not a whole, coming into being anywhere,  
139 since it cannot come into being either as a part or as a whole ?

Clearly.

Then it does not change place by revolving in the same spot, nor by going somewhere and coming into being in something ; nor again, by change in itself ?

Very true.

Then in respect of any kind of motion the one is immoveable ?

Immoveable.

But neither can the one be in anything, as we affirm ?

Yes, we said so.

Then it is never in the same ?

Why not ?

Because if it were in the same it would be in something.

Certainly.

And we said that it could not be in itself, and could not be in other ?

True.

Then one is never in the same place ?

It would seem not.

But that which is never in the same place is never quiet or at rest ?

Never.

One then, as would seem, is neither at rest nor in motion ?

It certainly appears so.

Neither will it be the same with itself or other ; nor again, other than itself or other.

Again, the one is never in the same any more than in the other, and is therefore in no place and therefore incapable of rest.

*Par-  
menides.*

How is that ?

If other than itself it would be other than one, and would not be one.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

True.

Neither  
otherness  
nor same-  
ness can be  
attributed  
to the one,  
in reference  
to itself or  
other ;

And if the same with other, it would be that other, and not itself ; so that upon this supposition too, it would not have the nature of one, but would be other than one ?

It would.

Then it will not be the same with other, or other than itself ?

It will not.

Neither will it be other than other, while it remains one ; for not one, but only other, can be other than other, and nothing else.

True.

Then not by virtue of being one will it be other ?

Certainly not.

But if not by virtue of being one, not by virtue of itself ; and if not by virtue of itself, not itself, and itself not being other at all, will not be other than anything ?

Right.

Neither will one be the same with itself.

How not ?

Surely the nature of the one is not the nature of the same.

Why not ?

It is not when anything becomes the same with anything that it becomes one.

What of that ?

Anything which becomes the same with the many, necessarily becomes many and not one.

True.

But, if there were no difference between the one and the same, when a thing became the same, it would always become one ; and when it became one, the same ?

Certainly.

And, therefore, if one be the same with itself, it is not one with itself, and will therefore be one and also not one.

Surely that is impossible.

And therefore the one can neither be other than other, nor the same with itself.

Impossible.

And thus the one can neither be the same, nor other, either in relation to itself or other ?

No.

Neither will the one be like anything or unlike itself or other.

Why not ?

Because likeness is sameness of affections.

Yes.

And sameness has been shown to be of a nature distinct from oneness ?

That has been shown.

140 But if the one had any other affection than that of being one, it would be affected in such a way as to be more than one ; which is impossible.

True.

Then the one can never be so affected as to be the same either with another or with itself ?

Clearly not.

Then it cannot be like another, or like itself ?

No.

Nor can it be affected so as to be other, for then it would be affected in such a way as to be more than one.

It would.

That which is affected otherwise than itself or another, will be unlike itself or another, for sameness of affections is likeness.

True.

But the one, as appears, never being affected otherwise, is never unlike itself or other ?

Never.

Then the one will never be either like or unlike itself or other ?

Plainly not.

Again, being of this nature, it can neither be equal nor unequal either to itself or to other.

How is that ?

Why, because the one if equal must be of the same measures as that to which it is equal.

True.

And if greater or less than things which are commensurable

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

nor yet  
likeness,  
which is  
sameness  
of affec-  
tions ; nor  
unlikeness,

nor  
equality,  
nor in-  
equality  
of size ;



*Par-*  
*menides.*

with it, the one will have more measures than that which is less, and fewer than that which is greater ?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TILES.

Yes.

And so of things which are not commensurate with it, the one will have greater measures than that which is less and smaller than that which is greater.

Certainly.

But how can that which does not partake of sameness, have either the same measures or have anything else the same ?

Impossible.

And not having the same measures, the one cannot be equal either with itself or with another ?

It appears so.

But again, whether it have fewer or more measures, it will have as many parts as it has measures ; and thus again the one will be no longer one but will have as many parts as measures.

Right.

And if it were of one measure, it would be equal to that measure ; yet it has been shown to be incapable of equality.

It has.

Then it will neither partake of one measure, nor of many, nor of few, nor of the same at all, nor be equal to itself or another ; nor be greater or less than itself, or other ?

Certainly.

nonequality  
or in-  
equality of  
age ;

Well, and do we suppose that one can be older, or younger than anything, or of the same age with it ?

Why not ?

Why, because that which is of the same age with itself or other, must partake of equality or likeness of time ; and we said that the one did not partake either of equality or of likeness ?

We did say so.

And we also said, that it did not partake of inequality or unlikeness.

Very true.

How then can one, being of this nature, be either older or younger than anything, or have the same age with it ?

In no way.

Then one cannot be older or younger, or of the same age, either with itself or with another?

*Parmenides.*

Clearly not.

Then the one, being of this nature, cannot be in time at all; for must not that which is in time, be always growing older than itself?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTOTILES.

nor time,

Certainly.

And that which is older, must always be older than something which is younger?

True.

Then, that which becomes older than itself, also becomes at the same time younger than itself, if it is to have something to become older than.

What do you mean?

I mean this:—A thing does not need to become different from another thing which is already different; it *is* different, and if its different has become, it has become different; if its different will be, it will be different; but of that which is becoming different, there cannot have been, or be about to be, or yet be, a different—the only different possible is one which is becoming.

That is inevitable.

But, surely, the elder is a difference relative to the younger, and to nothing else.

True.

Then that which becomes older than itself must also, at the same time, become younger than itself?

Yes.

But again, it is true that it cannot become for a longer or for a shorter time than itself, but it must become, and be, and have become, and be about to be, for the same time with itself?

That again is inevitable.

Then things which are in time, and partake of time, must in every case, I suppose, be of the same age with themselves; and must also become at once older and younger than themselves?

Yes.

But the one did not partake of those affections?

Not at all.

*Parmenides.*

Then it does not partake of time, and is not in any time?

So the argument shows.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Well, but do not the expressions 'was,' and 'has become,' and 'was becoming,' signify a participation of past time?

nor modes  
of time.

Certainly.

And do not 'will be,' 'will become,' 'will have become,' signify a participation of future time?

Yes.

And 'is,' or 'becomes,' signifies a participation of present time?

Certainly.

And if the one is absolutely without participation in time, it never had become, or was becoming, or was at any time, or is now become or is becoming, or is, or will become, or will have become, or will be, hereafter.

Most true.

But these  
are the  
only modes  
of partaking  
of being,  
and if they  
are all  
denied of  
it, then the  
one is not,  
and has  
therefore  
no attribute  
or relation,  
etc.

But are there any modes of partaking of being other than these?

There are none.

Then the one cannot possibly partake of being?

That is the inference.

Then the one is not at all?

Clearly not.

Then the one does not exist in such way as to be one; for if it were and partook of being, it would already be; but if the argument is to be trusted, the one neither is nor is one?

True.

But that which is not admits of no attribute or relation?

142

Of course not.

Then there is no name, nor expression, nor perception, nor opinion, nor knowledge of it?

Clearly not.

Then it is neither named, nor expressed, nor opined, nor known, nor does anything that is perceive it.

So we must infer.

But can all this be true about the one?

I think not.

The con-  
clusion is  
unsatisfac-  
tory.

i. b. If one

i. b. Suppose, now, that we return once more to the

original hypothesis ; let us see whether, on a further review, any new aspect of the question appears.

*Par-  
menides.*

I shall be very happy to do so.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

We say that we have to work out together all the consequences, whatever they may be, which follow, if the one is ?

is, what  
will follow?

Yes.

Then we will begin at the beginning :—If one is, can one be, and not partake of being ?

Impossible.

Then the one will have being, but its being will not be the same with the one ; for if the same, it would not be the being of the one ; nor would the one have participated in being, for the proposition that one is would have been identical with the proposition that one is one ; but our hypothesis is not if one is one, what will follow, but if one is :—am I not right ?

The one  
which is  
will partake  
of being,  
and will  
therefore  
have parts,  
one and  
being ;

Quite right.

We mean to say, that being has not the same significance as one ?

Of course.

And when we put them together shortly, and say ‘One is,’ that is equivalent to saying, ‘partakes of being’ ?

Quite true.

Once more then let us ask, if one is what will follow. Does not this hypothesis necessarily imply that one is of such a nature as to have parts ?

and each  
part has  
one and  
being for  
the parts of  
itself ;  
and so on  
*ad in-  
finitum.*

How so ?

In this way :—If being is predicated of the one, if the one is, and one of being, if being is one ; and if being and one are not the same ; and since the one, which we have assumed, is, must not the whole, if it is one, itself be, and have for its parts, one and being ?

Certainly.

And is each of these parts—one and being—to be simply called a part, or must the word ‘part’ be relative to the word ‘whole’ ?

The latter.

Then that which is one is both a whole and has a part ?

Certainly.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Again, of the parts of the one, if it is—I mean being and one—does either fail to imply the other? is the one wanting to being, or being to the one?

Impossible.

Thus, each of the parts also has in turn both one and being, and is at the least made up of two parts; and the same principle goes on for ever, and every part whatever has always these two parts; for being always involves one, and one being; so that one is always disappearing, and becoming two.

Certainly.

And so the one, if it is, must be infinite in multiplicity?

143

Clearly.

Let us take another direction.

What direction?

We say that the one partakes of being and therefore it is?

Yes.

Another  
argument.

And in this way, the one, if it has being, has turned out to be many?

True.

When one  
is ab-  
stracted  
from being,  
they are a  
pair of  
differents.

But now, let us abstract the one which, as we say, partakes of being, and try to imagine it apart from that of which, as we say, it partakes—will this abstract one be one only or many?

One, I think.

Let us see:—Must not the being of one be other than one? for the one is not being, but, considered as one, only partook of being?

Certainly.

If being and the one be two different things, it is not because the one is one that it is other than being; nor because being is being that it is other than the one; but they differ from one another in virtue of otherness and difference.

Certainly.

So that the other is not the same—either with the one or with being?

Certainly not.

And therefore whether we take being and the other, or being and the one, or the one and the other, in every

such case we take two things, which may be rightly called both.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

How so.

In this way—you may speak of being ?

Yes.

And also of one ?

Yes.

Then now we have spoken of either of them ?

Yes.

Well, and when I speak of being and one, I speak of them both ?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Transition  
from one  
to two,

Certainly.

And if I speak of being and the other, or of the one and the other,—in any such case do I not speak of both ?

Yes.

And must not that which is correctly called both, be also two ?

Undoubtedly.

And of two things how can either by any possibility not be one ?

It cannot.

Then, if the individuals of the pair are together two, they must be severally one ?

from odd  
to even  
numbers,

Clearly.

And if each of them is one, then by the addition of any one to any pair, the whole becomes three ?

Yes.

And three are odd, and two are even ?

Of course.

And if there are two there must also be twice, and if there are three there must be thrice ; that is, if twice one makes two, and thrice one three ?

from ad-  
dition to  
multipli-  
cation.

Certainly.

There are two, and twice, and therefore there must be twice two ; and there are three, and there is thrice, and therefore there must be thrice three ?

Of course.

If there are three and twice, there is twice three ; and if there are two and thrice, there is thrice two ?

Undoubtedly.

*Parmenides.*

Here, then, we have even taken even times, and odd taken 144  
odd times, and even taken odd times, and odd taken even  
times.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

True.

And if this is so, does any number remain which has no  
necessity to be ?

None whatever.

Out of the  
one that  
is, has  
come differ-  
ence, and  
from  
difference  
number of  
every sort,

Then if one is, number must also be ?

It must.

But if there is number, there must also be many, and  
infinite multiplicity of being ; for number is infinite in multi-  
plicity, and partakes also of being : am I not right ?

Certainly.

And if all number participates in being, every part of  
number will also participate ?

Yes.

and number  
is co-  
extensive  
with being ;

Then being is distributed over the whole multitude of  
things, and nothing that is, however small or however great,  
is devoid of it ? And, indeed, the very supposition of this is  
absurd, for how can that which is, be devoid of being ?

In no way.

And it is divided into the greatest and into the smallest,  
and into being of all sizes, and is broken up more than all  
things ; the divisions of it have no limit.

True.

Then it has the greatest number of parts ?

Yes, the greatest number.

Is there any of these which is a part of being, and yet no  
part ?

Impossible.

for every  
single part  
of being,  
however  
small, is  
one.

But if it is at all and so long as it is, it must be one, and  
cannot be none ?

Certainly.

Then the one attaches to every single part of being, and  
does not fail in any part, whether great or small, or whatever  
may be the size of it ?

True.

But reflect :—Can one, in its entirety, be in many places at  
the same time ?

No ; I see the impossibility of that.

And if not in its entirety, then it is divided ; for it cannot be present with all the parts of being, unless divided.

True.

And that which has parts will be as many as the parts are?

Certainly.

Then we were wrong in saying just now, that being was distributed into the greatest number of parts. For it is not distributed into parts more than the one, but into parts equal to the one ; the one is never wanting to being, or being to the one, but being two they are co-equal and co-extensive.

Certainly that is true.

The one itself, then, having been broken up into parts by being, is many and infinite ?

True.

Then not only the one which has being is many, but the one itself distributed by being, must also be many ?

Certainly.

Further, inasmuch as the parts are parts of a whole, the one, as a whole, will be limited ; for are not the parts contained by the whole ?

Certainly.

And that which contains, is a limit ?

Of course.

Then the one if it has being is one and many, whole and parts, having limits and yet unlimited in number ?

Clearly.

And because having limits, also having extremes ?

Certainly.

And if a whole, having beginning and middle and end. For can anything be a whole without these three ? And if any one of them is wanting to anything, will that any longer be a whole ?

No.

Then the one, as appears, will have beginning, middle, and end.

It will.

But, again, the middle will be equidistant from the extremes ; or it would not be in the middle ?

Yes.

*Parmenides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTOTELIS.

Again, one is in as many places as being, and must therefore be divided into as many parts.

The abstract one, as well as the one which is, is both one and many, finite and infinite.

The one, as being a whole and also finite, has a beginning, middle and end, and



*Par-*  
*menides.*

Then the one will partake of figure, either rectilinear or round, or a union of the two?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

True.

so partakes  
of figure.

And if this is the case, it will be both in itself and in another too.

How?

Regarded  
as the sum  
of its parts,  
it is in  
itself;

Every part is in the whole, and none is outside the whole.

True.

And all the parts are contained by the whole?

Yes.

And the one is all its parts, and neither more nor less than all?

No.

And the one is the whole?

Of course.

But if all the parts are in the whole, and the one is all of them and the whole, and they are all contained by the whole, the one will be contained by the one; and thus the one will be in itself.

That is true.

regarded as  
a whole, it  
is in other,  
because it  
is not in  
the parts,  
neither in  
one, nor  
more than  
one, nor  
in all.

But then, again, the whole is not in the parts—neither in all the parts, nor in some one of them. For if it is in all, it must be in one; for if there were any one in which it was not, it could not be in all the parts; for the part in which it is wanting is one of all, and if the whole is not in this, how can it be in them all?

It cannot.

Nor can the whole be in some of the parts; for if the whole were in some of the parts, the greater would be in the less, which is impossible.

Yes, impossible.

But if the whole is neither in one, nor in more than one, nor in all of the parts, it must be in something else, or cease to be anywhere at all?

Certainly.

If it were nowhere, it would be nothing; but being a whole, and not being in itself, it must be in another.

Very true.

The one then, regarded as a whole, is in another, but

regarded as being all its parts, is in itself; and therefore the one must be itself in itself and also in another.

Certainly.

The one then, being of this nature, is of necessity both at rest and in motion?

How?

The one is at rest since it is in itself, for being in one, and  
146 not passing out of this, it is in the same, which is itself.

True.

And that which is ever in the same, must be ever at rest?

Certainly.

Well, and must not that, on the contrary, which is ever in other, never be in the same; and if never in the same, never at rest, and if not at rest, in motion?

True.

Then the one being always itself in itself and other, must always be both at rest and in motion?

Clearly.

And must be the same with itself, and other than itself; and also the same with the others, and other than the others; this follows from its previous affections.

How so?

Everything in relation to every other thing, is either the same or other; or if neither the same nor other, then in the relation of a part to a whole, or of a whole to a part.

Clearly.

And is the one a part of itself?

Certainly not.

Since it is not a part in relation to itself it cannot be related to itself as whole to part?

It cannot.

But is the one other than one?

No.

And therefore not other than itself?

Certainly not.

If then it be neither other, nor a whole, nor a part in relation to itself, must it not be the same with itself?

Certainly.

But then, again, a thing which is in another place from

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES.  
ARISTO-  
TELS.

The one  
therefore is  
both at  
rest and in  
motion: at  
rest, if in  
itself; in  
motion, if  
in another.

Four pos-  
sible re-  
lations of  
two things:  
(1) same-  
ness, (2)  
otherness,  
(3) part  
and whole,  
(4) whole  
and part.

The one  
stands to  
itself in  
the relation  
of same-  
ness,

*Par-*  
*menides.*

'itself,' if this 'itself' remains in the same place with itself, must be other than 'itself,' for it will be in another place?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

True.

Then the one has been shown to be at once in itself and in another?

Yes.

but, as  
existing in  
another  
place than  
itself, of  
otherness.

Thus, then, as appears, the one will be other than itself?

True.

Well, then, if anything be other than anything, will it not be other than that which is other?

Certainly.

The one is  
proved to  
be also  
other than  
the not-one  
and so  
other than  
other.

And will not all things that are not one, be other than the one, and the one other than the not-one?

Of course.

Then the one will be other than the others?

True.

But, consider :—Are not the absolute same, and the absolute other, opposites to one another?

Of course.

Yet from  
another  
point of  
view neither  
the one nor  
the not-one  
can partake  
of other-  
ness, and  
therefore  
cannot  
be other  
than one  
another.

Then will the same ever be in the other, or the other in the same?

They will not.

If then the other is never in the same, there is nothing in which the other is during any space of time; for during that space of time, however small, the other would be in the same. Is not that true?

Yes.

And since the other is never in the same, it can never be in anything that is.

True.

Then the other will never be either in the not-one, or in the one?

Certainly not.

Then not by reason of otherness is the one other than the not-one, or the not-one other than the one.

No.

Nor by reason of themselves will they be other than one another, if not partaking of the other.

How can they be?

But if they are not other, either by reason of themselves

or of the other, will they not altogether escape being other than one another?

They will.

Again, the not-one cannot partake of the one; otherwise it would not have been not-one, but would have been in some way one.

True.

Nor can the not-one be number; for having number, it would not have been not-one at all.

It would not.

Again, is the not-one part of the one; or rather, would it not in that case partake of the one?

It would.

If then, in every point of view, the one and the not-one are distinct, then neither is the one part or whole of the not-one, nor is the not-one part or whole of the one?

No.

But we said that things which are neither parts nor wholes of one another, nor other than one another, will be the same with one another:—so we said?

Yes.

Then shall we say that the one, being in this relation to the not-one, is the same with it?

Let us say so.

Then it is the same with itself and the others, and also other than itself and the others.

That appears to be the inference.

And it will also be like and unlike itself and the others?

Perhaps.

Since the one was shown to be other than the others, the others will also be other than the one.

Yes.

And the one is other than the others in the same degree that the others are other than it, and neither more nor less?

True.

And if neither more nor less, then in a like degree?

Yes.

In virtue of the affection by which the one is other than others and others in like manner other than it, the one will be affected like the others and the others like the one.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Again,  
the not-one  
cannot par-  
take of the  
one; and  
therefore it  
cannot be  
number;  
and it  
cannot be  
part or  
whole of  
the one;

and there-  
fore, ac-  
cording to  
our former  
table of  
relations,  
the one is  
the same  
with the  
not-one,  
the same  
with and  
also other  
than itself  
and others.  
It is like  
and unlike  
itself and  
other; for  
one and  
other are  
other than  
one an-  
other, yet  
other in  
the same  
degree.

And there-  
fore they are  
affected in  
the same  
manner.

*Par-  
menides.*

How do you mean?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

I may take as an illustration the case of names : You give a name to a thing?

Yes.

For when  
we apply  
the same  
name, we  
imply the  
presence of  
the same  
nature.

And you may say the name once or oftener?

Yes.

And when you say it once, you mention that of which it is the name? and when more than once, is it something else which you mention? or must it always be the same thing of which you speak, whether you utter the name once or more than once?

Of course it is the same.

And is not 'other' a name given to a thing?

Certainly.

Whenever, then, you use the word 'other,' whether once or oftener, you name that of which it is the name, and to no other do you give the name?

True.

Then when we say that the others are other than the one, and the one other than the others, in repeating the word 'other' we speak of that nature to which the name is applied, and of no other?

Quite true.

Then the one which is other than others, and the other which is other than the one, in that the word 'other' is applied to both, will be in the same condition; and that which is in the same condition is like?

Yes.

One, in  
that it is  
other than  
the others,  
is shown to  
be like; and  
therefore,  
in that it is  
the same  
with the  
others, to  
be unlike.

Then in virtue of the affection by which the one is other than the others, every thing will be like every thing, for every thing is other than every thing.

True.

Again, the like is opposed to the unlike?

Yes.

And the other to the same?

True again.

And the one was also shown to be the same with the others?

Yes.

And to be the same with the others is the opposite of being other than the others?

Certainly.

And in that it was other it was shown to be like?

Yes.

*Par-  
menides.*

<sup>2</sup> PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

But in that it was the same it will be unlike by virtue of the opposite affection to that which made it like; and this was the affection of otherness.

Yes.

The same then will make it unlike; otherwise it will not be the opposite of the other.

True.

Then the one will be both like and unlike the others; like in so far as it is other, and unlike in so far as it is the same.

Yes, that argument may be used.

And there is another argument.

What?

In so far as it is affected in the same way it is not affected otherwise, and not being affected otherwise is not unlike, and not being unlike, is like; but in so far as it is affected by other it is otherwise, and being otherwise affected is unlike.

From another point of view the opposite consequences follow.

True.

Then because the one is the same with the others and other than the others, on either of these two grounds, or on both of them, it will be both like and unlike the others?

Certainly.

And in the same way as being other than itself and the same with itself, on either of these two grounds and on both of them, it will be like and unlike itself?

Of course.

Again, how far can the one touch or not touch itself and others?—consider.

I am considering.

The one was shown to be in itself which was a whole?

True.

And also in other things?

Yes.

In so far as it is in other things it would touch other things, but in so far as it is in itself it would be debarred from touching them, and would touch itself only.

Clearly.

Then the inference is that it would touch both?

Again, the one will and will not touch both itself and others.

Being in both, it will touch both.

*Par-  
menides.*

It would.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

But what do you say to a new point of view? Must not that which is to touch another be next to that which it is to touch, and occupy the place nearest to that in which what it touches is situated?

True.

But if con-  
tact implies  
at least two  
separate  
things, one  
cannot  
touch itself,  
—for it  
cannot be  
two;

Then the one, if it is to touch itself, ought to be situated next to itself, and occupy the place next to that in which itself is?

It ought.

And that would require that the one should be two, and be in two places at once, and this, while it is one, will never happen.

No.

Then the one cannot touch itself any more than it can be two?

It cannot.

or other,—  
for 'other'  
cannot be  
'one'  
thing.

Neither can it touch others.

Why not?

The reason is, that whatever is to touch another must be in separation from, and next to, that which it is to touch, and no third thing can be between them.

True.

Two things, then, at the least are necessary to make contact possible?

They are.

And if to the two a third be added in due order, the number of terms will be three, and the contacts two?

Yes.

And every additional term makes one additional contact, whence it follows that the contacts are one less in number than the terms; the first two terms exceeded the number of contacts by one, and the whole number of terms exceeds the whole number of contacts by one in like manner; and for every one which is afterwards added to the number of terms, one contact is added to the contacts.

True.

Whatever is the whole number of things, the contacts will be always one less.

True.

But if there be only one, and not two, there will be no contact ?

How can there be ?

And do we not say that the others being other than the one are not one and have no part in the one ?

True.

Then they have no number, if they have no one in them ?

Of course not.

Then the others are neither one nor two, nor are they called by the name of any number ?

No.

One, then, alone is one, and two do not exist ?

Clearly not.

And if there are not two, there is no contact ?

There is not.

Then neither does the one touch the others, nor the others the one, if there is no contact ?

Certainly not.

For all which reasons the one touches and does not touch itself and the others ?

True.

Further—is the one equal and unequal to itself and others ?

How do you mean ?

If the one were greater or less than the others, or the others greater or less than the one, they would not be greater or less than each other in virtue of their being the one and the others ; but, if in addition to their being what they are they had equality, they would be equal to one another, or if the one had smallness and the others greatness, or the one had greatness and the others smallness—whichever kind had greatness would be greater, and whichever had smallness would be smaller ?

Certainly.

Then there are two such ideas as greatness and smallness ; for if they were not they could not be opposed to each other and be present in that which is.

How could they ?

150 If, then, smallness is present in the one it will be present either in the whole or in a part of the whole ?

Certainly.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

The one is  
equal and  
unequal to  
itself and  
others ;



*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

equal, be-  
cause, not  
partaking  
of greatness  
and small-  
ness, it  
must par-  
take of  
equality to  
itself and  
others :

Suppose the first ; it will be either co-equal and co-extensive with the whole one, or will contain the one ?

Clearly.

If it be co-extensive with the one it will be co-equal with the one, or if containing the one it will be greater than the one ?

Of course.

But can smallness be equal to anything or greater than anything, and have the functions of greatness and equality and not its own functions ?

Impossible.

Then smallness cannot be in the whole of one, but, if at all, in a part only ?

Yes.

And surely not in all of a part, for then the difficulty of the whole will recur ; it will be equal to or greater than any part in which it is.

Certainly.

Then smallness will not be in anything, whether in a whole or in a part ; nor will there be anything small but actual smallness.

True.

Neither will greatness be in the one, for if greatness be in anything there will be something greater other and besides greatness itself, namely, that in which greatness is ; and this too when the small itself is not there, which the one, if it is great, must exceed ; this, however, is impossible, seeing that smallness is wholly absent.

True.

But absolute greatness is only greater than absolute smallness, and smallness is only smaller than absolute greatness.

Very true.

Then other things are not greater or less than the one, if they have neither greatness nor smallness ; nor have greatness or smallness any power of exceeding or being exceeded in relation to the one, but only in relation to one another ; nor will the one be greater or less than them or others, if it has neither greatness nor smallness.

Clearly not.

Then if the one is neither greater nor less than the others, it cannot either exceed or be exceeded by them ?

Certainly not.

And that which neither exceeds nor is exceeded, must be on an equality; and being on an equality, must be equal.

Of course.

And this will be true also of the relation of the one to itself; having neither greatness nor smallness in itself, it will neither exceed nor be exceeded by itself, but will be on an equality with and equal to itself.

Certainly.

Then the one will be equal both to itself and the others ?

Clearly so.

And yet the one, being itself in itself, will also surround and be without itself; and, as containing itself, will be greater  
151 than itself; and, as contained in itself, will be less; and will thus be greater and less than itself.

It will.

Now there cannot possibly be anything which is not included in the one and the others ?

Of course not.

But, surely, that which is must always be somewhere ?

Yes.

But that which is in anything will be less, and that in which it is will be greater; in no other way can one thing be in another.

True.

And since there is nothing other or besides the one and the others, and they must be in something, must they not be in one another, the one in the others and the others in the one, if they are to be anywhere ?

That is clear.

But inasmuch as the one is in the others, the others will be greater than the one, because they contain the one, which will be less than the others, because it is contained in them; and inasmuch as the others are in the one, the one on the same principle will be greater than the others, and the others less than the one.

True.

The one, then, will be equal to and greater and less than itself and the others ?

*Parmenides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTOTELIS.

Unequal to itself,—because it contains and is contained in itself, and is therefore greater and less than itself.

Unequal to others,—because it contains and is contained in them, and is therefore greater and less than them.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Clearly.

And if it be greater and less and equal, it will be of equal and more and less measures or divisions than itself and the others, and if of measures, also of parts?

Of course.

That which is equal and unequal to itself and others, must be of a number of divisions or parts equal and unequal to itself and others.

And if of equal and more and less measures or divisions, it will be in number more or less than itself and the others, and likewise equal in number to itself and to the others?

How is that?

It will be of more measures than those things which it exceeds, and of as many parts as measures; and so with that to which it is equal, and that than which it is less.

True.

And being greater and less than itself, and equal to itself, it will be of equal measures with itself and of more and fewer measures than itself; and if of measures then also of parts?

It will.

And being of equal parts with itself, it will be numerically equal to itself; and being of more parts, more, and being of less, less than itself?

Certainly.

And the same will hold of its relation to other things; inasmuch as it is greater than them, it will be more in number than them; and inasmuch as it is smaller, it will be less in number; and inasmuch as it is equal in size to other things, it will be equal to them in number.

Certainly.

Once more, then, as would appear, the one will be in number both equal to and more and less than both itself and all other things.

It will.

Does one partake of time and become older and younger, and neither older nor younger than itself and others?

Does the one also partake of time? And is it and does it become older and younger than itself and others, and again, neither younger nor older than itself and others, by virtue of participation in time?

How do you mean?

If one is, being must be predicated of it?

Yes.

But to be (*εἶναι*) is only participation of being in present  
152 time, and to have been is the participation of being at a past  
time, and to be about to be is the participation of being at a  
future time?

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Very true.

Then the one, since it partakes of being, partakes of time?

Certainly.

And is not time always moving forward?

Yes.

Then the one is always becoming older than itself, since it  
moves forward in time?

Certainly.

And do you remember that the older becomes older than  
that which becomes younger?

I remember.

Then since the one becomes older than itself, it becomes  
younger at the same time?

Certainly.

Thus, then, the one becomes older as well as younger than  
itself?

Yes.

And it is older (is it not?) when in becoming, it gets to the  
point of time between 'was' and 'will be,' which is 'now':  
for surely in going from the past to the future, it cannot skip  
the present?

No.

And when it arrives at the present it stops from becoming  
older, and no longer becomes, but is older, for if it went on  
it would never be reached by the present, for it is the nature  
of that which goes on, to touch both the present and the  
future, letting go the present and seizing the future, while in  
process of becoming between them.

True.

But that which is becoming cannot skip the present; when  
it reaches the present it ceases to become, and is then what-  
ever it may happen to be becoming.

Clearly.

And so the one, when in becoming older it reaches the  
present, ceases to become, and is then older.

Certainly.

The one is,  
and there-  
fore par-  
takes of  
time; and  
since time  
is always  
moving  
forward, it  
becomes  
older than  
itself.

But older  
and younger  
are relative  
terms, and  
therefore  
that which  
becomes  
older than  
itself must  
become also  
younger  
than itself.

One  
becomes  
older until  
it reaches  
the now or  
present;  
then it  
ceases to  
become and  
is older;

*Par-  
menides.*

And it is older than that than which it was becoming older,  
and it was becoming older than itself.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Yes.

and also  
younger.

And that which is older is older than that which is  
younger?

True.

It always  
is and  
becomes  
older and  
younger  
than itself;

Then the one is younger than itself, when in becoming  
older it reaches the present?

Certainly.

But the present is always present with the one during all  
its being; for whenever it is it is always now.

Certainly.

Then the one always both is and becomes older and  
younger than itself?

Truly.

and since it  
is and be-  
comes  
during the  
same time  
with itself is  
of the same  
age, and  
therefore  
neither  
older nor  
younger  
than itself.

And is it or does it become a longer time than itself or  
an equal time with itself?

An equal time.

But if it becomes or is for an equal time with itself, it is  
of the same age with itself?

Of course.

And that which is of the same age, is neither older nor  
younger?

No.

Is the one  
younger or  
older than  
other  
things?  
The less  
comes into  
being  
before the  
greater:  
the one is  
less than  
the many  
or others,  
and there-  
fore comes  
into being  
before them  
and is older  
than they.

The one, then, becoming and being the same time with  
itself, neither is nor becomes older or younger than itself? 153

I should say not.

And what are its relations to other things? Is it or does  
it become older or younger than they?

I cannot tell you.

You can at least tell me that others than the one are more  
than the one—other would have been one, but the others  
have multitude, and are more than one?

They will have multitude.

And a multitude implies a number larger than one?

Of course.

And shall we say that the lesser or the greater is the first  
to come or to have come into existence?

The lesser.

Then the least is the first? And that is the one?

Yes.

Then the one of all things that have number is the first to come into being ; but all other things have also number, being plural and not singular.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES.  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

They have.

And since it came into being first it must be supposed to have come into being prior to the others, and the others later ; and the things which came into being later, are younger than that which preceded them ? And so the other things will be younger than the one, and the one older than other things ?

True.

What would you say of another question ? Can the one have come into being contrary to its own nature, or is that impossible ?

Impossible.

And yet, surely, the one was shown to have parts ; and if parts, then a beginning, middle and end ?

Yes.

And a beginning, both of the one itself and of all other things, comes into being first of all ; and after the beginning, the others follow, until you reach the end ?

The one  
has parts  
and comes  
into being  
with the  
last of  
them :

Certainly.

And all these others we shall affirm to be parts of the whole and of the one, which, as soon as the end is reached, has become whole and one ?

Yes ; that is what we shall say.

But the end comes last, and the one is of such a nature as to come into being with the last ; and, since the one cannot come into being except in accordance with its own nature, its nature will require that it should come into being after the others, simultaneously with the end.

and there-  
fore it is  
younger  
than the  
others.  
But again,  
each part  
is one,

Clearly.

Then the one is younger than the others and the others older than the one.

That also is clear in my judgment.

Well, and must not a beginning or any other part of the one or of anything, if it be a part and not parts, being a part, be also of necessity one ?

Certainly.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

and one  
comes into  
being  
together  
with each  
part, and  
so the one  
is neither  
older nor  
younger  
than the  
others but  
coeval.

Again, no-  
thing can  
become  
older or  
younger  
than it was  
at first in  
relation to  
something  
else, if an  
equal  
amount of  
time be  
added to  
both.  
This is true  
of the one  
and the  
other.

And will not the one come into being together with each part—together with the first part when that comes into being, and together with the second part and with all the rest, and will not be wanting to any part, which is added to any other part until it has reached the last and become one whole ; it will be wanting neither to the middle, nor to the first, nor to the last, nor to any of them, while the process of becoming is going on ?

True.

Then the one is of the same age with all the others, so that if the one itself does not contradict its own nature, it will be neither prior nor posterior to the others, but simultaneous ; and according to this argument the one will be neither older 154 nor younger than the others, nor the others than the one, but according to the previous argument the one will be older and younger than the others and the others than the one.

Certainly.

After this manner then the one is and has become. But as to its becoming older and younger than the others, and the others than the one, and neither older nor younger, what shall we say ? Shall we say as of being so also of becoming, or otherwise ?

I cannot answer.

But I can venture to say, that even if one thing were older or younger than another, it could not become older or younger in a greater degree than it was at first ; for equals added to unequals, whether to periods of time or to anything else, leave the difference between them the same as at first.

Of course.

Then that which is, cannot become older or younger than that which is, since the difference of age is always the same ; the one is and has become older and the other younger ; but they are no longer becoming so.

True.

And the one which is does not therefore become either older or younger than the others which are.

No.

But consider whether they may not become older and younger in another way.

In what way ?

Just as the one was proven to be older than the others and the others than the one.

And what of that ?

If the one is older than the others, it has come into being a longer time than the others.

Yes.

But consider again ; if we add equal time to a greater and a less time, will the greater differ from the less time by an equal or by a smaller portion than before ?

By a smaller portion.

Then the difference between the age of the one and the age of the others will not be afterwards so great as at first, but if an equal time be added to both of them they will differ less and less in age ?

Yes.

And that which differs in age from some other less than formerly, from being older will become younger in relation to that other than which it was older ?

Yes, younger.

And if the one becomes younger the others aforesaid will become older than they were before, in relation to the one.

Certainly.

Then that which had become younger becomes older relatively to that which previously had become and was older ;  
 155 it never really is older, but is always becoming, for the one is always growing on the side of youth and the other on the side of age. And in like manner the older is always in process of becoming younger than the younger ; for as they are always going in opposite directions they become in ways the opposite to one another, the younger older than the older, and the older younger than the younger. They cannot, however, have become ; for if they had already become they would be and not merely become. But that is impossible ; for they are always becoming both older and younger than one another : the one becomes younger than the others because it was seen to be older and prior, and the others become older than the one because they came into being later ; and in the same way the others are in the same relation to the one, because they were seen to be older and prior to the one.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

But if an equal time be added to a greater and less, the relative difference between them diminishes ; and so the one, which is older, will by such addition become younger than the others, and they in turn older than it.



*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

That is clear.

Inasmuch then, as one thing does not become older or younger than another, in that they always differ from each other by an equal number, the one cannot become older or younger than the others, nor the others than the one; but inasmuch as that which came into being earlier and that which came into being later must continually differ from each other by a different portion—in this point of view the others must become older and younger than the one, and the one than the others.

Certainly.

For all these reasons, then, the one is and becomes older and younger than itself and the others, and neither is nor becomes older or younger than itself or the others.

Certainly.

But since the one partakes of time, and partakes of becoming older and younger, must it not also partake of the past, the present, and the future?

Of course it must.

Then the one was and is and will be, and was becoming and is becoming and will become?

Certainly.

And there is and was and will be something which is in relation to it and belongs to it?

True.

And since we have at this moment opinion and knowledge and perception of the one, there is opinion and knowledge and perception of it?

Quite right.

Then there is name and expression for it, and it is named and expressed, and everything of this kind which appertains to other things appertains to the one.

Certainly, that is true.

Opposites  
cannot be  
predicated  
of the same  
thing at the  
same time.

Yet once more and for the third time, let us consider: If the one is both one and many, as we have described, and is neither one nor many, and participates in time, must it not, in as far as it is one, at times partake of being, and in as far as it is not one, at times not partake of being?

Certainly.

But can it partake of being when not partaking of being, or not partake of being when partaking of being?

Impossible.

Then the one partakes and does not partake of being at different times, for that is the only way in which it can partake and not partake of the same.

True.

156 And is there not also a time at which it assumes being and relinquishes being—for how can it have and not have the same thing unless it receives and also gives it up at some time?

Impossible.

And the assuming of being is what you would call becoming?

I should.

And the relinquishing of being you would call destruction?

I should.

The one then, as would appear, becomes and is destroyed by taking and giving up being.

Certainly.

And being one and many and in process of becoming and being destroyed, when it becomes one it ceases to be many, and when many, it ceases to be one?

Certainly.

And as it becomes one and many, must it not inevitably experience separation and aggregation?

Inevitably.

And whenever it becomes like and unlike it must be assimilated and dissimilated?

Yes.

And when it becomes greater or less or equal it must grow or diminish or be equalized?

True.

And when being in motion it rests, and when being at rest it changes to motion, it can surely be in no time at all?

How can it?

But that a thing which is previously at rest should be afterwards in motion, or previously in motion and afterwards at rest, without experiencing change, is impossible.

Impossible.

*Parmenides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

The one must therefore partake of being and not-being and assume and relinquish them at different times.

How does the change take place?

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

And surely there cannot be a time in which a thing can be at once neither in motion nor at rest?

There cannot.

But neither can it change without changing.

True.

When then does it change; for it cannot change either when at rest, or when in motion, or when in time?

It cannot.

And does this strange thing in which it is at the time of changing really exist?

What thing?

The moment. For the moment seems to imply a something out of which change takes place into either of two states; for the change is not from the state of rest as such, nor from the state of motion as such; but there is this curious nature which we call the moment lying between rest and motion, not being in any time; and into this and out of this what is in motion changes into rest, and what is at rest into motion.

So it appears.

And the one then, since it is at rest and also in motion, will change to either, for only in this way can it be in both. And in changing it changes in a moment, and when it is changing it will be in no time, and will not then be either in motion or at rest.

It will not.

And it will be in the same case in relation to the other 157 changes, when it passes from being into cessation of being, or from not-being into becoming—then it passes between certain states of motion and rest, and neither is nor is not, nor becomes nor is destroyed.

Very true.

And on the same principle, in the passage from one to many and from many to one, the one is neither one nor many, neither separated nor aggregated; and in the passage from like to unlike, and from unlike to like, it is neither like nor unlike, neither in a state of assimilation nor of dissimilation; and in the passage from small to great and equal and back again, it will be neither small nor great, nor equal, nor in a state of increase, or diminution, or equalization.

As the one is always partaking of one of two opposites, the transition takes place in a moment.

Nature of the moment.

True.

*Par-  
menides.*

All these, then, are the affections of the one, if the one has being.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Of course.

i. aa. But if one is, what will happen to the others—is not that also to be considered?

The  
affections  
of the  
others, if  
the one is.

Yes.

Let us show then, if one is, what will be the affections of the others than the one.

Let us do so.

Inasmuch as there are things other than the one, the others are not the one; for if they were they could not be other than the one.

Things  
other than  
one are  
not the one,  
and yet  
they partici-  
pate in  
the one;  
for the  
others are  
parts of a  
whole  
which is  
one.

Very true.

Nor are the others altogether without the one, but in a certain way they participate in the one.

In what way?

Because the others are other than the one inasmuch as they have parts; for if they had no parts they would be simply one.

Right.

And parts, as we affirm, have relation to a whole?

So we say.

And a whole must necessarily be one made up of many; and the parts will be parts of the one, for each of the parts is not a part of many, but of a whole.

How do you mean?

If anything were a part of many, being itself one of them, it will surely be a part of itself, which is impossible, and it will be a part of each one of the other parts, if of all; for if not a part of some one, it will be a part of all the others but this one, and thus will not be a part of each one; and if not a part of each one, it will not be a part of any one of the many; and not being a part of any one, it cannot be a part or anything else of all those things of none of which it is anything.

Clearly not.

Then the part is not a part of the many, nor of all, but is of a certain single form, which we call a whole, being one

*Par-  
menides.*PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.Again, each  
part is not  
only a part  
but also a  
perfect  
whole in  
itself.

perfect unity framed out of all—of this the part will be a part.

Certainly.

If, then, the others have parts, they will participate in the whole and in the one.

True.

Then the others than the one must be one perfect whole, having parts.

Certainly.

And the same argument holds of each part, for the part must participate in the one; for if each of the parts is a part, 158 this means, I suppose, that it is one separate from the rest and self-related; otherwise it is not each.

True.

But when we speak of the part participating in the one, it must clearly be other than one; for if not, it would not merely have participated, but would have been one; whereas only the one itself can be one.

Very true.

The whole  
and the  
part are  
both one,  
and there-  
fore they  
must par-  
ticipate in  
the one  
and be  
other than  
the one,  
and more  
than one  
and infinite  
in number.

Both the whole and the part must participate in the one; for the whole will be one whole, of which the parts will be parts; and each part will be one part of the whole which is the whole of the part.

True.

And will not the things which participate in the one, be other than it?

Of course.

And the things which are other than the one will be many; for if the things which are other than the one were neither one nor more than one, they would be nothing.

True.

But, seeing that the things which participate in the one as a part, and in the one as a whole, are more than one, must not those very things which participate in the one be infinite in number?

How so?

Let us look at the matter thus:—Is it not a fact that in partaking of the one they are not one, and do not partake of the one at the very time when they are partaking of it?

Clearly.

They do so then as multitudes in which the one is not present ?

Very true.

And if we were to abstract from them in idea the very smallest fraction, must not that least fraction, if it does not partake of the one, be a multitude and not one ?

It must.

And if we continue to look at the other side of their nature, regarded simply, and in itself, will not they, as far as we see them, be unlimited in number ?

Certainly.

And yet, when each several part becomes a part, then the parts have a limit in relation to the whole and to each other, and the whole in relation to the parts.

Just so.

The result to the others than the one is that the union of themselves and the one appears to create a new element in them which gives to them limitation in relation to one another ; whereas in their own nature they have no limit.

That is clear.

Then the others than the one, both as whole and parts, are infinite, and also partake of limit.

Certainly.

Then they are both like and unlike one another and themselves.

How is that ?

Inasmuch as they are unlimited in their own nature, they are all affected in the same way.

True.

And inasmuch as they all partake of limit, they are all affected in the same way.

Of course.

But inasmuch as their state is both limited and unlimited, they are affected in opposite ways.

Yes.

159 And opposites are the most unlike of things.

Certainly.

Considered, then, in regard to either one of their affections, they will be like themselves and one another ; considered in

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES,

The others  
unlimited  
and also  
limited in  
their  
nature,

both as  
whole and  
parts.

Wherefore  
also they  
are like  
and unlike.

*Par-  
menides.*PARMENIDFS,  
ARISTO-  
TFLFS.

reference to both of them together, most opposed and most unlike.

That appears to be true.

Then the others are both like and unlike themselves and one another?

True.

And they are the same and also different from one another, and in motion and at rest, and experience every sort of opposite affection, as may be proved without difficulty of them, since they have been shown to have experienced the affections aforesaid?

True.

A reversal  
of former  
conclu-  
sions.

i. bb. Suppose, now, that we leave the further discussion of these matters as evident, and consider again upon the hypothesis that the one is, whether the opposite of all this is or is not equally true of the others.

By all means.

Then let us begin again, and ask, If one is, what must be the affections of the others?

Let us ask that question.

Must not the one be distinct from the others, and the others from the one?

Why so?

Why, because there is nothing else beside them which is distinct from both of them; for the expression 'one and the others' includes all things.

Yes, all things.

Then we cannot suppose that there is anything different from them in which both the one and the others might exist?

There is nothing.

Then the one and the others are never in the same?

True.

Then they are separated from each other?

Yes.

And we surely cannot say that what is truly one has parts? Impossible.

Then the one will not be in the others as a whole, nor as part, if it be separated from the others, and has no parts?

Impossible.

One and the others are never in the same, for there is nothing outside them in which they can jointly partake, and therefore they must be always distinct.

Then there is no way in which the others can partake of the one, if they do not partake either in whole or in part?

It would seem not.

Then there is no way in which the others are one, or have in themselves any unity?

There is not.

Nor are the others many; for if they were many, each part of them would be a part of the whole; but now the others, not partaking in any way of the one, are neither one nor many, nor whole, nor part.

True.

Then the others neither are nor contain two or three, if entirely deprived of the one?

True.

Then the others are neither like nor unlike the one, nor is likeness and unlikeness in them; for if they were like and unlike, or had in them likeness and unlikeness, they would have two natures in them opposite to one another.

That is clear.

But for that which partakes of nothing to partake of two things was held by us to be impossible?

Impossible.

- 160 Then the others are neither like nor unlike nor both, for if they were like or unlike they would partake of one of those two natures, which would be one thing, and if they were both they would partake of opposites which would be two things, and this has been shown to be impossible.

True.

Therefore they are neither the same, nor other, nor in motion, nor at rest, nor in a state of becoming, nor of being destroyed, nor greater, nor less, nor equal, nor have they experienced anything else of the sort; for, if they are capable of experiencing any such affection, they will participate in one and two and three, and odd and even, and in these, as has been proved, they do not participate, seeing that they are altogether and in every way devoid of the one.

Very true.

Therefore if one is, the one is all things, and also nothing, both in relation to itself and to other things.

Certainly.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

PARVENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

And the  
others  
being  
separated  
from the  
one cannot  
be either  
one or  
many.

Nor can  
they be  
opposites;  
for they  
cannot  
partake of  
two things if  
they cannot  
partake  
of one.

The others  
without the  
one = 0.

The one is  
all things;  
but also  
nothing  
(141 E,  
142).



*Parmenides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTOTELIS.

If the one  
is not, what  
then?

ii. a. Well, and ought we not to consider next what will be the consequence if the one is not?

Yes; we ought.

What is the meaning of the hypothesis—If the one is not; is there any difference between this and the hypothesis—If the not one is not?

There is a difference, certainly.

Is there a difference only, or rather are not the two expressions—if the one is not, and if the not one is not, entirely opposed?

They are entirely opposed.

And suppose a person to say:—If greatness is not, if smallness is not, or anything of that sort, does he not mean, whenever he uses such an expression, that 'what is not' is other than other things?

To be sure.

What is the  
meaning of  
'the one  
which is  
not'?

And so when he says 'If one is not' he clearly means, that what 'is not' is other than all others; we know what he means—do we not?

Yes, we do.

It some-  
times means  
other than  
or different  
from other  
things;  
and there-  
fore has  
difference,  
etc.

When he says 'one,' he says something which is known; and secondly something which is other than all other things; it makes no difference whether he predicate of one being or not-being, for that which is said 'not to be' is known to be something all the same, and is distinguished from other things.

Certainly.

Then I will begin again, and ask: If one is not, what are the consequences? In the first place, as would appear, there is a knowledge of it, or the very meaning of the words, 'if one is not,' would not be known.

True.

Secondly, the others differ from it, or it could not be described as different from the others?

Certainly.

Difference, then, belongs to it as well as knowledge; for in speaking of the one as different from the others, we do not speak of a difference in the others, but in the one.

Clearly so.

Moreover, the one that is not is something and partakes of relation to 'that,' and 'this,' and 'these,' and the like, and is an

attribute of 'this'; for the one, or the others than the one, could not have been spoken of, nor could any attribute or relative of the one that is not have been or been spoken of, nor could it have been said to be anything, if it did not partake of 'some,' or of the other relations just now mentioned.

True.

Being, then, cannot be ascribed to the one, since it is not ;  
161 but the one that is not may or rather must participate in many things, if it and nothing else is not ; if, however, neither the one nor the one that is not is supposed not to be, and we are speaking of something of a different nature, we can predicate nothing of it. But supposing that the one that is not and nothing else is not, then it must participate in the predicate 'that,' and in many others.

Certainly.

And it will have unlikeness in relation to the others, for the others being different from the one will be of a different kind.

Certainly.

And are not things of a different kind also other in kind ?

Of course.

And are not things other in kind unlike ?

They are unlike.

And if they are unlike the one, that which they are unlike will clearly be unlike them ?

Clearly so.

Then the one will have unlikeness in respect of which the others are unlike it ?

That would seem to be true.

And if unlikeness to other things is attributed to it, it must have likeness to itself.

How so ?

If the one have unlikeness to one, something else must be meant ; nor will the hypothesis relate to one ; but it will relate to something other than one ?

Quite so.

But that cannot be.

No.

Then the one must have likeness to itself ?

It must.

*Par-*  
*menides.*  
PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

It is unlike  
the others,  
and must  
therefore  
have like-  
ness to  
itself.

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES.  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

The one  
which is  
not is  
unequal to  
the others  
and the  
others  
to it.

But partak-  
ing of in-  
equality, it  
partakes  
also of  
greatness  
and small-  
ness, and  
therefore  
of equality  
which lies  
between  
them ;

it must  
surely par-  
take of  
being in a  
sense ;

Again, it is not equal to the others ; for if it were equal, then it would at once be and be like them in virtue of the equality ; but if one has no being, then it can neither be nor be like ?

It cannot.

But since it is not equal to the others, neither can the others be equal to it ?

Certainly not.

And things that are not equal are unequal ?

True.

And they are unequal to an unequal ?

Of course.

Then the one partakes of inequality, and in respect of this the others are unequal to it ?

Very true.

And inequality implies greatness and smallness ?

Yes.

Then the one, if of such a nature, has greatness and smallness ?

That appears to be true.

And greatness and smallness always stand apart ?

True.

Then there is always something between them ?

There is.

And can you think of anything else which is between them other than equality ?

No, it is equality which lies between them.

Then that which has greatness and smallness also has equality, which lies between them ?

That is clear.

Then the one, which is not, partakes, as would appear, of greatness and smallness and equality ?

Clearly.

Further, it must surely in a sort partake of being ?

How so ?

It must be so, for if not, then we should not speak the truth in saying that the one is not. But if we speak the truth, clearly we must say what is. Am I not right ?

Yes.

And since we affirm that we speak truly, we must also affirm that we say what is ?

Certainly.

Then, as would appear, the one, when it is not, is; for if it were not to be when it is not, but<sup>1</sup> were to relinquish something of being, so as to become not-being, it would at once be.

Quite true.

Then the one which is not, if it is to maintain itself, must have the being of not-being as the bond of not-being, just as being must have as a bond the not-being of not-being in order to perfect its own being; for the truest assertion of the being of being and of the not-being of not-being is when being partakes of the being of being, and not of the being of not-being—that is, the perfection of being; and when not-being does not partake of the not-being of not-being but of the being of not-being—that is the perfection of not-being.

Most true.

Since then what is partakes of not-being, and what is not of being, must not the one also partake of being in order not to be?

Certainly.

Then the one, if it is not, clearly has being?

Clearly.

And has not-being also, if it is not?

Of course.

But can anything which is in a certain state not be in that state without changing?

Impossible.

Then everything which is and is not in a certain state, implies change?

Certainly.

And change is motion—we may say that?

Yes, motion.

And the one has been proved both to be and not to be?

Yes.

And therefore is and is not in the same state?

Yes.

Thus the one that is not has been shown to have motion also, because it changes from being to not-being?

*Par-  
menides.*

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

for not-  
being im-  
plies being  
and being  
implies not-  
being.

But to be  
both, it  
must  
change  
from one  
to the  
other, and  
therefore be  
in motion.

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'to remit something of existence in relation to not-being.'

*Par-  
menides.*

That appears to be true.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

But surely if it is nowhere among what is, as is the fact, since it is not, it cannot change from one place to another?

Impossible.

How can  
it change?  
Not (a) by  
change of  
place, nor  
(b) by re-  
volving in  
the same  
place,

Then it cannot move by changing place?

No.

Nor can it turn on the same spot, for it nowhere touches the same, for the same is, and that which is not cannot be reckoned among things that are?

It cannot.

Then the one, if it is not, cannot turn in that in which it is not?

No.

nor (c) by  
change of  
nature.

Neither can the one, whether it is or is not, be altered into other than itself, for if it altered and became different from itself, then we could not be still speaking of the one, but of something else?

True.

It is there-  
fore un-  
moved;

But if the one neither suffers alteration, nor turns round in the same place, nor changes place, can it still be capable of motion?

Impossible.

and being  
unmoved,  
it must be  
at rest.

Now that which is unmoved must surely be at rest, and that which is at rest must stand still?

Certainly.

Then the one that is not, stands still, and is also in motion?

That seems to be true.

But motion  
implies  
alteration.

But if it be in motion it must necessarily undergo alteration, for anything which is moved, in so far as it is moved, is 163 no longer in the same state, but in another?

Yes.

Then the one, being moved, is altered?

Yes.

And, further, if not moved in any way, it will not be altered in any way?

No.

Then, in so far as the one that is not is moved, it is altered, but in so far as it is not moved, it is not altered?

Right.

Then the one that is not is altered and is not altered?

That is clear.

*Par-  
menides.*

And must not that which is altered become other than it previously was, and lose its former state and be destroyed; but that which is not altered can neither come into being nor be destroyed?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Very true.

The one  
that is not  
becomes  
and is  
destroyed,  
and neither  
becomes  
nor is  
destroyed

And the one that is not, being altered, becomes and is destroyed; and not being altered, neither becomes nor is destroyed; and so the one that is not becomes and is destroyed, and neither becomes nor is destroyed?

True.

ii. b. And now, let us go back once more to the beginning, and see whether these or some other consequences will follow.

Let us do as you say.

If one is not, we ask what will happen in respect of one? That is the question.

If one is  
not, what  
then?

Yes.

Do not the words 'is not' signify absence of being in that to which we apply them?

'Is not'  
implies  
absence of  
being in the  
most abso-  
lute sense.

Just so.

And when we say that a thing is not, do we mean that it is not in one way but is in another? or do we mean, absolutely, that what is not has in no sort or way or kind participation of being?

Quite absolutely.

Then, that which is not cannot be, or in any way participate in being?

It cannot.

And did we not mean by becoming, and being destroyed, the assumption of being and the loss of being?

Nothing else.

And can that which has no participation in being, either assume or lose being?

The one  
which is  
not cannot  
either have  
or lose or  
assume  
being,

Impossible.

The one then, since it in no way is, cannot have or lose or assume being in any way?

True.

Then the one that is not, since it in no way partakes of being, neither perishes nor becomes?

*Par-  
menides.*

No.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Then it is not altered at all ; for if it were it would become and be destroyed ?

True.

nor be  
altered  
nor be in  
motion,  
nor yet at  
rest.

But if it be not altered it cannot be moved ?

Certainly not.

Nor can we say that it stands, if it is nowhere ; for that which stands must always be in one and the same spot ?

Of course.

Then we must say that the one which is not never stands still and never moves ?

Neither.

It has no  
attributes  
and no  
conditions  
of any  
kind.

Nor is there any existing thing which can be attributed to it ; for if there had been, it would partake of being ?

164

That is clear.

And therefore neither smallness, nor greatness, nor equality, can be attributed to it ?

No.

Nor yet likeness nor difference, either in relation to itself or to others ?

Clearly not.

Well, and if nothing should be attributed to it, can other things be attributed to it ?

Certainly not.

And therefore other things can neither be like or unlike, the same, or different in relation to it ?

They cannot.

Nor can what is not, be anything, or be this thing, or be related to or the attribute of this or that or other, or be past, present, or future. Nor can knowledge, or opinion, or perception, or expression, or name, or any other thing that is, have any concern with it ?

No.

Then the one that is not has no condition of any kind ?

Such appears to be the conclusion.

Again, If  
one is not,  
what  
happens to  
the others ?

ii. aa. Yet once more ; if one is not, what becomes of the others ? Let us determine that.

Yes ; let us determine that.

The others must surely be ; for if they, like the one, were not, we could not be now speaking of them.

*Par-  
menides.*

True.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

But to speak of the others implies difference—the terms 'other' and 'different' are synonymous ?

True.

Other means other than other, and different, different from the different ?

Other implies difference ; it cannot mean other than the one ; and therefore the others are other than each other,

Yes.

Then, if there are to be others, there is something than which they will be other ?

Certainly.

And what can that be ?—for if the one is not, they will not be other than the one.

They will not.

Then they will be other than each other ; for the only remaining alternative is that they are other than nothing.

True.

And they are each other than one another, as being plural and not singular ; for if one is not, they cannot be singular, but every particle of them is infinite in number ; and even if a person takes that which appears to be the smallest fraction, this, which seemed one, in a moment evanesces into many, as in a dream, and from being the smallest becomes very great, in comparison with the fractions into which it is split up ?

and each of them, though devoid of the one, appears to be one.

Very true.

And in such particles the others will be other than one another, if others are, and the one is not ?

Exactly.

And will there not be many particles, each appearing to be one, but not being one, if one is not ?

True.

And it would seem that number can be predicated of them if each of them appears to be one, though it is really many ?

It can.

And there will seem to be odd and even among them, which will also have no reality, if one is not ?

Yes.

And there will appear to be a least among them ; and even



*Par-  
menides.*

this will seem large and manifold in comparison with the 165  
many small fractions which are contained in it ?

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

Certainly.

And each particle will be imagined to be equal to the many  
and little ; for it could not have appeared to pass from the  
greater to the less without having appeared to arrive at the  
middle ; and thus would arise the appearance of equality.

Yes.

And having neither beginning, middle, nor end, each  
separate particle yet appears to have a limit in relation to  
itself and other.

How so ?

Because, when a person conceives of any one of these as  
such, prior to the beginning another beginning appears, and  
there is another end, remaining after the end, and in the  
middle truer middles within but smaller, because no unity can  
be conceived of any of them, since the one is not.

Very true.

And so all being, whatever we think of, must be broken up  
into fractions, for a particle will have to be conceived of  
without unity ?

Certainly.

When seen  
at a  
distance  
the others  
appear to  
be one ;  
when near,  
many and  
infinite.

And such being when seen indistinctly and at a distance,  
appears to be one ; but when seen near and with keen intel-  
lect, every single thing appears to be infinite, since it is  
deprived of the one, which is not ?

Nothing more certain.

Then each of the others must appear to be infinite and  
finite, and one and many, if others than the one exist and not  
the one.

They must.

Then will they not appear to be like and unlike ?

In what way ?

Just as in a picture things appear to be all one to a person  
standing at a distance, and to be in the same state and alike ?

True.

But when you approach them, they appear to be many  
and different ; and because of the appearance of the differ-  
ence, different in kind from, and unlike, themselves ?

True.

And so must the particles appear to be like and unlike themselves and each other.

*Par-*  
*menides.*

Certainly.

PARMENIDES,  
ARISTO-  
TELES.

And must they not be the same and yet different from one another, and in contact with themselves, although they are separated, and having every sort of motion, and every sort of rest, and becoming and being destroyed, and in neither state, and the like, all which things may be easily enumerated, if the one is not and the many are ?

Most true.

ii. bb. Once more, let us go back to the beginning, and ask if the one is not, and the others of the one are, what will follow.

If one is  
not and  
the others  
are, what  
then? The  
others are  
not one  
and there-  
fore not  
many.

Let us ask that question.

In the first place, the others will not be one ?

Impossible.

Nor will they be many; for if they were many one would be contained in them. But if no one of them is one, all of them are nought, and therefore they will not be many.

True.

If there be no one in the others, the others are neither many nor one.

166 They are not.

Nor do they appear either as one or many.

Why not ?

Because the others have no sort or manner or way of communion with any sort of not-being, nor can anything which is not, be connected with any of the others ; for that which is not has no parts.

Again, if  
the others  
appear to  
be one or  
many they  
must in  
some sense  
partake of  
not-being ;  
but this is  
not the  
case.

True.

Nor is there an opinion or any appearance of not-being in connexion with the others, nor is not-being ever in any way attributed to the others.

No.

Then if one is not, there is no conception of any of the others either as one or many ; for you cannot conceive the many without the one.

You cannot.

*Par-  
menides.* Then if one is not, the others neither are, nor can be conceived to be either one or many?

PARMENIDES. It would seem not.

ARISTO-  
TELES. Nor as like or unlike?

No.

Nor are they like or unlike, the same or different. Nor as the same or different, nor in contact or separation, nor in any of those states which we enumerated as appearing to be ;—the others neither are nor appear to be any of these, if one is not?

True.

Then may we not sum up the argument in a word and say truly : If one is not, then nothing is?

Certainly.

Let thus much be said ; and further let us affirm what seems to be the truth, that, whether one is or is not, one and the others in relation to themselves and one another, all of them, in every way, are and are not, and appear to be and appear not to be.

Most true.

## THEAETETUS.



## INTRODUCTION AND ANALYSIS.

SOME dialogues of Plato are of so various a character that their relation to the other dialogues cannot be determined with any degree of certainty. The *Theaetetus*, like the *Parmenides*, has points of similarity both with his earlier and his later writings. The perfection of style, the humour, the dramatic interest, the complexity of structure, the fertility of illustration, the shifting of the points of view, are characteristic of his best period of authorship. The vain search, the negative conclusion, the figure of the midwives, the constant profession of ignorance on the part of Socrates, also bear the stamp of the early dialogues, in which the original Socrates is not yet Platonized. Had we no other indications, we should be disposed to range the *Theaetetus* with the *Apology* and the *Phaedrus*, and perhaps even with the *Protagoras* and the *Laches*.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

But when we pass from the style to an examination of the subject, we trace a connexion with the later rather than with the earlier dialogues. In the first place there is the connexion, indicated by Plato himself at the end of the dialogue, with the *Sophist*, to which in many respects the *Theaetetus* is so little akin. (1) The same persons reappear, including the younger Socrates, whose name is just mentioned in the *Theaetetus* (147 C); (2) the theory of rest, which at p. 133 D Socrates has declined to consider, is resumed by the Eleatic Stranger; (3) there is a similar allusion in both dialogues to the meeting of *Parmenides* and Socrates (*Theaet.* 183 E, *Soph.* 217); and (4) the inquiry into not-being in the *Sophist* supplements the question of false opinion which is raised in the *Theaetetus*. (Compare also *Theaet.* 168 A, 210, and *Soph.* 230 B; *Theaet.* 174 D, E, and *Soph.* 227 A; *Theaet.* 188 E, and *Soph.* 237 D; *Theaet.* 179 A, and *Soph.* 233 B; *Theaet.* 172 D, *Soph.* 253 C, for parallel turns of thought.) Secondly, the later date of the

*Theaetetus.* dialogue is confirmed by the absence of the doctrine of recollection and of any doctrine of ideas except that which derives them from generalization and from reflection of the mind upon itself. The general character of the *Theaetetus* is dialectical, and there are traces of the same Megarian influences which appear in the *Parmenides*, and which later writers, in their matter of fact way, have explained by the residence of Plato at Megara. Socrates disclaims the character of a professional eristic (164 C), and also, with a sort of ironical admiration, expresses his inability to attain the Megarian precision in the use of terms (197 A). Yet he too employs a similar sophistical skill in overturning every conceivable theory of knowledge.

INTRODUCTORY.

The direct indications of a date amount to no more than this: the conversation is said to have taken place when *Theaetetus* was a youth, and shortly before the death of Socrates. At the time of his own death he is supposed to be a full-grown man. Allowing nine or ten years for the interval between youth and manhood, the dialogue could not have been written earlier than 390, when Plato was about thirty-nine years of age. No more definite date is indicated by the engagement in which *Theaetetus* is said to have fallen or to have been wounded, and which may have taken place any time during the Corinthian war, between the years 390-387. The later date which has been suggested, 369, when the Athenians and Lacedaemonians disputed the Isthmus with Epaminondas, would make the age of *Theaetetus* at his death forty-five or forty-six. This a little impairs the beauty of Socrates' remark, that 'he would be a great man if he lived.'

In this uncertainty about the place of the *Theaetetus*, it seemed better, as in the case of the *Republic*, *Timaeus*, *Critias*, to retain the order in which Plato himself has arranged this and the two companion dialogues. We cannot exclude the possibility which has been already noticed in reference to other works of Plato, that the *Theaetetus* may not have been all written continuously; or the probability that the *Sophist* and *Politicus*, which differ greatly in style, were only appended after a long interval of time. The allusion to *Parmenides* at 183, compared with *Sophist* 217, would probably imply that the dialogue which is called by his name was already in existence; unless, indeed, we suppose the passage in which the allusion occurs to have been inserted afterwards.

Again, the *Theaetetus* may be connected with the *Gorgias*, either dialogue from different points of view containing an analysis of the real and apparent (Schleiermacher); and both may be brought into relation with the *Apology* as illustrating the personal life of Socrates. The *Philebus*, too, may with equal reason be placed either after or before what, in the language of Thrasyllus, may be called the Second Platonic Trilogy. Both the *Parmenides* and the *Sophist*, and still more the *Theaetetus*, have points of affinity with the *Cratylus*, in which the principles of rest and motion are again contrasted, and the Sophistical or Protagorean theory of language is opposed to that which is attributed to the disciple of Heracleitus, not to speak of lesser resemblances in thought and language. The *Parmenides*, again, has been thought by some to hold an intermediate position between the *Theaetetus* and the *Sophist*; upon this view, *Soph.* 250 foll. may be regarded as the answer to the problems about One and Being which have been raised in the *Parmenides*. Any of these arrangements may suggest new views to the student of Plato; none of them can lay claim to an exclusive probability in its favour.

The *Theaetetus* is one of the narrated dialogues of Plato, and is the only one which is supposed to have been written down. In a short introductory scene, Euclides and Terpsion are described as meeting before the door of Euclides' house in Megara. This may have been a spot familiar to Plato (for Megara was within a walk of Athens), but no importance can be attached to the accidental introduction of the founder of the Megarian philosophy. The real intention of the preface is to create an interest about the person of *Theaetetus*, who has just been carried up from the army at Corinth in a dying state. The expectation of his death recalls the promise of his youth, and especially the famous conversation which Socrates had with him when he was quite young, a few days before his own trial and death, as we are once more reminded at the end of the dialogue. Yet we may observe that Plato has himself forgotten this, when he represents Euclides as from time to time coming to Athens and correcting the copy from Socrates' own mouth. The narrative, having introduced *Theaetetus*, and having guaranteed the authenticity of the dialogue (cp. *Symposium*, *Phaedo*, *Parmenides*), is then dropped. No further use is made of the device. As Plato himself remarks, who in this as in some other minute



*Theaetetus.* points is imitated by Cicero (*De Amicitia*, c. 1), the interlocutory words are omitted.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Theaetetus, the hero of the battle of Corinth and of the dialogue, is a disciple of Theodorus, the great geometrician, whose science is thus indicated to be the propaedeutic to philosophy. An interest has been already excited about him by his approaching death, and now he is introduced to us anew by the praises of his master Theodorus. He is a youthful Socrates, and exhibits the same contrast of the fair soul and the ungainly face and frame, the Silenus mask and the god within, which are described in the *Symposium*. The picture which Theodorus gives of his courage and patience and intelligence and modesty is verified in the course of the dialogue. His courage is shown by his behaviour in the battle, and his other qualities shine forth as the argument proceeds. Socrates takes an evident delight in 'the wise Theaetetus,' who has more in him than 'many bearded men'; he is quite inspired by his answers. At first the youth is lost in wonder, and is almost too modest to speak (151 E), but, encouraged by Socrates, he rises to the occasion, and grows full of interest and enthusiasm about the great question. Like a youth (162 D), he has not finally made up his mind, and is very ready to follow the lead of Socrates, and to enter into each successive phase of the discussion which turns up. His great dialectical talent is shown in his power of drawing distinctions (163 E), and of foreseeing the consequences of his own answers (154 D). The enquiry about the nature of knowledge is not new to him; long ago he has felt the 'pang of philosophy,' and has experienced the youthful intoxication which is depicted in the *Philebus* (p. 15). But he has hitherto been unable to make the transition from mathematics to metaphysics. He can form a general conception of square and oblong numbers (p. 148), but he is unable to attain a similar expression of knowledge in the abstract. Yet at length (p. 185) he begins to recognize that there are universal conceptions of being, likeness, sameness, number, which the mind contemplates in herself, and with the help of Socrates is conducted from a theory of sense to a theory of ideas.

There is no reason to doubt that Theaetetus was a real person, whose name survived in the next generation. But neither can any importance be attached to the notices of him in Suidas and Proclus, which are probably based on the mention of him in Plato.

According to a confused statement in Suidas, who mentions him twice over, first, as a pupil of Socrates, and then of Plato, he is said to have written the first work on the Five Solids. But no early authority cites the work, the invention of which may have been easily suggested by the division of roots, which Plato attributes to him, and the allusion to the backward state of solid geometry in the Republic (vii. 528 B). At any rate, there is no occasion to recall him to life again after the battle of Corinth, in order that we may allow time for the completion of such a work (Müller). We may also remark that such a supposition entirely destroys the pathetic interest of the introduction.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Theodorus, the geometrician, had once been the friend and disciple of Protagoras, but he is very reluctant to leave his retirement and defend his old master. He is too old to learn Socrates' game of question and answer, and prefers the digressions to the main argument, because he finds them easier to follow. The mathematician, as Socrates says in the Republic, is not capable of giving a reason in the same manner as the dialectician (vii. 531 D, E), and Theodorus could not therefore have been appropriately introduced as the chief respondent. But he may be fairly appealed to, when the honour of his master is at stake. He is the 'guardian of his orphans,' although this is a responsibility which he wishes to throw upon Callias, the friend and patron of all Sophists, declaring that he himself had early 'run away' from philosophy, and was absorbed in mathematics. His extreme dislike to the Heraclitean fanatics, which may be compared with the dislike of Theaetetus (155 E) to the materialists, and his ready acceptance of the noble words of Socrates (175, 176), are noticeable traits of character.

The Socrates of the Theaetetus is the same as the Socrates of the earlier dialogues. He is the invincible disputant, now advanced in years, of the Protagoras and Symposium; he is still pursuing his divine mission, his 'Herculean labours,' of which he has described the origin in the Apology; and he still hears the voice of his oracle, bidding him receive or not receive the truant souls. There he is supposed to have a mission to convict men of self-conceit; in the Theaetetus he has assigned to him by God the functions of a man-midwife, who delivers men of their thoughts, and under this character he is present throughout the dialogue. He is the true prophet who has an insight into the natures of men,

*Theaetetus.* and can divine their future (142 C); and he knows that sympathy is the secret power which unlocks their thoughts. The hit at Aristides, the son of Lysimachus, who was specially committed to his charge in the Laches, may be remarked by the way. The attempt to discover the definition of knowledge is in accordance with the character of Socrates as he is described in the *Memorabilia*, asking What is justice? what is temperance? and the like. But there is no reason to suppose that he would have analyzed the nature of perception, or traced the connexion of Protagoras and Heracleitus, or have raised the difficulty respecting false opinion. The humorous illustrations, as well as the serious thoughts, run through the dialogue. The snubnosedness of Theaetetus, a characteristic which he shares with Socrates, and the man-midwifery of Socrates, are not forgotten in the closing words. At the end of the dialogue, as in the *Euthyphro*, he is expecting to meet Meletus at the porch of the king Archon; but with the same indifference to the result which is everywhere displayed by him, he proposes that they shall reassemble on the following day at the same spot. The day comes, and in the *Sophist* the three friends again meet, but no further allusion is made to the trial, and the principal share in the argument is assigned, not to Socrates, but to an Eleatic stranger; the youthful Theaetetus also plays a different and less independent part. And there is no allusion in the Introduction to the second and third dialogues, which are afterwards appended. There seems, therefore, reason to think that there is a real change, both in the characters and in the design.

The dialogue is an enquiry into the nature of knowledge, which is interrupted by two digressions. The first is the digression about the midwives, which is also a leading thought or continuous image, like the wave in the *Republic*, appearing and reappearing at intervals. Again and again we are reminded that the successive conceptions of knowledge are extracted from Theaetetus, who in his turn truly declares that Socrates has got a great deal more out of him than ever was in him. Socrates is never weary of working out the image in humorous details,—discerning the symptoms of labour, carrying the child round the hearth, fearing that Theaetetus will bite him, comparing his conceptions to wind-eggs, asserting an hereditary right to the occupation. There is also a

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

serious side to the image, which is an apt similitude of the Socratic theory of education (cp. *Repub.* vii. 518 D, *Sophist* 230), and accords with the ironical spirit in which the wisest of men delights to speak of himself.

The other digression is the famous contrast of the lawyer and philosopher. This is a sort of landing-place or break in the middle of the dialogue. At the commencement of a great discussion, the reflection naturally arises, How happy are they who, like the philosopher, have time for such discussions (cp. *Rep.* v. 450)! There is no reason for the introduction of such a digression; nor is a reason always needed, any more than for the introduction of an episode in a poem, or of a topic in conversation. That which is given by Socrates is quite sufficient, viz. that the philosopher may talk and write as he pleases. But though not very closely connected, neither is the digression out of keeping with the rest of the dialogue. The philosopher naturally desires to pour forth the thoughts which are always present to him, and to discourse of the higher life. The idea of knowledge, although hard to be defined, is realised in the life of philosophy. And the contrast is the favourite antithesis between the world, in the various characters of sophist, lawyer, statesman, speaker, and the philosopher,—between opinion and knowledge,—between the conventional and the true.

The greater part of the dialogue is devoted to setting up and throwing down definitions of science and knowledge. Proceeding from the lower to the higher by three stages, in which perception, opinion, reasoning are successively examined, we first get rid of the confusion of the idea of knowledge and specific kinds of knowledge,—a confusion which has been already noticed in the *Lysis*, *Laches*, *Meno*, and other dialogues. In the infancy of logic, a form of thought has to be invented before the content can be filled up. We cannot define knowledge until the nature of definition has been ascertained. Having succeeded in making his meaning plain, Socrates proceeds to analyze (1) the first definition which *Theaetetus* proposes: 'Knowledge is sensible perception.' This is speedily identified with the Protagorean saying, 'Man is the measure of all things;' and of this again the foundation is discovered in the perpetual flux of *Heracleitus*. The relativity of sensation is then developed at length, and for a

*Theaetetus*. moment the definition appears to be accepted. But soon the  
 INTRODUC-  
 TION. Protagorean thesis is pronounced to be suicidal; for the adversaries of Protagoras are as good a measure as he is, and they deny his doctrine. He is then supposed to reply that the perception may be true at any given instant. But the reply is in the end shown to be inconsistent with the Heraclitean foundation, on which the doctrine has been affirmed to rest. For 'if the Heraclitean flux is extended to every sort of change in every instant of time, how can any thought or word be detained even for an instant? Sensible perception, like everything else, is tumbling to pieces. Nor can Protagoras himself maintain that one man is as good as another in his knowledge of the future; and 'the expedient,' if not 'the just and true,' belongs to the sphere of the future.

And so we must ask again, What is knowledge? The comparison of sensations with one another implies a principle which is above sensation, and which resides in the mind itself. We are thus led to look for knowledge in a higher sphere, and accordingly Theaetetus, when again interrogated, replies (2) that 'knowledge is true opinion.' But how is false opinion possible? The Megarian or Eristic spirit within us revives the question, which has been already asked and indirectly answered in the *Meno*: 'How can a man be ignorant of that which he knows?' No answer is given to this not unanswerable question. The comparison of the mind to a block of wax, or to a decoy of birds, is found wanting.

But are we not inverting the natural order in looking for opinion before we have found knowledge? And knowledge is not true opinion; for the Athenian dicasts have true opinion but not knowledge. What then is knowledge? We answer (3), 'True opinion, with definition or explanation.' But all the different ways in which this statement may be understood are set aside, like the definitions of courage in the *Laches*, or of friendship in the *Lysis*, or of temperance in the *Charmides*. At length we arrive at the conclusion, in which nothing is concluded.

There are two special difficulties which beset the student of the *Theaetetus*: (1) he is uncertain how far he can trust Plato's account of the theory of Protagoras; and he is also uncertain (2) how far, and in what parts of the dialogue, Plato is expressing his own opinion. The dramatic character of the work renders the answer to both these questions difficult.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

1. In reply to the first, we have only probabilities to offer. Three main points have to be decided: (a) Would Protagoras have identified his own thesis, 'Man is the measure of all things,' with the other, 'All knowledge is sensible perception'? (b) Would he have based the relativity of knowledge on the Heraclitean flux? (c) Would he have asserted the absoluteness of sensation at each instant? Of the work of Protagoras on 'Truth' we know nothing, with the exception of the two famous fragments, which are cited in this dialogue, 'Man is the measure of all things,' and, 'Whether there are gods or not, I cannot tell.' Nor have we any other trustworthy evidence of the tenets of Protagoras, or of the sense in which his words are used. For later writers, including Aristotle in his *Metaphysics*, have mixed up the Protagoras of Plato, as they have the Socrates of Plato, with the real person.

Returning then to the *Theaetetus*, as the only possible source from which an answer to these questions can be obtained, we may remark, that Plato had 'The Truth' of Protagoras before him, and frequently refers to the book. He seems to say expressly, that in this work the doctrine of the Heraclitean flux was not to be found (p. 152); 'he told the real truth' (not in the book, which is so entitled, but) 'privately to his disciples,'—words which imply that the connexion between the doctrines of Protagoras and Heraclitus was not generally recognized in Greece, but was really discovered or invented by Plato. On the other hand, the doctrine that 'Man is the measure of all things,' is expressly identified by Socrates with the other statement, that 'What appears to each man is to him;' and a reference is made to the books in which the statement occurs;—this *Theaetetus*, who has 'often read the books,' is supposed to acknowledge (152 A: so *Cratylus* 385 E). And Protagoras, in the speech attributed to him, never says that he has been misunderstood: at p. 166 C he rather seems to imply that the absoluteness of sensation at each instant was to be found in his words (cp. 158 E). He is only indignant at the 'reductio ad absurdum' devised by Socrates for his 'homo mensura,' which Theodorus also considers to be 'really too bad.'

The question may be raised, how far Plato in the *Theaetetus* could have misrepresented Protagoras without violating the laws

*Theaetetus.* of dramatic probability. Could he have pretended to cite from a well-known writing what was not to be found there? But such a shadowy enquiry is not worth pursuing further. We need only remember that in the criticism which follows of the thesis of Protagoras, we are criticizing the Protagoras of Plato, and not attempting to draw a precise line between his real sentiments and those which Plato has attributed to him.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

2. The other difficulty is a more subtle, and also a more important one, because bearing on the general character of the Platonic dialogues. On a first reading of them, we are apt to imagine that the truth is only spoken by Socrates, who is never guilty of a fallacy himself, and is the great detector of the errors and fallacies of others. But this natural presumption is disturbed by the discovery that the Sophists are sometimes in the right and Socrates in the wrong. Like the hero of a novel, he is not to be supposed always to represent the sentiments of the author. There are few modern readers who do not side with Protagoras, rather than with Socrates, in the dialogue which is called by his name. The *Cratylus* presents a similar difficulty: in his etymologies, as in the number of the State, we cannot tell how far Socrates is serious; for the Socratic irony will not allow him to distinguish between his real and his assumed wisdom. No one is the superior of the invincible Socrates in argument (except in the first part of the *Parmenides*, where he is introduced as a youth); but he is by no means supposed to be in possession of the whole truth. Arguments are often put into his mouth (cp. Introduction to the *Gorgias*) which must have seemed quite as untenable to Plato as to a modern writer. In this dialogue a great part of the answer of Protagoras is just and sound; remarks are made by him on verbal criticism, and on the importance of understanding an opponent's meaning, which are conceived in the true spirit of philosophy. And the distinction which he is supposed to draw between Eristic and Dialectic (167, 168), is really a criticism of Plato on himself and his own criticism of Protagoras.

The difficulty seems to arise from not attending to the dramatic character of the writings of Plato. There are two, or more, sides to questions; and these are parted among the different speakers. Sometimes one view or aspect of a question is made to predominate over the rest, as in the *Gorgias* or *Sophist*; but in other

dialogues truth is divided, as in the *Laches* and *Protagoras*, and the interest of the piece consists in the contrast of opinions. The confusion caused by the irony of Socrates, who, if he is true to his character, cannot say anything of his own knowledge, is increased by the circumstance that in the *Theaetetus* and some other dialogues he is occasionally playing both parts himself, and even charging his own arguments with unfairness. In the *Theaetetus* he is designedly held back from arriving at a conclusion. For we cannot suppose that Plato conceived a definition of knowledge to be impossible. But this is his manner of approaching and surrounding a question. The lights which he throws on his subject are indirect, but they are not the less real for that. He has no intention of proving a thesis by a cut-and-dried argument; nor does he imagine that a great philosophical problem can be tied up within the limits of a definition. If he has analyzed a proposition or notion, even with the severity of an impossible logic, if half-truths have been compared by him with other half-truths, if he has cleared up or advanced popular ideas, or illustrated a new method, his aim has been sufficiently accomplished.

The writings of Plato belong to an age in which the power of analysis had outrun the means of knowledge; and through a spurious use of dialectic, the distinctions which had been already 'won from the void and formless infinite,' seemed to be rapidly returning to their original chaos. The two great speculative philosophies, which a century earlier had so deeply impressed the mind of Hellas, were now degenerating into Eristic. The contemporaries of Plato and Socrates were vainly trying to find new combinations of them, or to transfer them from the object to the subject. The Megarians, in their first attempts to attain a severer logic, were making knowledge impossible (cp. *Theaet.* 202). They were asserting 'the one good under many names,' and, like the Cynics, seem to have denied predication, while the Cynics themselves were depriving virtue of all which made virtue desirable in the eyes of Socrates and Plato. And besides these, we find mention in the later writings of Plato, especially in the *Theaetetus*, *Sophist*, and *Laws*, of certain impenetrable godless persons, who will not believe what they 'cannot hold in their hands'; and cannot be approached in argument, because they



*Theaetetus.* cannot argue (*Theaet.* 155 E; *Soph.* 246 A). No school of Greek philosophers exactly answers to these persons, in whom Plato may perhaps have blended some features of the Atomists with the vulgar materialistic tendencies of mankind in general (cp. Introduction to the *Sophist*).

INTRO-  
DUCTION.

And not only was there a conflict of opinions, but the stage which the mind had reached presented other difficulties hardly intelligible to us, who live in a different cycle of human thought. All times of mental progress are times of confusion; we only see, or rather seem to see things clearly, when they have been long fixed and defined. In the age of Plato, the limits of the world of imagination and of pure abstraction, of the old world and the new, were not yet fixed. The Greeks, in the fourth century before Christ, had no words for 'subject' and 'object,' and no distinct conception of them; yet they were always hovering about the question involved in them. The analysis of sense, and the analysis of thought, were equally difficult to them; and hopelessly confused by the attempt to solve them, not through an appeal to facts, but by the help of general theories respecting the nature of the universe.

Plato, in his *Theaetetus*, gathers up the sceptical tendencies of his age, and compares them. But he does not seek to reconstruct out of them a theory of knowledge. The time at which such a theory could be framed had not yet arrived. For there was no measure of experience with which the ideas swarming in men's minds could be compared; the meaning of the word 'science' could scarcely be explained to them, except from the mathematical sciences, which alone offered the type of universality and certainty. Philosophy was becoming more and more vacant and abstract, and not only the Platonic Ideas and the Eleatic Being, but all abstractions seemed to be at variance with sense and at war with one another.

The want of the Greek mind in the fourth century before Christ was not another theory of rest or motion, or Being or atoms, but rather a philosophy which could free the mind from the power of abstractions and alternatives, and show how far rest and how far motion, how far the universal principle of Being and the multitudinous principle of atoms, entered into the composition of the world; which could distinguish between the true and false

analogy, and allow the negative as well as the positive a place in human thought. To such a philosophy Plato, in the *Theaetetus*, offers many contributions. He has followed philosophy into the region of mythology, and pointed out the similarities of opposing phases of thought. He has also shown that extreme abstractions are self-destructive, and, indeed, hardly distinguishable from one another. But his intention is not to unravel the whole subject of knowledge, if this had been possible; and several times in the course of the dialogue he rejects explanations of knowledge which have germs of truth in them; as, for example, 'the resolution of the compound into the simple;' or 'right opinion with a mark of difference.'

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUCTION.

Steph.

142

Terpsion, who has come to Megara from the country, is described as having looked in vain for Euclides in the Agora; the latter explains that he has been down to the harbour, and on his way thither had met Theaetetus, who was being carried up from the army to Athens. He was scarcely alive, for he had been badly wounded at the battle of Corinth, and had taken the dysentery which prevailed in the camp. The mention of his condition suggests the reflection, 'What a loss he will be!' 'Yes, indeed,' replies Euclid; 'only just now I was hearing of his noble conduct in the battle.' 'That I should expect; but why did he not remain at Megara?' 'I wanted him to remain, but he would not; so I went with him as far as Erineum; and as I parted from him, I remembered that Socrates had seen him when he was a youth, and had a remarkable conversation with him, not long before his own death; and he then prophesied of him that he would be a great man if he lived.' 'How true that has been; how like all that Socrates said! And could you repeat the conversation?'

ANALYSIS.

143 'Not from memory; but I took notes when I returned home, which I afterwards filled up at leisure, and got Socrates to correct them from time to time, when I came to Athens.' . . . Terpsion had long intended to ask for a sight of this writing, of which he had already heard. They are both tired, and agree to rest and have the conversation read to them by a servant. . . . 'Here is the roll, Terpsion; I need only observe that I have omitted, for the sake of convenience, the interlocutory words, "said I," "said

*Theaetetus.* he"; and that Theaetetus, and Theodorus, the geometrician of Cyrene, are the persons with whom Socrates is conversing.'

ANALYSIS.

Socrates begins by asking Theodorus whether, in his visit to Athens, he has found any Athenian youth likely to attain distinction in science. 'Yes, Socrates, there is one very remarkable youth, with whom I have become acquainted. He is no beauty, and therefore you need not imagine that I am in love with him; and, to say the truth, he is very like you, for he has a snub nose, and projecting eyes, although these features are not so marked in him as in you. He combines the most various qualities, quickness, 144 patience, courage; and he is gentle as well as wise, always silently flowing on, like a river of oil. Look! he is the middle one of those who are entering the palaestra.'

Socrates, who does not know his name, recognizes him as the son of Euphronius, who was himself a good man and a rich. He is informed by Theodorus that the youth is named Theaetetus, but the property of his father has disappeared in the hands of trustees; this does not, however, prevent him from adding liberality to his other virtues. At the desire of Socrates he invites Theaetetus to sit by them.

'Yes,' says Socrates, 'that I may see in you, Theaetetus, the image of my ugly self, as Theodorus declares. Not that his remark is of any importance; for though he is a philosopher, he is not a painter, and therefore he is no judge of our faces; 145 but, as he is a man of science, he may be a judge of our intellects. And if he were to praise the mental endowments of either of us, in that case the hearer of the eulogy ought to examine into what he says, and the subject should not refuse to be examined.' Theaetetus consents, and is caught in a trap (cp. the similar trap which is laid for Theodorus, at p. 166, 168 D). 'Then, Theaetetus, you will have to be examined, for Theodorus has been praising you in a style of which I never heard the like.' 'He was only jesting.' 'Nay, that is not his way; and I cannot allow you, on that pretence, to retract the assent which you have already given, or I shall make Theodorus repeat your praises, and swear to them.' Theaetetus, in reply, professes that he is willing to be examined, and Socrates begins by asking him what he learns of Theodorus. He is himself anxious to learn anything

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

of anybody; and now he has a little question to which he wants Theaetetus or Theodorus (or whichever of the company would not be 'donkey' to the rest) to find an answer. Without further preface, but at the same time apologizing for his eagerness, he 146 asks, 'What is knowledge?' Theodorus is too old to answer questions, and begs him to interrogate Theaetetus, who has the advantage of youth.

Theaetetus replies, that knowledge is what he learns of Theodorus, i.e. geometry and arithmetic; and that there are other kinds of knowledge—shoemaking, carpentering, and the like. But Socrates rejoins, that this answer contains too much and also too little. For although Theaetetus has enumerated several kinds of knowledge, he has not explained the common nature 147 of them; as if he had been asked, 'What is clay?' and instead of saying, 'Clay is moistened earth,' he had answered, 'There is one clay of image-makers, another of potters, another of oven-makers.' Theaetetus at once divines that Socrates means him to extend to all kinds of knowledge the same process of generalization which he has already learned to apply to arithmetic. For he has discovered a division of numbers into square numbers, 4, 9, 16, &c., which are composed of equal factors, and represent 148 figures which have equal sides, and oblong numbers, 3, 5, 6, 7, &c., which are composed of unequal factors, and represent figures which have unequal sides. But he has never succeeded in attaining a similar conception of knowledge, though he has often tried; and, when this and similar questions were brought to him from Socrates, has been sorely distressed by them. Socrates 149 explains to him that he is in labour. For men as well as women have pangs of labour; and both at times require the assistance of midwives. And he, Socrates, is a midwife, although this is a secret; he has inherited the art from his mother bold and bluff, and he ushers into light, not children, but the thoughts of men. Like the midwives, who are 'past bearing children,' he too can have no offspring—the God will not allow him to bring anything into the world of his own. He also reminds Theaetetus that the midwives are or ought to be the only matchmakers (this is the preparation for a biting jest, 151 B); for those who reap the fruit 150 are most likely to know on what soil the plants will grow. But respectable midwives avoid this department of practice—they

*Theaetetus.* do not want to be called procuresses. There are some other differences between the two sorts of pregnancy. For women do not bring into the world at one time real children and at another time idols which are with difficulty distinguished from them. 'At first,' says Socrates in his character of the man-midwife, 'my patients are barren and stolid, but after a while they "round apace," if the gods are propitious to them; and this is due not to me but to themselves; I and the god only assist in bringing their ideas to the birth. Many of them have left me too soon, and the result has been that they have produced abortions; or when I have delivered them of children they have lost them by an ill bringing up, and have ended by seeing themselves, as others see them, to be great fools. Aristides, the son of Lysimachus, is one of these, and there have been others. The truants often return to 151 me and beg to be taken back; and then, if my familiar allows me, which is not always the case, I receive them, and they begin to grow again. There come to me also those who have nothing in them, and have no need of my art; and I am their matchmaker (see above), and marry them to Prodicus or some other inspired sage who is likely to suit them. I tell you this long story because I suspect that you are in labour. Come then to me, who am a midwife, and the son of a midwife, and I will deliver you. And do not bite me, as the women do, if I abstract your first-born; for I am acting out of good-will towards you; the God who is within me is the friend of man, though he will not allow me to dissemble the truth. Once more then, Theaetetus, I repeat my old question—"What is knowledge?" Take courage, and by the help of God you will discover an answer.' 'My answer is, that knowledge is perception.' 'That is the theory of Protagoras, who has another 152 way of expressing the same thing when he says, "Man is the measure of all things." He was a very wise man, and we should try to understand him. In order to illustrate his meaning let me suppose that there is the same wind blowing in our faces, and one of us may be hot and the other cold. How is this? Protagoras will reply that the wind is hot to him who is cold, cold to him who is hot. And "is" means "appears," and when you say "appears to him," that means "he feels." Thus feeling, appearance, perception, coincide with being. I suspect, however, that this was only a "façon de parler," by which he imposed on the common herd

like you and me; he told "the truth" [in allusion to the title of his book, which was called "The Truth"] in secret to his disciples. For he was really a votary of that famous philosophy in which all things are said to be relative; nothing is great or small, or heavy or light, or one, but all is in motion and mixture and transition and flux and generation, not "being," as we ignorantly affirm, but "becoming." This has been the doctrine, not of Protagoras only, but of all philosophers, with the single exception of Parmenides; Empedocles, Heracleitus, and others, and all the poets, with Epicharmus, the king of Comedy, and Homer, the king of Tragedy, at their head, have said the same; the latter has these words—

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

"Ocean, whence the gods sprang, and mother Tethys."

153 And many arguments are used to show, that motion is the source of life, and rest of death: fire and warmth are produced by friction, and living creatures owe their origin to a similar cause; the bodily frame is preserved by exercise and destroyed by indolence; and if the sun ceased to move, "chaos would come again." Now apply this doctrine of "All is motion" to the senses, and first of all to the sense of sight. The colour of white, or any other colour, is neither in the eyes nor out of them, but ever in motion  
154 between the object and the eye, and varying in the case of every percipient. All is relative, and, as the followers of Protagoras remark, endless contradictions arise when we deny this; e.g. here are six dice; they are more than four and less than twelve; "more and also less," would you not say? 'Yes.' 'But Protagoras will retort: "Can anything be more or less without addition or subtraction?"'

'I should say "No" if I were not afraid of contradicting my former answer.'

'And if you say "Yes," the tongue will escape conviction but not the mind, as Euripides would say?' 'True.' 'The thoroughbred Sophists, who know all that can be known, would have a sparring match over this, but you and I, who have no professional pride,  
155 want only to discover whether our ideas are clear and consistent. And we cannot be wrong in saying, first, that nothing can be greater or less while remaining equal; secondly, that there can be no becoming greater or less without addition or subtraction; thirdly,

*Theaetetus.* that what is and was not, cannot be without having become. But  
ANALYSIS. then how is this reconcileable with the case of the dice, and with similar examples?—that is the question.' 'I am often perplexed and amazed, Socrates, by these difficulties.' 'That is because you are a philosopher, for philosophy begins in wonder, and Iris is the child of Thaumass. Do you know the original principle on which the doctrine of Protagoras is based?' 'No.' 'Then I will tell you; but we must not let the uninitiated hear, and by the uninitiated I mean the obstinate people who believe in nothing which they cannot hold in their hands. The brethren whose mysteries I am 156 about to unfold to you are far more ingenious. They maintain that all is motion; and that motion has two forms, action and passion, out of which endless phenomena are created, also in two forms—sense and the object of sense—which come to the birth together. There are two kinds of motions, a slow and a fast; the motions of the agent and the patient are slower, because they move and create in and about themselves, but the things which are born of them have a swifter motion, and pass rapidly from place to place. The eye and the appropriate object come together, and give birth to whiteness and the sensation of whiteness; the eye is filled with seeing, and becomes not sight but a seeing eye, and the object is filled with whiteness, and becomes not whiteness but white; and no other compound of either with another would have produced the same effect. All sensation is to be resolved into a 157 similar combination of an agent and patient. Of either, taken separately, no idea can be formed; and the agent may become a patient, and the patient an agent. Hence there arises a general reflection that nothing is, but all things become; no name can detain or fix them. Are not these speculations charming, Theaetetus, and very good for a person in your interesting situation? I am offering you specimens of other men's wisdom, because I have no wisdom of my own, and I want to deliver you of something; and presently we will see whether you have brought forth wind or not. Tell me, then, what do you think of the notion that "All things are becoming"?'

'When I hear your arguments, I am marvellously ready to assent.'

'But I ought not to conceal from you that there is a serious objection which may be urged against this doctrine of Protagoras.

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

158 For there are states, such as madness and dreaming, in which perception is false; and half our life is spent in dreaming; and who can say that at this instant we are not dreaming? Even the fancies of madmen are real at the time. But if knowledge is perception, how can we distinguish between the true and the false in such cases? Having stated the objection, I will now state the answer. Protagoras would deny the continuity of phenomena; 159 he would say that what is different is entirely different, and whether active or passive has a different power. There are infinite agents and patients in the world, and these produce in every combination of them a different perception. Take myself as an instance:—Socrates may be ill or he may be well,—and remember that Socrates, with all his accidents, is spoken of. The wine which I drink when I am well is pleasant to me, but the same wine is unpleasant to me when I am ill. And there is 160 nothing else from which I can receive the same impression, nor can another receive the same impression from the wine. Neither can I and the object of sense become separately what we become together. For the one in becoming is relative to the other, but they have no other relation; and the combination of them is absolute at each moment. [In modern language, the act of sensation is really indivisible, though capable of a mental analysis into subject and object.] My sensation alone is true, and true to me only. And therefore, as Protagoras says, “To myself I am the judge of what is and what is not.” Thus the flux of Homer and Heracleitus, the great Protagorean saying that “Man is the measure of all things,” the doctrine of Theaetetus that “Knowledge is perception,” have all the same meaning. And this is thy new-born child, which by my art I have brought to light; and 161 you must not be angry if instead of rearing your infant we expose him.’

‘Theaetetus will not be angry,’ says Theodorus; ‘he is very good-natured. But I should like to know, Socrates, whether you mean to say that all this is untrue?’

‘First reminding you that I am not the bag which contains the arguments, but that I extract them from Theaetetus, shall I tell you what amazes me in your friend Protagoras?’

‘What may that be?’

‘I like his doctrine that what appears is; but I wonder that he



*Theaetetus.* did not begin his great work on Truth with a declaration that a pig, or a dog-faced baboon, or any other monster which has sensation, is a measure of all things; then, while we were reverencing him as a god, he might have produced a magnificent effect by expounding to us that he was no wiser than a tadpole. For if sensations are always true, and one man's discernment is as good as another's, and every man is his own judge, and everything that he judges is right and true, then what need of Protagoras to be our instructor at a high figure; and why should we be less knowing than he is, or have to go to him, if every man is the measure of all things? My own art of midwifery, and all dialectic, is an enormous folly, if Protagoras' "Truth" be indeed truth, and the philosopher is not merely amusing himself by giving oracles out of his book.'

ANALYSIS.

Theodorus thinks that Socrates is unjust to his master, Protagoras; but he is too old and stiff to try a fall with him, and therefore refers him to Theaetetus, who is already driven out of his former opinion by the arguments of Socrates.

Socrates then takes up the defence of Protagoras, who is supposed to reply in his own person—'Good people, you sit and declaim about the gods, of whose existence or non-existence I have nothing to say, or you discourse about man being reduced to the level of the brutes; but what proof have you of your statements? And yet surely you and Theodorus had better reflect whether probability is a safe guide. Theodorus would be a bad geometer if he had nothing better to offer.' . . . Theaetetus is affected by the appeal to geometry, and Socrates is induced by him to put the question in a new form. He proceeds as follows:—'Should we say that we know what we see and hear,—e. g. the sound of words or the sight of letters in a foreign tongue?'

'We should say that the figures of the letters, and the pitch of the voice in uttering them, were known to us, but not the meaning of them.'

'Excellent; I want you to grow, and therefore I will leave that answer and ask another question: Is not seeing perceiving?' 'Very true.' 'And he who sees knows?' 'Yes.' 'And he who remembers, remembers that which he sees and knows?' 'Very true.' 'But if he closes his eyes, does he not remember?' 'He does.' 'Then he may remember and not see; and if seeing is

knowing, he may remember and not know. Is not this a "reductio ad absurdum" of the hypothesis that knowledge is sensible perception? Yet perhaps we are crowing too soon; and if Protagoras, "the father of the myth," had been alive, the result might have been very different. But he is dead, and Theodorus, whom he left guardian of his "orphan," has not been very zealous in defending him.'

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

165 Theodorus objects that Callias is the true guardian, but he hopes that Socrates will come to the rescue. Socrates prefaces his defence by resuming the attack. He asks whether a man can know and not know at the same time? 'Impossible.' Quite possible, if you maintain that seeing is knowing. The confident adversary, suiting the action to the word, shuts one of your eyes; and now, says he, you see and do not see, but do you know and not know? And a fresh opponent darts from his ambush, and transfers to knowledge the terms which are commonly applied to sight. He asks whether you can know near and not at a distance; whether you can have a sharp and also a dull knowledge. While you are wondering at his incomparable wisdom, he gets you into his power, and you will not escape until you have come to an understanding with him about the money which is to be paid for your release.

But Protagoras has not yet made his defence; and already he 166 may be heard contemptuously replying that he is not responsible for the admissions which were made by a boy, who could not foresee the coming move, and therefore had answered in a manner which enabled Socrates to raise a laugh against himself. 'But I cannot be fairly charged,' he will say, 'with an answer which I should not have given; for I never maintained that the memory of a feeling is the same as a feeling, or denied that a man might know and not know the same thing at the same time. Or, if you will have extreme precision, I say that man in different relations is many or rather infinite in number. And I challenge you, either to show that his perceptions are not individual, or that if they are, what appears to him is not what is. As to your pigs and baboons, you are yourself a pig, and you make my writings a sport of other swine. But I still affirm that man is the measure of all things, although I admit that one man may be a thousand times better than another, in proportion as he has better impressions. Neither

*Theaetetus.* do I deny the existence of wisdom or of the wise man. But I maintain that wisdom is a practical remedial power of turning evil into good, the bitterness of disease into the sweetness of health, and does not consist in any greater truth or superior knowledge. For the impressions of the sick are as true as the impressions of the healthy; and the sick are as wise as the healthy. Nor 167 can any man be cured of a false opinion, for there is no such thing; but he may be cured of the evil habit which generates in him an evil opinion. This is effected in the body by the drugs of the physician, and in the soul by the words of the Sophist; and the new state or opinion is not truer, but only better than the old. And philosophers are not tadpoles, but physicians and husbandmen, who till the soil and infuse health into animals and plants, and make the good take the place of the evil, both in individuals and states. Wise and good rhetoricians make the good to appear just in states (for that is just which appears just to a state), and in return, they deserve to be well paid. And you, Socrates, whether you please or not, must continue to be a measure. This is my defence, and I must request you to meet me fairly. We are professing to reason, and not merely to dispute; and there is a great difference between reasoning and disputation. For the disputer is always seeking to trip up his opponent; and this is a mode of argument which disgusts men with philosophy as they grow older. But the reasoner is trying to understand him and to point out his errors to him, whether arising from his own or from his companions' fault; he does not 168 argue from the customary use of names, which the vulgar pervert in all manner of ways. If you are gentle to an adversary he will follow and love you; and if defeated he will lay the blame on himself, and seek to escape from his own prejudices into philosophy. I would recommend you, Socrates, to adopt this humaner method, and to avoid captious and verbal criticisms.'

Such, Theodorus, is the very slight help which I am able to afford to your friend; had he been alive, he would have helped himself in far better style.

'You have made a most valorous defence.'

Yes; but did you observe that Protagoras bade me be serious, and complained of our getting up a laugh against him with the aid of a boy? He meant to intimate that you must take the place

of Theaetetus, who may be wiser than many bearded men, but not wiser than you, Theodorus.

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

- 169 'The rule of the Spartan Palaestra is, Strip or depart; but you are like the giant Antaeus, and will not let me depart unless I try a fall with you.'

Yes, that is the nature of my complaint. And many a Hercules, many a Theseus mighty in deeds and words has broken my head; but I am always at this rough game. Please, then, to favour me.

'On the condition of not exceeding a single fall, I consent.'

- 170 Socrates now resumes the argument. As he is very desirous of doing justice to Protagoras, he insists on citing his own words,—  
'What appears to each man is to him.' And how, asks Socrates, are these words reconcilable with the fact that all mankind are agreed in thinking themselves wiser than others in some respects, and inferior to them in others? In the hour of danger they are ready to fall down and worship any one who is their superior in wisdom as if he were a god. And the world is full of men who are asking to be taught and willing to be ruled, and of other men who are willing to rule and teach them. All which implies that men do judge of one another's impressions, and think some wise and others foolish. How will Protagoras answer this argument? For he cannot say that no one deems another ignorant or mistaken. If you form a judgment, thousands and tens of thousands are ready to maintain the opposite. The multitude may not and do not agree in Protagoras' own thesis that 'Man is the measure  
171 of all things;' and then who is to decide? Upon his own showing must not his 'truth' depend on the number of suffrages, and be more or less true in proportion as he has more or fewer of them? And he must acknowledge further, that they speak truly who deny him to speak truly, which is a famous jest. And if he admits that they speak truly who deny him to speak truly, he must admit that he himself does not speak truly. But his opponents will refuse to admit this of themselves, and he must allow that they are right in their refusal. The conclusion is, that all mankind, including Protagoras himself, will deny that he speaks truly; and his truth will be true neither to himself nor to anybody else.

Theodorus is inclined to think that this is going too far. Socrates ironically replies, that he is not going beyond the truth. But if the old Protagoras could only pop his head out of the world below, he

*Theaetetus.* would doubtless give them both a sound castigation and be off to the shades in an instant. Seeing that he is not within call, we must examine the question for ourselves. It is clear that there are great differences in the understandings of men. Admitting, with Protagoras, that immediate sensations of hot, cold, and the like, are to each one such as they appear, yet this hypothesis cannot be extended to judgments or opinions. And even if we were to admit 172 further,—and this is the view of some who are not thorough-going followers of Protagoras,—that right and wrong, holy and unholy, are to each state or individual such as they appear, still Protagoras will not venture to maintain that every man is equally the measure of expediency, or that the thing which seems is expedient to every one. But this begins a new question. ‘Well, Socrates, we have plenty of leisure. Yes, we have, and, after the manner of philosophers, we are digressing; I have often observed how ridiculous this habit of theirs makes them when they appear in court. ‘What do you mean?’ I mean to say that a philosopher is a gentleman, but a lawyer is a servant. The one can have his talk out, and wander at will from one subject to another, as the fancy takes him; like ourselves, he may be long or short, as he pleases. But the lawyer is always in a hurry; there is the clepsydra limiting his time, and the brief limiting his topics, and his adversary is standing over him and exacting his rights. He is a servant disputing about a fellow-servant before his master, who holds the cause in his hands; the path never diverges, and often the race is 173 for his life. Such experiences render him keen and shrewd; he learns the arts of flattery, and is perfect in the practice of crooked ways; dangers have come upon him too soon, when the tenderness of youth was unable to meet them with truth and honesty, and he has resorted to counter-acts of dishonesty and falsehood, and become warped and distorted; without any health or freedom or sincerity in him he has grown up to manhood, and is or esteems himself to be a master of cunning. Such are the lawyers; will you have the companion picture of philosophers? or will this be too much of a digression?’

‘Nay, Socrates, the argument is our servant, and not our master. Who is the judge or where is the spectator, having a right to control us?’

I will describe the leaders, then: for the inferior sort are not

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

worth the trouble. The lords of philosophy have not learned the way to the dicastery or ecclesia; they neither see nor hear the laws and votes of the state, written or recited; societies, whether political or festive, clubs, and singing maidens do not enter even into their dreams. And the scandals of persons or their ancestors, male and female, they know no more than they can tell the number of pints in the ocean. Neither are they conscious of their own ignorance; for they do not practise singularity in order to gain reputation, but the truth is, that the outer form of them only is residing in the city; the inner man, as Pindar says, is going on a voyage of discovery, measuring as with line and rule the things  
174 which are under and in the earth, interrogating the whole of nature, only not condescending to notice what is near them.

‘What do you mean, Socrates?’

I will illustrate my meaning by the jest of the witty maid-servant, who saw Thales tumbling into a well, and said of him, that he was so eager to know what was going on in heaven, that he could not see what was before his feet. This is applicable to all philosophers. The philosopher is unacquainted with the world; he hardly knows whether his neighbour is a man or an animal. For he is always searching into the essence of man, and enquiring what such a nature ought to do or suffer different from any other. Hence, on every occasion in private life and public, as I was saying, when he appears in a law-court or anywhere, he is the joke, not only of maid-servants, but of the general herd, falling into wells and every sort of disaster; he looks such an awkward, inexperienced creature, unable to say anything personal, when he is abused, in answer to his adversaries (for he knows no evil of any one); and when he hears the praises of others, he cannot help laughing from the bottom of his soul at their pretensions; and this also gives him a ridiculous appearance. A king or tyrant appears to him to be a kind of swine-herd or cow-herd, milking away at an animal who is much more troublesome and dangerous than cows or sheep; like the cow-herd, he has no time to be educated, and the pen in which he keeps his flock in the mountains is surrounded by a wall. When he hears of large landed properties of ten thousand acres or more, he thinks of the whole  
175 earth; or if he is told of the antiquity of a family, he remembers that every one has had myriads of progenitors, rich and poor,

*Theaetetus.* Greeks and barbarians, kings and slaves. And he who boasts of his descent from Amphitryon in the twenty-fifth generation, may, if he pleases, add as many more, and double that again, and our philosopher only laughs at his inability to do a larger sum. Such is the man at whom the vulgar scoff; he seems to them as if he could not mind his feet. 'That is very true, Socrates.' But when he tries to draw the quick-witted lawyer out of his pleas and rejoinders to the contemplation of absolute justice or injustice in their own nature, or from the popular praises of wealthy kings to the view of happiness and misery in themselves, or to the reasons why a man should seek after the one and avoid the other, then the situation is reversed; the little wretch turns giddy, and is ready to fall over the precipice; his utterance becomes thick, and he makes himself ridiculous, not to servant-maids, but to every man of liberal education. Such are the two pictures. the one of the philosopher and gentleman, who may be excused for not having learned how to make a bed, or cook up flatteries; the other, a serviceable knave, who hardly knows how to wear his cloak,— 176 still less can he awaken harmonious thoughts or hymn virtue's praises.

'If the world, Socrates, were as ready to receive your words as I am, there would be greater peace and less evil among mankind.'

Evil, Theodorus, must ever remain in this world to be the antagonist of good, out of the way of the gods in heaven. Wherefore also we should fly away from ourselves to them; and to fly to them is to become like them; and to become like them is to become holy, just and true. But many live in the old wives' fable of appearances; they think that you should follow virtue in order that you may seem to be good. And yet the truth is, that God is righteous; and of men, he is most like him who is most righteous. To know this is wisdom; and in comparison of this the wisdom of the arts or the seeming wisdom of politicians is mean and common. The unrighteous man is apt to pride himself on his cunning; when others call him rogue, he says to himself: 'They only mean that I am one who deserves to live, and not a mere burden of the earth.' But he should reflect that his ignorance makes his condition worse than if he knew. For the penalty of injustice is not death or stripes, but the fatal necessity

of becoming more and more unjust. Two patterns of life are set before him; the one blessed and divine, the other godless and wretched; and he is growing more and more like the one and  
177 unlike the other. He does not see that if he continues in his cunning, the place of innocence will not receive him after death. And yet if such a man has the courage to hear the argument out, he often becomes dissatisfied with himself, and has no more strength in him than a child.—But we have digressed enough.

‘For my part, Socrates, I like the digressions better than the argument, because I understand them better.’

To return. When we left off, the Protagoreans and Heracliteans were maintaining that the ordinances of the State were  
178 just, while they lasted. But no one would maintain that the laws of the State were always good or expedient, although this may be the intention of them. For the expedient has to do with the future, about which we are liable to mistake. Now, would Protagoras maintain that man is the measure not only of the present and past, but of the future; and that there is no difference in the judgments of men about the future? Would an untrained man, for example, be as likely to know when he is going to have a fever, as the physician who attended him? And if they differ in opinion, which of them is likely to be right; or are they both right? Is not a vine-grower a better judge of a vintage which is not yet gathered, or a cook of a dinner which is in preparation, or Protagoras of the probable effect of a speech than an ordinary person?  
179 The last example speaks ‘ad hominem.’ For Protagoras would never have amassed a fortune if every man could judge of the future for himself. He is, therefore, compelled to admit that he is a measure; but I, who know nothing, am not equally convinced that I am. This is one way of refuting him; and he is refuted also by the authority which he attributes to the opinions of others, who deny his opinions. I am not equally sure that we can disprove the truth of immediate states of feeling. But this leads us to the doctrine of the universal flux, about which a battle-royal is always going on in the cities of Ionia. ‘Yes; the Ephesians are downright mad about the flux; they cannot stop to argue with you, but are in perpetual motion, obedient to their text-books. Their restlessness is beyond expression, and if you ask any of  
180 them a question, they will not answer, but dart at you some



*Theætetus*, unintelligible saying, and another and another, making no way  
 ANALYSIS. either with themselves or with others; for nothing is fixed in them or their ideas,—they are at war with fixed principles.’ I suppose, Theodorus, that you have never seen them in time of peace, when they discourse at leisure to their disciples? ‘Disciples! they have none; they are a set of uneducated fanatics, and each of them says of the other that they have no knowledge. We must trust to ourselves, and not to them for the solution of the problem.’ Well, the doctrine is old, being derived from the poets, who speak in a figure of Oceanus and Tethys; the truth was once concealed, but is now revealed by the superior wisdom of a later generation, and made intelligible to the cobbler, who, on hearing that all is in motion, and not some things only, as he ignorantly fancied, may be expected to fall down and worship his teachers. And the opposite doctrine must not be forgotten:—

‘Alone being remains unmoved which is the name for all,’

as Parmenides affirms. Thus we are in the midst of the fray; both parties are dragging us to their side; and we are not certain 181 which of them are in the right; and if neither, then we shall be in a ridiculous position, having to set up our own opinion against ancient and famous men.

Let us first approach the river-gods, or patrons of the flux.

When they speak of motion, must they not include two kinds of motion, change of place and change of nature?—And all things must be supposed to have both kinds of motion; for if not, the same things would be at rest and in motion, which is contrary 182 to their theory. And did we not say, that all sensations arise thus: they move about between the agent and patient together with a perception, and the patient ceases to be a perceiving power and becomes a percipient, and the agent a *qualc* instead of a quality; but neither has any absolute existence? But now we make the further discovery, that neither white or whiteness, nor any sense or sensation, can be predicated of anything, for they are in a perpetual flux. And therefore we must modify the doctrine of Theætetus and Protagoras, by asserting further that knowledge is and is not sensation; and of everything we must 183 say equally, that this is and is not, or becomes or becomes not.

And still the word 'this' is not quite correct, for language fails in the attempt to express their meaning. *Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

At the close of the discussion, Theodorus claims to be released from the argument, according to his agreement. But Theaetetus insists that they shall proceed to consider the doctrine of rest.

- 184 This is declined by Socrates, who has too much reverence for the great Parmenides lightly to attack him. [We shall find that he returns to the doctrine of rest in the Sophist: but at present he does not wish to be diverted from his main purpose, which is, to deliver Theaetetus of his conception of knowledge.] He proceeds to interrogate him further. When he says that 'knowledge is perception,' with what does he perceive? The first answer is, that he perceives sights with the eye, and sounds with the ear. This leads Socrates to make the reflection that nice distinctions of words are sometimes pedantic, but sometimes necessary; and he proposes in this case to substitute the word 'through' for 'with.' For the senses are not like the Trojan warriors in the horse, but
- 185 have a common centre of perception, in which they all meet. This common principle is able to compare them with one another, and must therefore be distinct from them (cp. Rep. vii. 523, 524). And as there are facts of sense which are perceived through the organs of the body, there are also mathematical and other abstractions, such as sameness and difference, likeness and unlikeness,
- 186 which the soul perceives by herself. Being is the most universal of these abstractions. The good and the beautiful are abstractions of another kind, which exist in relation and which above all others the mind perceives in herself, comparing within her past, present, and future. For example; we know a thing to be hard or soft by the touch, of which the perception is given at birth to men and animals. But the essence of hardness or softness, or the fact that this hardness is, and is the opposite of softness, is slowly learned by reflection and experience. Mere perception does not reach being, and therefore fails of truth; and therefore has no share in knowledge. But if so, knowledge is not perception.
- 187 What then is knowledge? The mind, when occupied by herself with being, is said to have opinion—shall we say that 'Knowledge is true opinion'? But still an old difficulty recurs; we ask ourselves, 'How is false opinion possible?' This difficulty may be stated as follows:—

*Theaetetus.* knowing you both, I fail to identify the impression and the object.

ANALYSIS. But there could be no error when perception and knowledge correspond.

The waxen block in the heart of a man's soul, as I may say in the words of Homer, who played upon the words *κῆρ* and *κηρός*, may be smooth and deep, and large enough, and then the signs are clearly marked and lasting, and do not get confused. But in the 'hairy heart,' as the all-wise poet sings, when the wax is muddy or hard or moist, there is a corresponding confusion and want of retentiveness; in the muddy and impure there is indistinctness, and 195 still more in the hard, for there the impressions have no depth of wax, and in the moist they are too soon effaced. Yet greater is the indistinctness when they are all jolted together in a little soul, which is narrow and has no room. These are the sort of natures which have false opinion; from stupidity they see and hear and think amiss; and this is falsehood and ignorance. Error, then, is a confusion of thought and sense.

Theaetetus is delighted with this explanation. But Socrates has no sooner found the new solution than he sinks into a fit of despondency. For an objection occurs to him:—May there not be errors where there is no confusion of mind and sense? e.g. in numbers. No one can confuse the man whom he has in his 196 thoughts with the horse which he has in his thoughts, but he may err in the addition of five and seven. And observe that these are purely mental conceptions. Thus we are involved once more in the dilemma of saying, either that there is no such thing as false opinion, or that a man knows what he does not know.

We are at our wit's end, and may therefore be excused for making a bold diversion. All this time we have been repeating the words 'know,' 'understand,' yet we do not know what knowledge is. 'Why, Socrates, how can you argue at all without using them?' Nay, but the true hero of dialectic would have forbidden 197 me to use them until I had explained them. And I must explain them now. The verb 'to know' has two senses, to have and to possess knowledge, and I distinguish 'having' from 'possessing.' A man may possess a garment which he does not wear; or he may have wild birds in an aviary; these in one sense he possesses, and in another he has none of them. Let this aviary be an image of the mind, as the waxen block was; when we are

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS.

young, the aviary is empty; after a time the birds are put in: for under this figure we may describe different forms of knowledge;—there are some of them in groups, and some single,  
198 which are flying about everywhere; and let us suppose a hunt after the science of odd and even, or some other science. The possession of the birds is clearly not the same as the having them in the hand. And the original chase of them is not the same as taking them in the hand when they are already caged.

199 This distinction between use and possession saves us from the absurdity of supposing that we do not know what we know, because we may know in one sense, i. e. possess, what we do not know in another, i. e. use. But have we not escaped one difficulty only to encounter a greater? For how can the exchange of two kinds of knowledge ever become false opinion? As well might we suppose that ignorance could make a man know, or that blindness could make him see. Theaetetus suggests that in the aviary there may be flying about mock birds, or forms of ignorance, and we put forth our hands and grasp ignorance, when we are intending  
200 to grasp knowledge. But how can he who knows the forms of knowledge and the forms of ignorance imagine one to be the other? Is there some other form of knowledge which distinguishes them? and another, and another? Thus we go round and round in a circle and make no progress.

All this confusion arises out of our attempt to explain false opinion without having explained knowledge. What then is knowledge? Theaetetus repeats that knowledge is true opinion.  
201 But this seems to be refuted by the instance of orators and judges. For surely the orator cannot convey a true knowledge of crimes at which the judges were not present; he can only persuade them, and the judge may form a true opinion and truly judge. But if true opinion were knowledge they could not have judged without knowledge.

Once more. Theaetetus offers a definition which he has heard: Knowledge is true opinion accompanied by definition or explanation. Socrates has had a similar dream, and has further heard  
202 that the first elements are names only, and that definition or explanation begins when they are combined; the letters are  
203 unknown, the syllables or combinations are known. But this new hypothesis when tested by the letters of the alphabet is

*Theaetetus.* found to break down. The first syllable of Socrates' name is SO.  
 ANALYSIS. But what is SO? Two letters, S and O, a sibilant and a vowel, of which no further explanation can be given. And how can any one be ignorant of either of them, and yet know both of them? There is, however, another alternative:—We may suppose that the syllable has a separate form or idea distinct from the letters or parts. The all of the parts may not be the whole. Theaetetus is very much inclined to adopt this suggestion, but when inter- 204  
 gated by Socrates he is unable to draw any distinction between the whole and all the parts. And if the syllables have no parts, 205  
 then they are those original elements of which there is no explanation. But how can the syllable be known if the letter remains unknown? In learning to read as children, we are first 206  
 taught the letters and then the syllables. And in music, the notes, which are the letters, have a much more distinct meaning to us than the combination of them.

Once more, then, we must ask the meaning of the statement, that 'Knowledge is right opinion, accompanied by explanation or definition.' Explanation may mean, (1) the reflection or expression of a man's thoughts—but every man who is not deaf and dumb is able to express his thoughts—or (2) the enumeration of the elements of which anything is composed. A man may have 207  
 a true opinion about a waggon, but then, and then only, has he knowledge of a waggon when he is able to enumerate the hundred planks of Hesiod. Or he may know the syllables of the name Theaetetus, but not the letters; yet not until he knows both can he be said to have knowledge as well as opinion. But on the other hand he may know the syllable 'The' in the name Theaetetus, yet he may be mistaken about the same syllable in the name 208  
 Theodorus, and in learning to read we often make such mistakes. And even if he could write out all the letters and syllables of your name in order, still he would only have right opinion. Yet there may be a third meaning of the definition, besides the image or expression of the mind, and the enumeration of the elements, viz. (3) perception of difference.

For example, I may see a man who has eyes, nose, and mouth; 209  
 —that will not distinguish him from any other man. Or he may have a snub-nose and prominent eyes;—that will not distinguish him from myself and you and others who are like me. But

*Theaetetus.*

ANALYSIS

when I see a certain kind of snub-nosedness, then I recognize Theaetetus. And having this sign of difference, I have knowledge. But have I knowledge or opinion of this difference? If I have only opinion I have not knowledge; if I have knowledge we assume  
210 a disputed term; for knowledge will have to be defined as right opinion with knowledge of difference.

And so, Theaetetus, knowledge is neither perception nor true opinion, nor yet definition accompanying true opinion. And I have shown that the children of your brain are not worth rearing. Are you still in labour, or have you brought all you have to say about knowledge to the birth? If you have any more thoughts, you will be the better for having got rid of these; or if you have none, you will be the better for not fancying that you know what you do not know. Observe the limits of my art, which, like my mother's, is an art of midwifery; I do not pretend to compare with the good and wise of this and other ages.

And now I go to meet Meletus at the porch of the King Archon; but to-morrow I shall hope to see you again, Theodorus, at this place.

---

I. The saying of Theaetetus, that 'Knowledge is sensible perception,' may be assumed to be a current philosophical opinion of the age. 'The ancients,' as Aristotle (*De Anim.* iii. 3) says, citing a verse of Empedocles, 'affirmed knowledge to be the same as perception.' We may now examine these words, first, with reference to their place in the history of philosophy, and secondly, in relation to modern speculations.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

(a) In the age of Socrates the mind was passing from the object to the subject. The same impulse which a century before had led men to form conceptions of the world, now led them to frame general notions of the human faculties and feelings, such as memory, opinion, and the like. The simplest of these is sensation, or sensible perception, by which Plato seems to mean the generalized notion of feelings and impressions of sense, without determining whether they are conscious or not.

The theory that 'Knowledge is sensible perception' is the antithesis of that which derives knowledge from the mind (*Theaet.*

*Theaetetus.* 185), or which assumes the existence of ideas independent of the mind (*Parm.* 134). Yet from their extreme abstraction these theories do not represent the opposite poles of thought in the same way that the corresponding differences would in modern philosophy. The most ideal and the most sensational have a tendency to pass into one another; Heracleitus, like his great successor Hegel, has both aspects. The Eleatic isolation of Being and the Megarian or Cynic isolation of individuals are placed in the same class by Plato (*Soph.* 251 C, D); and the same principle which is the symbol of motion to one mind is the symbol of rest to another. The Atomists, who are sometimes regarded as the Materialists of Plato, denied the reality of sensation. And in the ancient as well as the modern world there were reactions from theory to experience, from ideas to sense. This is a point of view from which the philosophy of sensation presented great attraction to the ancient thinker. Amid the conflict of ideas and the variety of opinions, the impression of sense remained certain and uniform. Hardness, softness, cold, heat, &c. are not absolutely the same to different persons (cp. 171 D), but the art of measuring could at any rate reduce them all to definite natures (*Rep.* x. 602 D). Thus the doctrine that knowledge is perception supplies or seems to supply a firm standing ground. Like the other notions of the earlier Greek philosophy, it was held in a very simple way, without much basis of reasoning, and without suggesting the questions which naturally arise in our own minds on the same subject.

(β) The fixedness of impressions of sense furnishes a link of connection between ancient and modern philosophy. The modern thinker often repeats the parallel axiom, 'All knowledge is experience.' He means to say that the outward and not the inward is both the original source and the final criterion of truth, because the outward can be observed and analyzed; the inward is only known by external results, and is dimly perceived by each man for himself. In what does this differ from the saying of Theaetetus? Chiefly in this:—that the modern term 'experience,' while implying a point of departure in sense and a return to sense, also includes all the processes of reasoning and imagination which have intervened. The necessary connexion between them by no means affords a measure of the relative degree of importance

which is to be ascribed to either element. For the inductive portion of any science may be small, as in mathematics or ethics, compared with that which the mind has attained by reasoning and reflection on a very few facts. *Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

II. The saying that 'All knowledge is sensation' is identified by Plato with the Protagorean thesis that 'Man is the measure of all things.' The interpretation which Protagoras himself is supposed to give of these latter words is: 'Things are to me as they appear to me, and to you as they appear to you.' But there remains still an ambiguity both in the text and in the explanation, which has to be cleared up. Did Protagoras merely mean to assert the relativity of knowledge to the human mind? or did he mean to deny that there is an objective standard of truth?

These two questions have not been always clearly distinguished; the relativity of knowledge has been sometimes confounded with uncertainty. The untutored mind is apt to suppose that objects exist independently of the human faculties, because they really exist independently of the faculties of any individual. In the same way, knowledge appears to be a body of truths stored up in books, which when once ascertained are independent of the discoverer. Further consideration shows us that these truths are not really independent of the mind; there is an adaptation of one to the other, of the eye to the object of sense, of the mind to the conception. There would be no world, if there neither were nor ever had been any one to perceive the world. A slight effort of reflection enables us to understand this; but no effort of reflection will enable us to pass beyond the limits of our own faculties, or to imagine the relation or adaptation of objects to the mind to be different from that of which we have experience. There are certain laws of language and logic to which we are compelled to conform, and to which our ideas naturally adapt themselves; and we can no more get rid of them than we can cease to be ourselves. The absolute and infinite, whether explained as self-existence, or as the totality of human thought, or as the Divine nature, if known to us at all, cannot escape from the category of relation.

But because knowledge is subjective or relative to the mind, we are not to suppose that we are therefore deprived of any of the



*Theaetetus*. degenerated a hundred years later. There is nothing in the fragments of Heracleitus which at all justifies Plato's account of him. His philosophy may be resolved into two elements—first, change, secondly, law or measure pervading the change: these he saw everywhere, and often expressed in strange mythological symbols. But he has no analysis of sensible perception such as Plato attributes to him; nor is there any reason to suppose that he pushed his philosophy into that absolute negation in which Heracliteanism was sunk in the age of Plato. He never said that 'change means every sort of change;' and he expressly distinguished between 'the general and particular understanding.' Like a poet, he surveyed the elements of mythology, nature, thought, which lay before him, and sometimes by the light of genius he saw or seemed to see a mysterious principle working behind them. But as has been the case with other great philosophers, and with Plato and Aristotle themselves, what was really permanent and original could not be understood by the next generation, while a perverted logic carried out his chance expressions with an illogical consistency. His simple and noble thoughts, like those of the great Eleatic, soon degenerated into a mere strife of words. And when thus reduced to mere words, they seem to have exercised a far wider influence in the cities of Ionia (where the people 'were mad about them') than in the life-time of Heracleitus—a phenomenon which, though at first sight singular, is not without a parallel in the history of philosophy and theology.

It is this perverted form of the Heraclitean philosophy which is supposed to effect the final overthrow of Protagorean sensationalism. For if all things are changing at every moment, in all sorts of ways, then there is nothing fixed or defined at all, and therefore no sensible perception, nor any true word by which that or anything else can be described. Of course Protagoras would not have admitted the justice of this argument any more than Heracleitus would have acknowledged the 'uneducated fanatics' who appealed to his writings. He might have said, 'The excellent Socrates has first confused me with Heracleitus, and Heracleitus with his Ephesian successors, and has then disproved the existence both of knowledge and sensation. But I am not responsible for what I never said, nor will I admit

that my common-sense account of knowledge can be overthrown by unintelligible Heraclitean paradoxes.' *Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

IV. Still at the bottom of the arguments there remains a truth, that knowledge is something more than sensible perception ;— this alone would not distinguish man from a tadpole. The absoluteness of sensations' at each moment destroys the very consciousness of sensations (cp. *Phileb.* 21 D), or the power of comparing them. The senses are not mere holes in a 'Trojan horse,' but the organs of a presiding nature, in which they meet. A great advance has been made in psychology when the senses are recognized as organs of sense, and we are admitted to see or feel 'through them' and not 'by them,' a distinction of words which, as Socrates observes, is by no means pedantic. A still further step has been made when the most abstract notions, such as Being and Not-being, sameness and difference, unity and plurality, are acknowledged to be the creations of the mind herself, working upon the feelings or impressions of sense. In this manner Plato describes the process of acquiring them, in the words (186 D) 'Knowledge consists not in the feelings or affections (*παθήμασι*), but in the process of reasoning about them (*συλλογισμῷ*).' Here, as in the *Parmenides* (132 A), he means something not really different from generalization. As in the *Sophist*, he is laying the foundation of a rational psychology, which is to supersede the Platonic reminiscence of Ideas as well as the Eleatic Being and the individualism of Megarians and Cynics.

V. Having rejected the doctrine that 'Knowledge is perception,' we now proceed to look for a definition of knowledge in the sphere of opinion. But here we are met by a singular difficulty : How is false opinion possible ? For we must either know or not know that which is presented to the mind or to sense. We of course should answer at once : 'No ; the alternative is not necessary, for there may be degrees of knowledge ; and we may know and have forgotten, or we may be learning, or we may have a general but not a particular knowledge, or we may know but not be able to explain ;' and many other ways may be imagined in which we know and do not know at the same time. But these answers belong to a later stage of metaphysical discussion ; whereas the difficulty in question naturally arises owing to the childhood of

*Theaetetus.* the human mind, like the parallel difficulty respecting Not-being. Men had only recently arrived at the notion of opinion; they could not at once define the true and pass beyond into the false. The very word *δόξα* was full of ambiguity, being sometimes, as in the Eleatic philosophy, applied to the sensible world, and again used in the more ordinary sense of opinion. There is no connexion between sensible appearance and probability, and yet both of them met in the word *δόξα*, and could hardly be disengaged from one another in the mind of the Greek living in the fifth or fourth century B.C. To this was often added, as at the end of the fifth book of the Republic, the idea of relation, which is equally distinct from either of them; also a fourth notion, the conclusion of the dialectical process, the making up of the mind after she has been 'talking to herself' (Theat. 190).

INTRODUC-  
TION.

We are not then surprised that the sphere of opinion and of Not-being should be a dusky, half-lighted place (Rep. v. p. 478), belonging neither to the old world of sense and imagination, nor to the new world of reflection and reason. Plato attempts to clear up this darkness. In his accustomed manner he passes from the lower to the higher, without omitting the intermediate stages. This appears to be the reason why he seeks for the definition of knowledge first in the sphere of opinion. Hereafter we shall find that something more than opinion is required.

False opinion is explained by Plato at first as a confusion of mind and sense, which arises when the impression on the mind does not correspond to the impression made on the senses. It is obvious that this explanation (supposing the distinction between impressions on the mind and impressions on the senses to be admitted) does not account for all forms of error; and Plato has excluded himself from the consideration of the greater number, by designedly omitting the intermediate processes of learning and forgetting; nor does he include fallacies in the use of language or erroneous inferences. But he is struck by one possibility of error, which is not covered by his theory, viz. errors in arithmetic. For in numbers and calculation there is no combination of thought and sense, and yet errors may often happen. Hence he is led to discard the explanation which might nevertheless have been supposed to hold good (for anything which he says to the contrary) as a rationale of error, in the case of facts derived from sense.

Another attempt is made to explain false opinion by assigning to error a sort of positive existence. But error or ignorance is essentially negative—a not-knowing; if we knew an error, we should be no longer in error. We may veil our difficulty under figures of speech, but these, although telling arguments with the multitude, can never be the real foundation of a system of psychology. Only they lead us to dwell upon mental phenomena which if expressed in an abstract form would not be realized by us at all. The figure of the mind receiving impressions is one of those images which have rooted themselves for ever in language. It may or may not be a 'gracious aid' to thought; but it cannot be got rid of. The other figure of the enclosure is also remarkable as affording the first hint of universal all-pervading ideas,—a notion further carried out in the Sophist. This is implied in the birds, some in flocks, some solitary, which fly about anywhere and everywhere. Plato discards both figures, as not really solving the question which to us appears so simple: 'How do we make mistakes?' The failure of the enquiry seems to show that we should return to knowledge, and begin with that; and we may afterwards proceed, with a better hope of success, to the examination of opinion.

But is true opinion really distinct from knowledge? The difference between these he seeks to establish by an argument, which to us appears singular and unsatisfactory. The existence of true opinion is proved by the rhetoric of the law courts, which cannot give knowledge, but may give true opinion. The rhetorician cannot put the judge or juror in possession of all the facts which prove an act of violence, but he may truly persuade them of the commission of such an act. Here the idea of true opinion seems to be a right conclusion from imperfect knowledge. But the correctness of such an opinion will be purely accidental; and is really the effect of one man, who has the means of knowing, persuading another who has not. Plato would have done better if he had said that true opinion was a contradiction in terms.

Assuming the distinction between knowledge and opinion, Theaetetus, in answer to Socrates, proceeds to define knowledge as true opinion, with definite or rational explanation. This Socrates identifies with another and different theory, of those who assert that knowledge first begins with a proposition.

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

The elements may be perceived by sense, but they are names, and cannot be defined. When we assign to them some predicate, they first begin to have a meaning (*ὀνομάτων συμπλοκὴ λόγου οὐσία*). This seems equivalent to saying, that the individuals of sense become the subject of knowledge when they are regarded as they are in nature in relation to other individuals.

Yet we feel a difficulty in following this new hypothesis. For must not opinion be equally expressed in a proposition? The difference between true and false opinion is not the difference between the particular and the universal, but between the true universal and the false. Thought may be as much at fault as sight. When we place individuals under a class, or assign to them attributes, this is not knowledge, but a very rudimentary process of thought; the first generalization of all, without which language would be impossible. And has Plato kept altogether clear of a confusion, which the analogous word *λόγος* tends to create, of a proposition and a definition? And is not the confusion increased by the use of the analogous term 'elements,' or 'letters'? For there is no real resemblance between the relation of letters to a syllable, and of the terms to a proposition.

Plato, in the spirit of the Megarian philosophy, soon discovers a flaw in the explanation. For how can we know a compound of which the simple elements are unknown to us? Can two unknowns make a known? Can a whole be something different from the parts? The answer of experience is that they can; for we may know a compound, which we are unable to analyze into its elements; and all the parts, when united, may be more than all the parts separated: e.g. the number four, or any other number, is more than the units which are contained in it; any chemical compound is more than and different from the simple elements. But ancient philosophy in this, as in many other instances, proceeding by the path of mental analysis, was perplexed by doubts which warred against the plainest facts.

Three attempts to explain the new definition of knowledge still remain to be considered. They all of them turn on the explanation of *λόγος*. The first account of the meaning of the word is the reflection of thought in speech—a sort of nominalism: 'La science est une langue bien faite.' But anybody who is not dumb can say what he thinks; therefore mere speech cannot be knowledge.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

And yet we may observe, that there is in this explanation an element of truth which is not recognized by Plato; viz. that truth and thought are inseparable from language, although mere expression in words is not truth. The second explanation of λόγος is the enumeration of the elementary parts of the complex whole. But this is only definition accompanied with right opinion, and does not yet attain to the certainty of knowledge. Plato does not mention the greater objection, which is, that the enumeration of particulars is endless; such a definition would be based on no principle, and would not help us at all in gaining a common idea. The third is the best explanation,—the possession of a characteristic mark, which seems to answer to the logical definition by genus and difference. But this, again, is equally necessary for right opinion; and we have already determined, although not on very satisfactory grounds, that knowledge must be distinguished from opinion. A better distinction is drawn between them in the *Timaeus* (p. 51 E). They might be opposed as philosophy and rhetoric, and as conversant respectively with necessary and contingent matter. But no true idea of the nature of either of them, or of their relation to one another, could be framed until science obtained a content. The ancient philosophers in the age of Plato thought of science only as pure abstraction, and to this opinion stood in no relation.

Like *Theaetetus*, we have attained to no definite result. But an interesting phase of ancient philosophy has passed before us. And the negative result is not to be despised. For on certain subjects, and in certain states of knowledge, the work of negation or clearing the ground must go on, perhaps for a generation, before the new structure can begin to rise. Plato saw the necessity of combating the illogical logic of the Megarians and Eristics. For the completion of the edifice, he makes preparation in the *Theaetetus*, and crowns the work in the *Sophist*.

Many (1) fine expressions, and (2) remarks full of wisdom, (3) also germs of a metaphysic of the future, are scattered up and down in the dialogue. Such, for example, as (1) the comparison of *Theaetetus*' progress in learning to the 'noiseless flow of a river of oil'; the satirical touch, 'flavouring a sauce or fawning speech'; or the remarkable expression, 'full of impure dialectic'; or the lively images under which the argument is described,—'the flood

*Theaetetus.* of arguments pouring in,' the fresh discussions 'bursting in like a band of revellers.' (2) As illustrations of the second head, may be cited the remark of Socrates, that 'distinctions of words, although sometimes pedantic, are also necessary'; or the fine touch in the character of the lawyer, that 'dangers came upon him when the tenderness of youth was unequal to them'; or the description of the manner in which the spirit is broken in a wicked man who listens to reproof until he becomes like a child; or the punishment of the wicked, which is not physical suffering, but the perpetual companionship of evil (cp. Gorgias); or the saying, often repeated by Aristotle and others, that 'philosophy begins in wonder, for Iris is the child of Thaumias'; or the superb contempt with which the philosopher takes down the pride of wealthy landed proprietors by comparison of the whole earth. (3) Important metaphysical ideas are: *a.* the conception of thought, as the mind talking to herself; *b.* the notion of a common sense, developed further by Aristotle, and the explicit declaration, that the mind gains her conceptions of Being, sameness, number, and the like, from reflection on herself; *c.* the excellent distinction of Theaetetus (which Socrates, speaking with emphasis, 'leaves to grow') between seeing the forms or hearing the sounds of words in a foreign language, and understanding the meaning of them; and *d.* the distinction of Socrates himself between 'having' and 'possessing' knowledge, in which the answer to the whole discussion appears to be contained.

---

There is a difference between ancient and modern psychology, and we have a difficulty in explaining one in the terms of the other. To us the inward and outward sense and the inward and outward worlds of which they are the organs are parted by a wall, and appear as if they could never be confounded. The mind is endued with faculties, habits, instincts, and a personality or consciousness in which they are bound together. Over against these are placed forms, colours, external bodies coming into contact with our own body. We speak of a subject which is ourselves, of an object which is all the rest. These are separable in thought, but united in any act of sensation, reflection, or volition. As there are various degrees in which the mind may enter into or be abstracted from the operations of sense, so there are various points at which

this separation or union may be supposed to occur. And within the sphere of mind the analogy of sense reappears; and we distinguish not only external objects, but objects of will and of knowledge which we contrast with them. These again are comprehended in a higher object, which reunites with the subject. A multitude of abstractions are created by the efforts of successive thinkers which become logical determinations; and they have to be arranged in order, before the scheme of thought is complete. The framework of the human intellect is not the *peculium* of an individual, but the joint work of many who are of all ages and countries. What we are in mind is due, not merely to our physical, but to our mental antecedents which we trace in history, and more especially in the history of philosophy. Nor can mental phenomena be truly explained either by physiology or by the observation of consciousness apart from their history. They have a growth of their own, like the growth of a flower, a tree, a human being. They may be conceived as of themselves constituting a common mind, and having a sort of personal identity in which they coexist.

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

So comprehensive is modern psychology, seeming to aim at constructing anew the entire world of thought. And prior to or simultaneously with this construction a negative process has to be carried on, a clearing away of useless abstractions which we have inherited from the past. Many erroneous conceptions of the mind derived from former philosophies have found their way into language, and we with difficulty disengage ourselves from them. Mere figures of speech have unconsciously influenced the minds of great thinkers. Also there are some distinctions, as, for example, that of the will and of the reason, and of the moral and intellectual faculties, which are carried further than is justified by experience. Any separation of things which we cannot see or exactly define, though it may be necessary, is a fertile source of error. The division of the mind into faculties or powers or virtues is too deeply rooted in language to be got rid of, but it gives a false impression. For if we reflect on ourselves we see that all our faculties easily pass into one another, and are bound together in a single mind or consciousness; but this mental unity is apt to be concealed from us by the distinctions of language.

A profusion of words and ideas has obscured rather than



*Theaetetus*. enlightened mental science. It is hard to say how many fallacies have arisen from the representation of the mind as a box, as a 'tabula rasa,' a book, a mirror, and the like. It is remarkable how Plato in the *Theaetetus*, after having indulged in the figure of the waxen tablet and the decoy, afterwards discards them. The mind is also represented by another class of images, as the spring of a watch, a motive power, a breath, a stream, a succession of points or moments. As Plato remarks in the *Cratylus*, words expressive of motion as well as of rest are employed to describe the faculties and operations of the mind; and in these there is contained another store of fallacies. Some shadow or reflection of the body seems always to adhere to our thoughts about ourselves, and mental processes are hardly distinguished in language from bodily ones. To see or perceive are used indifferently of both; the words intuition, moral sense, common sense, the mind's eye, are figures of speech transferred from one to the other. And many other words used in early poetry or in sacred writings to express the works of mind have a materialistic sound; for old mythology was allied to sense, and the distinction of matter and mind had not as yet arisen. Thus materialism receives an illusive aid from language; and both in philosophy and religion the imaginary figure or association easily takes the place of real knowledge.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Again, there is the illusion of looking into our own minds as if our thoughts or feelings were written down in a book. This is another figure of speech, which might be appropriately termed 'the fallacy of the looking-glass.' We cannot look at the mind unless we have the eye which sees, and we can only look, not into, but out of the mind at the thoughts, words, actions of ourselves and others. What we dimly recognize within us is not experience, but rather the suggestion of an experience, which we may gather, if we will, from the observation of the world. The memory has but a feeble recollection of what we were saying or doing a few weeks or a few months ago, and still less of what we were thinking or feeling. This is one among many reasons why there is so little self-knowledge among mankind; they do not carry with them the thought of what they are or have been. The so-called 'facts of consciousness' are equally evanescent; they are facts which nobody ever saw, and which can neither be

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

defined nor described. Of the three laws of thought the first (All  $A=A$ ) is an identical proposition—that is to say, a mere word or symbol claiming to be a proposition: the two others (Nothing can be  $A$  and not  $A$ , and Everything is either  $A$  or not  $A$ ) are untrue, because they exclude degrees and also the mixed modes and double aspects under which truth is so often presented to us. To assert that man is man is unmeaning; to say that he is free or necessary and cannot be both is a half truth only. These are a few of the entanglements which impede the natural course of human thought. Lastly, there is the fallacy which lies still deeper, of regarding the individual mind apart from the universal, or either, as a self-existent entity apart from the ideas which are contained in them.

In ancient philosophies the analysis of the mind is still rudimentary and imperfect. It naturally began with an effort to disengage the universal from sense—this was the first lifting up of the mist. It wavered between object and subject, passing imperceptibly from one or Being to mind and thought. Appearance in the outward object was for a time indistinguishable from opinion in the subject. At length mankind spoke of knowing as well as of opining or perceiving. But when the word 'knowledge' was found how was it to be explained or defined? It was not an error, it was a step in the right direction, when Protagoras said that 'Man is the measure of all things,' and that 'All knowledge is perception.' This was the subjective which corresponded to the objective 'All is flux.' But the thoughts of men deepened, and soon they began to be aware that knowledge was neither sense, nor yet opinion—with or without explanation; nor the expression of thought, nor the enumeration of parts, nor the addition of characteristic marks. Motion and rest were equally ill adapted to express its nature, although both must in some sense be attributed to it; it might be described more truly as the mind conversing with herself; the discourse of reason; the hymn of dialectic, the science of relations, of ideas, of the so-called arts and sciences, of the one, of the good, of the all:—this is the way along which Plato is leading us in his later dialogues. In its higher signification it was the knowledge, not of men, but of gods, perfect and all sufficing:—like other ideals always passing out of sight, and nevertheless present to the mind of Aristotle as well as Plato, and

*Theætetus.* the reality to which they were both tending. For Aristotle as well as Plato would in modern phraseology have been termed a mystic ; and like him would have defined the higher philosophy to be 'Knowledge of being or essence,'—words to which in our own day we have a difficulty in attaching a meaning.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Yet, in spite of Plato and his followers, mankind have again and again returned to a sensational philosophy. As to some of the early thinkers, amid the fleetings of sensible objects, ideas alone seemed to be fixed, so to a later generation amid the fluctuation of philosophical opinions the only fixed points appeared to be outward objects. Any pretence of knowledge which went beyond them implied logical processes, of the correctness of which they had no assurance and which at best were only probable. The mind, tired of wandering, sought to rest on firm ground ; when the idols of philosophy and language were stripped off, the perception of outward objects alone remained. The ancient Epicureans never asked whether the comparison of these with one another did not involve principles of another kind which were above and beyond them. In like manner the modern inductive philosophy forgot to enquire into the meaning of experience, and did not attempt to form a conception of outward objects apart from the mind, or of the mind apart from them. Soon objects of sense were merged in sensations and feelings, but feelings and sensations were still unanalyzed. At last we return to the doctrine attributed by Plato to Protagoras, that the mind is only a succession of momentary perceptions. At this point the modern philosophy of experience forms an alliance with ancient scepticism.

The higher truths of philosophy and religion are very far removed from sense. Admitting that, like all other knowledge, they are derived from experience, and that experience is ultimately resolvable into facts which come to us through the eye and ear, still their origin is a mere accident which has nothing to do with their true nature. They are universal and unseen ; they belong to all times—past, present, and future. Any worthy notion of mind or reason includes them. The proof of them is, 1st, their comprehensiveness and consistency with one another ; 2ndly, their agreement with history and experience. But sensation is of the present only, is isolated, is and is not in successive moments.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

It takes the passing hour as it comes, following the lead of the eye or ear instead of the command of reason. It is a faculty which man has in common with the animals, and in which he is inferior to many of them. The importance of the senses in us is that they are the apertures of the mind, doors and windows through which we take in and make our own the materials of knowledge. Regarded in any other point of view sensation is of all mental acts the most trivial and superficial. Hence the term 'sensational' is rightly used to express what is shallow in thought and feeling.

We propose in what follows, first of all, like Plato in the *Theaetetus*, to analyse sensation, and secondly to trace the connexion between theories of sensation and a sensational or Epicurean philosophy.

§ I. We, as well as the ancients, speak of the five senses, and of a sense, or common sense, which is the abstraction of them. The term 'sense' is also used metaphorically, both in ancient and modern philosophy, to express the operations of the mind which are immediate or intuitive. Of the five senses, two—the sight and the hearing—are of a more subtle and complex nature, while two others—the smell and the taste—seem to be only more refined varieties of touch. All of them are passive, and by this are distinguished from the active faculty of speech: they receive impressions, but do not produce them, except in so far as they are objects of sense themselves.

Physiology speaks to us of the wonderful apparatus of nerves, muscles, tissues, by which the senses are enabled to fulfil their functions. It traces the connexion, though imperfectly, of the bodily organs with the operations of the mind. Of these latter, it seems rather to know the conditions than the causes. It can prove to us that without the brain we cannot think, and that without the eye we cannot see: and yet there is far more in thinking and seeing than is given by the brain and the eye. It observes the 'concomitant variations' of body and mind. Psychology, on the other hand, treats of the same subject regarded from another point of view. It speaks of the relation of the senses to one another; it shows how they meet the mind; it analyzes the transition from sense to thought. The one describes their

*Theaetetus.* nature as apparent to the outward eye; by the other they are regarded only as the instruments of the mind. It is in this latter point of view that we propose to consider them.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The simplest sensation involves an unconscious or nascent operation of the mind; it implies objects of sense, and objects of sense have differences of form, number, colour. But the conception of an object without us, or the power of discriminating numbers, forms, colours, is not given by the sense, but by the mind. A mere sensation does not attain to distinctness: it is a confused impression, *συγκεχυμένον τι*, as Plato says (*Rep.* vii. 524 B), until number introduces light and order into the confusion. At what point confusion becomes distinctness is a question of degree which cannot be precisely determined. The distant object, the undefined notion, come out into relief as we approach them or attend to them. Or we may assist the analysis by attempting to imagine the world first dawning upon the eye of the infant or of a person newly restored to sight. Yet even with them the mind as well as the eye opens or enlarges. For all three are inseparably bound together—the object would be nowhere and nothing, if not perceived by the sense, and the sense would have no power of distinguishing without the mind.

But prior to objects of sense there is a third nature in which they are contained—that is to say, space, which may be explained in various ways. It is the element which surrounds them; it is the vacuum or void which they leave or occupy when passing from one portion of space to another. It might be described in the language of ancient philosophy, as ‘the Not-being’ of objects. It is a negative idea which in the course of ages has become positive. It is originally derived from the contemplation of the world without us—the boundless earth or sea, the vacant heaven, and is therefore acquired chiefly through the sense of sight: to the blind the conception of space is feeble and inadequate, derived for the most part from touch or from the descriptions of others. At first it appears to be continuous; afterwards we perceive it to be capable of division by lines or points, real or imaginary. By the help of mathematics we form another idea of space, which is altogether independent of experience. Geometry teaches us that the innumerable lines and figures by which space is or may be intersected are absolutely true in all their combinations and

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

consequences. New and unchangeable properties of space are thus developed, which are proved to us in a thousand ways by mathematical reasoning as well as by common experience. Through quantity and measure we are conducted to our simplest and purest notion of matter, which is to the cube or solid what space is to the square or surface. And all our applications of mathematics are applications of our ideas of space to matter. No wonder then that they seem to have a necessary existence to us. Being the simplest of our ideas, space is also the one of which we have the most difficulty in ridding ourselves. Neither can we set a limit to it, for wherever we fix a limit, space is springing up beyond. Neither can we conceive a smallest or indivisible portion of it; for within the smallest there is a smaller still; and even these inconceivable qualities of space, whether the infinite or the infinitesimal, may be made the subject of reasoning and have a certain truth to us.

Whether space exists in the mind or out of it, is a question which has no meaning. We should rather say that without it the mind is incapable of conceiving the body, and therefore of conceiving itself. The mind may be indeed imagined to contain the body, in the same way that Aristotle (partly following Plato) supposes God to be the outer heaven or circle of the universe. But how can the individual mind carry about the universe of space packed up within, or how can separate minds have either a universe of their own or a common universe? In such conceptions there seems to be a confusion of the individual and the universal. To say that we can only have a true idea of ourselves when we deny the reality of that by which we have any idea of ourselves is an absurdity. The earth which is our habitation and 'the starry heaven above' and we ourselves are equally an illusion, if space is only a quality or condition of our minds.

Again, we may compare the truths of space with other truths derived from experience, which seem to have a necessity to us in proportion to the frequency of their recurrence or the truth of the consequences which may be inferred from them. We are thus led to remark that the necessity in our ideas of space on which much stress has been laid, differs in a slight degree only from the necessity which appears to belong to other of our ideas, e.g. weight, motion, and the like. And there is another way in which this

*Theaetetus.* necessity may be explained. We have been taught it, and the truth which we were taught or which we inherited has never been contradicted in all our experience and is therefore confirmed by it. Who can resist an idea which is presented to him in a general form in every moment of his life and of which he finds no instance to the contrary? The greater part of what is sometimes regarded as the *a priori* intuition of space is really the conception of the various geometrical figures of which the properties have been revealed by mathematical analysis. And the certainty of these properties is immeasurably increased to us by our finding that they hold good not only in every instance, but in all the consequences which are supposed to flow from them.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Neither must we forget that our idea of space, like our other ideas, has a history. The Homeric poems contain no word for it; even the later Greek philosophy has not the Kantian notion of space, but only the definite 'place' or 'the infinite.' To Plato, in the *Timaetus*, it is known only as the 'nurse of generation.' When therefore we speak of the necessity of our ideas of space we must remember that this is a necessity which has grown up with the growth of the human mind, and has been made by ourselves. We can free ourselves from the perplexities which are involved in it by ascending to a time in which they did not as yet exist. And when space or time are described as '*a priori* forms or intuitions added to the matter given in sensation,' we should consider that such expressions belong really to the 'pre-historic study' of philosophy, i.e. to the eighteenth century, when men sought to explain the human mind without regard to history or language or the social nature of man.

In every act of sense there is a latent perception of space, of which we only become conscious when objects are withdrawn from it. There are various ways in which we may trace the connexion between them. We may think of space as unresisting matter, and of matter as divided into objects; or of objects again as formed by abstraction into a collective notion of matter, and of matter as rarefied into space. And motion may be conceived as the union of there and not there in space, and force as the materializing or solidification of motion. Space again is the individual and universal in one; or, in other words, a perception and

also a conception. So easily do what are sometimes called our simple ideas pass into one another, and differences of kind resolve themselves into differences of degree.

*Theaetetus*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

Within or behind space there is another abstraction in many respects similar to it—time, the form of the inward, as space is the form of the outward. As we cannot think of outward objects of sense or of outward sensations without space, so neither can we think of a succession of sensations without time. It is the vacancy of thoughts or sensations, as space is the void of outward objects, and we can no more imagine the mind without the one than the world without the other. It is to arithmetic what space is to geometry; or, more strictly, arithmetic may be said to be equally applicable to both. It is defined in our minds, partly by the analogy of space and partly by the recollection of events which have happened to us, or the consciousness of feelings which we are experiencing. Like space, it is without limit, for whatever beginning or end of time we fix, there is a beginning and end before them, and so on without end. We speak of a past, present, and future, and again the analogy of space assists us in conceiving of them as coexistent. When the limit of time is removed there arises in our minds the idea of eternity, which at first, like time itself, is only negative, but gradually, when connected with the world and the divine nature, like the other negative infinity of space, becomes positive. Whether time is prior to the mind and to experience, or coeval with them, is (like the parallel question about space) unmeaning. Like space it has been realized gradually: in the Homeric poems, or even in the Hesiodic cosmogony, there is no more notion of time than of space. The conception of being is more general than either, and might therefore with greater plausibility be affirmed to be a condition or quality of the mind. The *a priori* intuitions of Kant would have been as unintelligible to Plato as his *a priori* *synthetical propositions* to Aristotle. The philosopher of Königsberg supposed himself to be analyzing a necessary mode of thought: he was not aware that he was dealing with a mere abstraction. But now that we are able to trace the gradual developement of ideas through religion, through language, through abstractions, why should we interpose the fiction of time between ourselves and realities? Why should we single out one of these



*Theaetetus.* abstractions to be the *a priori* condition of all the others? It comes last and not first in the order of our thoughts, and is not the condition precedent of them, but the last generalization of them. Nor can any principle be imagined more suicidal to philosophy than to assume that all the truth which we are capable of attaining is seen only through an unreal medium. If all that exists in time is illusion, we may well ask with Plato, 'What becomes of the mind?'

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Leaving the *a priori* conditions of sensation we may proceed to consider acts of sense. These admit of various degrees of duration or intensity; they admit also of a greater or less extension from one object, which is perceived directly, to many which are perceived indirectly or in a less degree, and to the various associations of the object which are latent in the mind. In general the greater the intension the less the extension of them. The simplest sensation implies some relation of objects to one another, some position in space, some relation to a previous or subsequent sensation. The acts of seeing and hearing may be almost unconscious and may pass away unnoted; they may also leave an impression behind them or power of recalling them. If, after seeing an object we shut our eyes, the object remains dimly seen in the same or about the same place, but with form and lineaments half filled up. This is the simplest act of memory. And as we cannot see one thing without at the same time seeing another, different objects hang together in recollection, and when we call for one the other quickly follows. To think of the place in which we have last seen a thing is often the best way of recalling it to the mind. Hence memory is dependent on association. The act of recollection may be compared to the sight of an object at a great distance which we have previously seen near and seek to bring near to us in thought. Memory is to sense as dreaming is to waking; and like dreaming has a wayward and uncertain power of recalling impressions from the past.

Thus begins the passage from the outward to the inward sense. But as yet there is no conception of a universal—the mind only remembers the individual object or objects, and is always attaching to them some colour or association of sense. The power of recollection seems to depend on the intensity or

largeness of the perception, or on the strength of some emotion with which it is inseparably connected. This is the natural memory which is allied to sense, such as children appear to have and barbarians and animals. It is necessarily limited in range, and its limitation is its strength. In later life, when the mind has become crowded with names, acts, feelings, images innumerable, we acquire by education another memory of system and arrangement which is both stronger and weaker than the first—weaker in the recollection of sensible impressions as they are represented to us by eye or ear—stronger by the natural connexion of ideas with objects or with one another. And many of the notions which form a part of the train of our thoughts are hardly realized by us at the time, but, like numbers or algebraical symbols, are used as signs only, thus lightening the labour of recollection.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

And now we may suppose that numerous images present themselves to the mind, which begins to act upon them and to arrange them in various ways. Besides the impression of external objects present with us or just absent from us, we have a dimmer conception of other objects which have disappeared from our immediate recollection and yet continue to exist in us. The mind is full of fancies which are passing to and fro before it. Some feeling or association calls them up, and they are uttered by the lips. This is the first rudimentary imagination, which may be truly described in the language of Hobbes, as 'decaying sense,' an expression which may be applied with equal truth to memory as well. For memory and imagination, though we sometimes oppose them, are nearly allied; the difference between them seems chiefly to lie in the activity of the one compared with the passivity of the other. The sense decaying in memory receives a flash of light or life from imagination. Dreaming is a link of connexion between them; for in dreaming we feebly recollect and also feebly imagine at one and the same time. When reason is asleep the lower part of the mind wanders at will amid the images which have been received from without, the intelligent element retires, and the sensual or sensuous takes its place. And so in the first efforts of imagination reason is latent or set aside; and images, in part disorderly, but also having a unity (however imperfect) of their

*Theaetetus.* own, pour like a flood over the mind. And if we could penetrate  
 INTO- into the heads of animals we should probably find that their  
 DUC- intelligence, or the state of what in them is analogous to our  
 TION. intelligence, is of this nature.

Thus far we have been speaking of men, rather in the points in which they resemble animals than in the points in which they differ from them. The animal too has memory in various degrees, and the elements of imagination, if, as appears to be the case, he dreams. How far their powers or instincts are educated by the circumstances of their lives or by intercourse with one another or with mankind, we cannot precisely tell. They, like ourselves, have the physical inheritance of form, scent, hearing, sight, and other qualities or instincts. But they have not the mental inheritance of thoughts and ideas handed down by tradition, 'the slow additions that build up the mind' of the human race. And language, which is the great educator of mankind, is wanting in them; whereas in us language is ever present—even in the infant the latent power of naming is almost immediately observable. And therefore the description which has been already given of the nascent power of the faculties is in reality an anticipation. For simultaneous with their growth in man a growth of language must be supposed. The child of two years old sees the fire once and again, and the feeble observation of the same recurring object is associated with the feeble utterance of the name by which he is taught to call it. Soon he learns to utter the name when the object is no longer there, but the desire or imagination of it is present to him. At first in every use of the word there is a colour of sense, an indistinct picture of the object which accompanies it. But in later years he sees in the name only the universal or class word, and the more abstract the notion becomes, the more vacant is the image which is presented to him. Henceforward all the operations of his mind, including the perceptions of sense, are a synthesis of sensations, words, conceptions. In seeing or hearing or looking or listening the sensible impression prevails over the conception and the word. In reflection the process is reversed - the outward object fades away into nothingness, the name or the conception or both together are everything. Language, like number, is intermediate between the two, partaking of the definiteness of

the outer and of the universality of the inner world. For logic teaches us that every word is really a universal, and only condescends by the help of position or circumlocution to become the expression of individuals or particulars. And sometimes by using words as symbols we are able to give a 'local habitation and a name' to the infinite and inconceivable.

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

Thus we see that no line can be drawn between the powers of sense and of reflection—they pass imperceptibly into one another. We may indeed distinguish between the seeing and the closed eye—between the sensation and the recollection of it. But this distinction carries us a very little way, for recollection is present in sight as well as sight in recollection. There is no impression of sense which does not simultaneously recall differences of form, number, colour, and the like. Neither is such a distinction applicable at all to our internal bodily sensations, which give no sign of themselves when unaccompanied with pain, and even when we are most conscious of them, have often no assignable place in the human frame. Who can divide the nerves or great nervous centres from the mind which uses them? Who can separate the pains and pleasures of the mind from the pains and pleasures of the body? The words 'inward and outward,' 'active and passive,' 'mind and body,' are best conceived by us as differences of degree passing into differences of kind, and at one time and under one aspect acting in harmony and then again opposed. They introduce a system and order into the knowledge of our being; and yet, like many other general terms, are often in advance of our actual analysis or observation.

According to some writers the inward sense is only the fading away or imperfect realization of the outward. But this leaves out of sight one half of the phenomenon. For the mind is not only withdrawn from the world of sense but introduced to a higher world of thought and reflection, in which, like the outward sense, she is trained and educated. By use the outward sense becomes keener and more intense, especially when confined within narrow limits. The savage with little or no thought has a quicker discernment of the track than the civilized man; in like manner the dog, having the help of scent as well as of sight, is superior to the savage. By use again the inward thought becomes more defined and distinct; what was at first an effort is made easy by the

*Theaetetus.* natural instrumentality of language, and the mind learns to grasp universals with no more exertion than is required for the sight of an outward object. There is a natural connexion and arrangement of them, like the association of objects in a landscape. Just as a note or two of music suffices to recall a whole piece to the musician's or composer's mind, so a great principle or leading thought suggests and arranges a world of particulars. The power of reflection is not feebler than the faculty of sense, but of a higher and more comprehensive nature. It not only receives the universals of sense, but gives them a new content by comparing and combining them with one another. It withdraws from the seen that it may dwell in the unseen. The sense only presents us with a flat and impenetrable surface : the mind takes the world to pieces and puts it together on a new pattern. The universals which are detached from sense are reconstructed in science. They and not the mere impressions of sense are the truth of the world in which we live ; and (as an argument to those who will only believe ' what they can hold in their hands ' ) we may further observe that they are the source of our power over it. To say that the outward sense is stronger than the inward is like saying that the arm of the workman is stronger than the constructing or directing mind.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Returning to the senses we may briefly consider two questions—first their relation to the mind, secondly, their relation to outward objects :—

1. The senses are not merely ' holes set in a wooden horse ' (*Theaet.* 184 D), but instruments of the mind with which they are organically connected. There is no use of them without some use of words—some natural or latent logic—some previous experience or observation. Sensation, like all other mental processes, is complex and relative, though apparently simple. The senses mutually confirm and support one another ; it is hard to say how much our impressions of hearing may be affected by those of sight, or how far our impressions of sight may be corrected by the touch, especially in infancy. The confirmation of them by one another cannot of course be given by any one of them. Many intuitions which are inseparable from the act of sense are really the result of complicated reasonings. The most cursory glance at objects enables the experienced eye to judge approximately of their relations and distance, although nothing is impressed upon the

*Theaetetus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

retina except colour, including gradations of light and shade. From these delicate and almost imperceptible differences we seem chiefly to derive our ideas of distance and position. By comparison of what is near with what is distant we learn that the tree, house, river, &c. which are a long way off are objects of a like nature with those which are seen by us in our immediate neighbourhood, although the actual impression made on the eye is very different in one case and in the other. This is a language of 'large and small letters' (Rep. 2. 368 D), slightly differing in form and exquisitely graduated by distance, which we are learning all our life long, and which we attain in various degrees according to our powers of sight or observation. There is another consideration. The greater or less strain upon the nerves of the eye or ear is communicated to the mind and silently informs the judgment. We have also the use not of one eye only, but of two, which give us a wider range, and help us to discern, by the greater or less acuteness of the angle which the rays of sight form, the distance of an object and its relation to other objects. But we are already passing beyond the limits of our actual knowledge on a subject which has given rise to many conjectures. More important than the addition of another conjecture is the observation, whether in the case of sight or of any other sense, of the great complexity of the causes and the great simplicity of the effect.

The sympathy of the mind and the ear is no less striking than the sympathy of the mind and the eye. Do we not seem to perceive instinctively and as an act of sense the differences of articulate speech and of musical notes? Yet how small a part of speech or of music is produced by the impression of the ear compared with that which is furnished by the mind!

Again : the more refined faculty of sense, as in animals so also in man, seems often to be transmitted by inheritance. Neither must we forget that in the use of the senses, as in his whole nature, man is a social being, who is always being educated by language, habit, and the teaching of other men as well as by his own observation. He knows distance because he is taught it by a more experienced judgment than his own; he distinguishes sounds because he is told to remark them by a person of a more discerning ear. And as we inherit from our parents or other ancestors peculiar powers of sense or feeling, so we improve and

*Theaetetus.* strengthen them, not only by regular teaching, but also by sympathy and communion with other persons.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

2. The second question, namely, that concerning the relation of the mind to external objects, is really a trifling one, though it has been made the subject of a famous philosophy. We may if we like, with Berkeley, resolve objects of sense into sensations; but the change is one of name only, and nothing is gained and something is lost by such a resolution or confusion of them. For we have not really made a single step towards idealism, and any arbitrary inversion of our ordinary modes of speech is disturbing to the mind. The youthful metaphysician is delighted at his marvellous discovery that nothing is, and that what we see or feel is our sensation only: for a day or two the world has a new interest to him; he alone knows the secret which has been communicated to him by the philosopher, that mind is all—when in fact he is going out of his mind in the first intoxication of a great thought. But he soon finds that all things remain as they were—the laws of motion, the properties of matter, the qualities of substances. After having inflicted his theories on any one who is willing to receive them, ‘first on his father and mother, secondly on some other patient listener, thirdly on his dog,’ he finds that he only differs from the rest of mankind in the use of a word. He had once hoped that by getting rid of the solidity of matter he might open a passage to worlds beyond. He liked to think of the world as the representation of the divine nature, and delighted to imagine angels and spirits wandering through space, present in the room in which he is sitting without coming through the door, nowhere and everywhere at the same instant. At length he finds that he has been the victim of his own fancies; he has neither more nor less evidence of the supernatural than he had before. He himself has become unsettled, but the laws of the world remain fixed as at the beginning. He has discovered that his appeal to the fallibility of sense was really an illusion. For whatever uncertainty there may be in the appearances of nature, arises only out of the imperfection or variation of the human senses, or possibly from the deficiency of certain branches of knowledge; when science is able to apply her tests, the uncertainty is at an end. We are apt sometimes to think that moral and metaphysical philosophy are lowered by the influence which is exercised over them by physical science.

But any interpretation of nature by physical science is far in advance of such idealism. The philosophy of Berkeley, while giving unbounded license to the imagination, is still grovelling on the level of sense.

We may, if we please, carry this scepticism a step further, and deny, not only objects of sense, but the continuity of our sensations themselves. We may say with Protagoras and Hume that what is appears, and that what appears appears only to individuals, and to the same individual only at one instant. But then, as Plato asks,—and we must repeat the question,—What becomes of the mind? Experience tells us by a thousand proofs that our sensations of colour, taste, and the like, are the same as they were an instant ago—that the act which we are performing one minute is continued by us in the next—and also supplies abundant proof that the perceptions of other men are, speaking generally, the same or nearly the same with our own. After having slowly and laboriously in the course of ages gained a conception of a whole and parts, of the constitution of the mind, of the relation of man to God and nature, imperfect indeed, but the best we can, we are asked to return again to the ‘beggarly elements’ of ancient scepticism, and acknowledge only atoms and sensations devoid of life or unity. Why should we not go a step further still and doubt the existence of the senses or of all things? We are but ‘such stuff as dreams are made of;’ for we have left ourselves no instruments of thought by which we can distinguish man from the animals, or conceive of the existence even of a mollusc. And observe, this extreme scepticism has been allowed to spring up among us, not, like the ancient scepticism, in an age when nature and language really seemed to be full of illusions, but in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, when men walk in the daylight of inductive science.

The attractiveness of such speculations arises out of their true nature not being perceived. They are veiled in graceful language; they are not pushed to extremes; they stop where the human mind is disposed also to stop—short of a manifest absurdity. Their inconsistency is not observed by their authors or by mankind in general, who are equally inconsistent themselves. They leave on the mind a pleasing sense of wonder and novelty; in youth they seem to have a natural affinity to one class of persons



*Theætelus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

as poetry has to another; but in later life either we drift back into common sense, or we make them the starting-points of a higher philosophy.

We are often told that we should enquire into all things before we accept them;—with what limitations is this true? For we cannot use our senses without admitting that we have them, or think without presupposing that there is in us a power of thought, or affirm that all knowledge is derived from experience without implying that this first principle of knowledge is prior to experience. The truth seems to be that we begin with the natural use of the mind as of the body, and we seek to describe this as well as we can. We eat before we know the nature of digestion; we think before we know the nature of reflection. As our knowledge increases, our perception of the mind enlarges also. We cannot indeed get beyond facts, but neither can we draw any line which separates facts from ideas. And the mind is not something separate from them but included in them, and they in the mind, both having a distinctness and individuality of their own. To reduce our conception of mind to a succession of feelings and sensations is like the attempt to view a wide prospect by inches through a microscope, or to calculate a period of chronology by minutes. The mind ceases to exist when it loses its continuity, which though far from being its highest determination, is yet necessary to any conception of it. Even an inanimate nature cannot be adequately represented as an endless succession of states or conditions.

§ II. Another division of the subject has yet to be considered: Why should the doctrine that knowledge is sensation, in ancient times, or of sensationalism or materialism in modern times, be allied to the lower rather than to the higher view of ethical philosophy? At first sight the nature and origin of knowledge appear to be wholly disconnected from ethics and religion, nor can we deny that the ancient Stoics were materialists, or that the materialist doctrines prevalent in modern times have been associated with great virtues, or that both religious and philosophical idealism have not unfrequently parted company with practice. Still upon the whole it must be admitted that the higher standard of duty has gone hand in hand with the higher conception of knowledge.

It is Protagoras who is seeking to adapt himself to the opinions of the world; it is Plato who rises above them: the one maintaining that all knowledge is sensation; the other basing the virtues on the idea of good. The reason of this phenomenon has now to be examined.

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

By those who rest knowledge immediately upon sense, that explanation of human action is deemed to be the truest which is nearest to sense. As knowledge is reduced to sensation, so virtue is reduced to feeling, happiness or good to pleasure. The different virtues—the various characters which exist in the world—are the disguises of self-interest. Human nature is dried up; there is no place left for imagination, or in any higher sense for religion. Ideals of a whole, or of a state, or of a law of duty, or of a divine perfection, are out of place in an Epicurean philosophy. The very terms in which they are expressed are suspected of having no meaning. Man is to bring himself back as far as he is able to the condition of a rational beast. He is to limit himself to the pursuit of pleasure, but of this he is to make a far-sighted calculation;—he is to be rationalized, secularized, animalized: or he is to be an amiable sceptic, better than his own philosophy, and not falling below the opinions of the world.

Imagination has been called that ‘busy faculty’ which is always intruding upon us in the search after truth. But imagination is also that higher power by which we rise above ourselves and the commonplaces of thought and life. The philosophical imagination is another name for reason finding an expression of herself in the outward world. To deprive life of ideals is to deprive it of all higher and comprehensive aims and of the power of imparting and communicating them to others. For men are taught, not by those who are on a level with them, but by those who rise above them, who see the distant hills, who soar into the empyrean. Like a bird in a cage, the mind confined to sense is always being brought back from the higher to the lower, from the wider to the narrower view of human knowledge. It seeks to fly but cannot: instead of aspiring towards perfection, ‘it hovers about this lower world and the earthly nature.’ It loses the religious sense which more than any other seems to take a man out of himself. Weary of asking ‘What is truth?’ it accepts the ‘blind witness of eyes and ears;’ it draws around itself the curtain of the physical world

*Theætetus.* and is satisfied. The strength of a sensational philosophy lies in the ready accommodation of it to the minds of men; many who have been metaphysicians in their youth, as they advance in years are prone to acquiesce in things as they are, or rather appear to be. They are spectators, not thinkers, and the best philosophy is that which requires of them the least amount of mental effort.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

As a lower philosophy is easier to apprehend than a higher, so a lower way of life is easier to follow; and therefore such a philosophy seems to derive a support from the general practice of mankind. It appeals to principles which they all know and recognize: it gives back to them in a generalized form the results of their own experience. To the man of the world they are the quintessence of his own reflections upon life. To follow custom, to have no new ideas or opinions, not to be straining after impossibilities, to enjoy to-day with just so much forethought as is necessary to provide for the morrow, this is regarded by the greater part of the world as the natural way of passing through existence. And many who have lived thus have attained to a lower kind of happiness or equanimity. They have possessed their souls in peace without ever allowing them to wander into the region of religious or political controversy, and without any care for the higher interests of man. But nearly all the good (as well as some of the evil) which has ever been done in this world has been the work of another spirit, the work of enthusiasts and idealists, of apostles and martyrs. The leaders of mankind have not been of the gentle Epicurean type; they have personified ideas; they have sometimes also been the victims of them. But they have always been seeking after a truth or ideal of which they fell short; and have died in a manner disappointed of their hopes that they might lift the human race out of the slough in which they found them. They have done little compared with their own visions and aspirations; but they have done that little, only because they sought to do, and once perhaps thought that they were doing, a great deal more.

The philosophies of Epicurus or Hume give no adequate or dignified conception of the mind. There is no organic unity in a succession of feeling or sensations; no comprehensiveness in an infinity of separate actions. The individual never reflects upon himself as a whole; he can hardly regard one act or part of his

life as the cause or effect of any other act or part. Whether in practice or speculation, he is to himself only in successive instants. To such thinkers, whether in ancient or in modern times, the mind is only the poor recipient of impressions—not the heir of all the ages, or connected with all other minds. It begins again with its own modicum of experience having only such vague conceptions of the wisdom of the past as are inseparable from language and popular opinion. It seeks to explain from the experience of the individual what can only be learned from the history of the world. It has no conception of obligation, duty, conscience—these are to the Epicurean or Utilitarian philosopher only names which interfere with our natural perceptions of pleasure and pain.

There seem then to be several answers to the question, Why the theory that all knowledge is sensation is allied to the lower rather than to the higher view of ethical philosophy:—1st, Because it is easier to understand and practise; 2ndly, Because it is fatal to the pursuit of ideals, moral, political, or religious; 3rdly, Because it deprives us of the means and instruments of higher thought, of any adequate conception of the mind, of knowledge, of conscience, of moral obligation.

---

*On the nature and limits of Psychology.*

ὃ γὰρ ἀρχὴ μὲν ὃ μὴ οἶδε, τελευτὴ δὲ καὶ τὰ μεταξὺ ἐξ οὗ μὴ οἶδε συμπλέκεται, τίς μηχανὴ τὴν τοιαύτην ὁμολογίαν ποτὲ ἐπιστήμην γενέσθαι; Plat. Rep. VII. 533 C.

μόνον γὰρ αὐτὸ λέγειν, ὥσπερ γυνὸν καὶ ἀπηρημωμένον ἀπὸ τῶν ὄντων ἀπάντων, ἀδύνατον. Soph. 237 D.

Since the above essay first appeared, many books on Psychology have been given to the world, partly based upon the views of Herbart and other German philosophers, partly independent of them. The subject has gained in bulk and extent; whether it has had any true growth is more doubtful. It begins to assume the language and claim the authority of a science; but it is only an hypothesis or outline, which may be filled up in many ways according to the fancy of individual thinkers. The basis of it is a

*Theætelus.* precarious one,—consciousness of ourselves and a somewhat uncertain observation of the rest of mankind. Its relations to other sciences are not yet determined: they seem to be almost too complicated to be ascertained. It may be compared to an irregular building, run up hastily and not likely to last, because its foundations are weak, and in many places rest only on the surface of the ground. It has sought rather to put together scattered observations and to make them into a system than to describe or prove them. It has never severely drawn the line between facts and opinions. It has substituted a technical phraseology for the common use of language, being neither able to win acceptance for the one nor to get rid of the other.

INTRODUCTION.

The system which has thus arisen appears to be a kind of metaphysic narrowed to the point of view of the individual mind, through which, as through some new optical instrument limiting the sphere of vision, the interior of thought and sensation is examined. But the individual mind in the abstract, as distinct from the mind of a particular individual and separated from the environment of circumstances, is a fiction only. Yet facts which are partly true gather around this fiction and are naturally described by the help of it. There is also a common type of the mind which is derived from the comparison of many minds with one, another and with our own. The phenomena of which Psychology treats are familiar to us, but they are for the most part indefinite; they relate to a something inside the body, which seems also to overleap the limits of space. The operations of this something, when isolated, cannot be analyzed by us or subjected to observation and experiment. And there is another point to be considered. The mind, when thinking, cannot survey that part of itself which is used in thought. It can only be contemplated in the past, that is to say, in the history of the individual or of the world. This is the scientific method of studying the mind. But Psychology has also some other supports, specious rather than real. It is partly sustained by the false analogy of Physical Science and has great expectations from its near relationship to Physiology. We truly remark that there is an infinite complexity of the body corresponding to the infinite subtlety of the mind; we are conscious that they are very nearly connected. But in endeavouring to trace

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

the nature of the connexion we are baffled and disappointed. In our knowledge of them the gulf remains the same : no microscope has ever seen into thought ; no reflection on ourselves has supplied the missing link between mind and matter. . . . These are the conditions of this very inexact science, and we shall only know less of it by pretending to know more, or by assigning to it a form or style to which it has not yet attained and is not really entitled.

Experience shows that any system, however baseless and ineffectual, in our own or in any other age, may be accepted and continue to be studied, if it seeks to satisfy some unanswered question or is based upon some ancient tradition, especially if it takes the form and uses the language of inductive philosophy. The fact therefore that such a science exists and is popular, affords no evidence of its truth or value. Many who have pursued it far into detail have never examined the foundations on which it rests. There have been many imaginary subjects of knowledge of which enthusiastic persons have made a lifelong study, without ever asking themselves what is the evidence for them, what is the use of them, how long they will last? They may pass away, like the authors of them, and 'leave not a wrack behind : ' or they may survive in fragments. Nor is it only in the Middle Ages, or in the literary desert of China or of India, that such systems have arisen ; in our own enlightened age, growing up by the side of Physics, Ethics, and other really progressive sciences, there is a weary waste of knowledge, falsely so-called. There are sham sciences which no logic has ever put to the test, in which the desire for knowledge invents the materials of it.

And therefore it is expedient once more to review the bases of Psychology, lest we should be imposed upon by its pretensions. The study of it may have done good service by awakening us to the sense of inveterate errors familiarized by language, yet it may have fallen into still greater ones ; under the pretence of new investigations it may be wasting the lives of those who are engaged in it. It may also be found that the discussion of it will throw light upon some points in the *Theaetetus* of Plato,—the oldest work on Psychology which has come down to us. The imaginary science may be called, in the language of ancient philosophy, 'a shadow of a part of Dialectic or Metaphysic' (*Gorg.* 463).

*Theaetetus.* In this postscript or appendix we propose to treat, first, of the true bases of Psychology; secondly, of the errors into which the students of it are most likely to fall; thirdly, of the principal subjects which are usually comprehended under it; fourthly, of the form which facts relating to the mind most naturally assume.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

We may preface the enquiry by two or three remarks:—

(1) We do not claim for the popular Psychology the position of a science at all; it cannot, like the Physical Sciences, proceed by the Inductive Method: it has not the necessity of Mathematics: it does not, like Metaphysic, argue from abstract notions or from internal coherence. It is made up of scattered observations. A few of these, though they may sometimes appear to be truisms, are of the greatest value, and free from all doubt. We are conscious of them in ourselves; we observe them working in others; we are assured of them at all times. For example, we are absolutely certain, (a) of the influence exerted by the mind over the body or by the body over the mind: (b) of the power of association, by which the appearance of some person or the occurrence of some event recalls to mind, not always but often, other persons and events: (c) of the effect of habit, which is strongest when least disturbed by reflection, and is to the mind what the bones are to the body: (d) of the real, though not unlimited, freedom of the human will: (e) of the referencé, more or less distinct, of our sensations, feelings, thoughts, actions, to ourselves, which is called consciousness, or, when in excess, self-consciousness: (f) of the distinction of the 'I' and 'Not I,' of ourselves and outward objects. But when we attempt to gather up these elements in a single system, we discover that the links by which we combine them are apt to be mere words. We are in a country which has never been cleared or surveyed; here and there only does a gleam of light come through the darkness of the forest.

(2) These fragments, although they can never become science in the ordinary sense of the word, are a real part of knowledge and may be of great value in education. We may be able to add a good deal to them from our own experience, and we may verify them by it. Self-examination is one of those studies which a man can pursue alone, by attention to himself and the processes of his individual mind. He may learn much about his own

character and about the character of others, if he will 'make his mind sit down' and look at itself in the glass. The great, if not the only use of such a study is a practical one,—to know, first, human nature, and, secondly, our own nature, as it truly is. *Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

(3) Hence it is important that we should conceive of the mind in the noblest and simplest manner. While acknowledging that language has been the greatest factor in the formation of human thought, we must endeavour to get rid of the disguises, oppositions, contradictions, which arise out of it. We must disengage ourselves from the ideas which the customary use of words has implanted in us. To avoid error as much as possible when we are speaking of things unseen, the principal terms which we use should be few, and we should not allow ourselves to be enslaved by them. Instead of seeking to frame a technical language, we should vary our forms of speech, lest they should degenerate into formulas. A difficult philosophical problem is better understood when translated into the vernacular.

I. a. Psychology is inseparable from language, and early language contains the first impressions or the oldest experience of man respecting himself. These impressions are not accurate representations of the truth; they are the reflections of a rudimentary age of philosophy. The first and simplest forms of thought are rooted so deep in human nature that they can never be got rid of; but they have been perpetually enlarged and elevated, and the use of many words has been transferred from the body to the mind. The spiritual and intellectual have thus become separated from the material—there is a cleft between them; and the heart and the conscience of man rise above the dominion of the appetites and create a new language in which they too find expression. As the differences of actions begin to be perceived, more and more names are needed. This is the first analysis of the human mind; having a general foundation in popular experience, it is moulded to a certain extent by hierophants and philosophers. (See *Introd. to Cratylus.*)

β. This primitive psychology is continually receiving additions from the first thinkers, who in return take a colour from the popular language of the time. The mind is regarded from new points of view, and becomes adapted to new conditions of



*Theaetetus.* knowledge. It seeks to isolate itself from matter and sense, and to assert its independence in thought. It recognizes that it is independent of the external world. It has five or six natural states or stages :—(1) sensation, in which it is almost latent or quiescent : (2) feeling, or inner sense, when the mind is just awakening : (3) memory, which is decaying sense, and from time to time, as with a spark or flash, has the power of recollecting or reanimating the buried past : (4) thought, in which images pass into abstract notions or are intermingled with them : (5) action, in which the mind moves forward, of itself, or under the impulse of want or desire or pain, to attain or avoid some end or consequence : and (6) there is the composition of these or the admixture or assimilation of them in various degrees. We never see these processes of the mind, nor can we tell the causes of them. But we know them by their results, and learn from other men that so far as we can describe to them or they to us the workings of the mind, their experience is the same or nearly the same with our own.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

γ. But the knowledge of the mind is not to any great extent derived from the observation of the individual by himself. It is the growing consciousness of the human race, embodied in language, acknowledged by experience, and corrected from time to time by the influence of literature and philosophy. A great, perhaps the most important, part of it is to be found in early Greek thought. In the *Theaetetus* of Plato it has not yet become fixed: we are still stumbling on the threshold. In Aristotle the process is more nearly completed, and has gained innumerable abstractions, of which many have had to be thrown away because relative only to the controversies of the time. In the interval between Thales and Aristotle were realized the distinctions of mind and body, of universal and particular, of infinite and infinitesimal, of idea and phenomenon; the class conceptions of faculties and virtues, the antagonism of the appetites and the reason; and connected with this, at a higher stage of development, the opposition of moral and intellectual virtue; also the primitive conceptions of unity, being, rest, motion, and the like. These divisions were not really scientific, but rather based on popular experience. They were not held with the precision of modern thinkers, but taken all together they gave a new existence

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

to the mind in thought, and greatly enlarged and more accurately defined man's knowledge of himself and of the world. The majority of them have been accepted by Christian and Western nations. Yet in modern times we have also drifted so far away from Aristotle, that if we were to frame a system on his lines we should be at war with ordinary language and untrue to our own consciousness. And there have been a few both in mediaeval times and since the Reformation who have rebelled against the Aristotelian point of view. Of these eccentric thinkers there have been various types, but they have all a family likeness. According to them, there has been too much analysis and too little synthesis, too much division of the mind into parts and too little conception of it as a whole or in its relation to God and the laws of the universe. They have thought that the elements of plurality and unity have not been duly adjusted. The tendency of such writers has been to allow the personality of man to be absorbed in the universal, or in the divine nature, and to deny the distinction between matter and mind, or to substitute one for the other. They have broken some of the idols of Psychology: they have challenged the received meaning of words: they have regarded the mind under many points of view. But though they may have shaken the old, they have not established the new; their views of philosophy, which seem like the echo of some voice from the East, have been alien to the mind of Europe.

8. The Psychology which is found in common language is in some degree verified by experience, but not in such a manner as to give it the character of an exact science. We cannot say that words always correspond to facts. Common language represents the mind from different and even opposite points of view, which cannot be all of them equally true (cp. *Cratylus* 436-7). Yet from diversity of statements and opinions may be obtained a nearer approach to the truth than is to be gained from any one of them. It also tends to correct itself, because it is gradually brought nearer to the common sense of mankind. There are some leading categories or classifications of thought, which, though unverified, must always remain the elements from which the science or study of the mind proceeds. For example, we must assume ideas before we can analyze them, and also a continuing mind to which they belong; the resolution of it into

*Theaetetus.* successive moments, which would say, with Protagoras, that the man is not the same person which he was a minute ago, is, as Plato implies in the *Theaetetus* (166 B), an absurdity.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

ε. The growth of the mind, which may be traced in the histories of religions and philosophies and in the thoughts of nations, is one of the deepest and noblest modes of studying it. Here we are dealing with the reality, with the greater and, as it may be termed, the most sacred part of history. We study the mind of man as it begins to be inspired by a human or divine reason, as it is modified by circumstances, as it is distributed in nations, as it is renovated by great movements, which go beyond the limits of nations and affect human society on a scale still greater, as it is created or renewed by great minds, who, looking down from above, have a wider and more comprehensive vision. This is an ambitious study, of which most of us rather 'entertain conjecture' than arrive at any detailed or accurate knowledge. Later arises the reflection how these great ideas or movements of the world have been appropriated by the multitude and found a way to the minds of individuals. The real Psychology is that which shows how the increasing knowledge of nature and the increasing experience of life have always been slowly transforming the mind, how religions too have been modified in the course of ages 'that God may be all and in all.' *Ἡ πολλαπλάσιον, ἔφη, τὸ ἔργον ἢ ὧς νῦν ζητεῖται προσάττεις.*

ζ. Lastly, though we speak of the study of mind in a special sense, it may also be said that there is no science which does not contribute to our knowledge of it. The methods of science and their analogies are new faculties, discovered by the few and imparted to the many. They are to the mind, what the senses are to the body; or better, they may be compared to instruments such as the telescope or microscope by which the discriminating power of the senses, or to other mechanical inventions, by which the strength and skill of the human body is so immeasurably increased.

II. The new Psychology, whatever may be its claim to the authority of a science, has called attention to many facts and corrected many errors, which without it would have been unexamined. Yet it is also itself very liable to illusion. The evidence

on which it rests is vague and indefinite. The field of consciousness is never seen by us as a whole, but only at particular points, which are always changing. The veil of language intercepts facts. Hence it is desirable that in making an approach to the study we should consider at the outset what are the kinds of error which most easily affect it, and note the differences which separate it from other branches of knowledge.

a. First, we observe the mind by the mind. It would seem therefore that we are always in danger of leaving out the half of that which is the subject of our enquiry. We come at once upon the difficulty of what is the meaning of the word. Does it differ as subject and object in the same manner? Can we suppose one set of feelings or one part of the mind to interpret another? Is the introspecting thought the same with the thought which is introspected? Has the mind the power of surveying its whole domain at one and the same time?—No more than the eye can take in the whole human body at a glance. Yet there may be a glimpse round the corner, or a thought transferred in a moment from one point of view to another, which enables us to see nearly the whole, if not at once, at any rate in succession. Such glimpses will hardly enable us to contemplate from within the mind in its true proportions. Hence the firmer ground of Psychology is not the consciousness of inward feelings but the observation of external actions, being the actions not only of ourselves, but of the innumerable persons whom we come across in life.

β. The error of supposing partial or occasional explanation of mental phenomena to be the only or complete ones. For example, we are disinclined to admit of the spontaneity or discontinuity of the mind—it seems to us like an effect without a cause, and therefore we suppose the train of our thoughts to be always called up by association. Yet it is probable, or indeed certain, that of many mental phenomena there are no mental antecedents, but only bodily ones.

γ. The false influence of language. We are apt to suppose that when there are two or more words describing faculties or processes of the mind, there are real differences corresponding to them. But this is not the case. Nor can we determine how far they do or do not exist, or by what degree or kind of difference

*Theætetus.* they are distinguished. The same remark may be made about figures of speech. They fill up the vacancy of knowledge; they are to the mind what too much colour is to the eye; but the truth is rather concealed than revealed by them.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

δ. The uncertain meaning of terms, such as Consciousness, Conscience, Will, Law, Knowledge, Internal and External Sense; these, in the language of Plato, 'we shamelessly use, without ever having taken the pains to analyze them.'

ε. A science such as Psychology is not merely an hypothesis, but an hypothesis which, unlike the hypotheses of Physics, can never be verified. It rests only on the general impressions of mankind, and there is little or no hope of adding in any considerable degree to our stock of mental facts.

ζ. The parallelism of the Physical Sciences, which leads us to analyze the mind on the analogy of the body, and so to reduce mental operations to the level of bodily ones, or to confound one with the other.

η. That the progress of Physiology may throw a new light on Psychology is a dream in which scientific men are always tempted to indulge. But however certain we may be of the connexion between mind and body, the explanation of the one by the other is a hidden place of nature which has hitherto been investigated with little or no success.

θ. The impossibility of distinguishing between mind and body. Neither in thought nor in experience can we separate them. They seem to act together; yet we feel that we are sometimes under the dominion of the one, sometimes of the other, and sometimes, both in the common use of language and in fact, they transform themselves, the one into the good principle, the other into the evil principle; and then again the 'I' comes in and mediates between them. It is also difficult to distinguish outward facts from the ideas of them in the mind, or to separate the external stimulus to a sensation from the activity of the organ, or this from the invisible agencies by which it reaches the mind, or any process of sense from its mental antecedent, or any mental energy from its nervous expression.

ι. The fact that mental divisions tend to run into one another, and that in speaking of the mind we cannot always distinguish differences of kind from differences of degree; nor have we

any measure of the strength and intensity of our ideas or feelings. *Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

κ. Although heredity has been always known to the ancients as well as ourselves to exercise a considerable influence on human character, yet we are unable to calculate what proportion this birth-influence bears to nurture and education. But this is the real question. We cannot pursue the mind into embryology: we can only trace how, after birth, it begins to grow. But how much is due to the soil, how much to the original latent seed, it is impossible to distinguish. And because we are certain that heredity exercises a considerable, but undefined influence, we must not increase the wonder by exaggerating it.

λ. The love of system is always tending to prevail over the historical investigation of the mind, which is our chief means of knowing it. It equally tends to hinder the other great source of our knowledge of the mind, the observation of its workings and processes which we can make for ourselves.

μ. The mind, when studied through the individual, is apt to be isolated—this is due to the very form of the enquiry; whereas, in truth, it is indistinguishable from circumstances, the very language which it uses being the result of the instincts of long-forgotten generations, and every word which a man utters being the answer to some other word spoken or suggested by somebody else.

III. The tendency of the preceding remarks has been to show that Psychology is necessarily a fragment, and is not and cannot be a connected system. We cannot define or limit the mind, but we can describe it. We can collect information about it; we can enumerate the principal subjects which are included in the study of it. Thus we are able to rehabilitate Psychology to some extent, not as a branch of science, but as a collection of facts bearing on human life, as a part of the history of philosophy, as an aspect of Metaphysic. It is a fragment of a science only, which in all probability can never make any great progress or attain to much clearness or exactness. It is however a kind of knowledge which has a great interest for us and is always present to us, and of which we carry about the materials in our own bosoms. We can observe our minds and we can experiment upon them, and the

*Theaetetus.* knowledge thus acquired is not easily forgotten, and is a help to us in study as well as in conduct.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The principal subjects of Psychology may be summed up as follows :—

α. The relation of man to the world around him,—in what sense and within what limits can he withdraw from its laws or assert himself against them (Freedom and Necessity), and what is that which we suppose to be thus independent and which we call ourselves? How does the inward differ from the outward and what is the relation between them, and where do we draw the line by which we separate mind from matter, the soul from the body? Is the mind active or passive, or partly both? Are its movements identical with those of the body, or only preconcerted and coincident with them, or is one simply an aspect of the other?

β. What are we to think of time and space? Time seems to have a nearer connexion with the mind, space with the body; yet time, as well as space, is necessary to our idea of either. We see also that they have an analogy with one another, and that in Mathematics they often interpenetrate. Space or place has been said by Kant to be the form of the outward, time of the inward sense. He regards them as parts or forms of the mind. But this is an unfortunate and inexpressive way of describing their relation to us. For of all the phenomena present to the human mind they seem to have most the character of objective existence. There is no use in asking what is beyond or behind them; we cannot get rid of them. And to throw the laws of external nature which to us are the type of the immutable into the subjective side of the antithesis seems to be equally inappropriate.

γ. When in imagination we enter into the closet of the mind and withdraw ourselves from the external world, we seem to find there more or less distinct processes which may be described by the words, 'I perceive,' 'I feel,' 'I think,' 'I want,' 'I wish,' 'I like,' 'I dislike,' 'I fear,' 'I know,' 'I remember,' 'I imagine,' 'I dream,' 'I act,' 'I endeavour,' 'I hope.' These processes would seem to have the same notions attached to them in the minds of all educated persons. They are distinguished from one another in thought, but they intermingle. It is possible to reflect upon them or to become conscious of them in a greater or less degree, or with a greater or less continuity or attention, and thus arise the

intermittent phenomena of consciousness or self-consciousness. The use of all of them is possible to us at all times; and therefore in any operation of the mind the whole are latent. But we are able to characterise them sufficiently by that part of the complex action which is the most prominent. We have no difficulty in distinguishing an act of sight or an act of will from an act of thought, although thought is present in both of them. Hence the conception of different faculties or different virtues is precarious, because each of them is passing into the other, and they are all one in the mind itself; they appear and reappear, and may all be regarded as the ever-varying phases or aspects or differences of the same mind or person.

δ. Nearest the sense in the scale of the intellectual faculties is memory, which is a mode rather than a faculty of the mind, and accompanies all mental operations. There are two principal kinds of it, recollection and recognition,—recollection in which forgotten things are recalled or return to the mind, recognition in which the mind finds itself again among things once familiar. The simplest way in which we can represent the former to ourselves is by shutting our eyes and trying to recall in what we term the mind's eye the picture of the surrounding scene, or by laying down the book which we are reading and recapitulating what we can remember of it. But many times more powerful than recollection is recognition, perhaps because it is more assisted by association. We have known and forgotten, and after a long interval the thing which we have seen once is seen again by us, but with a different feeling, and comes back to us, not as new knowledge, but as a thing to which we ourselves impart a notion already present to us; in Plato's words, we set the stamp upon the wax. Every one is aware of the difference between the first and second sight of a place, between a scene clothed with associations or bare and divested of them. We say to ourselves on revisiting a spot after a long interval: How many things have happened since I last saw this! There is probably no impression ever received by us of which we can venture to say that the vestiges are altogether lost, or that we might not, under some circumstances, recover it. A long-forgotten knowledge may be easily renewed and therefore is very different from ignorance. Of the language learnt in childhood not a word may be remem-



*Theactetus.* bered, and yet, when a new beginning is made, the old habit soon returns, the neglected organs come back into use, and the river of speech finds out the dried-up channel.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

€. 'Consciousness' is the most treacherous word which is employed in the study of the mind, for it is used in many senses, and has rarely, if ever, been minutely analyzed. Like memory, it accompanies all mental operations, but not always continuously, and it exists in various degrees. It may be imperceptible or hardly perceptible: it may be the living sense that our thoughts, actions, sufferings, are our own. It is a kind of attention which we pay to ourselves, and is intermittent rather than continuous. Its sphere has been exaggerated. It is sometimes said to assure us of our freedom; but this is an illusion: as there may be a real freedom without consciousness of it, so there may be a consciousness of freedom without the reality. It may be regarded as a higher degree of knowledge when we not only know but know that we know. Consciousness is opposed to habit, inattention, sleep, death. It may be illustrated by its derivative conscience, which speaks to men, not only of right and wrong in the abstract, but of right and wrong actions in reference to themselves and their circumstances.

ζ. Association is another of the ever-present phenomena of the human mind. We speak of the laws of association, but this is an expression which is confusing, for the phenomenon itself is of the most capricious and uncertain sort. It may be briefly described as follows. The simplest case of association is that of sense. When we see or hear separately one of two things, which we have previously seen or heard together, the occurrence of the one has a tendency to suggest the other. So the sight or name of a house may recall to our minds the memory of those who once lived there. Like may recall like and everything its opposite. The parts of a whole, the terms of a series, objects lying near, words having a customary order stick together in the mind. A word may bring back a passage of poetry or a whole system of philosophy; from one end of the world or from one pole of knowledge we may travel to the other in an indivisible instant. The long train of association by which we pass from one point to the other, involving every sort of complex relation, so sudden, so accidental, is one of the greatest wonders of mind. . . . This process however is not always con-

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

tinuous, but often intermittent: we can think of things in isolation as well as in association; we do not mean that they must all hang from one another. We can begin again after an interval of rest or vacancy, as a new train of thought suddenly arises, as, for example, when we wake of a morning or after violent exercise. Time, place, the same colour or sound or smell or taste, will often call up some thought or recollection either accidentally or naturally associated with them. But it is equally noticeable that the new thought may occur to us, we cannot tell how or why, by the spontaneous action of the mind itself or by the latent influence of the body. Both science and poetry are made up of associations or recollections, but we must observe also that the mind is not wholly dependent on them, having also the power of origination.

There are other processes of the mind which it is good for us to study when we are at home and by ourselves,—the manner in which thought passes into act, the conflict of passion and reason in many stages, the transition from sensuality to love or sentiment and from earthly love to heavenly, the slow and silent influence of habit, which little by little changes the nature of men, the sudden change of the old nature of man into a new one, wrought by shame or by some other overwhelming impulse. These are the greater phenomena of mind, and he who has thought of them for himself will live and move in a better-ordered world, and will himself be a better-ordered man.

At the other end of the 'globus intellectualis,' nearest, not to earth and sense, but to heaven and God, is the personality of man, by which he holds communion with the unseen world. Somehow, he knows not how, somewhere, he knows not where, under this higher aspect of his being he grasps the ideas of God, freedom and immortality; he sees the forms of truth, holiness and love, and is satisfied with them. No account of the mind can be complete which does not admit the reality or the possibility of another life. Whether regarded as an ideal or as a fact, the highest part of man's nature and that in which it seems most nearly to approach the divine, is a phenomenon which exists, and must therefore be included within the domain of Psychology.

IV. We admit that there is no perfect or ideal Psychology. It is not a whole in the same sense in which Chemistry, Physiology,

*Theætetus.* or Mathematics are wholes : that is to say, it is not a connected unity of knowledge. Compared with the wealth of other sciences, it rests upon a small number of facts ; and when we go beyond these, we fall into conjectures and verbal discussions. The facts themselves are disjointed ; the causes of them run up into other sciences, and we have no means of tracing them from one to the other. Yet it may be true of this, as of other beginnings of knowledge, that the attempt to put them together has tested the truth of them, and given a stimulus to the enquiry into them.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Psychology should be natural, not technical. It should take the form which is the most intelligible to the common understanding, because it has to do with common things, which are familiar to us all. It should aim at no more than every reflecting man knows or can easily verify for himself. When simple and unpretentious, it is least obscured by words, least liable to fall under the influence of Physiology or Metaphysic. It should argue, not from exceptional, but from ordinary phenomena. It should be careful to distinguish the higher and the lower elements of human nature, and not allow one to be veiled in the disguise of the other, lest through the slippery nature of language we should pass imperceptibly from good to evil, from nature in the higher to nature in the neutral or lower sense. It should assert consistently the unity of the human faculties, the unity of knowledge, the unity of God and law. The difference between the will and the affections and between the reason and the passions should also be recognized by it.

Its sphere is supposed to be narrowed to the individual soul ; but it cannot be thus separated in fact. It goes back to the beginnings of things, to the first growth of language and philosophy, and to the whole science of man. There can be no truth or completeness in any study of the mind which is confined to the individual. The nature of language, though not the whole, is perhaps at present the most important element in our knowledge of it. It is not impossible that some numerical laws may be found to have a place in the relations of mind and matter, as in the rest of nature. The old Pythagorean fancy that the soul 'is or has in it harmony' may in some degree be realized. But the indications of such numerical harmonies are faint ; either the secret of them lies deeper than we can discover, or nature may have rebelled against

*Theaetetus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

the use of them in the composition of men and animals. It is with qualitative rather than with quantitative differences that we are concerned in Psychology. The facts relating to the mind which we obtain from Physiology are negative rather than positive. They show us, not the processes of mental action, but the conditions of which when deprived the mind ceases to act. It would seem as if the time had not yet arrived when we can hope to add anything of much importance to our knowledge of the mind from the investigations of the microscope. The elements of Psychology can still only be learnt from reflections on ourselves, which interpret and are also interpreted by our experience of others. The history of language, of philosophy, and religion, the great thoughts or inventions or discoveries which move mankind, furnish the larger moulds or outlines in which the human mind has been cast. From these the individual derives so much as he is able to comprehend or has the opportunity of learning.



# THEAETETUS.

## PERSONS OF THE DIALOGUE.

SOCRATES.

THEODORUS.

THEAETETUS.

Euclid and Terpsion meet in front of Euclid's house in Megara ; they enter the house, and the dialogue is read to them by a servant.

Steph. *Euclid.* Have you only just arrived from the country, *Theaetetus.*  
142 Terpsion ?

*Terpsion.* No, I came some time ago : and I have been in the Agora looking for you, and wondering that I could not find you.

*Enc.* But I was not in the city.

*Terp.* Where then ?

*Enc.* As I was going down to the harbour, I met Theaetetus—he was being carried up to Athens from the army at Corinth.

*Terp.* Was he alive or dead ?

*Enc.* He was scarcely alive, for he has been badly wounded ; but he was suffering even more from the sickness which has broken out in the army.

*Terp.* The dysentery, you mean ?

*Enc.* Yes.

*Terp.* Alas ! what a loss he will be !

*Enc.* Yes, Terpsion, he is a noble fellow ; only to-day I heard some people highly praising his behaviour in this very battle.

*Terp.* No wonder ; I should rather be surprised at hearing

EUCLID,  
TERPSION.

*The  
Preface.*

Euclid and  
Terpsion  
meet in  
front of  
Euclid's  
house in  
Megara ;  
they con-  
verse about  
the danger-  
ous condi-  
tion of  
Theaetetus,  
who had  
been car-  
ried away  
dying from  
the camp  
at Corinth

*Theætetus.* anything else of him. But why did he go on, instead of stopping at Megara?

*Euclid,*  
*Terpsion.*

Euclid calls to mind the great things which Socrates had early prophesied of him : and he has preserved the report of a conversation of Theætetus with Socrates which took place just before the latter's death.

*Euc.* He wanted to get home : although I entreated and advised him to remain, he would not listen to me ; so I set him on his way, and turned back, and then I remembered what Socrates had said of him, and thought how remarkably this, like all his predictions, had been fulfilled. I believe that he had seen him a little before his own death, when Theætetus was a youth, and he had a memorable conversation with him, which he repeated to me when I came to Athens ; he was full of admiration of his genius, and said that he would most certainly be a great man, if he lived.

*Terp.* The prophecy has certainly been fulfilled ; but what was the conversation ? can you tell me ?

*Euc.* No, indeed, not offhand ; but I took notes of it as 143 soon as I got home ; these I filled up from memory, writing them out at leisure ; and whenever I went to Athens, I asked Socrates about any point which I had forgotten, and on my return I made corrections ; thus I have nearly the whole conversation written down.

*Terp.* I remember—you told me ; and I have always been intending to ask you to show me the writing, but have put off doing so ; and now, why should we not read it through ?—having just come from the country, I should greatly like to rest.

*Euc.* I too shall be very glad of a rest, for I went with Theætetus as far as Erineum. Let us go in, then, and, while we are reposing, the servant shall read to us.

*Terp.* Very good.

*Euc.* Here is the roll, Terpsion ; I may observe that I have introduced Socrates, not as narrating to me, but as actually conversing with the persons whom he mentioned—these were, Theodorus the geometrician (of Cyrene), and Theætetus. I have omitted, for the sake of convenience, the interlocutory words ‘I said,’ ‘I remarked,’ which he used when he spoke of himself, and again, ‘he agreed,’ or ‘disagreed,’ in the answer, lest the repetition of them should be troublesome.

*Terp.* Quite right, Euclid.

*Euc.* And now, boy, you may take the roll and read.

They enter the house, and Euclid produces the roll, which his servant reads to them.

*Euclid's servant reads.*

*Theaetetus.*

*Socrates.* If I cared enough about the Cyrenians, Theodorus, I would ask you whether there are any rising geometricians or philosophers in that part of the world. But I am more interested in our own Athenian youth, and I would rather know who among them are likely to do well. I observe them as far as I can myself, and I enquire of any one whom they follow, and I see that a great many of them follow you, in which they are quite right, considering your eminence in geometry and in other ways. Tell me then, if you have met with any one who is good for anything.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

*The  
Dialogue.*

Socrates,  
meeting  
Theodorus  
of Cyrene  
in an  
Athenian  
palaestra,  
asks what  
youths of  
promise he  
has dis-  
covered at  
Athens.

*Theodorus.* Yes, Socrates, I have become acquainted with one very remarkable Athenian youth, whom I commend to you as well worthy of your attention. If he had been a beauty I should have been afraid to praise him, lest you should suppose that I was in love with him; but he is no beauty, and you must not be offended if I say that he is very like you; for he has a snub nose and projecting eyes, although these features are less marked in him than in you.

Theodorus  
in answer  
expatiates  
on the  
merits of  
Theaetetus,  
who is  
however no  
beauty, but  
ugly, like  
Socrates.

144 *Seeing, then, that he has no personal attractions, I may freely say, that in all my acquaintance, which is very large, I never knew any one who was his equal in natural gifts: for he has a quickness of apprehension which is almost unrivalled, and he is exceedingly gentle, and also the most courageous of men; there is a union of qualities in him such as I have never seen in any other, and should scarcely have thought possible; for those who, like him, have quick and ready and retentive wits, have generally also quick tempers; they are ships without ballast, and go darting about, and are mad rather than courageous; and the steadier sort, when they have to face study, prove stupid and cannot remember. Whereas he moves surely and smoothly and successfully in the path of knowledge and enquiry; and he is full of gentleness, flowing on silently like a river of oil; at his age, it is wonderful.*

*Soc.* That is good news; whose son is he?

*Theod.* The name of his father I have forgotten, but the youth himself is the middle one of those who are approaching us; he and his companions have been anointing them-

The youth,  
who is the  
son of Eu-  
phronius,



*Theaetetus.* selves in the outer court, and now they seem to have finished, and are coming towards us. Look and see whether you know him.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
THEAETETUS.

the Sunian,  
here enters,  
and he and  
Socrates  
converse.

*Soc.* I know the youth, but I do not know his name; he is the son of Euphronius the Sunian, who was himself an eminent man, and such another as his son is, according to your account of him; I believe that he left a considerable fortune.

*Theod.* Theaetetus, Socrates, is his name; but I rather think that the property disappeared in the hands of trustees; notwithstanding which he is wonderfully liberal.

*Soc.* He must be a fine fellow; tell him to come and sit by me.

*Theod.* I will. Come hither, Theaetetus, and sit by Socrates.

Theodorus  
says that  
Socrates  
and Thea-  
etetus are  
alike.

*Soc.* By all means, Theaetetus, in order that I may see the reflection of myself in your face, for Theodorus says that we are alike; and yet if each of us held in his hands a lyre, and he said that they were tuned alike, should we at once take his word, or should we ask whether he who said so was or was not a musician?

*Theaetetus.* We should ask.

*Soc.* And if we found that he was, we should take his word; and if not, not?

*Theaet.* True..

*Soc.* And if this supposed likeness of our faces is a matter of any interest to us, we should enquire whether he who says that we are alike is a painter or not?

*Theaet.* Certainly we should.

*Soc.* And is Theodorus a painter?

*Theaet.* I never heard that he was.

*Soc.* Is he a geometrician?

*Theaet.* Of course he is, Socrates.

*Soc.* And is he an astronomer and calculator and musician, and in general an educated man?

*Theaet.* I think so.

*Soc.* If, then, he remarks on a similarity in our persons, either by way of praise or blame, there is no particular reason why we should attend to him.

*Theaet.* I should say not.

But he is a  
geometri-  
cian and  
philoso-  
pher, not a  
painter, and  
therefore he  
need not be  
believed.

*Soc.* But if he praises the virtue or wisdom which are the mental endowments of either of us, then he who hears the praises will naturally desire to examine him who is praised : and he again should be willing to exhibit himself.

*Theaet.* Very true, Socrates.

*Soc.* Then now is the time, my dear Theaetetus, for me to examine, and for you to exhibit ; since although Theodorus has praised many a citizen and stranger in my hearing, never did I hear him praise any one as he has been praising you.

*Theaet.* I am glad to hear it, Socrates ; but what if he was only in jest ?

*Soc.* Nay, Theodorus is not given to jesting ; and I cannot allow you to retract your consent on any such pretence as that. If you do, he will have to swear to his words ; and we are perfectly sure that no one will be found to impugn him. Do not be shy then, but stand to your word.

*Theaet.* I suppose I must, if you wish it.

*Soc.* In the first place, I should like to ask what you learn of Theodorus : something of geometry, perhaps ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And astronomy and harmony and calculation ?

*Theaet.* I do my best.

*Soc.* Yes, my boy, and so do I ; and my desire is to learn of him, or of anybody who seems to understand these things. And I get on pretty well in general ; but there is a little difficulty which I want you and the company to aid me in investigating. Will you answer me a question : 'Is not learning growing wiser about that which you learn ?'

*Theaet.* Of course.

*Soc.* And by wisdom the wise are wise ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And is that different in any way from knowledge ?

*Theaet.* What ?

*Soc.* Wisdom ; are not men wise in that which they know ?

*Theaet.* Certainly they are.

*Soc.* Then wisdom and knowledge are the same ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

146 *Soc.* Herein lies the difficulty which I can never solve to my satisfaction—What is knowledge ? Can we answer that question ? What say you ? which of us will speak first ?

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

He also praised Theaetetus' intellect and disposition ; and so Theaetetus must be examined, that Theodorus' praises may be shown to be well-deserved or not.

Socrates' difficulty. What is knowledge?

It is wisdom.

Socrates proposes a discussion on the subject.

*Theaetetus.* whoever misses shall sit down, as at a game of ball, and shall be donkey, as the boys say; he who lasts out his competitors in the game without missing, shall be our king, and shall have the right of putting to us any questions which he pleases . . . Why is there no reply? I hope, Theodorus, that I am not betrayed into rudeness by my love of conversation? I only want to make us talk and be friendly and sociable.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
THEAETETUS.

Who will  
answer?—  
A pause.

*Theod.* The reverse of rudeness, Socrates: but I would rather that you would ask one of the young fellows; for the truth is, that I am unused to your game of question and answer, and I am too old to learn; the young will be more suitable, and they will improve more than I shall, for youth is always able to improve. And so having made a beginning with Theaetetus, I would advise you to go on with him and not let him off.

At the suggestion of Theodorus Theaetetus is invited to reply and consents.

*Soc.* Do you hear, Theaetetus, what Theodorus says? The philosopher, whom you would not like to disobey, and whose word ought to be a command to a young man, bids me interrogate you. Take courage, then, and nobly say what you think that knowledge is.

*Theaet.* Well, Socrates, I will answer as you and he bid me; and if I make a mistake, you will doubtless correct me.

*Soc.* We will, if we can.

In his answer, instead of giving a general definition of knowledge, he enumerates its parts.

*Theaet.* Then, I think that the sciences which I learn from Theodorus—geometry, and those which you just now mentioned—are knowledge; and I would include the art of the cobbler and other craftsmen; these, each and all of them, are knowledge.

*Soc.* Too much, Theaetetus, too much; the nobility and liberality of your nature make you give many and diverse things, when I am asking for one simple thing.

*Theaet.* What do you mean, Socrates?

*Soc.* Perhaps nothing. I will endeavour, however, to explain what I believe to be my meaning: When you speak of cobbling, you mean the art or science of making shoes?

*Theaet.* Just so.

*Soc.* And when you speak of carpentering, you mean the art of making wooden implements?

*Theaet.* I do.

*Soc.* In both cases you define the subject-matter of each of the two arts? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* True.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* But that, Theaetetus, was not the point of my question: we wanted to know not the subjects, nor yet the number of the arts or sciences, for we were not going to count them, but we wanted to know the nature of knowledge in the abstract. Am I not right?

Such enumeration is not definition.

*Theaet.* Perfectly right.

147 *Soc.* Let me offer an illustration: Suppose that a person were to ask about some very trivial and obvious thing—for example, What is clay? and we were to reply, that there is a clay of potters, there is a clay of oven-makers, there is a clay of brick-makers; would not the answer be ridiculous?

Socrates indicates by an illustration the sort of answer required.

*Theaet.* Truly.

*Soc.* In the first place, there would be an absurdity in assuming that he who asked the question would understand from our answer the nature of 'clay,' merely because we added 'of the image-makers,' or of any other workers. How can a man understand the name of anything, when he does not know the nature of it?

*Theaet.* He cannot.

*Soc.* Then he who does not know what science or knowledge is, has no knowledge of the art or science of making shoes?

*Theaet.* None.

*Soc.* Nor of any other science?

*Theaet.* No.

*Soc.* And when a man is asked what science or knowledge is, to give in answer the name of some art or science is ridiculous; for the question is, 'What is knowledge?' and he replies, 'A knowledge of this or that.'

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Moreover, he might answer shortly and simply, but he makes an enormous circuit. For example, when asked about the clay, he might have said simply, that clay is moistened earth—what sort of clay is not to the point.

*Theaet.* Yes, Socrates, there is no difficulty as you put the question. You mean, if I am not mistaken, something like

*Theaetetus* . what occurred to me and to my friend here, your namesake

*SOCRATES*, Socrates, in a recent discussion.

*THEAETETUS*. *Soc.* What was that, Theaetetus?

*Theaetetus* *Theaet.* Theodorus was writing out for us something about  
sees So- roots, such as the roots of three or five, showing that they  
crates' drift, are incommensurable by the unit: he selected other ex-  
and tells amples up to seventeen—there he stopped. Now as there  
how he had are innumerable roots, the notion occurred to us of attempting  
invented to include them all under one name or class.

general terms for the two  
*Soc.* And did you find such a class?

kinds of roots, *Theaet.* I think that we did; but I should like to have your  
lengths and powers. opinion.

*Soc.* Let me hear.

*Theaet.* We divided all numbers into two classes: those which are made up of equal factors multiplying into one another, which we compared to square figures and called square or equilateral numbers;—that was one class.

*Soc.* Very good.

*Theaet.* The intermediate numbers, such as three and five, and every other number which is made up of unequal factors, 148 either of a greater multiplied by a less, or of a less multiplied by a greater, and when regarded as a figure, is contained in unequal sides;—all these we compared to oblong figures, and called them oblong numbers.

*Soc.* Capital; and what followed?

*Theaet.* The lines, or sides, which have for their squares the equilateral plane numbers, were called by us lengths or magnitudes; and the lines which are the roots of (or whose squares are equal to) the oblong numbers, were called powers or roots; the reason of this latter name being, that they are commensurable with the former [i. e. with the so-called lengths or magnitudes] not in linear measurement, but in the value of the superficial content of their squares; and the same about solids.

*Soc.* Excellent, my boys; I think that you fully justify the praises of Theodorus, and that he will not be found guilty of false witness.

But he cannot give a definition of knowledge.

*Theaet.* But I am unable, Socrates, to give you a similar answer about knowledge, which is what you appear to want; and therefore Theodorus is a deceiver after all.

*Soc.* Well, but if some one were to praise you for running, and to say that he never met your equal among boys, and afterwards you were beaten in a race by a grown-up man, who was a great runner—would the praise be any the less true?

*Theaetetus.*

*SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.*

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And is the discovery of the nature of knowledge so small a matter, as I just now said? Is it not one which would task the powers of men perfect in every way?

*Theaet.* By heaven, they should be the top of all perfection!

*Soc.* Well, then, be of good cheer; do not say that Theodorus was mistaken about you, but do your best to ascertain the true nature of knowledge, as well as of other things.

*Theaet.* I am eager enough, Socrates, if that would bring to light the truth.

*Soc.* Come, you made a good beginning just now; let your own answer about roots be your model, and as you comprehend them all in one class, try and bring the many sorts of knowledge under one definition.

*Theaet.* I can assure you, Socrates, that I have tried very often, when the report of questions asked by you was brought to me; but I can neither persuade myself that I have a satisfactory answer to give, nor hear of any one who answers as you would have him; and I cannot shake off a feeling of anxiety.

*Soc.* These are the pangs of labour, my dear Theaetetus; you have something within you which you are bringing to the birth.

*Socrates  
recognises  
the pangs  
of labour.*

*Theaet.* I do not know, Socrates; I only say what I feel.

149 *Soc.* And have you never heard, simpleton, that I am the son of a midwife, brave and burly, whose name was Phaenarete?

*Theaet.* Yes, I have.

*Soc.* And that I myself practise midwifery?

*Theaet.* No, never.

*Soc.* Let me tell you that I do though, my friend: but you must not reveal the secret, as the world in general have not found me out; and therefore they only say of me, that I am

*Socrates a  
midwife.  
But this is  
a secret.*

*Theaetetus.* the strangest of mortals and drive men to their wits' end.

*SOCRATES.* Did you ever hear that too?

*THEAETETUS.* *Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* Shall I tell you the reason?

*Theaet.* By all means.

*Soc.* Bear in mind the whole business of the midwives, and then you will see my meaning better:—No woman, as you are probably aware, who is still able to conceive and bear, attends other women, but only those who are past bearing.

*Theaet.* Yes, I know.

Like the  
midwives,  
he is past  
bearing

*Soc.* The reason of this is said to be that Artemis—the goddess of childbirth—is not a mother, and she honours those who are like herself; but she could not allow the barren to be midwives, because human nature cannot know the mystery of an art without experience; and therefore she assigned this office to those who are too old to bear.

*Theaet.* I dare say.

*Soc.* And I dare say too, or rather I am absolutely certain, that the midwives know better than others who is pregnant and who is not?

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Soc.* And by the use of potions and incantations they are able to arouse the pangs and to soothe them at will; they can make those bear who have a difficulty in bearing, and if they think fit they can smother the embryo in the womb.

*Theaet.* They can.

*Soc.* Did you ever remark that they are also most cunning matchmakers, and have a thorough knowledge of what unions are likely to produce a brave brood?

*Theaet.* No, never.

*Soc.* Then let me tell you that this is their greatest pride, more than cutting the umbilical cord. And if you reflect, you will see that the same art which cultivates and gathers in the fruits of the earth, will be most likely to know in what soils the several plants or seeds should be deposited.

*Theaet.* Yes, the same art.

*Soc.* And do you suppose that with women the case is otherwise?

*Theaet.* I should think not.

*Soc.* Certainly not ; but midwives are respectable women who have a character to lose, and they avoid this department of their profession, because they are afraid of being called procuresses, which is a name given to those who join together man and woman in an unlawful and unscientific way ; and yet the true midwife is also the true and only match-maker.

*Theæt.* Clearly.

*Soc.* Such are the midwives, whose task is a very important one, but not so important as mine ; for women do not bring into the world at one time real children, and at another time counterfeits which are with difficulty distinguished from them ; if they did, then the discernment of the true and false birth would be the crowning achievement of the art of midwifery—you would think so ?

*Theæt.* Indeed I should.

*Soc.* Well, my art of midwifery is in most respects like theirs ; but differs, in that I attend men and not women, and I look after their souls when they are in labour, and not after their bodies : and the triumph of my art is in thoroughly examining whether the thought which the mind of the young man brings forth is a false idol or a noble and true birth. And like the midwives, I am barren, and the reproach which is often made against me, that I ask questions of others and have not the wit to answer them myself, is very just—the reason is, that the god compels me to be a midwife, but does not allow me to bring forth. And therefore I am not myself at all wise, nor have I anything to show which is the invention or birth of my own soul, but those who converse with me profit. Some of them appear dull enough at first, but afterwards, as our acquaintance ripens, if the god is gracious to them, they all make astonishing progress ; and this in the opinion of others as well as in their own. It is quite clear that they never learned anything from me ; the many fine discoveries to which they cling are of their own making. But to me and the god they owe their delivery. And the proof of my words is, that many of them in their ignorance, either in their self-conceit despising me, or falling under the influence of others<sup>1</sup>, have gone away

*Theæstetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEÆSTETUS.

His business is more important than theirs, yet generally similar. He attends men, they women ; he takes care of the mind, they of the body. But, unlike the midwives, he distinguishes the true birth from the counterfeit.

The behaviour of his patients.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with the Bodleian MS. ἡ αὐτοὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων πεισθέντες.



*Theaetetus.* too soon; and have not only lost the children of whom I had previously delivered them by an ill bringing up, but have stifled whatever else they had in them by evil communications, being fonder of lies and shams than of the truth; and they have at last ended by seeing themselves, as others see them, to be great fools. Aristides, the son of Lysimachus, is one of them, and there are many others. 151 The truants often return to me, and beg that I would consort with them again—they are ready to go to me on their knees—and then, if my familiar allows, which is not always the case, I receive them, and they begin to grow again. Dire are the pangs which my art is able to arouse and to allay in those who consort with me, just like the pangs of women in childbirth; night and day they are full of perplexity and travail which is even worse than that of the women. So much for them. And there are others, Theaetetus, who come to me apparently having nothing in them; and as I know that they have no need of my art, I coax them into marrying some one, and by the grace of God I can generally tell who is likely to do them good. Many of them I have given away to Prodicus, and many to other inspired sages. I tell you this long story, friend Theaetetus, because I suspect, as indeed you seem to think yourself, that you are in labour—great with some conception. Come then to me, who am a midwife's son and myself a midwife, and do your best to answer the questions which I will ask you. And if I abstract and expose your first-born, because I discover upon inspection that the conception which you have formed is a vain shadow, do not quarrel with me on that account, as the manner of women is when their first children are taken from them. For I have actually known some who were ready to bite me when I deprived them of a darling folly; they did not perceive that I acted from goodwill, not knowing that no god is the enemy of man—that was not within the range of their ideas; neither am I their enemy in all this, but it would be wrong for me to admit falsehood, or to stifle the truth. Once more, then, Theaetetus, I repeat my old question, 'What is knowledge?'—and do not say that you cannot tell; but quit yourself like a man, and by the help of God you will be able to tell.

Like midwives, he is a match-maker.

Theaetetus is exhorted to submit himself to the treatment, and not to wax wroth if some darling idol is taken from him.

*Theæt.* At any rate, Socrates, after such an exhortation I should be ashamed of not trying to do my best. Now he who knows perceives what he knows, and, as far as I can see at present, knowledge is perception.

*Soc.* Bravely said, boy; that is the way in which you should express your opinion. And now, let us examine together this conception of yours, and see whether it is a true birth or a mere wind-egg:—You say that knowledge is perception?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* Well, you have delivered yourself of a very important  
152 doctrine about knowledge; it is indeed the opinion of Protagoras, who has another way of expressing it. Man, he says, is the measure of all things, of the existence of things that are, and of the non-existence of things that are not:—You have read him?

*Theæt.* O yes, again and again.

*Soc.* Does he not say that things are to you such as they appear to you, and to me such as they appear to me, and that you and I are men?

*Theæt.* Yes, he says so.

*Soc.* A wise man is not likely to talk nonsense. Let us try to understand him: the same wind is blowing, and yet one of us may be cold and the other not, or one may be slightly and the other very cold?

*Theæt.* Quite true.

*Soc.* Now is the wind, regarded not in relation to us but absolutely, cold or not; or are we to say, with Protagoras, that the wind is cold to him who is cold, and not to him who is not?

*Theæt.* I suppose the last.

*Soc.* Then it must appear so to each of them?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* And 'appears to him' means the same as 'he perceives.'

*Theæt.* True.

*Soc.* Then appearing and perceiving coincide in the case of hot and cold, and in similar instances; for things appear, or may be supposed to be, to each one such as he perceives them?

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

In answer to the invitation he boldly replies. Knowledge is perception.

This is only another way of expressing Protagoras' doctrine, 'Man is the measure of all things,' i. e. things are as they appear to you or me at any moment.

This is true in some cases.

*Theaetetus.*     *Theaet.* Yes.

*SOCRATES,*     *Soc.* Then perception is always of existence, and being the  
*THEAETETUS.* same as knowledge is unerring?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

But Protagoras had also a hidden meaning,—‘All things are relative and in motion.’ In this the ancients agree with him.

*Soc.* In the name of the Graces, what an almighty wise man Protagoras must have been! He spoke these things in a parable to the common herd, like you and me, but told the truth, ‘his Truth<sup>1</sup>,’ in secret to his own disciples.

*Theaet.* What do you mean, Socrates?

*Soc.* I am about to speak of a high argument, in which all things are said to be relative; you cannot rightly call anything by any name, such as great or small, heavy or light, for the great will be small and the heavy light—there is no single thing or quality, but out of motion and change and admixture all things are becoming relatively to one another, which ‘becoming’ is by us incorrectly called being, but is really becoming, for nothing ever is, but all things are becoming. Summon all philosophers—Protagoras, Heraclitus, Empedocles, and the rest of them, one after another, and with the exception of Parmenides they will agree with you in this. Summon the great masters of either kind of poetry—Epicharmus, the prince of Comedy, and Homer of Tragedy; when the latter sings of

‘Ocean whence sprang the gods, and mother Tethys,’

does he not mean that all things are the offspring of flux and motion?

*Theaet.* I think so.

*Soc.* And who could take up arms against such a great army having Homer for its general, and not appear ridiculous?

*Theaet.* Who indeed, Socrates?

The praises of motion.

*Soc.* Yes, Theaetetus; and there are plenty of other proofs which will show that motion is the source of what is called being and becoming, and inactivity of not-being and destruction; for fire and warmth, which are supposed to be the parent and guardian of all other things, are born of move-

<sup>1</sup> In allusion to a book of Protagoras' which bore this title.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Cratylus 401 E ff.

ment and of friction, which is a kind of motion<sup>1</sup>;—is not this the origin of fire? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* It is.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* And the race of animals is generated in the same way? *By motion*

*Theaet.* Certainly.

all things  
are gener-  
ated, and  
body and  
soul, water  
and air, are  
alike pre-  
served by it.

*Soc.* And is not the bodily habit spoiled by rest and idleness, but preserved for a long time<sup>2</sup> by motion and exercise?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And what of the mental habit? Is not the soul informed, and improved, and preserved by study and attention, which are motions; but when at rest, which in the soul only means want of attention and study, is uninformed, and speedily forgets whatever she has learned?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Then motion is a good, and rest an evil, to the soul as well as to the body?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

*Soc.* I may add, that breathless calm, stillness and the like waste and impair, while wind and storm preserve; and the palmary argument of all, which I strongly urge, is the golden chain in Homer, by which he means the sun, thereby indicating that so long as the sun and the heavens go round in their orbits, all things human and divine are and are preserved, but if they were chained up and their motions ceased, then all things would be destroyed, and, as the saying is, turned upside down. *The clinch-  
ing argu-  
ment of the  
golden  
chain.*

*Theaet.* I believe, Socrates, that you have truly explained his meaning.

*Soc.* Then now apply his doctrine to perception, my good friend, and first of all to vision; that which you call white colour is not in your eyes, and is not a distinct thing which exists out of them. And you must not assign any place to it: for if it had position it would be, and be at rest, and there would be no process of becoming. *Again,  
colour is  
a motion  
passing be-  
tween the  
eye and its  
object.*

*Theaet.* Then what is colour?

*Soc.* Let us carry out the principle which has just been affirmed, that nothing is self-existent, and then we shall see

<sup>1</sup> Reading τοῦτο δὲ κίνησις.

<sup>2</sup> Reading ἐπὶ πολὺ.

*Theaetetus.* that white, black, and every other colour, arises out of the eye meeting the appropriate motion, and that what we call a colour is in each case neither the active nor the passive element, but something which passes between them, and is peculiar to each percipient; are you quite certain that the several colours appear to a dog or to any animal whatever as they appear to you? 154

*Theaet.* Far from it.

Nothing which is perceived by different men or by the same man at different times is the same.

*Soc.* Or that anything appears the same to you as to another man? Are you so profoundly convinced of this? Rather would it not be true that it never appears exactly the same to you, because you are never exactly the same?

*Theaet.* The latter.

*Soc.* And if that with which I compare myself in size<sup>1</sup>, or which I apprehend by touch, were great or white or hot, it could not become different by mere contact with another unless it actually changed; nor again, if the comparing or apprehending subject were great or white or hot, could this, when unchanged from within, become changed by any approximation or affection of any other thing. The fact is that in our ordinary way of speaking we allow ourselves to be driven into most ridiculous and wonderful contradictions, as Protagoras and all who take his line of argument would remark.

*Theaet.* How? and of what sort do you mean?

Contradictions arising out of relations of numbers.

*Soc.* A little instance will sufficiently explain my meaning: Here are six dice, which are more by a half when compared with four, and fewer by a half than twelve—they are more and also fewer. How can you or any one maintain the contrary?

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Soc.* Well, then, suppose that Protagoras or some one asks whether anything can become greater or more if not by increasing, how would you answer him, Theaetetus?

*Theaet.* I should say 'No,' Socrates, if I were to speak my mind in reference to this last question, and if I were not afraid of contradicting my former answer.

*Soc.* Capital! excellent! spoken like an oracle, my boy!

<sup>1</sup> Reading with the MSS.  $\S$  παραμετρούμεθα.

And if you reply 'Yes,' there will be a case for Euripides; *Theætetus*.  
for our tongue will be unconvinced, but not our mind'.

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Theæt.* Very true.

*Soc.* The thoroughbred Sophists, who know all that can be known about the mind, and argue only out of the superfluity of their wits, would have had a regular sparring-match over this, and would have knocked their arguments together finely. But you and I, who have no professional aims, only desire to see what is the mutual relation of these principles, —whether they are consistent with each other or not.

*Theæt.* Yes, that would be my desire.

*Soc.* And mine too. But since this is our feeling, and there is plenty of time, why should we not calmly and  
155 patiently review our own thoughts, and thoroughly examine and see what these appearances in us really are? If I am not mistaken, they will be described by us as follows:—first, that nothing can become greater or less, either in number or magnitude, while remaining equal to itself—you would agree?

Three laws of thought:—  
(1) Nothing, while remaining equal to itself, can become fewer or more, greater or less.

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* Secondly, that without addition or subtraction there is no increase or diminution of anything, but only equality.

(2) Without addition or subtraction nothing can increase or diminish.

*Theæt.* Quite true.

*Soc.* Thirdly, that what was not before cannot be afterwards, without becoming and having become.

(3) Nothing can be what it was not without becoming.

*Theæt.* Yes, truly.

*Soc.* These three axioms, if I am not mistaken, are fighting with one another in our minds in the case of the dice, or, again, in such a case as this—if I were to say that I, who am of a certain height and taller than you, may within a year, without gaining or losing in height, be not so tall—not that I should have lost, but that you would have increased. In such a case, I am afterwards what I once was not, and yet I have not become; for I could not have become without becoming, neither could I have become less without losing somewhat of my height; and I could give you ten thousand examples of similar contradictions, if we admit them at all. I believe that you follow me, Theætetus; for

These axioms seem to jar in certain cases.

<sup>1</sup> In allusion to the well-known line of Euripides, Hippol. 612:

ἡ γλῶσσ' ἀμώμοχ', ἡ δὲ φρήν ἀνώμοτος.

*Theaetetus.* I suspect that you have thought of these questions before

SOCRATES, NOW.

*THEAETETUS.* *Theaet.* Yes, Socrates, and I am amazed when I think of them; by the Gods I am! and I want to know what on earth they mean; and there are times when my head quite swims with the contemplation of them.

*Soc.* I see, my dear Theaetetus, that Theodorus had a true insight into your nature when he said that you were a philosopher, for wonder is the feeling of a philosopher, and philosophy begins in wonder. He was not a bad genealogist who said that Iris (the messenger of heaven) is the child of Thaummas (wonder). But do you begin to see what is the explanation of this perplexity on the hypothesis which we attribute to Protagoras?

*Theaet.* Not as yet.

*Soc.* Then you will be obliged to me if I help you to unearth the hidden 'truth' of a famous man or school.

*Theaet.* To be sure, I shall be very much obliged.

*Soc.* Take a look round, then, and see that none of the uninitiated are listening. Now by the uninitiated I mean the people who believe in nothing but what they can grasp in their hands, and who will not allow that action or generation or anything invisible can have real existence.

*Theaet.* Yes, indeed, Socrates, they are very hard and impenetrable mortals.

*Soc.* Yes, my boy, outer barbarians. Far more ingenious are the brethren whose mysteries I am about to reveal to you. Their first principle is, that all is motion, and upon this all the affections of which we were just now speaking are supposed to depend: there is nothing but motion, which has two forms, one active and the other passive, both in endless number; and out of the union and friction of them there is generated a progeny endless in number, having two forms, sense and the object of sense, which are ever breaking forth and coming to the birth at the same moment. The senses are variously named hearing, seeing, smelling; there is the sense of heat, cold, pleasure, pain, desire, fear, and many more which have names, as well as innumerable others which are without them; each has its kindred object,—each variety of colour has a corresponding variety of sight, and so with

Further development of the doctrine of Protagoras to meet the difficulty.—The uninitiated who believe only in what they can hold in their hands are to be kept out of the secret.

sound and hearing, and with the rest of the senses and the objects akin to them. Do you see, Theaetetus, the bearings of this tale on the preceding argument?

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Indeed I do not.

*Soc.* Then attend, and I will try to finish the story. The purport is that all these things are in motion, as I was saying, and that this motion is of two kinds, a slower and a quicker; and the slower elements have their motions in the same place and with reference to things near them, and so they beget; but what is begotten is swifter, for it is carried to and fro, and moves from place to place. Apply this to sense:—When the eye and the appropriate object meet together and give birth to whiteness and the sensation connatural with it, which could not have been given by either of them going elsewhere, then, while the sight is flowing from the eye, whiteness proceeds from the object which combines in producing the colour; and so the eye is fulfilled with sight, and really sees, and becomes, not sight, but a seeing eye; and the object which combined to form the colour is fulfilled with whiteness, and becomes not whiteness but a white thing, whether wood or stone or whatever the object may be which happens to be coloured white<sup>1</sup>. And this is true of all sensible objects, hard, warm, and the like, which are similarly to be regarded, as I was saying before, 157 not as having any absolute existence, but as being all of them of whatever kind generated by motion in their intercourse with one another; for of the agent and patient, as existing in separation, no trustworthy conception, as they say, can be formed, for the agent has no existence until united with the patient, and the patient has no existence until united with the agent; and that which by uniting with something becomes an agent, by meeting with some other thing is converted into a patient. And from all these considerations, as I said at first, there arises a general reflection, that there is no one self-existent thing, but everything is becoming and in relation; and being must be altogether abolished, although from habit and ignorance we are compelled even in this discussion to retain the use of the term. But great philosophers tell us that we are not to allow either the word 'something,' or 'belonging to something,' or 'to me,' or 'this' or 'that,' or

All things are in motion, of a slower and of a swifter kind. The slower objects move without changing place, and produce the swifter, which are in locomotion.

Application of the theory to vision.

Everything becomes, and becomes relatively to something else.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *δτιοῦν* or *δτιφoῦν* and omitting *χρῶμα*.



*Theaetetus.* any other detaining name to be used ; in the language of nature all things are being created and destroyed, coming into being and passing into new forms ; nor can any name fix or detain them ; he who attempts to fix them is easily refuted. And this should be the way of speaking, not only of particulars but of aggregates ; such aggregates as are expressed in the word 'man,' or 'stone,' or any name of an animal or of a class. O Theaetetus, are not these speculations sweet as honey? And do you not like the taste of them in the mouth?

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

This applies not only to individuals, but also to classes.

*Theaet.* I do not know what to say, Socrates ; for, indeed, I cannot make out whether you are giving your own opinion or only wanting to draw me out.

Socrates is repeating these 'charming speculations' only to draw out Theaetetus.

*Soc.* You forget, my friend, that I neither know, nor profess to know, anything of these matters ; you are the person who is in labour, I am the barren midwife ; and this is why I soothe you, and offer you one good thing after another, that you may taste them. And I hope that I may at last help to bring your own opinion into the light of day : when this has been accomplished, then we will determine whether what you have brought forth is only a wind-egg or a real and genuine birth. Therefore, keep up your spirits, and answer like a man what you think.

*Theaet.* Ask me.

*Soc.* Then once more : Is it your opinion that nothing is but what becomes?—the good and the noble, as well as all the other things which we were just now mentioning?

*Theaet.* When I hear you discoursing in this style, I think that there is a great deal in what you say, and I am very ready to assent.

Dreams and illusions are a stumbling-block to the theory, as they imply falseness in perception.

*Soc.* Let us not leave the argument unfinished, then ; for there still remains to be considered an objection which may be raised about dreams and diseases, in particular about madness, and the various illusions of hearing and sight, or of other senses. For you know that in all these cases the *esse-percipi* theory appears to be unmistakably refuted, since 158 in dreams and illusions we certainly have false perceptions ; and far from saying that everything is which appears, we should rather say that nothing is which appears.

*Theaet.* Very true, Socrates.

*Soc.* But then, my boy, how can any one contend that knowledge is perception, or that to every man what appears is? *Theaetetus.*  
SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* I am afraid to say, Socrates, that I have nothing to answer, because you rebuked me just now for making this excuse; but I certainly cannot undertake to argue that madmen or dreamers think truly, when they imagine, some of them that they are gods, and others that they can fly, and are flying in their sleep.

*Soc.* Do you see another question which can be raised about these phenomena, notably about dreaming and waking?

*Theaet.* What question?

*Soc.* A question which I think that you must often have heard persons ask:—How can you determine whether at this moment we are sleeping, and all our thoughts are a dream; or whether we are awake, and talking to one another in the waking state? How, when  
awake, can  
we be sure  
that we are  
not asleep,  
and *vice*  
*versa*?

*Theaet.* Indeed, Socrates, I do not know how to prove the one any more than the other, for in both cases the facts precisely correspond; and there is no difficulty in supposing that during all this discussion we have been talking to one another in a dream; and when in a dream<sup>1</sup> we seem to be narrating dreams, the resemblance of the two states is quite astonishing.

*Soc.* You see, then, that a doubt about the reality of sense is easily raised, since there may even be a doubt whether we are awake or in a dream. And as our time is equally divided between sleeping and waking, in either sphere of existence the soul contends that the thoughts which are present to our minds at the time are true; and during one half of our lives we affirm the truth of the one, and, during the other half, of the other; and are equally confident of both.

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Soc.* And may not the same be said of madness and other disorders? the difference is only that the times are not equal.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And is truth or falsehood to be determined by duration of time?

*Theaet.* That would be in many ways ridiculous.

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps, reading *ἄρα*, 'in our waking state.'

*Theaetetus.*SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.Resolution  
of the diffi-  
culty by the  
champions  
of appear-  
ance :—  
What is  
wholly  
other can in  
no way be  
the same.

*Soc.* But can you certainly determine by any other means which of these opinions is true ?

*Theaet.* I do not think that I can.

*Soc.* Listen, then, to a statement of the other side of the argument, which is made by the champions of appearance. They would say, as I imagine—Can that which is wholly other than something, have the same quality as that from which it differs ? and observe, Theaetetus, that the word ‘other’ means not ‘partially,’ but ‘wholly other.’

*Theaet.* Certainly, putting the question as you do, that 159 which is wholly other cannot either potentially or in any other way be the same.

*Soc.* And must therefore be admitted to be unlike ?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* If, then, anything happens to become like or unlike itself or another, when it becomes like we call it the same—when unlike, other ?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

and differ-  
ent agents  
and pa-  
tients, in  
conjunc-  
tion, pro-  
duce differ-  
ent results.

*Soc.* Were we not saying that there are agents many and infinite, and patients many and infinite ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And also that different combinations will produce results which are not the same, but different ?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Let us take you and me, or anything as an example :—There is Socrates in health, and Socrates sick—Are they like or unlike ?

*Theaet.* You mean to compare Socrates in health as a whole, and Socrates in sickness as a whole ?

*Soc.* Exactly ; that is my meaning.

*Theaet.* I answer, they are unlike.

*Soc.* And if unlike, they are other ?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And would you not say the same of Socrates sleeping and waking, or in any of the states which we were mentioning ?

*Theaet.* I should.

*Soc.* All agents have a different patient in Socrates, accordingly as he is well or ill.

*Theaet.* Of course.

*Soc.* And I who am the patient, and that which is the

Socrates in  
health is  
unlike So-  
crates in  
sickness ;

agent, will produce something different in each of the two cases? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* Certainly.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* The wine which I drink when I am in health, appears sweet and pleasant to me?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* For, as has been already acknowledged, the patient and agent meet together and produce sweetness and a perception of sweetness, which are in simultaneous motion, and the perception which comes from the patient makes the tongue percipient, and the quality of sweetness which arises out of and is moving about the wine, makes the wine both to be and to appear sweet to the healthy tongue.

*Theaet.* Certainly; that has been already acknowledged.

*Soc.* But when I am sick, the wine really acts upon another and a different person?

and therefore it is only natural that the same draught of wine should produce a sweet taste in the one case, a bitter in the other.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* The combination of the draught of wine, and the Socrates who is sick, produces quite another result; which is the sensation of bitterness in the tongue, and the motion and creation of bitterness in and about the wine, which becomes not bitterness but something bitter; as I myself become not perception but percipient?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* There is no other object of which I shall ever have 160 the same perception, for another object would give another perception, and would make the percipient other and different; nor can that object which affects me, meeting another subject, produce the same, or become similar, for that too will produce another result from another subject, and become different.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Neither can I by myself, have this sensation; nor the object by itself, this quality.

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* When I perceive I must become percipient of something—there can be no such thing as perceiving and perceiving nothing; the object, whether it become sweet, bitter, or of any other quality, must have relation to a percipient; nothing can become sweet which is sweet to no one.

*Theaetetus.* *Theaet.* Certainly not.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS,  
THEODORUS.

*Soc.* Then the inference is, that we [the agent and patient] are or become in relation to one another; there is a law which binds us one to the other, but not to any other existence, nor each of us to himself; and therefore we can only be bound to one another; so that whether a person says that a thing is or becomes, he must say that it is or becomes to or of or in relation to something else; but he must not say or allow any one else to say that anything is or becomes absolutely:—such is our conclusion.

*Theaet.* Very true, Socrates.

Each object  
is relative to  
one percipient  
only, and he  
alone can  
judge of its  
truth.

*Soc.* Then, if that which acts upon me has relation to me and to no other, I and no other am the percipient of it?

*Theaet.* Of course.

*Soc.* Then my perception is true to me, being inseparable from my own being; and, as Protagoras says, to myself I am judge of what is and what is not to me.

*Theaet.* I suppose so.

*Soc.* How then, if I never err, and if my mind never trips in the conception of being or becoming, can I fail of knowing that which I perceive?

*Theaet.* You cannot.

Thus know-  
ledge is  
perception.  
Homer,  
Heraclei-  
tus, and  
their com-  
pany agree  
in this with  
Protagoras.

*Soc.* Then you were quite right in affirming that knowledge is only perception; and the meaning turns out to be the same, whether with Homer and Heracleitus, and all that company, you say that all is motion and flux, or with the great sage Protagoras, that man is the measure of all things; or with Theaetetus, that, given these premises, perception is knowledge. Am I not right, Theaetetus, and is not this your new-born child, of which I have delivered you? What say you?

*Theaet.* I cannot but agree, Socrates.

Let us in-  
spect the  
new-born  
babe.

*Soc.* Then this is the child, however he may turn out, which you and I have with difficulty brought into the world. And now that he is born, we must run round the hearth with him, and see whether he is worth rearing, or is only a wind-egg and a sham. Is he to be reared in any case, and not exposed? or will you bear to see him rejected, and not get into a passion if I take away your first-born? 161

*Theod.* Theaetetus will not be angry, for he is very good-natured. But tell me, Socrates, in heaven's name, is this, after all, not the truth?

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

*Soc.* You, Theodorus, are a lover of theories, and now you innocently fancy that I am a bag full of them, and can easily pull one out which will overthrow its predecessor. But you do not see that in reality none of these theories come from me; they all come from him who talks with me. I only know just enough to extract them from the wisdom of another, and to receive them in a spirit of fairness. And now I shall say nothing myself, but shall endeavour to elicit something from our young friend.

*Theod.* Do as you say, Socrates; you are quite right.

*Soc.* Shall I tell you, Theodorus, what amazes me in your acquaintance Protagoras.

*Theod.* What is it?

*Soc.* I am charmed with his doctrine, that what appears is to each one, but I wonder that he did not begin his book on Truth with a declaration that a pig or a dog-faced baboon, or some other yet stranger monster which has sensation, is the measure of all things; then he might have shown a magnificent contempt for our opinion of him by informing us at the outset that while we were reverencing him like a God for his wisdom he was no better than a tadpole, not to speak of his fellow-men—would not this have produced an overpowering effect? For if truth is only sensation, and no man can discern another's feelings better than he, or has any superior right to determine whether his opinion is true or false, but each, as we have several times repeated, is to himself the sole judge, and everything that he judges is true and right, why, my friend, should Protagoras be preferred to the place of wisdom and instruction, and deserve to be well paid, and we poor ignoramuses have to go to him, if each one is the measure of his own wisdom? Must he not be talking 'ad captandum' in all this? I say nothing of the ridiculous predicament in which my own midwifery and the whole art of dialectic is placed; for the attempt to supervise or refute the notions or opinions of others would be a tedious and enormous piece of folly, if to each man his own are right; and this must be the case if Protagoras' Truth is the real

Why did not Protagoras say, 'A pig is the measure of all things'?—for a pig has sensation.

His doctrine is suicidal, and cuts away his own and all other claims to superior wisdom.

*Theaetetus.* truth, and the philosopher is not merely amusing himself by giving oracles out of the shrine of his book.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theod.* He was a friend of mine, Socrates, as you were saying, and therefore I cannot have him refuted by my lips, nor can I oppose you when I agree with you; please, then, to take Theaetetus again; he seemed to answer very nicely.

*Soc.* If you were to go into a Lacedaemonian palestra, Theodorus, would you have a right to look on at the naked wrestlers, some of them making a poor figure, if you did not strip and give them an opportunity of judging of your own person?

*Theod.* Why not, Socrates, if they would allow me, as I think you will, in consideration of my age and stiffness; let some more supple youth try a fall with you, and do not drag me into the gymnasium.

*Soc.* Your will is my will, Theodorus, as the proverbial philosophers say, and therefore I will return to the sage Theaetetus: Tell me, Theaetetus, in reference to what I was saying, are you not lost in wonder, like myself, when you find that all of a sudden you are raised to the level of the wisest of men, or indeed of the gods?—for you would assume the measure of Protagoras to apply to the gods as well as men?

Theaetetus is shaken in his opinion of Protagoras' theory.

*Theaet.* Certainly I should, and I confess to you that I am lost in wonder. At first hearing, I was quite satisfied with the doctrine, that whatever appears is to each one, but now the face of things has changed.

But Protagoras would say that he had been influenced by mere clap-trap.

*Soc.* Why, my dear boy, you are young, and therefore your ear is quickly caught and your mind influenced by popular arguments. Protagoras, or some one speaking on his behalf, will doubtless say in reply,—Good people, young and old, you meet and harangue, and bring in the gods, whose existence or non-existence I banish from writing and speech, or you talk about the reason of man being degraded to the level of the brutes, which is a telling argument with the multitude, but not one word of proof or demonstration do you offer. All is probability with you, and yet surely you and Theodorus had better reflect whether you are disposed to admit of probability and figures of speech in matters of such importance. 163 He or any other mathematician who argued from proba-

bilities and likelihoods in geometry, would not be worth an ace. *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* But neither you nor we, Socrates, would be satisfied with such arguments. *SOCRATES, THEAETETUS.*

*Soc.* Then you and Theodorus mean to say that we must look at the matter in some other way? *A new start.*

*Theaet.* Yes, in quite another way.

*Soc.* And the way will be to ask whether perception is or is not the same as knowledge; for this was the real point of our argument, and with a view to this we raised (did we not?) those many strange questions. *Is perception knowledge?*

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Shall we say that we know every thing which we see and hear? for example, shall we say that not having learned, we do not hear the language of foreigners when they speak to us? or shall we say that we not only hear, but know what they are saying? Or again, if we see letters which we do not understand, shall we say that we do not see them? or shall we aver that, seeing them, we must know them? *We know what we see and hear: but we see only certain forms or colours, and hear only sounds of different pitch. Yet it is possible to know more than this.*

*Theaet.* We shall say, Socrates, that we know what we actually see and hear of them—that is to say, we see and know the figure and colour of the letters, and we hear and know the elevation or depression of the sound of them; but we do not perceive by sight and hearing, or know, that which grammarians and interpreters teach about them.

*Soc.* Capital, Theaetetus; and about this there shall be no dispute, because I want you to grow; but there is another difficulty coming, which you will also have to repulse.

*Theaet.* What is it?

*Soc.* Some one will say, Can a man who has ever known anything, and still has and preserves a memory of that which he knows, not know that which he remembers at the time when he remembers? I have, I fear, a tedious way of putting a simple question, which is only, whether a man who has learned, and remembers, can fail to know? *Again, according to the theory, a man cannot know what he remembers;*

*Theaet.* Impossible, Socrates; the supposition is monstrous.

*Soc.* Am I talking nonsense, then? Think: is not seeing perceiving, and is not sight perception?

*Theaet.* True.



*Theaetetus.* Soc. And if our recent definition holds, every man knows that which he has seen?

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Yes.

Soc. And you would admit that there is such a thing as memory?

*Theaet.* Yes.

Soc. And is memory of something or of nothing?

*Theaet.* Of something, surely.

Soc. Of things learned and perceived, that is?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

Soc. Often a man remembers that which he has seen?

*Theaet.* True.

Soc. And if he closed his eyes, would he forget?

*Theaet.* Who, Socrates, would dare to say so?

164

Soc. But we must say so, if the previous argument is to be maintained.

*Theaet.* What do you mean? I am not quite sure that I understand you, though I have a strong suspicion that you are right.

Soc. As thus: he who sees knows, as we say, that which he sees; for perception and sight and knowledge are admitted to be the same.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

Soc. But he who saw, and has knowledge of that which he saw, remembers, when he closes his eyes, that which he no longer sees.

*Theaet.* True.

Soc. And seeing is knowing, and therefore not-seeing is not-knowing?

*Theaet.* Very true.

Soc. Then the inference is, that a man may have attained the knowledge of something, which he may remember and yet not know, because he does not see; and this has been affirmed by us to be a monstrous supposition.

*Theaet.* Most true.

Soc. Thus, then, the assertion that knowledge and perception are one, involves a manifest impossibility?

*Theaet.* Yes.

Soc. Then they must be distinguished?

*Theaet.* I suppose that they must.

for, when remembering something which he has seen, he does not see, and not-seeing is not-knowing.

And it would be ridiculous to say that what is remembered is not known.

*Soc.* Once more we shall have to begin, and ask 'What is knowledge?' and yet, Theaetetus, what are we going to do?

*Theaet.* About what?

*Soc.* Like a good-for-nothing cock, without having won the victory, we walk away from the argument and crow.

*Theaet.* How do you mean?

*Soc.* After the manner of disputers<sup>1</sup>, we were satisfied with mere verbal consistency, and were well pleased if in this way we could gain an advantage. Although professing not to be mere Eristics, but philosophers, I suspect that we have unconsciously fallen into the error of that ingenious class of persons.

*Theaet.* I do not as yet understand you.

*Soc.* Then I will try to explain myself: just now we asked the question, whether a man who had learned and remembered could fail to know, and we showed that a person who had seen might remember when he had his eyes shut and could not see, and then he would at the same time remember and not know. But this was an impossibility. And so the Protagorean fable came to nought, and yours also, who maintained that knowledge is the same as perception.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And yet, my friend, I rather suspect that the result would have been different if Protagoras, who was the father of the first of the two brats, had been alive; he would have had a great deal to say on their behalf. But he is dead, and we insult over his orphan child; and even the guardians whom he left, and of whom our friend Theodorus is one, are unwilling to give any help, and therefore I suppose that I must take up his cause myself, and see justice done?

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS,  
THEODORUS.

Socrates is  
dissatisfied  
with the  
mode of  
argument.

If Protagoras had been alive he would not have allowed us to throw ridicule on his brats.

165 *Theod.* Not I, Socrates, but rather Callias, the son of Hipponicus, is guardian of his orphans. I was too soon diverted from the abstractions of dialectic to geometry. Nevertheless, I shall be grateful to you if you assist him.

As Theodorus, their guardian, declines to protect them, Socrates takes up their defence.

*Soc.* Very good, Theodorus; you shall see how I will come to the rescue. If a person does not attend to the meaning of terms as they are commonly used in argument, he may be involved even in greater paradoxes

<sup>1</sup> I.ys. 216 A: Phaedo 90 B. 101 E; Rep. V. 453 E ff.

*Theaetetus.* than these. Shall I explain this matter to you or to  
*SOCRATES,* Theaetetus?  
*THEODORUS,*  
*THEAETETUS.*

*Theod.* To both of us, and let the younger answer; he will incur less disgrace if he is discomfited.

Another difficulty:—  
 A man can know and not know the same thing at the same time, if seeing is knowing.  
*Soc.* Then now let me ask the awful question, which is this:—Can a man know and also not know that which he knows?

*Theod.* How shall we answer, Theaetetus?

*Theaet.* He cannot, I should say.

*Soc.* He can, if you maintain that seeing is knowing. When you are imprisoned in a well, as the saying is, and the self-assured adversary closes one of your eyes with his hand, and asks whether you can see his cloak with the eye which he has closed, how will you answer the inevitable man?

*Theaet.* I should answer, 'Not with that eye but with the other.'

*Soc.* Then you see and do not see the same thing at the same time.

*Theaet.* Yes, in a certain sense.

*Soc.* None of that, he will reply; I do not ask or bid you answer in what sense you know, but only whether you know that which you do not know. You have been proved to see that which you do not see; and you have already admitted that seeing is knowing, and that not-seeing is not-knowing: I leave you to draw the inference.

*Theaet.* Yes; the inference is the contradictory of my assertion.

But the case might have been made still more ridiculous by applying to knowledge terms proper to sense.

*Soc.* Yes, my marvel, and there might have been yet worse things in store for you, if an opponent had gone on to ask whether you can have a sharp and also a dull knowledge, and whether you can know near, but not at a distance, or know the same thing with more or less intensity, and so on without end. Such questions might have been put to you by a light-armed mercenary, who argued for pay. He would have lain in wait for you, and when you took up the position, that sense is knowledge, he would have made an assault upon hearing, smelling, and the other senses;—he would have shown you no mercy; and while you were lost in envy and admiration of his wisdom, he

would have got you into his net, out of which you would not have escaped until you had come to an understanding about the sum to be paid for your release. Well, you ask, and how will Protagoras reinforce his position? Shall I answer for him?

*Theæt.* By all means.

*Soc.* He will repeat all those things which we have been  
166 urging on his behalf, and then he will close with us in disdain, and say:—The worthy Socrates asked a little boy, whether the same man could remember and not know the same thing, and the boy said No, because he was frightened, and could not see what was coming, and then Socrates made fun of poor me. The truth is, O slatternly Socrates, that when you ask questions about any assertion of mine, and the person asked is found tripping, if he has answered as I should have answered, then I am refuted, but if he answers something else, then he is refuted and not I. For do you really suppose that any one would admit the memory which a man has of an impression which has passed away to be the same with that which he experienced at the time? Assuredly not. Or would he hesitate to acknowledge that the same man may know and not know the same thing? Or, if he is afraid of making this admission, would he ever grant that one who has become unlike is the same as before he became unlike? Or would he admit that a man is one at all, and not rather many and infinite as the changes which take place in him? I speak by the card in order to avoid entanglements of words. But, O my good sir, he will say, come to the argument in a more generous spirit; and either show, if you can, that our sensations are not relative and individual, or, if you admit them to be so, prove that this does not involve the consequence that the appearance becomes, or, if you will have the word, is, to the individual only. As to your talk about pigs and baboons, you are yourself behaving like a pig, and you teach your hearers to make sport of my writings in the same ignorant manner; but this is not to your credit. For I declare that the truth is as I have written, and that each of us is a measure of existence and of non-existence. Yet one man may be a thousand times better than another in proportion as

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

Protagoras  
to the  
rescue :—  
' If Socrates  
frightens a  
boy into  
admitting  
just what  
he pleases,  
I must not  
be held re-  
sponsible.

' What I  
maintain is,  
that sensa-  
tions are  
relative and  
individual;  
that conse-  
quently  
what ap-  
pears is.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES.

'A wise man is not he who has certain impressions, but he who can make what appears evil appear good.

different things are and appear to him. And I am far from saying that wisdom and the wise man have no existence; but I say that the wise man is he who makes the evils which appear and are to a man, into goods which are and appear to him. And I would beg you not to press my words in the letter, but to take the meaning of them as I will explain them. Remember what has been already said,—that to the sick man his food appears to be and is bitter, and to the man in health the opposite of bitter. Now I cannot conceive that one of these men can be or ought to be made wiser than the other: nor can you assert that the sick man 167 because he has one impression is foolish, and the healthy man because he has another is wise; but the one state requires to be changed into the other, the worse into the better. As in education, a change of state has to be effected, and the sophist accomplishes by words the change which the physician works by the aid of drugs. Not that any one ever made another think truly, who previously thought falsely. For no one can think what is not, or, think anything different from that which he feels; and this is always true. But as the inferior habit of mind has thoughts of a kindred nature, so I conceive that a good mind causes men to have good thoughts; and these which the inexperienced call true, I maintain to be only better, and not truer than others. And, O my dear Socrates, I do not call wise men tadpoles: far from it; I say that they are the physicians of the human body, and the husbandmen of plants—for the husbandmen also take away the evil and disordered sensations of plants, and infuse into them good and healthy sensations—aye and true ones<sup>1</sup>; and the wise and good rhetoricians make the good instead of the evil to seem just to states; for whatever appears to a state to be just and fair, so long as it is regarded as such, is just and fair to it; but the teacher of wisdom causes the good to take the place of the evil, both in appearance and in reality. And in like manner the Sophist who is able to train his pupils in this spirit is a wise man, and deserves to be well paid by them. And so one man is wiser than another; and no one thinks

'This is what the Sophists attempt to do.

<sup>1</sup> Reading ἀληθείς, but? Cp. supra 167 A: ταῦτα δὲ αἰεὶ ἀληθῆ.

falsely, and you, whether you will or not, must endure to be a measure. On these foundations the argument stands firm, which you, Socrates, may, if you please, overthrow by an opposite argument, or if you like you may put questions to me—a method to which no intelligent person will object, quite the reverse. But I must beg you to put fair questions: for there is great inconsistency in saying that you have a zeal for virtue, and then always behaving unfairly in argument. The unfairness of which I complain is that you do not distinguish between mere disputation and dialectic: the disputer may trip up his opponent as often as he likes, and make fun; but the dialectician will be in earnest, and only correct his adversary when necessary, telling him the errors into which he has fallen through his own fault, or that of the company which he has previously kept. If you do so, 168 your adversary will lay the blame of his own confusion and perplexity on himself, and not on you. He will follow and love you, and will hate himself, and escape from himself into philosophy, in order that he may become different from what he was. But the other mode of arguing, which is practised by the many, will have just the opposite effect upon him; and as he grows older, instead of turning philosopher, he will come to hate philosophy. I would recommend you, therefore, as I said before, not to encourage yourself in this polemical and controversial temper, but to find out, in a friendly and congenial spirit, what we really mean when we say that all things are in motion, and that to every individual and state what appears, is. In this manner you will consider whether knowledge and sensation are the same or different, but you will not argue, as you were just now doing, from the customary use of names and words, which the vulgar pervert in all sorts of ways, causing infinite perplexity to one another. Such, Theodorus, is the very slight help which I am able to offer to your old friend<sup>1</sup>; had he been living, he would have helped himself in a far more gloriose style.

*Theod.* You are jesting, Socrates; indeed, your defence of him has been most valorous.

*Soc.* Thank you, friend; and I hope that you observed

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

'Let Socrates in his reply argue fairly, like a dialectician, not like a mere disputer.'

'He should not misrepresent when he ought to be trying to understand his adversary.'

<sup>1</sup> Reading *προσέηκενα*

*Theaetetus.* Protagoras bidding us be serious, as the text, 'Man is the measure of all things,' was a solemn one; and he reproached us with making a boy the medium of discourse, and said that the boy's timidity was made to tell against his argument; he also declared that we made a joke of him.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

Socrates insists that out of respect for his old friend, Theodorus must reply instead of Theaetetus.

*Theod.* How could I fail to observe all that, Socrates?

*Soc.* Well, and shall we do as he says?

*Theod.* By all means.

*Soc.* But if his wishes are to be regarded, you and I must take up the argument, and in all seriousness<sup>1</sup>, and ask and answer one another, for you see that the rest of us are nothing but boys. In no other way can we escape the imputation, that in our fresh analysis of his thesis we are making fun with boys.

*Theod.* Well, but is not Theaetetus better able to follow a philosophical enquiry than a great many men who have long beards?

*Soc.* Yes, Theodorus, but not better than you; and therefore please not to imagine that I am to defend by every means in my power your departed friend; and that you are to defend nothing and nobody. At any rate, my good man, 169 do not sheer off until we know whether you are a true measure of diagrams, or whether all men are equally measures and sufficient for themselves in astronomy and geometry, and the other branches of knowledge in which you are supposed to excel them.

Theodorus compares Socrates to Scirrhone and Antaeus.

*Theod.* He who is sitting by you, Socrates, will not easily avoid being drawn into an argument; and when I said just now that you would excuse me, and not, like the Lacedaemonians, compel me to strip and fight, I was talking nonsense—I should rather compare you to Scirrhone, who threw travellers from the rocks; for the Lacedaemonian rule is 'strip or depart,' but you seem to go about your work more after the fashion of Antaeus: you will not allow any one who approaches you to depart until you have stripped him, and he has been compelled to try a fall with you in argument.

Socrates replies that he often

*Soc.* There, Theodorus, you have hit off precisely the nature of my complaint; but I am even more pugnacious than the

<sup>1</sup> Reading αὐτοῦ τῶν λόγων.

giants of old, for I have met with no end of heroes ; many a Heracles, many a Theseus, mighty in words, has broken my head ; nevertheless I am always at this rough exercise, which inspires me like a passion. Please, then, to try a fall with me, whereby you will do yourself good as well as me.

*Theod.* I consent ; lead me whither you will, for I know that you are like destiny ; no man can escape from any argument which you may weave for him. But I am not disposed to go further than you suggest.

*Soc.* Once will be enough ; and now take particular care that we do not again unwittingly expose ourselves to the reproach of talking childishly.

*Theod.* I will do my best to avoid that error.

*Soc.* In the first place, let us return to our old objection, and see whether we were right in blaming and taking offence at Protagoras on the ground that he assumed all to be equal and sufficient in wisdom ; although he admitted that there was a better and worse, and that in respect of this, some who as he said were the wise excelled others.

*Theod.* Very true.

*Soc.* Had Protagoras been living and answered for himself, instead of our answering for him, there would have been no need of our reviewing or reinforcing the argument. But as he is not here, and some one may accuse us of speaking without authority on his behalf, had we not better come to a clearer agreement about his meaning, for a great deal may be at stake ?

*Theod.* True.

170 *Soc.* Then let us obtain, not through any third person, but from his own statement and in the fewest words possible, the basis of agreement.

*Theod.* In what way ?

*Soc.* In this way :—His words are, ‘What seems to a man, is to him.’

*Theod.* Yes, so he says.

*Soc.* And are not we, Protagoras, uttering the opinion of man, or rather of all mankind, when we say that every one thinks himself wiser than other men in some things, and their inferior in others ? In the hour of danger, when they are in perils of war, or of the sea, or of sickness, do they not look

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

gets a  
broken  
head for  
his pains,  
but that  
he can  
never have  
enough of  
fighting.

We must  
be serious.

Protagoras’  
thesis :  
‘What  
appears to  
each man,  
is to him.’  
Now every  
man will  
admit that  
some know  
more,



*Theætetus.* up to their commanders as if they were gods, and expect salvation from them, only because they excel them in knowledge? Is not the world full of men in their several employments, who are looking for teachers and rulers of themselves and of the animals? and there are plenty who think that they are able to teach and able to rule. Now, in all this is implied that ignorance and wisdom exist among them, at least in their own opinion.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

some less  
than he ;

*Theod.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And wisdom is assumed by them to be true thought, and ignorance to be false opinion.

*Theod.* Exactly.

and this is  
enough to  
show that  
opinions  
clash,—  
a fact  
denied by  
Protagoras,

*Soc.* How then, Protagoras, would you have us treat the argument? Shall we say that the opinions of men are always true, or sometimes true and sometimes false? In either case, the result is the same, and their opinions are not always true, but sometimes true and sometimes false. For tell me, Theodorus, do you suppose that you yourself, or any other follower of Protagoras, would contend that no one deems another ignorant or mistaken in his opinion?

*Theod.* The thing is incredible, Socrates.

*Soc.* And yet that absurdity is necessarily involved in the thesis which declares man to be the measure of all things.

*Theod.* How so?

though very  
obvious.

*Soc.* Why, suppose that you determine in your own mind something to be true, and declare your opinion to me; let us assume, as he argues, that this is true to you. Now, if so, you must either say that the rest of us are not the judges of this opinion or judgment of yours, or that we judge you always to have a true opinion? But are there not thousands upon thousands who, whenever you form a judgment, take up arms against you and are of an opposite judgment and opinion, deeming that you judge falsely?

*Theod.* Yes, indeed, Socrates, thousands and tens of thousands, as Homer says, who give me a world of trouble.

*Soc.* Well, but are we to assert that what you think is true to you and false to the ten thousand others?

*Theod.* No other inference seems to be possible.

When  
opinions  
conflict,

*Soc.* And how about Protagoras himself? If neither he nor the multitude thought, as indeed they do not think, that

man is the measure of all things, must it not follow that the  
 171 truth of which Protagoras wrote would be true to no one? But if you suppose that he himself thought this, and that the multitude does not agree with him, you must begin by allowing that in whatever proportion the many are more than one, in that proportion his truth is more untrue than true.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

numbers  
ought to  
decide : this  
goes all  
against  
Protagoras.

*Theod.* That would follow if the truth is supposed to vary with individual opinion.

*Soc.* And the best of the joke is, that he acknowledges the truth of their opinion who believe his own opinion to be false ; for he admits that the opinions of all men are true.

In any case  
he acknow-  
ledges  
that their  
opinion is  
true who  
declare his  
to be false,

*Theod.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And does he not allow that his own opinion is false, if he admits that the opinion of those who think him false is true ?

*Theod.* Of course.

*Soc.* Whereas the other side do not admit that they speak falsely ?

*Theod.* They do not.

*Soc.* And he, as may be inferred from his writings, agrees that this opinion is also true.

*Theod.* Clearly.

*Soc.* Then all mankind, beginning with Protagoras, will contend, or rather, I should say that he will allow, when he concedes that his adversary has a true opinion—Protagoras, I say, will himself allow that neither a dog nor any ordinary man is the measure of anything which he has not learned—am I not right ?

and so de-  
nies the  
truth of his  
own doc-  
trine.

*Theod.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the truth of Protagoras being doubted by all, will be true neither to himself nor to any one else ?

*Theod.* I think, Socrates, that we are running my old friend too hard.

*Soc.* But I do not know that we are going beyond the truth. Doubtless, as he is older, he may be expected to be wiser than we are. And if he could only just get his head out of the world below, he would have overthrown both of us again and again, me for talking nonsense and you for assenting to me, and have been off and underground in a trice. But as he is not within call, we must make the best use of

But are we  
doing him  
justice ?

*Theæstetus.* our own faculties, such as they are, and speak out what appears to us to be true. And one thing which no one will deny is, that there are great differences in the understandings of men.

A concession.

His position is only true, if at all, in reference to sensible things ;

*Theod.* In that opinion I quite agree.

*Soc.* And is there not most likely to be firm ground in the distinction which we were indicating on behalf of Protagoras, viz. that most things, and all immediate sensations, such as hot, dry, sweet, are only such as they appear ; if however difference of opinion is to be allowed at all, surely we must allow it in respect of health or disease ? for every woman, child, or living creature has not such a knowledge of what conduces to health as to enable them to cure themselves.

*Theod.* I quite agree.

and he himself admits that in politics one man is wiser than another.

*Soc.* Or again, in politics, while affirming that just and unjust, honourable and disgraceful, holy and unholy, are in reality to each state such as the state thinks and makes lawful, and that in determining these matters no individual or state is wiser than another, still the followers of Protagoras will not deny that in determining what is or is not expedient for the community one state is wiser and one counsellor better than another—they will scarcely venture to maintain, that what a city enacts in the belief that it is expedient will always be really expedient. But in the other case, I mean when they speak of justice and injustice, piety and impiety, they are confident that in nature these have no existence or essence of their own—the truth is that which is agreed on at the time of the agreement, and as long as the agreement lasts ; and this is the philosophy of many who do not altogether go along with Protagoras. Here arises a new question, Theodorus, which threatens to be more serious than the last.

A larger question appears.

*Theod.* Well, Socrates, we have plenty of leisure.

*Soc.* That is true, and your remark recalls to my mind an observation which I have often made, that those who have passed their days in the pursuit of philosophy are ridiculously at fault when they have to appear and speak in court. How natural is this !

*Theod.* What do you mean ?

*Soc.* I mean to say, that those who have been trained in

philosophy and liberal pursuits are as unlike those who from their youth upwards have been knocking about in the courts and such places, as a freeman is in breeding unlike a slave.

*Theod.* In what is the difference seen?

*Soc.* In the leisure spoken of by you, which a freeman can always command: he has his talk out in peace, and, like ourselves, he wanders at will from one subject to another, and from a second to a third,—if the fancy takes him, he begins again, as we are doing now, caring not whether his words are many or few; his only aim is to attain the truth. But the lawyer is always in a hurry; there is the water of the clepsydra driving him on, and not allowing him to expatiate at will: and there is his adversary standing over him, enforcing his rights; the indictment, which in their phraseology is termed the affidavit, is recited at the time: and from this he must not deviate. He is a servant, and is continually disputing about a fellow-servant before his master, who is seated, and has the cause in his hands; the trial is never about some indifferent matter, but always concerns himself; and often the

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

An apparent digression, in which is set forth, not the opposition of sense and knowledge, but a parallel contrast between the ways of the lawyer and philosopher.

173 race is for his life. The consequence has been, that he has become keen and shrewd; he has learned how to flatter his master in word and indulge him in deed; but his soul is small and unrighteous. His condition, which has been that of a slave from his youth upwards, has deprived him of growth and uprightness and independence; dangers and fears, which were too much for his truth and honesty, came upon him in early years, when the tenderness of youth was unequal to them, and he has been driven into crooked ways; from the first he has practised deception and retaliation, and has become stunted and warped. And so he has passed out of youth into manhood, having no soundness in him; and is now, as he thinks, a master in wisdom. Such is the lawyer, Theodorus. Will you have the companion picture of the philosopher, who is of our brotherhood; or shall we return to the argument? Do not let us abuse the freedom of digression which we claim.

The lawyer is the slave of this world, the philosopher is the freeman.

*Theod.* Nay, Socrates, not until we have finished what we are about; for you truly said that we belong to a brotherhood which is free, and are not the servants of the argument; but the argument is our servant, and must wait our leisure.

*Theætetus.* Who is our judge? Or where is the spectator having any right to censure or control us, as he might the poets?

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

The simplicity  
of the philo-  
sopher.

*Soc.* Then, as this is your wish, I will describe the leaders; for there is no use in talking about the inferior sort. In the first place, the lords of philosophy have never, from their youth upwards, known their way to the Agora, or the dicastery, or the council, or any other political assembly; they neither see nor hear the laws or decrees, as they are called, of the state written or recited; the eagerness of political societies in the attainment of offices—clubs, and banquets, and revels, and singing-maidens,—do not enter even into their dreams. Whether any event has turned out well or ill in the city, what disgrace may have descended to any one from his ancestors, male or female, are matters of which the philosopher no more knows than he can tell, as they say, how many pints are contained in the ocean. Neither is he conscious of his ignorance. For he does not hold aloof in order that he may gain a reputation; but the truth is, that the outer form of him only is in the city: his mind, disdainful of littlenesses and nothingnesses of human things, is ‘flying all abroad’ as Pindar says, measuring earth and heaven and the things which are under and on the earth and above the heaven, interrogating the whole nature of each and all in their entirety, but not condescending to anything which is 174 within reach.

*Theod.* What do you mean, Socrates?

He cannot  
see what is  
tumbling  
out at his  
feet.

*Soc.* I will illustrate my meaning, Theodorus, by the jest which the clever witty Thracian handmaid is said to have made about Thales, when he fell into a well as he was looking up at the stars. She said, that he was so eager to know what was going on in heaven, that he could not see what was before his feet. This is a jest which is equally applicable to all philosophers. For the philosopher is wholly unacquainted with his next-door neighbour; he is ignorant, not only of what he is doing, but he hardly knows whether he is a man or an animal; he is searching into the essence of man, and busy in enquiring what belongs to such a nature to do or suffer different from any other;—I think that you understand me, Theodorus?

*Theod.* I do, and what you say is true.

Soc. And thus, my friend, on every occasion, private as well as public, as I said at first, when he appears in a law-court, or in any place in which he has to speak of things which are at his feet and before his eyes, he is the jest, not only of Thracian handmaids but of the general herd, tumbling into wells and every sort of disaster through his inexperience. His awkwardness is fearful, and gives the impression of imbecility. When he is reviled, he has nothing personal to say in answer to the civilities of his adversaries, for he knows no scandals of any one, and they do not interest him ; and therefore he is laughed at for his sheepishness ; and when others are being praised and glorified, in the simplicity of his heart he cannot help going into fits of laughter, so that he seems to be a downright idiot. When he hears a tyrant or king eulogized, he fancies that he is listening to the praises of some keeper of cattle—a swineherd, or shepherd, or perhaps a cowherd, who is congratulated on the quantity of milk which he squeezes from them ; and he remarks that the creature whom they tend, and out of whom they squeeze the wealth, is of a less tractable and more insidious nature. Then, again, he observes that the great man is of necessity as ill-mannered and uneducated as any shepherd—for he has no leisure, and he is surrounded by a wall, which is his mountain-pen. Hearing of enormous landed proprietors of ten thousand acres and more, our philosopher deems this to be a trifle, because he has been accustomed to think of the whole earth ; and when they sing the praises of family, and say that some one is a gentleman because he can show seven generations of wealthy ancestors, he thinks that their sentiments  
 175 only betray a dull and narrow vision in those who utter them, and who are not educated enough to look at the whole, nor to consider that every man has had thousands and ten thousands of progenitors, and among them have been rich and poor, kings and slaves, Hellenes and barbarians, innumerable. And when people pride themselves on having a pedigree of twenty-five ancestors, which goes back to Heracles, the son of Amphitryon, he cannot understand their poverty of ideas. Why are they unable to calculate that Amphitryon had a twenty-fifth ancestor, who might have been anybody, and was such as fortune made him, and he

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

He is the laughing-stock of mankind whenever he appears in public.

His irony ;  
his ideas of  
kings and  
tyrants,

of landed  
property,  
and of long  
pedigrees.

*Theætetus.* had a fiftieth, and so on? He amuses himself with the notion that they cannot count, and thinks that a little arithmetic would have got rid of their senseless vanity. Now, in all these cases our philosopher is derided by the vulgar, partly because he is thought to despise them, and also because he is ignorant of what is before him, and always at a loss.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

To the  
world he is  
a fool.

*Theod.* That is very true, Socrates.

He has his  
revenge  
upon the  
lawyer.

*Soc.* But, O my friend, when he draws the other into upper air, and gets him out of his pleas and rejoinders into the contemplation of justice and injustice in their own nature and in their difference from one another and from all other things; or from the commonplaces about the happiness of a king or of a rich man to the consideration of government, and of human happiness and misery in general—what they are, and how a man is to attain the one and avoid the other—when that narrow, keen, little legal mind is called to account about all this, he gives the philosopher his revenge; for dizzied by the height at which he is hanging, whence he looks down into space, which is a strange experience to him, he being dismayed, and lost, and stammering broken words, is laughed at, not by Thracian handmaidens or any other uneducated persons, for they have no eye for the situation, but by every man who has not been brought up a slave. Such are the two characters, Theodorus: the one of the freeman, who has been trained in liberty and leisure, whom you call the philosopher,—him we cannot blame because he appears simple and of no account when he has to perform some menial task, such as packing up bed-clothes, or flavouring a sauce or fawning speech; the other character is that of the man who is able to do all this kind of service smartly and neatly, but knows not how to wear his cloak like a gentleman; still less with the music of discourse can he hymn the true life aright which is lived by immortals or men blessed of heaven.

*Theod.* If you could only persuade everybody, Socrates, as you do me, of the truth of your words, there would be more peace and fewer evils among men.

Evil a  
necessary  
part of

*Soc.* Evils, Theodorus, can never pass away; for there must always remain something which is antagonistic to good.

Having no place among the gods in heaven, of necessity they hover around the mortal nature, and this earthly sphere. Wherefore we ought to fly away from earth to heaven as quickly as we can; and to fly away is to become like God, as far as this is possible; and to become like him, is to become holy, just, and wise. But, O my friend, you cannot easily convince mankind that they should pursue virtue or avoid vice, not merely in order that a man may seem to be good, which is the reason given by the world, and in my judgment is only a repetition of an old wives' fable. Whereas, the truth is that God is never in any way unrighteous—he is perfect righteousness; and he of us who is the most righteous is most like him. Herein is seen the true cleverness of a man, and also his nothingness and want of manhood. For to know this is true wisdom and virtue, and ignorance of this is manifest folly and vice. All other kinds of wisdom or cleverness, which seem only, such as the wisdom of politicians, or the wisdom of the arts, are coarse and vulgar. The unrighteous man, or the sayer and doer of unholy things, had far better not be encouraged in the illusion that his roguery is clever; for men glory in their shame—they fancy that they hear others saying of them, 'These are not mere good-for-nothing persons, mere burdens of the earth, but such as men should be who mean to dwell safely in a state.' Let us tell them that they are all the more truly what they do not think they are because they do not know it; for they do not know the penalty of injustice, which above all things they ought to know—not stripes and death, as they suppose, which evil-doers often escape, but a penalty which cannot be escaped.

*Theod.* What is that?

*Soc.* There are two patterns eternally set before them; the one blessed and divine, the other godless and wretched: but they do not see them, or perceive that in their utter folly and infatuation they are growing like the one and unlike the  
177 other, by reason of their evil deeds; and the penalty is, that they lead a life answering to the pattern which they are growing like. And if we tell them, that unless they depart from their cunning, the place of innocence will not receive them after death; and that here on earth, they will live ever

*Theætitus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

human  
nature,  
from which  
men can  
only fly  
away when  
they be-  
come like  
God.

The wicked  
will only  
laugh at  
the truth.



*Theaetetus.* in the likeness of their own evil selves, and with evil friends —when they hear this they in their superior cunning will seem to be listening to the talk of idiots.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

*Theod.* Very true, Socrates.

A strange  
thing :  
when they  
consent to  
reason  
about  
philosophy,  
they are as  
helpless as  
children.

*Soc.* Too true, my friend, as I well know; there is, however, one peculiarity in their case: when they begin to reason in private about their dislike of philosophy, if they have the courage to hear the argument out, and do not run away, they grow at last strangely discontented with themselves; their rhetoric fades away, and they become helpless as children. These however are digressions from which we must now desist, or they will overflow, and drown the original argument; to which, if you please, we will now return.

End of  
digression.

*Theod.* For my part, Socrates, I would rather have the digressions, for at my age I find them easier to follow; but if you wish, let us go back to the argument.

The  
partisans  
of the flux  
were saying  
that the  
ordinances  
of a state  
were always  
just, but  
they did not  
venture to  
affirm that  
they were  
always  
good.

*Soc.* Had we not reached the point at which the partisans of the perpetual flux, who say that things are as they seem to each one, were confidently maintaining that the ordinances which the state commanded and thought just, were just to the state which imposed them, while they were in force; this was especially asserted of justice; but as to the good, no one had any longer the hardihood to contend of any ordinances which the state thought and enacted to be good that these, while they were in force, were really good;—he who said so would be playing with the name ‘good,’ and would not touch the real question—it would be a mockery, would it not?

*Theod.* Certainly it would.

*Soc.* He ought not to speak of the name, but of the thing which is contemplated under the name.

*Theod.* Right.

*Soc.* Whatever be the term used, the good or expedient is the aim of legislation, and as far as she has an opinion, the state imposes all laws with a view to the greatest expediency; can legislation have any other aim?

*Theod.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* But is the aim attained always? do not mistakes often happen?

*Theod.* Yes, I think that there are mistakes.

*Soc.* The possibility of error will be more distinctly recog-

nised, if we put the question in reference to the whole class under which the good or expedient falls. That whole class has to do with the future, and laws are passed under the idea that they will be useful in after-time ; which, in other words, is the future.

*Theod.* Very true.

*Soc.* Suppose now, that we ask Protagoras, or one of his disciples, a question :—O, Protagoras, we will say to him, Man is, as you declare, the measure of all things—white, heavy, light : of all such things he is the judge ; for he has the criterion of them in himself, and when he thinks that things are such as he experiences them to be, he thinks what is and is true to himself. Is it not so ?

*Theod.* Yes.

*Soc.* And do you extend your doctrine, Protagoras (as we shall further say), to the future as well as to the present ; and has he the criterion not only of what in his opinion is but of what will be, and do things always happen to him as he expected ? For example, take the case of heat :—When an ordinary man thinks that he is going to have a fever, and that this kind of heat is coming on, and another person, who is a physician, thinks the contrary, whose opinion is likely to prove right ? Or are they both right ?—he will have a heat and fever in his own judgment, and not have a fever in the physician's judgment ?

*Theod.* How ludicrous !

*Soc.* And the vinegrower, if I am not mistaken, is a better judge of the sweetness or dryness of the vintage which is not yet gathered than the harp-player ?

*Theod.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And in musical composition the musician will know better than the training master what the training master himself will hereafter think harmonious or the reverse ?

*Theod.* Of course.

*Soc.* And the cook will be a better judge than the guest, who is not a cook, of the pleasure to be derived from the dinner which is in preparation ; for of present or past pleasure we are not as yet arguing ; but can we say that every one will be to himself the best judge of the pleasure which will seem to be and will be to him in the future ?—nay,

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

Is every man equally a judge of the expedient, or, to speak generally, of the future ?

Certainly not in the case of medicine ;

nor of vine-growing ;

nor of cookery ;

*Theaetetus.* would not you, Protagoras, better guess which arguments in a court would convince any one of us than the ordinary man?

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

nor of  
rhetoric,  
legislation,  
&c.

Protagoras  
himself was  
wiser than  
the ordinary  
man about  
the future,  
and was  
well paid  
for it.

*Theod.* Certainly, Socrates, he used to profess in the strongest manner that he was the superior of all men in this respect.

*Soc.* To be sure, friend : who would have paid a large sum 179 for the privilege of talking to him, if he had really<sup>1</sup> persuaded his visitors that neither a prophet nor any other man was better able to judge what will be and seem to be in the future than every one could for himself?

*Theod.* Who indeed?

*Soc.* And legislation and expediency are all concerned with the future ; and every one will admit that states, in passing laws, must often fail of their highest interests?

*Theod.* Quite true.

*Soc.* Then we may fairly argue against your master, that he must admit one man to be wiser than another, and that the wiser is a measure : but I, who know nothing, am not at all obliged to accept the honour which the advocate of Protagoras was just now forcing upon me, whether I would or not, of being a measure of anything.

The refuta-  
tion is  
complete.

*Theod.* That is the best refutation of him, Socrates ; although he is also caught when he ascribes truth to the opinions of others, who give the lie direct to his own opinion.

*Soc.* There are many ways, Theodorus, in which the doctrine that every opinion of every man is true may be refuted ; but there is more difficulty in proving that states of feeling, which are present to a man, and out of which arise sensations and opinions in accordance with them, are also untrue. And very likely I have been talking nonsense about them ; for they may be unassailable, and those who say that there is clear evidence of them, and that they are matters of knowledge, may probably be right ; in which case our friend Theaetetus was not so far from the mark when he identified perception and knowledge. And therefore let us draw nearer, as the advocate of Protagoras desires, and give the truth of the universal flux a ring : is the theory sound or not ? at any rate, no small war is raging about it, and there are combatants not a few.

<sup>1</sup> Reading δῆ.

*Theod.* No small war, indeed, for in Ionia the sect makes rapid strides ; the disciples of Heracleitus are most energetic upholders of the doctrine.

*Soc.* Then we are the more bound, my dear Theodorus, to examine the question from the foundation as it is set forth by themselves.

*Theod.* Certainly we are. About these speculations of Heracleitus, which, as you say, are as old as Homer, or even older still, the Ephesians themselves, who profess to know them, are downright mad, and you cannot talk with them on the subject. For, in accordance with their text-books, they are always in motion ; but as for dwelling upon an argument  
180 or a question, and quietly asking and answering in turn, they can no more do so than they can fly ; or rather, the determination of these fellows not to have a particle of rest in them is more than the utmost powers of negation can express. If you ask any of them a question, he will produce, as from a quiver, sayings brief and dark, and shoot them at you ; and if you enquire the reason of what he has said, you will be hit by some other new-fangled word, and will make no way with any of them, nor they with one another ; their great care is, not to allow of any settled principle either in their arguments or in their minds, conceiving, as I imagine, that any such principle would be stationary ; for they are at war with the stationary, and do what they can to drive it out everywhere.

*Soc.* I suppose, Theodorus, that you have only seen them when they were fighting, and have never stayed with them in time of peace, for they are no friends of yours ; and their peace doctrines are only communicated by them at leisure, as I imagine, to those disciples of theirs whom they want to make like themselves.

*Theod.* Disciples ! my good sir, they have none ; men of their sort are not one another's disciples, but they grow up at their own sweet will, and get their inspiration anywhere, each of them saying of his neighbour that he knows nothing. From these men, then, as I was going to remark, you will never get a reason, whether with their will or without their will ; we must take the question out of their hands, and make the analysis ourselves, as if we were doing a geometrical problem.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.

The friends of Heracleitus wage a violent controversy about the universal flux. But we must take the argument out of the hands of these lunatics and fanatics, if we would test it.

*Theastetus.*SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS.The  
ancients  
held similar  
views, which  
they veiled  
in poetical  
figures.Then came  
the opposite  
doctrine of  
Parmenides  
and Me-  
lissus.

*Soc.* Quite right too; but as touching the aforesaid problem, have we not heard from the ancients, who concealed their wisdom from the many in poetical figures, that Oceanus and Tethys, the origin of all things, are streams, and that nothing is at rest? And now the moderns, in their superior wisdom, have declared the same openly, that the cobbler too may hear and learn of them, and no longer foolishly imagine that some things are at rest and others in motion—having learned that all is motion, he will duly honour his teachers. I had almost forgotten the opposite doctrine, Theodorus,

'Alone Being remains unmoved, which is the name for the all.'

This is the language of Parmenides, Melissus, and their followers, who stoutly maintain that all being is one and self-contained, and has no place in which to move. What shall we do, friend, with all these people; for, advancing step by step, we have imperceptibly got between the combatants, and, unless we can protect our retreat, we shall pay the 181 penalty of our rashness—like the players in the palaestra who are caught upon the line, and are dragged different ways by the two parties. Therefore I think that we had better begin by considering those whom we first accosted, 'the river-gods,' and, if we find any truth in them, we will help them to pull us over, and try to get away from the others. But if the partisans of 'the whole' appear to speak more truly, we will fly off from the party which would move the immovable, to them. And if we find that neither of them have anything reasonable to say, we shall be in a ridiculous position, having so great a conceit of our own poor opinion and rejecting that of ancient and famous men. O Theodorus, do you think that there is any use in proceeding when the danger is so great?

*Theod.* Nay, Socrates, not to examine thoroughly what the two parties have to say would be quite intolerable.

*Soc.* Then examine we must, since you, who were so reluctant to begin, are so eager to proceed. The nature of motion appears to be the question with which we begin. What do they mean when they say that all things are in motion? Is there only one kind of motion, or, as I rather

Which side  
shall we  
take—  
motion or  
rest?

incline to think, two? I should like to have your opinion upon this point in addition to my own, that I may err, if I must err, in your company; tell me, then, when a thing changes from one place to another, or goes round in the same place, is not that what is called motion?

*Theætetus.*  
*SOCRATES,*  
*THEODORUS.*

*Theod.* Yes.

*Soc.* Here then we have one kind of motion. But when a thing, remaining on the same spot, grows old, or becomes black from being white, or hard from being soft, or undergoes any other change, may not this be properly called motion of another kind?

The advocates of motion must of necessity maintain that all things partake of all kinds of motion.

*Theod.* I think so.

*Soc.* Say rather that it must be so. Of motion then there are these two kinds, 'change,' and 'motion in place' <sup>1</sup>.

*Theod.* You are right.

*Soc.* And now, having made this distinction, let us address ourselves to those who say that all is motion, and ask them whether all things according to them have the two kinds of motion, and are changed as well as move in place, or is one thing moved in both ways, and another in one only?

*Theod.* Indeed, I do not know what to answer; but I think they would say that all things are moved in both ways.

*Soc.* Yes, comrade; for, if not, they would have to say that the same things are in motion and at rest, and there would be no more truth in saying that all things are in motion, than that all things are at rest.

*Theod.* To be sure.

*Soc.* And if they are to be in motion, and nothing is to be  
182 devoid of motion, all things must always have every sort of motion?

*Theod.* Most true.

*Soc.* Consider a further point: did we not understand them to explain the generation of heat, whiteness, or anything else, in some such manner as the following:—were they not saying that each of them is moving between the agent and the patient, together with a perception, and that the patient ceases to be a perceiving power and becomes a

Recapitulation of the Heraclitean theory of sensation and qualities.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *φορὰν*: Lib. *περιφοράν*.

*Theaetetus.* percipient, and the agent a quale instead of a quality? I suspect that quality may appear a strange and uncouth term to you, and that you do not understand the abstract expression. Then I will take concrete instances: I mean to say that the producing power or agent becomes neither heat nor whiteness, but hot and white, and the like of other things. For I must repeat what I said before, that neither the agent nor patient have any absolute existence, but when they come together and generate sensations and their objects, the one becomes a thing of a certain quality, and the other a percipient. You remember?

*Theod.* Of course.

*Soc.* We may leave the details of their theory unexamined, but we must not forget to ask them the only question with which we are concerned: Are all things in motion and flux?

*Theod.* Yes, they will reply.

*Soc.* And they are moved in both those ways which we distinguished; that is to say, they move in place and are also changed?

*Theod.* Of course, if the motion is to be perfect.

*Soc.* If they only moved in place and were not changed, we should be able to say what is the nature of the things which are in motion and flux?

*Theod.* Exactly.

*Soc.* But now, since not even white continues to flow white, and whiteness itself is a flux or change which is passing into another colour, and is never to be caught standing still, can the name of any colour be rightly used at all?

*Theod.* How is that possible, Socrates, either in the case of this or of any other quality—if while we are using the word the object is escaping in the flux?

*Soc.* And what would you say of perceptions, such as sight and hearing, or any other kind of perception? Is there any stopping in the act of seeing and hearing?

*Theod.* Certainly not, if all things are in motion.

*Soc.* Then we must not speak of seeing any more than of not-seeing, nor of any other perception more than of any non-perception, if all things partake of every kind of motion?

Since each quality not only moves in place, but changes at the same time, one name cannot be more appropriate to it than another.

So too with sensations: seeing might just as well be called not-

*Theod.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* Yet perception is knowledge: so at least Theaetetus and I were saying.

*Theod.* Very true.

*Soc.* Then when we were asked what is knowledge, we no more answered what is knowledge than what is not knowledge?

*Theod.* I suppose not.

183 *Soc.* Here, then, is a fine result: we corrected our first answer in our eagerness to prove that nothing is at rest. But if nothing is at rest, every answer upon whatever subject is equally right: you may say that a thing is or is not thus; or, if you prefer, 'becomes' thus; and if we say 'becomes,' we shall not then hamper them with words expressive of rest.

*Theod.* Quite true.

*Soc.* Yes, Theodorus, except in saying 'thus' and 'not thus.' But you ought not to use the word 'thus,' for there is no motion in 'thus' or in 'not thus.' The maintainers of the doctrine have as yet no words in which to express themselves, and must get a new language. I know of no word that will suit them, except perhaps 'no how,' which is perfectly indefinite.

*Theod.* Yes, that is a manner of speaking in which they will be quite at home.

*Soc.* And so, Theodorus, we have got rid of your friend without assenting to his doctrine, that every man is the measure of all things—a wise man only is a measure; neither can we allow that knowledge is perception, certainly not on the hypothesis of a perpetual flux, unless perchance our friend Theaetetus is able to convince us that it is.

*Theod.* Very good, Socrates; and now that the argument about the doctrine of Protagoras has been completed, I am absolved from answering; for this was the agreement.

*Theaet.* Not, Theodorus, until you and Socrates have discussed the doctrine of those who say that all things are at rest, as you were proposing.

*Theod.* You, Theaetetus, who are a young rogue, must not instigate your elders to a breach of faith, but should prepare to answer Socrates in the remainder of the argument.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES, -  
THEODORUS,  
THEAETETUS.

seeing; and,  
to come to  
our defini-  
tion, know-  
ledge is no  
more per-  
ception  
than non-  
perception.

The theory  
is refuted so  
far as it is  
based on a  
perpetual  
flux.

Theaetetus  
wishes to  
hear a dis-  
cussion of  
the opposite  
doctrine of  
rest.



*Theaetetus.* *Theaet.* Yes, if he wishes ; but I would rather have heard about the doctrine of rest.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theod.* Invite Socrates to an argument—invite horsemen to the open plain ; do but ask him, and he will answer.

*Soc.* Nevertheless, Theodorus, I am afraid that I shall not be able to comply with the request of Theaetetus.

*Theod.* Not comply ! for what reason ?

Socrates is afraid of entering on the question. He has so great an awe of Parmenides, and he has not yet 'delivered' Theaetetus of his conception of knowledge.

*Soc.* My reason is that I have a kind of reverence ; not so much for Melissus and the others, who say that 'All is one and at rest,' as for the great leader himself, Parmenides, venerable and awful, as in Homeric language he may be called ;—him I should be ashamed to approach in a spirit unworthy of him. I met him when he was an old man, and I was a mere youth, and he appeared to me to have a glorious depth of mind. And I am afraid that we may not understand his words, and may be still further from understanding his meaning ; above all I fear that the nature of knowledge, which is the main subject of our discussion, may be thrust out of sight by the unbidden guests who will come pouring in upon our feast of discourse, if we let them in—besides, the question which is now stirring is of immense extent, and will be treated unfairly if only considered by the way ; or if treated adequately and at length, will put into the shade the other question of knowledge. Neither the one nor the other can be allowed ; but I must try by my art of midwifery to deliver Theaetetus of his conceptions about knowledge.

*Theaet.* Very well ; do so if you will.

*Soc.* Then now, Theaetetus, take another view of the subject : you answered that knowledge is perception ?

*Theaet.* I did.

Another point of view.

*Soc.* And if any one were to ask you : With what does a man see black and white colours ? and with what does he hear high and low sounds ?—you would say, if I am not mistaken, 'With the eyes and with the ears.'

*Theaet.* I should.

*Soc.* The free use of words and phrases, rather than minute precision, is generally characteristic of a liberal education, and the opposite is pedantic ; but sometimes precision is necessary, and I believe that the answer which

you have just given is open to the charge of incorrectness; for which is more correct, to say that we see or hear with the eyes and with the ears, or through the eyes and through the ears.

*Theæt.* I should say 'through,' Socrates, rather than 'with.'

*Soc.* Yes, my boy, for no one can suppose that in each of us, as in a sort of Trojan horse, there are perched a number of unconnected senses, which do not all meet in some one nature, the mind, or whatever we please to call it, of which they are the instruments, and with which through them we perceive objects of sense.

*Theæt.* I agree with you in that opinion.

*Soc.* The reason why I am thus precise is, because I want to know whether, when we perceive black and white through the eyes, and again, other qualities through other organs, we do not perceive them with one and the same part of ourselves, and, if you were asked, you might refer all such perceptions to the body. Perhaps, however, I had better allow you to answer for yourself and not interfere. Tell me, then, are not the organs through which you perceive warm and hard and light and sweet, organs of the body?

*Theæt.* Of the body, certainly.

185 *Soc.* And you would admit that what you perceive through one faculty you cannot perceive through another; the objects of hearing, for example, cannot be perceived through sight, or the objects of sight through hearing?

*Theæt.* Of course not.

*Soc.* If you have any thought about both of them, this common perception cannot come to you, either through the one or the other organ?

*Theæt.* It cannot.

*Soc.* How about sounds and colours: in the first place you would admit that they both exist?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* And that either of them is different from the other, and the same with itself?

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And that both are two and each of them one?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS

We perceive sensible things not through, but with the mind, and not with, but through the senses.

The senses differ from each other, and have no objects in common.

*Theaetetus.* Soc. You can further observe whether they are like or unlike one another?

SOCRATES,

THEAETETUS. *Theaet.* I dare say.

*Soc.* But through what do you perceive all this about them? for neither through hearing nor yet through seeing can you apprehend that which they have in common. Let me give you an illustration of the point at issue:—If there were any meaning in asking whether sounds and colours are saline or not, you would be able to tell me what faculty would consider the question. It would not be sight or hearing, but some other.

*Theaet.* Certainly; the faculty of taste.

*Soc.* Very good; and now tell me what is the power which discerns, not only in sensible objects, but in all things, universal notions, such as those which are called being and not-being, and those others about which we were just asking—what organs will you assign for the perception of these notions?

General ideas are perceived by the mind alone without the help of the senses

*Theaet.* You are thinking of being and not-being, likeness and unlikeness, sameness and difference, and also of unity and other numbers which are applied to objects of sense; and you mean to ask, through what bodily organ the soul perceives odd and even numbers and other arithmetical conceptions.

*Soc.* You follow me excellently, Theaetetus; that is precisely what I am asking.

*Theaet.* Indeed, Socrates, I cannot answer; my only notion is, that these, unlike objects of sense, have no separate organ, but that the mind, by a power of her own, contemplates the universals in all things.

*Soc.* You are a beauty, Theaetetus, and not ugly, as Theodorus was saying; for he who utters the beautiful is himself beautiful and good. And besides being beautiful, you have done me a kindness in releasing me from a very long discussion, if you are clear that the soul views some things by herself and others through the bodily organs. For that was my own opinion, and I wanted you to agree with me.

*Theaet.* I am quite clear.

*Soc.* And to which class would you refer being or essence; 186 for this, of all our notions, is the most universal?

*Theaet.* I should say, to that class which the soul aspires to know of herself. *Theaetetus.*

*Soc.* And would you say this also of like and unlike, same and other? SOCRATES.  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And would you say the same of the noble and base, and of good and evil?

*Theaet.* These I conceive to be notions which are essentially relative, and which the soul also perceives by comparing in herself things past and present with the future.

*Soc.* And does she not perceive the hardness of that which is hard by the touch, and the softness of that which is soft equally by the touch? The senses perceive objects of sense, but the mind alone can compare them.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* But their essence and what they are, and their opposition to one another, and the essential nature of this opposition, the soul herself endeavours to decide for us by the review and comparison of them?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* The simple sensations which reach the soul through the body are given at birth to men and animals by nature, but their reflections on the being and use of them are slowly and hardly gained, if they are ever gained, by education and long experience. Sensations are given at birth, but truth and being, which are essential to knowledge, are acquired by reflection later on.

*Theaet.* Assuredly.

*Soc.* And can a man attain truth who fails of attaining being?

*Theaet.* Impossible.

*Soc.* And can he who misses the truth of anything, have a knowledge of that thing?

*Theaet.* He cannot.

*Soc.* Then knowledge does not consist in impressions of sense, but in reasoning about them; in that only, and not in the mere impression, truth and being can be attained?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

*Soc.* And would you call the two processes by the same name, when there is so great a difference between them?

*Theaet.* That would certainly not be right.

*Soc.* And what name would you give to seeing, hearing, smelling, being cold and being hot?

*Theaetetus.* *Theaet.* I should call all of them perceiving—what other name could be given to them?

*SOCRATES,*  
*THEAETETUS.* *Soc.* Perception would be the collective name of them?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Which, as we say, has no part in the attainment of truth any more than of being?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And therefore not in science or knowledge?

*Theaet.* No.

*Soc.* Then perception, Theaetetus, can never be the same as knowledge or science?

*Theaet.* Clearly not, Socrates; and knowledge has now been most distinctly proved to be different from perception.

We have  
found out  
then what  
knowledge  
is not. But  
what is it?

*Soc.* But the original aim of our discussion was to find out 187 rather what knowledge is than what it is not; at the same time we have made some progress, for we no longer seek for knowledge in perception at all, but in that other process, however called, in which the mind is alone and engaged with being.

*Theaet.* You mean, Socrates, if I am not mistaken, what is called thinking or opining.

*Soc.* You conceive truly. And now, my friend, please to begin again at this point; and having wiped out of your memory all that has preceded, see if you have arrived at any clearer view, and once more say what is knowledge.

Theaetetus  
boldly  
answers,  
'True  
opinion.'

*Theaet.* I cannot say, Socrates, that all opinion is knowledge, because there may be a false opinion; but I will venture to assert, that knowledge is true opinion: let this then be my reply; and if this is hereafter disproved, I must try to find another.

*Soc.* That is the way in which you ought to answer, Theaetetus, and not in your former hesitating strain, for if we are bold we shall gain one of two advantages; either we shall find what we seek, or we shall be less likely to think that we know what we do not know—in either case we shall be richly rewarded. And now, what are you saying?—Are there two sorts of opinion, one true and the other false; and do you define knowledge to be the true?

*Theaet.* Yes, according to my present view.

*Soc.* Is it still worth our while to resume the discussion touching opinion? *Theætetus.*

*Theæt.* To what are you alluding?

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Soc.* There is a point which often troubles me, and is a great perplexity to me, both in regard to myself and others. I cannot make out the nature or origin of the mental experience to which I refer.

*Theæt.* Pray what is it?

*Soc.* How there can be false opinion—that difficulty still troubles the eye of my mind; and I am uncertain whether I shall leave the question, or begin over again in a new way. But false opinion is impossible, (1) in the sphere of knowledge:

*Theæt.* Begin again, Socrates,—at least if you think that there is the slightest necessity for doing so. Were not you and Theodorus just now remarking very truly, that in discussions of this kind we may take our own time?

*Soc.* You are quite right, and perhaps there will be no harm in retracing our steps and beginning again. Better a little which is well done, than a great deal imperfectly.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Well, and what is the difficulty? Do we not speak of false opinion, and say that one man holds a false and another a true opinion, as though there were some natural distinction between them?

*Theæt.* We certainly say so.

188 *Soc.* All things and everything are either known or not known. I leave out of view the intermediate conceptions of learning and forgetting, because they have nothing to do with our present question. for all things are either known or not known;

*Theæt.* There can be no doubt, Socrates, if you exclude these, that there is no other alternative but knowing or not knowing a thing.

*Soc.* That point being now determined, must we not say that he who has an opinion, must have an opinion about something which he knows or does not know?

*Theæt.* He must.

*Soc.* He who knows, cannot but know; and he who does not know, cannot know?

*Theæt.* Of course.

*Soc.* What shall we say then? When a man has a false

*Theaetetus.* opinion does he think that which he knows to be some other thing which he knows, and knowing both, is he at the same time ignorant of both?

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

and a man cannot think one thing, which he knows or does not know, to be another thing which he knows or does not know; nor what he does not know to be what he knows, or  
*vice versa* :

and (2) in the sphere of being :

*Theaet.* That, Socrates, is impossible.

*Soc.* But perhaps he thinks of something which he does not know as some other thing which he does not know; for example, he knows neither Theaetetus nor Socrates, and yet he fancies that Theaetetus is Socrates, or Socrates Theaetetus?

*Theaet.* How can he?

*Soc.* But surely he cannot suppose what he knows to be what he does not know, or what he does not know to be what he knows?

*Theaet.* That would be monstrous.

*Soc.* Where, then, is false opinion? For if all things are either known or unknown, there can be no opinion which is not comprehended under this alternative, and so false opinion is excluded.

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Soc.* Suppose that we remove the question out of the sphere of knowing or not knowing, into that of being and not-being.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* May we not suspect the simple truth to be that he who thinks about anything, that which is not, will necessarily think what is false, whatever in other respects may be the state of his mind?

*Theaet.* That, again, is not unlikely, Socrates.

*Soc.* Then suppose some one to say to us, Theaetetus:—Is it possible for any man to think that which is not, either as a self-existent substance or as a predicate of something else? And suppose that we answer, 'Yes, he can, when he thinks what is not true.'—That will be our answer?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* But is there any parallel to this?

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* Can a man see something and yet see nothing?

*Theaet.* Impossible.

*Soc.* But if he sees any one thing, he sees something that exists. Do you suppose that what is one is ever to be found among non-existing things?

for it is impossible when seeing or hearing not to see or hear some existing thing.

*Theæt.* I do not.

*Theætetus.*

*Soc.* He then who sees some one thing, sees something which is?

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Theæt.* Clearly.

189 *Soc.* And he who hears anything, hears some one thing, and hears that which is?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* And he who touches anything, touches something which is one and therefore is?

*Theæt.* That again is true.

*Soc.* And does not he who thinks, think some one thing?

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And does not he who thinks some one thing, think something which is?

*Theæt.* I agree.

*Soc.* Then he who thinks of that which is not, thinks of nothing?

To think  
what is not  
is not to  
think.

*Theæt.* Clearly.

*Soc.* And he who thinks of nothing, does not think at all?

*Theæt.* Obviously.

*Soc.* Then no one can think that which is not, either as a self-existent substance or as a predicate of something else?

*Theæt.* Clearly not.

*Soc.* Then to think falsely is different from thinking that which is not?

*Theæt.* It would seem so.

*Soc.* Then false opinion has no existence in us, either in the sphere of being or of knowledge?

False  
opinion  
must be  
sought else-  
where.

*Theæt.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* But may not the following be the description of what we express by this name?

*Theæt.* What?

*Soc.* May we not suppose that false opinion or thought is a sort of heterodoxy; a person may make an exchange in his mind, and say that one real object is another real object. For thus he always thinks that which is, but he puts one thing in place of another, and missing the aim of his thoughts, he may be truly said to have false opinion.

One real ob-  
ject may be  
thought to  
be some  
other real  
object.—  
This Theae-  
tetus em-  
phatically  
affirms to  
be truly  
false.

*Theæt.* Now you appear to me to have spoken the exact



*Theaetetus.* truth : when a man puts the base in the place of the noble, or the noble in the place of the base, then he has truly false opinion.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* I see, Theaetetus, that your fear has disappeared, and that you are beginning to despise me.

*Theaet.* What makes you say so ?

Socrates allows this contradiction to pass, and proceeds to ask whether a man ever believed one of two things which he had in his mind to be the other.

*Soc.* You think, if I am not mistaken, that your 'truly false' is safe from censure, and that I shall never ask whether there can be a swift which is slow, or a heavy which is light, or any other self-contradictory thing, which works, not according to its own nature, but according to that of its opposite. But I will not insist upon this, for I do not wish needlessly to discourage you. And so you are satisfied that false opinion is heterodoxy, or the thought of something else ?

*Theaet.* I am.

*Soc.* It is possible then upon your view for the mind to conceive of one thing as another ?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* But must not the mind, or thinking power, which misplaces them, have a conception either of both objects or of one of them ?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Either together or in succession ?

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Soc.* And do you mean by conceiving, the same which I mean ?

*Theaet.* What is that ?

*Soc.* I mean the conversation which the soul holds with herself in considering of anything. I speak of what I scarcely understand ; but the soul when thinking appears 190 to me to be just talking—asking questions of herself and answering them, affirming and denying. And when she has arrived at a decision, either gradually or by a sudden impulse, and has at last agreed, and does not doubt, this is called her opinion. I say, then, that to form an opinion is to speak, and opinion is a word spoken,—I mean, to oneself and in silence, not aloud or to another : What think you ?

*Theaet.* I agree.

*Soc.* Then when any one thinks of one thing as another, he is saying to himself that one thing is another?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* But do you ever remember saying to yourself that the noble is certainly base, or the unjust just; or, best of all—have you ever attempted to convince yourself that one thing is another? Nay, not even in sleep, did you ever venture to say to yourself that odd is even, or anything of the kind?

*Theaet.* Never.

*Soc.* And do you suppose that any other man, either in his senses or out of them, ever seriously tried to persuade himself that an ox is a horse, or that two are one?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* But if thinking is talking to oneself, no one speaking and thinking of two objects, and apprehending them both in his soul, will say and think that the one is the other of them, and I must add, that even you, lover of dispute as you are, had better let the word 'other' alone [i. e. not insist that 'one' and 'other' are the same<sup>1</sup>]. I mean to say, that no one thinks the noble to be base, or anything of the kind.

*Theaet.* I will give up the word 'other,' Socrates; and I agree to what you say.

*Soc.* If a man has both of them in his thoughts, he cannot think that the one of them is the other?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Neither, if he has one of them only in his mind and not the other, can he think that one is the other?

*Theaet.* True; for we should have to suppose that he apprehends that which is not in his thoughts at all.

*Soc.* Then no one who has either both or only one of the two objects in his mind can think that the one is the other. And therefore, he who maintains that false opinion is heterodoxy is talking nonsense; for neither in this, any more than in the previous way, can false opinion exist in us.

*Theaet.* No.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

But how  
can one  
thing be  
thought to  
be another?

e. g. no one  
ever says to  
himself that  
the noble is  
the base, or  
that odd is  
even.

It is ad-  
mitted on  
all hands  
that no one  
can confuse  
two things,  
either when  
he has both  
in his mind,  
or when he  
has only  
one.

<sup>1</sup> Both words in Greek are called *ἑτερον*: cp. *Parmen.* 147 C; *Euthyd.* 301 A.

*Theaetetus.* *Soc.* But if, Theaetetus, this is not admitted, we shall be driven into many absurdities.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* What are they?

*Soc.* I will not tell you until I have endeavoured to consider the matter from every point of view. For I should be 191  
ashamed of us if we were driven in our perplexity to admit the absurd consequences of which I speak. But if we find the solution, and get away from them, we may regard them only as the difficulties of others, and the ridicule will not attach to us. On the other hand, if we utterly fail, I suppose that we must be humble, and allow the argument to trample us under foot, as the sea-sick passenger is trampled upon by the sailor, and to do anything to us. Listen, then, while I tell you how I hope to find a way out of our difficulty.

We are in  
great  
straits.

A way out  
of the diffi-  
culty :

Theaetetus  
may know  
Socrates,  
and yet mis-  
take an-  
other whom  
he sees, but  
does not  
know, for  
him.

*Theaet.* Let me hear.

*Soc.* I think that we were wrong in denying that a man could think what he knew to be what he did not know; and that there is a way in which such a deception is possible.

*Theaet.* You mean to say, as I suspected at the time, that I may know Socrates, and at a distance see some one who is unknown to me, and whom I mistake for him—then the deception will occur?

*Soc.* But has not that position been relinquished by us, because involving the absurdity that we should know and not know the things which we know?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Let us make the assertion in another form, which may or may not have a favourable issue; but as we are in a great strait, every argument should be turned over and tested. Tell me, then, whether I am right in saying that you may learn a thing which at one time you did not know?

*Theaet.* Certainly you may.

*Soc.* And another and another?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* I would have you imagine, then, that there exists in the mind of man a block of wax, which is of different sizes in different men; harder, moister, and having more or less of purity in one than another, and in some of an intermediate quality.

*Theaet.* I see.

*Soc.* Let us say that this tablet is a gift of Memory, the mother of the Muses ; and that when we wish to remember anything which we have seen, or heard, or thought in our own minds, we hold the wax to the perceptions and thoughts, and in that material receive the impression of them as from the seal of a ring ; and that we remember and know what is imprinted as long as the image lasts ; but when the image is effaced, or cannot be taken, then we forget and do not know.

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Soc.* Now, when a person has this knowledge, and is considering something which he sees or hears, may not false opinion arise in the following manner ?

*Theaet.* In what manner ?

*Soc.* When he thinks what he knows, sometimes to be what he knows, and sometimes to be what he does not know. We were wrong before in denying the possibility of this.

*Theaet.* And how would you amend the former statement ?

192 *Soc.* I should begin by making a list of the impossible cases which must be excluded. (1) No one can think one thing to be another when he does not perceive either of them, but has the memorial or seal of both of them in his mind ; nor can any mistaking of one thing for another occur, when he only knows one, and does not know, and has no impression of the other ; nor can he think that one thing which he does not know is another thing which he does not know, or that what he does not know is what he knows ; nor (2) that one thing which he perceives is another thing which he perceives, or that something which he perceives is something which he does not perceive ; or that something which he does not perceive is something else which he does not perceive ; or that something which he does not perceive is something which he perceives ; nor again (3) can he think that something which he knows and perceives, and of which he has the impression coinciding with sense, is something else which he knows and perceives, and of which he has the impression coinciding with sense ;—this last case, if possible, is still more inconceivable than the others ; nor (4) can he think that something which he knows and perceives, and of which he has the memorial coinciding with sense, is something else which he knows ; nor so long as these agree, can

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

The image  
of the  
waxen  
tablet  
having  
different  
qualities of  
wax.

Confusion is  
impossible,  
(1) between  
two things  
not per-  
ceived by  
sense, when  
we know  
one or both  
or neither  
of them ;  
(2) between  
two things  
when we  
have a sen-  
sible im-  
pression of  
one or both  
or neither of  
them ; (3)  
still more  
impossible  
between  
two things,  
both of  
which are  
known and  
perceived,  
and of  
which the  
impression  
coincides  
with sense ;

*Theaetetus.* he think that a thing which he knows and perceives is another thing which he perceives ; or that a thing which he does not know and does not perceive, is the same as another thing which he does not know and does not perceive ;—nor again, can he suppose that a thing which he does not know and does not perceive is the same as another thing which he does not know ; or that a thing which he does not know and does not perceive is another thing which he does not perceive :—All these utterly and absolutely exclude the possibility of false opinion. The only cases, if any, which remain, are the following.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

(4) between two things of which both or one only or neither are known and perceived and have an impression corresponding to sense.

*Theaet.* What are they? If you tell me, I may perhaps understand you better ; but at present I am unable to follow you.

Confusion arises when for things already known and perceived we mistake other things, either known, or perceived and not known, or both known and perceived.

*Soc.* A person may think that some things which he knows, or which he perceives and does not know, are some other things which he knows and perceives ; or that some things which he knows and perceives, are other things which he knows and perceives.

*Theaet.* I understand you less than ever now.

*Soc.* Hear me once more, then :—I, knowing Theodorus, and remembering in my own mind what sort of person he is, and also what sort of person Theaetetus is, at one time see them, and at another time do not see them, and sometimes I touch them, and at another time not, or at one time I may hear them or perceive them in some other way, and at another time not perceive them, but still I remember them, and know them in my own mind.

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Soc.* Then, first of all, I want you to understand that a man may or may not perceive sensibly that which he knows.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And that which he does not know will sometimes not be perceived by him and sometimes will be perceived and only perceived?

*Theaet.* That is also true.

Recapitulation.

*Soc.* See whether you can follow me better now : Socrates 193 can recognize Theodorus and Theaetetus, but he sees neither of them, nor does he perceive them in any other way ; he

cannot then by any possibility imagine in his own mind that Theaetetus is Theodorus. Am I not right? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* You are quite right.

*Soc.* Then that was the first case of which I spoke.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* The second case was, that I, knowing one of you and not knowing the other, and perceiving neither, can never think him whom I know to be him whom I do not know.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* In the third case, not knowing and not perceiving either of you, I cannot think that one of you whom I do not know is the other whom I do not know. I need not again go over the catalogue of excluded cases, in which I cannot form a false opinion about you and Theodorus, either when I know both or when I am in ignorance of both, or when I know one and not the other. And the same of perceiving: do you understand me?

*Theaet.* I do.

*Soc.* The only possibility of erroneous opinion is, when knowing you and Theodorus, and having on the waxen block the impression of both of you given as by a seal, but seeing you imperfectly and at a distance, I try to assign the right impression of memory to the right visual impression, and to fit this into its own print: if I succeed, recognition will take place; but if I fail and transpose them, putting the foot into the wrong shoe—that is to say, putting the vision of either of you on to the wrong impression, or if my mind, like the sight in a mirror, which is transferred from right to left, err by reason of some similar affection, then ‘heterodoxy’ and false opinion ensues.

False opinion is the erroneous combination of sensation and thought.

*Theaet.* Yes, Socrates, you have described the nature of opinion with wonderful exactness.

*Soc.* Or again, when I know both of you, and perceive as well as know one of you, but not the other, and my knowledge of him does not accord with perception—that was the case put by me just now which you did not understand.

*Theaet.* No, I did not.

*Soc.* I meant to say, that when a person knows and perceives one of you, and his knowledge coincides with his perception, he will never think him to be some other person,

*Theaetetus.* whom he knows and perceives, and the knowledge of whom coincides with his perception—for that also was a case supposed.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* But there was an omission of the further case, in which, as we now say, false opinion may arise, when know- 194  
ing both, and seeing, or having some other sensible perception of both, I fail in holding the seal over against the corresponding sensation; like a bad archer, I miss and fall wide of the mark—and this is called falsehood.

*Theaet.* Yes; it is rightly so called.

*Soc.* When, therefore, perception is present to one of the seals or impressions but not to the other, and the mind fits the seal of the absent perception on the one which is present, in any case of this sort the mind is deceived; in a word, if our view is sound, there can be no error or deception about things which a man does not know and has never perceived, but only in things which are known and perceived; in these alone opinion turns and twists about, and becomes alternately true and false;—true when the seals and impressions of sense meet straight and opposite—false when they go awry and are crooked.

*Theaet.* And is not that, Socrates, nobly said?

*Soc.* Nobly! yes; but wait a little and hear the explanation, and then you will say so with more reason; for to think truly is noble and to be deceived is base.

*Theaet.* Undoubtedly.

The differences in the kinds and degrees of knowledge depend on the extent and the qualities of the wax.

*Soc.* And the origin of truth and error is as follows:—When the wax in the soul of any one is deep and abundant, and smooth and perfectly tempered, then the impressions which pass through the senses and sink into the heart of the soul, as Homer says in a parable, meaning to indicate the likeness of the soul to wax (κῆρ κηρός); these, I say, being pure and clear, and having a sufficient depth of wax, are also lasting, and minds, such as these, easily learn and easily retain, and are not liable to confusion, but have true thoughts, for they have plenty of room, and having clear impressions of things, as we term them, quickly distribute them into their proper places on the block. And such men are called wise. Do you agree?

*Theaet.* Entirely.

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* But when the heart of any one is shaggy—a quality which the all-wise poet commends, or muddy and of impure wax, or very soft, or very hard, then there is a corresponding defect in the mind—the soft are good at learning, but apt to forget; and the hard are the reverse; the shaggy and rugged and gritty, or those who have an admixture of earth or dung  
195 in their composition, have the impressions indistinct, as also the hard, for there is no depth in them; and the soft too are indistinct, for their impressions are easily confused and effaced. Yet greater is the indistinctness when they are all jostled together in a little soul, which has no room. These are the natures which have false opinion; for when they see or hear or think of anything, they are slow in assigning the right objects to the right impressions—in their stupidity they confuse them, and are apt to see and hear and think amiss—and such men are said to be deceived in their knowledge of objects, and ignorant.

*Theaet.* No man, Socrates, can say anything truer than that.

*Soc.* Then now we may admit the existence of false opinion in us?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And of true opinion also?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* We have at length satisfactorily proven that beyond a doubt there are these two sorts of opinion?

*Theaet.* Undoubtedly.

*Soc.* Alas, Theaetetus, what a tiresome creature is a man who is fond of talking!

*Theaet.* What makes you say so?

*Soc.* Because I am disheartened at my own stupidity and tiresome garrulity; for what other term will describe the habit of a man who is always arguing on all sides of a question; whose dulness cannot be convinced, and who will never leave off?

*Theaet.* But what puts you out of heart?

*Soc.* I am not only out of heart, but in positive despair; for I do not know what to answer if any one were to ask me:—O Socrates, have you indeed discovered that false opinion arises neither in the comparison of perceptions with

Our simile  
does not  
explain all  
the facts;  
for error  
may arise



*Theaetetus.*SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.not only in  
the com-  
bination of  
thought  
and sense,  
but in pure  
thought.

one another nor yet in thought, but in the union of thought and perception? Yes, I shall say, with the complacence of one who thinks that he has made a noble discovery.

*Theaet.* I see no reason why we should be ashamed of our demonstration, Socrates.

*Soc.* He will say: You mean to argue that the man whom we only think of and do not see, cannot be confused with the horse which we do not see or touch, but only think of and do not perceive? That I believe to be my meaning, I shall reply.

*Theaet.* Quite right.

*Soc.* Well, then, he will say, according to that argument, the number eleven, which is only thought, can never be mistaken for twelve, which is only thought: How would you answer him?

*Theaet.* I should say that a mistake may very likely arise between the eleven or twelve which are seen or handled, but that no similar mistake can arise between the eleven and twelve which are in the mind.

For ex-  
ample, a  
man may  
think that  
 $5+7=11$ ,  
instead of  
12, and so  
confuse two  
impressions  
on the wax.

*Soc.* Well, but do you think that no one ever put before his own mind five and seven,—I do not mean five or seven 196 men or horses, but five or seven in the abstract, which, as we say, are recorded on the waxen block, and in which false opinion is held to be impossible;—did no man ever ask himself how many these numbers make when added together, and answer that they are eleven, while another thinks that they are twelve, or would all agree in thinking and saying that they are twelve?

*Theaet.* Certainly not; many would think that they are eleven, and in the higher numbers the chance of error is greater still; for I assume you to be speaking of numbers in general.

*Soc.* Exactly; and I want you to consider whether this does not imply that the twelve in the waxen block are supposed to be eleven?

*Theaet.* Yes, that seems to be the case.

*Soc.* Then do we not come back to the old difficulty? For he who makes such a mistake does think one thing which he knows to be another thing which he knows; but this, as we said, was impossible, and afforded an irresistible

proof of the non-existence of false opinion, because otherwise the same person would inevitably know and not know the same thing at the same time.

*Theætetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Theæt.* Most true.

*Soc.* Then false opinion cannot be explained as a confusion of thought and sense, for in that case we could not have been mistaken about pure conceptions of thought; and thus we are obliged to say, either that false opinion does not exist, or that a man may not know that which he knows;—which alternative do you prefer?

We must therefore admit either that false opinion does not exist, or that a man may not know what he knows.

*Theæt.* It is hard to determine, Socrates.

*Soc.* And yet the argument will scarcely admit of both. But, as we are at our wits' end, suppose that we do a shameless thing?

*Theæt.* What is it?

*Soc.* Let us attempt to explain the verb 'to know.'

*Theæt.* And why should that be shameless?

As a last resource let us ask,

*Soc.* You seem not to be aware that the whole of our discussion from the very beginning has been a search after knowledge, of which we are assumed not to know the nature.

What is the meaning of 'knowing'?

*Theæt.* Nay, but I am well aware.

*Soc.* And is it not shameless when we do not know what knowledge is, to be explaining the verb 'to know'? The truth is, Theætetus, that we have long been infected with logical impurity. Thousands of times have we repeated the words 'we know,' and 'do not know,' and 'we have or have not science or knowledge,' as if we could understand what we are saying to one another, so long as we remain ignorant about knowledge; and at this moment we are using the words 'we understand,' 'we are ignorant,' as though we could still employ them when deprived of knowledge or science.

But how can we answer the question while we are still ignorant of what knowledge is?

*Theæt.* But if you avoid these expressions, Socrates, how will you ever argue at all?

197 *Soc.* I could not, being the man I am. The case would be different if I were a true hero of dialectic: and O that such an one were present! for he would have told us to avoid the use of these terms; at the same time he would not have spared in you and me the faults which I have noted. But, seeing that we are no great wits, shall I venture to say

*Theaetetus.* what knowing is? for I think that the attempt may be worth making.

*SOCRATES,*  
*THEAETETUS.* *Theaet.* Then by all means venture, and no one shall find fault with you for using the forbidden terms.

Still we had better try.  
*Soc.* You have heard the common explanation of the verb 'to know'?

*Theaet.* I think so, but I do not remember it at the moment.

'To know' is not 'to have,' but 'to possess knowledge.'  
*Soc.* They explain the word 'to know' as meaning 'to have knowledge.'

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* I should like to make a slight change, and say 'to possess' knowledge.

*Theaet.* How do the two expressions differ?

*Soc.* Perhaps there may be no difference; but still I should like you to hear my view, that you may help me to test it.

*Theaet.* I will, if I can.

*Soc.* I should distinguish 'having' from 'possessing': for example, a man may buy and keep under his control a garment which he does not wear; and then we should say, not that he has, but that he possesses the garment.

*Theaet.* It would be the correct expression.

To illustrate this distinction let us compare the mind to an aviary which is gradually filled with different kinds of birds, corresponding to the varieties of knowledge.  
*Soc.* Well, may not a man 'possess' and yet not 'have' knowledge in the sense of which I am speaking? As you may suppose a man to have caught wild birds—doves or any other birds—and to be keeping them in an aviary which he has constructed at home; we might say of him in one sense, that he always has them because he possesses them, might we not?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And yet, in another sense, he has none of them; but they are in his power, and he has got them under his hand in an enclosure of his own, and can take and have them whenever he likes;—he can catch any which he likes, and let the bird go again, and he may do so as often as he pleases.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Once more, then, as in what preceded we made a sort of waxen figment in the mind, so let us now suppose that in the mind of each man there is an aviary of all sorts of birds—some flocking together apart from the rest, others in

small groups, others solitary, flying anywhere and everywhere. *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* Let us imagine such an aviary—and what is to follow? *SOCRATES, THEAETETUS.*

*Soc.* We may suppose that the birds are kinds of knowledge, and that when we were children, this receptacle was empty; whenever a man has gotten and detained in the enclosure a kind of knowledge, he may be said to have learned or discovered the thing which is the subject of the knowledge: and this is to know. *Three stages of possession :— (1) the original capture ; (2) the detention in the cage ; (3) the second capture for use.*

*Theaet.* Granted.

198 *Soc.* And further, when any one wishes to catch any of these knowledges or sciences, and having taken, to hold it, and again to let them go, how will he express himself?—will he describe the ‘catching’ of them and the original ‘possession’ in the same words? I will make my meaning clearer by an example:—You admit that there is an art of arithmetic?

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Soc.* Conceive this under the form of a hunt after the science of odd and even in general.

*Theaet.* I follow.

*Soc.* Having the use of the art, the arithmetician, if I am not mistaken, has the conceptions of number under his hand, and can transmit them to another.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And when transmitting them he may be said to teach them, and when receiving to learn them, and when having them in possession in the aforesaid aviary he may be said to know them.

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Soc.* Attend to what follows: must not the perfect arithmetician know all numbers, for he has the science of all numbers in his mind?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And he can reckon abstract numbers in his head, or things about him which are numerable?

*Theaet.* Of course he can.

*Soc.* And to reckon is simply to consider how much such and such a number amounts to?

*Theætetus.* *Theæt.* Very true.

SOCRATES,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Soc.* And so he appears to be searching into something which he knows, as if he did not know it, for we have already admitted that he knows all numbers;—you have heard these perplexing questions raised?

*Theæt.* I have.

The three stages of knowledge :—  
(1) acquisition ;  
(2) latent possession ;  
(3) conscious possession and use.

*Soc.* May we not pursue the image of the doves, and say that the chase after knowledge is of two kinds? one kind is prior to possession and for the sake of possession, and the other for the sake of taking and holding in the hands that which is possessed already. And thus, when a man has learned and known something long ago, he may resume and get hold of the knowledge which he has long possessed, but has not at hand in his mind.

*Theæt.* True.

*Soc.* That was my reason for asking how we ought to speak when an arithmetician sets about numbering, or a grammarian about reading? Shall we say, that although he knows, he comes back to himself to learn what he already knows?

*Theæt.* It would be too absurd, Socrates.

*Soc.* Shall we say then that he is going to read or number what he does not know, although we have admitted that he 199 knows all letters and all numbers?

*Theæt.* That, again, would be an absurdity.

False opinion arises if the arithmetician, when searching for a certain number, catches the wrong one.

*Soc.* Then shall we say that about names we care nothing?—any one may twist and turn the words ‘knowing’ and ‘learning’ in any way which he likes, but since we have determined that the possession of knowledge is not the having or using it, we do assert that a man cannot not possess that which he possesses; and, therefore, in no case can a man not know that which he knows, but he may get a false opinion about it; for he may have the knowledge, not of this particular thing, but of some other;—when the various numbers and forms of knowledge are flying about in the aviary, and wishing to capture a certain sort of knowledge out of the general store, he takes the wrong one by mistake, that is to say, when he thought eleven to be twelve, he got hold of the ring-dove which he had in his mind, when he wanted the pigeon.

*Theæt.* A very rational explanation.

*Soc.* But when he catches the one which he wants, then he is not deceived, and has an opinion of what is, and thus false and true opinion may exist, and the difficulties which were previously raised disappear. I dare say that you agree with me, do you not?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* And so we are rid of the difficulty of a man's not knowing what he knows, for we are not driven to the inference that he does not possess what he possesses, whether he be or be not deceived. And yet I fear that a greater difficulty is looking in at the window.

*Theæt.* What is it?

*Soc.* How can the exchange of one knowledge for another ever become false opinion?

*Theæt.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* In the first place, how can a man who has the knowledge of anything be ignorant of that which he knows, not by reason of ignorance, but by reason of his own knowledge? And, again, is it not an extreme absurdity that he should suppose another thing to be this, and this to be another thing;—that, having knowledge present with him in his mind, he should still know nothing and be ignorant of all things?—you might as well argue that ignorance may make a man know, and blindness make him see, as that knowledge can make him ignorant.

*Theæt.* Perhaps, Socrates, we may have been wrong in making only forms of knowledge our birds: whereas there ought to have been forms of ignorance as well, flying about together in the mind, and then he who sought to take one of them might sometimes catch a form of knowledge, and sometimes a form of ignorance; and thus he would have a false opinion from ignorance, but a true one from knowledge, about the same thing.

*Soc.* I cannot help praising you, Theaetetus, and yet I must beg you to reconsider your words. Let us grant what you say—then, according to you, he who takes ignorance will have a false opinion—am I right?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Soc.* He will certainly not think that he has a false opinion?

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS  
For a moment the explanation appears satisfactory.

But again the old difficulty returns; for when a man has knowledge in his hand, how can he mistake it for ignorance?

Theaetetus suggests that there are forms of ignorance, as well as of knowledge, flying about in the aviary. But the man who makes a mistake will take a form of ignorance for a form of knowledge; and so we

*Theaetetus.*     *Theaet.* Of course not.

*SOCRATES,*     *Soc.* He will think that his opinion is true, and he will  
*THEAETETUS.* fancy that he knows the things about which he has been  
 are brought deceived?

back to the  
 original  
 difficulty.     *Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then he will think that he has captured knowledge  
 and not ignorance?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

*Soc.* And thus, after going a long way round, we are once  
 more face to face with our original difficulty. The hero of  
 dialectic will retort upon us:—‘O my excellent friends, he  
 will say, laughing, if a man knows the form of ignorance and  
 the form of knowledge, can he think that one of them which  
 he knows is the other which he knows? or, if he knows  
 neither of them, can he think that the one which he knows not  
 is another which he knows not? or, if he knows one and not  
 the other, can he think the one which he knows to be the one  
 which he does not know? or the one which he does not know  
 to be the one which he knows? or will you tell me that there  
 are other forms of knowledge which distinguish the right and  
 wrong birds, and which the owner keeps in some other  
 aviaries or graven on waxen blocks according to your foolish  
 images, and which he may be said to know while he possesses  
 them, even though he have them not at hand in his mind?  
 And thus, in a perpetual circle, you will be compelled to go  
 round and round, and you will make no progress.’ What  
 are we to say in reply, *Theaetetus*?

It will be  
 ridiculous  
 to attempt  
 to get rid of  
 this by the  
 help of  
 another  
 aviary, con-  
 taining  
 other birds,  
 i. e. forms  
 of know-  
 ledge.

Our dis-  
 comfiture is  
 due to the  
 fact that we  
 seek false  
 opinion  
 before  
 knowledge.

*Theaet.* Indeed, Socrates, I do not know what we are  
 to say.

*Soc.* Are not his reproaches just, and does not the argu-  
 ment truly show that we are wrong in seeking for false  
 opinion until we know what knowledge is; that must be  
 first ascertained; then, the nature of false opinion?

*Theaet.* I cannot but agree with you, Socrates, so far as  
 we have yet gone.

*Soc.* Then, once more, what shall we say that knowledge  
 is?—for we are not going to lose heart as yet.

*Theaet.* Certainly, I shall not lose heart, if you do not.

*Soc.* What definition will be most consistent with our  
 former views?

What then  
 is know-  
 ledge?

*Theaet.* I cannot think of any but our old one, Socrates.

*Soc.* What was it?

*Theaet.* Knowledge was said by us to be true opinion; and true opinion is surely unerring, and the results which follow from it are all noble and good.

*Soc.* He who led the way into the river, Theaetetus, said  
201 'The experiment will show;' and perhaps if we go forward in the search, we may stumble upon the thing which we are looking for; but if we stay where we are, nothing will come to light.

*Theaet.* Very true; let us go forward and try.

*Soc.* The trail soon comes to an end, for a whole profession is against us.

*Theaet.* How is that, and what profession do you mean?

*Soc.* The profession of the great wise ones who are called orators and lawyers; for these persuade men by their art and make them think whatever they like, but they do not teach them. Do you imagine that there are any teachers in the world so clever as to be able to convince others of the truth about acts of robbery or violence, of which they were not eye-witnesses, while a little water is flowing in the clepsydra?

*Theaet.* Certainly not, they can only persuade them.

*Soc.* And would you not say that persuading them is making them have an opinion?

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Soc.* When, therefore, judges are justly persuaded about matters which you can know only by seeing them, and not in any other way, and when thus judging of them from report they attain a true opinion about them, they judge without knowledge, and yet are rightly persuaded, if they have judged well.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And yet, O my friend, if true opinion in law courts<sup>1</sup> and knowledge are the same, the perfect judge could not have judged rightly without knowledge; and therefore I must infer that they are not the same.

*Theaet.* That is a distinction, Socrates, which I have heard

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

An old  
friend re-  
appears :  
' Know-  
ledge is true  
opinion.'

But true  
opinion is  
not always  
knowledge ;  
e. g. in the  
law courts.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *κατὰ δικαστήρια*: an emendation suggested by Professor Campbell.



*Theaetetus.* made by some one else, but I had forgotten it. He said that true opinion, combined with reason, was knowledge, but that the opinion which had no reason was out of the sphere of knowledge; and that things of which there is no rational account are not knowable—such was the singular expression which he used—and that things which have a reason or explanation are knowable.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

Another  
notion :  
Knowledge  
is true  
opinion ac-  
companied  
by a reason.

*Soc.* Excellent; but then, how did he distinguish between things which are and are not 'knowable'? I wish that you would repeat to me what he said, and then I shall know whether you and I have heard the same tale.

*Theaet.* I do not know whether I can recall it; but if another person would tell me, I think that I could follow him.

The same  
notion ex-  
pressed by  
Socrates in  
a different  
manner.

*Soc.* Let me give you, then, a dream in return for a dream:—Methought that I too had a dream, and I heard in my dream that the primeval letters or elements out of which you and I and all other things are compounded, have no reason or explanation; you can only name them, but no predicate 202 can be either affirmed or denied of them, for in the one case existence, in the other non-existence is already implied, neither of which must be added, if you mean to speak of this or that thing by itself alone. It should not be called itself, or that, or each, or alone, or this, or the like; for these go about everywhere and are applied to all things, but are distinct from them; whereas, if the first elements could be described, and had a definition of their own, they would be spoken of apart from all else. But none of these primeval elements can be defined; they can only be named, for they have nothing but a name, and the things which are compounded of them, as they are complex, are expressed by a combination of names, for the combination of names is the essence of a definition. Thus, then, the elements or letters are only objects of perception, and cannot be defined or known; but the syllables or combinations of them are known and expressed, and are apprehended by true opinion. When, therefore, any one forms the true opinion of anything without rational explanation, you may say that his mind is truly exercised, but has no knowledge; for he who cannot give and receive a reason for a thing, has no knowledge of that

The simple  
and pri-  
meval ele-  
ments can  
only be  
named; it  
is the com-  
bination of  
them in the  
proposition  
which gives  
knowledge.

thing; but when he adds rational explanation, then, he is perfected in knowledge and may be all that I have been denying of him. Was that the form in which the dream appeared to you?

*Theact.* Precisely.

*Soc.* And you allow and maintain that true opinion, combined with definition or rational explanation, is knowledge?

*Theact.* Exactly.

*Soc.* Then may we assume, Theaetetus, that to-day, and in this casual manner, we have found a truth which in former times many wise men have grown old and have not found?

*Theact.* At any rate, Socrates, I am satisfied with the present statement.

*Soc.* Which is probably correct—for how can there be knowledge apart from definition and true opinion? And yet there is one point in what has been said which does not quite satisfy me.

*Theact.* What was it?

*Soc.* What might seem to be the most ingenious notion of all:—That the elements or letters are unknown, but the combination or syllables known.

*Theact.* And was that wrong?

*Soc.* We shall soon know; for we have as hostages the instances which the author of the argument himself used.

*Theact.* What hostages?

*Soc.* The letters, which are the elements; and the syllables, which are the combinations;—he reasoned, did he not, from the letters of the alphabet?

203 *Theact.* Yes; he did.

*Soc.* Let us take them and put them to the test, or rather, test ourselves:—What was the way in which we learned letters? and, first of all, are we right in saying that syllables have a definition, but that letters have no definition?

*Theact.* I think so.

*Soc.* I think so too; for, suppose that some one asks you to spell the first syllable of my name:—Theaetetus, he says, what is SO?

*Theaetetus.*  
SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

The theory states that the elements are unknown, but that the combination of them is known. Can this be true?

We are, at any rate, right in saying that the elements have no definition.

*Theaetetus.* *Theaet.* I should reply S and O.

*SOCRATES,* *Soc.* That is the definition which you would give of the syllable?

*THEAETETUS.* *Theaet.* I should.

*Soc.* I wish that you would give me a similar definition of the S.

*Theaet.* But how can any one, Socrates, tell the elements of an element? I can only reply, that S is a consonant, a mere noise, as of the tongue hissing; B, and most other letters, again, are neither vowel-sounds nor noises. Thus letters may be most truly said to be undefined; for even the most distinct of them, which are the seven vowels, have a sound only, but no definition at all.

*Soc.* Then, I suppose, my friend, that we have been so far right in our idea about knowledge?

*Theaet.* Yes; I think that we have.

But are they therefore unknown?

*Soc.* Well, but have we been right in maintaining that the syllables can be known, but not the letters?

*Theaet.* I think so.

*Soc.* And do we mean by a syllable two letters, or if there are more, all of them, or a single idea which arises out of the combination of them?

If by syllable we mean the letters which compose it,

*Theaet.* I should say that we mean all the letters.

*Soc.* Take the case of the two letters S and O, which form the first syllable of my own name; must not he who knows the syllable, know both of them?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* He knows, that is, the S and O?

*Theaet.* Yes.

a man cannot know the syllable without knowing the letters of it.

*Soc.* But can he be ignorant of either singly and yet know both together?

*Theaet.* Such a supposition, Socrates, is monstrous and unmeaning.

*Soc.* But if he cannot know both without knowing each, then if he is ever to know the syllable, he must know the letters first; and thus the fine theory has again taken wings and departed.

*Theaet.* Yes, with wonderful celerity.

But we may mean something over

*Soc.* Yes, we did not keep watch properly. Perhaps we ought to have maintained that a syllable is not the letters,

but rather one single idea framed out of them, having a separate form distinct from them. *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* Very true; and a more likely notion than the other. *SOCRATES, THEAETETUS.*

*Soc.* Take care; let us not be cowards and betray a great and imposing theory. *and above the parts, which is indivisible.*

204 *Theaet.* No, indeed.

*Soc.* Let us assume then, as we now say, that the syllable is a simple form arising out of the several combinations of harmonious elements—of letters or of any other elements.

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Soc.* And it must have no parts.

*Theaet.* Why?

*Soc.* Because that which has parts must be a whole of all the parts. Or would you say that a whole, although formed out of the parts, is a single notion different from all the parts?

*Theaet.* I should.

*Soc.* And would you say that all and the whole are the same, or different? *This implies that the whole differs from the all.*

*Theaet.* I am not certain; but, as you like me to answer at once, I shall hazard the reply, that they are different.

*Soc.* I approve of your readiness, Theaetetus, but I must take time to think whether I equally approve of your answer.

*Theaet.* Yes; the answer is the point.

*Soc.* According to this new view, the whole is supposed to differ from all?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* Well, but is there any difference between all [in the plural] and the all [in the singular]? Take the case of number:—When we say one, two, three, four, five, six; or when we say twice three, or three times two, or four and two, or three and two and one, are we speaking of the same or of different numbers? *But all in the singular does not differ from all in the plural; e.g. all of 6=all 6;*

*Theaet.* Of the same.

*Soc.* That is of six?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And in each form of expression we spoke of all the six?

*Theaet.* True.

*Theaet.*<sup>1</sup> *Soc.* Again, in speaking of all [in the plural], is there not one thing which we express<sup>1</sup>?

*SOCRATES,*  
*THEAETETUS* *Theaet.* Of course there is.

*Soc.* And that is six?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* Then in predicating the word 'all' of things measured by number, we predicate at the same time a singular and a plural?

*Theaet.* Clearly we do.

*Soc.* Again, the number of the acre and the acre are the same; are they not?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the number of the stadium in like manner is the stadium?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the army is the number of the army; and in all similar cases, the entire number of anything is the entire thing?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And the number of each is the parts of each?

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Soc.* Then as many things as have parts are made up of parts?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

and there-  
fore it im-  
plies parts. *Soc.* But all the parts are admitted to be the all, if the entire number is the all?

*Theaet.* True.

But the  
whole being  
different  
from the all,  
cannot have  
parts; *Soc.* Then the whole is not made up of parts, for it would be the all, if consisting of all the parts?

*Theaet.* That is the inference.

*Soc.* But is a part a part of anything but the whole?

*Theaet.* Yes, of the all.

*Soc.* You make a valiant defence, Theaetetus. And yet is 205 not the all that of which nothing is wanting?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And is not a whole likewise that from which nothing is absent? but that from which anything is absent is neither a whole nor all;—if wanting in anything, both equally lose their entirety of nature.

which is  
absurd.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *οὐδ' ἔν.*

*Theaet.* I now think that there is no difference between a whole and all. *Theaetetus.*

*Soc.* But were we not saying that when a thing has parts, all the parts will be a whole and all?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then, as I was saying before, must not the alternative be that either the syllable is not the letters, and then the letters are not parts of the syllable, or that the syllable will be the same with the letters, and will therefore be equally known with them?

*Theaet.* You are right.

*Soc.* And, in order to avoid this, we suppose it to be different from them?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* But if letters are not parts of syllables, can you tell me of any other parts of syllables, which are not letters?

*Theaet.* No, indeed, Socrates; for if I admit the existence of parts in a syllable, it would be ridiculous in me to give up letters and seek for other parts.

*Soc.* Quite true, Theaetetus, and therefore, according to our present view, a syllable must surely be some indivisible form?

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* But do you remember, my friend, that only a little while ago we admitted and approved the statement, that of the first elements out of which all other things are compounded there could be no definition, because each of them when taken by itself is uncompounded; nor can one rightly attribute to them the words 'being' or 'this,' because they are alien and inappropriate words, and for this reason the letters or elements were indefinable and unknown?

*Theaet.* I remember.

*Soc.* And is not this also the reason why they are simple and indivisible? I can see no other.

*Theaet.* No other reason can be given.

*Soc.* Then is not the syllable in the same case as the elements or letters, if it has no parts and is one form?

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Soc.* If, then, a syllable is a whole, and has many parts or letters, the letters as well as the syllable must be intelligible

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

Accordingly there can be no difference between the whole and the all. But the whole, if distinct from the elements, cannot have these for its parts;

and, since it can have no other parts, it must be without parts altogether. The syllable is therefore an uncompounded element, and consequently unknown.

If the syllable is the sum of its

*Theaetetus.* and expressible, since all the parts are acknowledged to be the same as the whole ?

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* True.

letters,  
letters and  
syllable  
must be  
equally in-  
telligible.

If it is in-  
divisible,  
letters and  
syllable  
must be  
equally un-  
known. It  
is untrue to  
say that the  
syllables  
are known,  
but the  
letters un-  
known.

And in  
learning to  
read and  
play on the  
lyre we are  
taught the  
elements,  
which are  
the letters  
or notes,  
first of all.

*Soc.* But if it be one and indivisible, then the syllables and the letters are alike undefined and unknown, and for the same reason ?

*Theaet.* I cannot deny that.

*Soc.* We cannot, therefore, agree in the opinion of him who says that the syllable can be known and expressed, but not the letters.

*Theaet.* Certainly not ; if we may trust the argument.

*Soc.* Well, but will you not be equally inclined to disagree with him, when you remember your own experience in learning to read ?

*Theaet.* What experience ?

*Soc.* Why, that in learning you were kept trying to distinguish the separate letters both by the eye and by the ear, in order that, when you heard them spoken or saw them written, you might not be confused by their position.

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Soc.* And is the education of the harp-player complete unless he can tell what string answers to a particular note ; the notes, as every one would allow, are the elements or letters of music ?

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Soc.* Then, if we argue from the letters and syllables which we know to other simples and compounds, we shall say that the letters or simple elements as a class are much more certainly known than the syllables, and much more indispensable to a perfect knowledge of any subject ; and if some one says that the syllable is known and the letter unknown, we shall consider that either intentionally or unintentionally he is talking nonsense ?

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Soc.* And there might be given other proofs of this belief, if I am not mistaken. But do not let us in looking for them lose sight of the question before us, which is the meaning of the statement, that right opinion with rational definition or explanation is the most perfect form of knowledge.

*Theaet.* We must not.

We said  
that know-  
ledge is  
right  
opinion with  
rational ex-  
planation.

*Soc.* Well, and what is the meaning of the term 'explanation'? I think that we have a choice of three meanings.

*Theaet.* What are they?

*Soc.* In the first place, the meaning may be, manifesting one's thought by the voice with verbs and nouns, imaging an opinion in the stream which flows from the lips, as in a mirror or water. Does not explanation appear to be of this nature?

*Theaet.* Certainly; he who so manifests his thought, is said to explain himself.

*Soc.* And every one who is not born deaf or dumb is able sooner or later to manifest what he thinks of anything; and if so, all those who have a right opinion about anything will also have right explanation; nor will right opinion be anywhere found to exist apart from knowledge.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Let us not, therefore, hastily charge him who gave this account of knowledge with uttering an unmeaning word; for perhaps he only intended to say, that when a person was asked what was the nature of anything, he should be able to answer his questioner by giving the elements of the thing.

*Theaet.* As for example, Socrates . . . ?

*Soc.* As, for example, when Hesiod says that a waggon is made up of a hundred planks. Now, neither you nor I could describe all of them individually; but if any one asked what is a waggon, we should be content to answer, that a waggon consists of wheels, axle, body, rims, yoke.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And our opponent will probably laugh at us, just as he would if we professed to be grammarians and to give a grammatical account of the name of Theaetetus, and yet could only tell the syllables and not the letters of your name—that would be true opinion, and not knowledge; for knowledge, as has been already remarked, is not attained until, combined with true opinion, there is an enumeration of the elements out of which anything is composed.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* In the same general way, we might also have true opinion about a waggon; but he who can describe its essence by an enumeration of the hundred planks, adds

*Theaetetus.*

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

But what is  
explanation?

(1) The reflection of  
thought in  
speech.—  
But this is  
not peculiar  
to those  
who know.

(2) The  
enumeration of the  
parts of a  
thing.



*Theaetetus.* rational explanation to true opinion, and instead of opinion has art and knowledge of the nature of a waggon, in that he attains to the whole through the elements.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* And do you not agree in that view, Socrates?

*Soc.* If you do, my friend; but I want to know first, whether you admit the resolution of all things into their elements to be a rational explanation of them, and the consideration of them in syllables or larger combinations of them to be irrational—is this your view?

*Theaet.* Precisely.

But there  
may be enu-  
meration of  
parts with-  
out know-  
ledge.

*Soc.* Well, and do you conceive that a man has knowledge of any element who at one time affirms and at another time denies that element of something, or thinks that the same thing is composed of different elements at different times?

*Theaet.* Assuredly not.

*Soc.* And do you not remember that in your case and in that of others this often occurred in the process of learning to read?

*Theaet.* You mean that I mistook the letters and misspelt the syllables?

*Soc.* Yes.

*Theaet.* To be sure; I perfectly remember, and I am very far from supposing that they who are in this condition have knowledge.

*Soc.* When a person at the time of learning writes the name of Theaetetus, and thinks that he ought to write and does write *Th* and *e*; but, again, meaning to write the name of Theodorus, thinks that he ought to write and does write *T* and *e*—can we suppose that he knows the first syllables of your two names?

*Theaet.* We have already admitted that such a one has not yet attained knowledge.

*Soc.* And in like manner he may enumerate without knowing them the second and third and fourth syllables of your name?

*Theaet.* He may.

*Soc.* And in that case, when he knows the order of the letters and can write them out correctly, he has right opinion?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

*Soc.* But although we admit that he has right opinion, he will still be without knowledge ? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* Yes. SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* And yet he will have explanation, as well as right opinion, for he knew the order of the letters when he wrote ; and this we admit to be explanation. This is right opinion only.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Then, my friend, there is such a thing as right opinion united with definition or explanation, which does not as yet attain to the exactness of knowledge.

*Theaet.* It would seem so.

*Soc.* And what we fancied to be a perfect definition of knowledge is a dream only. But perhaps we had better not say so as yet, for were there not three explanations of knowledge, one of which must, as we said, be adopted by him who maintains knowledge to be true opinion combined with rational explanation ? And very likely there may be found some one who will not prefer this but the third.

*Theaet.* You are quite right ; there is still one remaining. The first was the image or expression of the mind in speech ; the second, which has just been mentioned, is a way of reaching the whole by an enumeration of the elements. But what is the third definition ?

*Soc.* There is, further, the popular notion of telling the mark or sign of difference which distinguishes the thing in question from all others. (3) True opinion about a thing with the addition of a mark or sign of difference.

*Theaet.* Can you give me any example of such a definition ?

*Soc.* As, for example, in the case of the sun, I think that you would be contented with the statement that the sun is the brightest of the heavenly bodies which revolve about the earth.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Understand why :—the reason is, as I was just now saying, that if you get at the difference and distinguishing characteristic of each thing, then, as many persons affirm, you will get at the definition or explanation of it ; but while you lay hold only of the common and not of the characteristic notion, you will only have the definition of those things to which this common quality belongs.

*Theaetetus.* *Theaet.* I understand you, and your account of definition is in my judgment correct.

SOCRATES,  
THEAETETUS.

*Soc.* But he, who having right opinion about anything, can find out the difference which distinguishes it from other things will know that of which before he had only an opinion.

*Theaet.* Yes ; that is what we are maintaining.

*Soc.* Nevertheless, Theaetetus, on a nearer view, I find myself quite disappointed ; the picture, which at a distance was not so bad, has now become altogether unintelligible.

*Theaet.* What do you mean ?

*Soc.* I will endeavour to explain : I will suppose myself to 209 have true opinion of you, and if to this I add your definition, then I have knowledge, but if not, opinion only.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Soc.* The definition was assumed to be the interpretation of your difference :

*Theaet.* True.

But right  
opinion  
already im-  
plies a  
knowledge  
of differ-  
ence.

*Soc.* But when I had only opinion, I had no conception of your distinguishing characteristics.

*Theaet.* I suppose not.

*Soc.* Then I must have conceived of some general or common nature which no more belonged to you than to another.

*Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* Tell me, now—How in that case could I have formed a judgment of you any more than of any one else ? Suppose that I imagine Theaetetus to be a man who has nose, eyes, and mouth, and every other member complete ; how would that enable me to distinguish Theaetetus from Theodorus, or from some outer barbarian ?

*Theaet.* How could it ?

*Soc.* Or if I had further conceived of you, not only as having nose and eyes, but as having a snub nose and prominent eyes, should I have any more notion of you than of myself and others who resemble me ?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* Surely I can have no conception of Theaetetus until your snub-nosedness has left an impression on my mind different from the snub-nosedness of all others whom I have ever seen, and until your other peculiarities have a like

distinctness; and so when I meet you to-morrow the right opinion will be re-called? *Theaetetus.*

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Soc.* Then right opinion implies the perception of differences?

*Theaet.* Clearly.

*Soc.* What, then, shall we say of adding reason or explanation to right opinion? If the meaning is, that we should form an opinion of the way in which something differs from another thing, the proposal is ridiculous.

*Theaet.* How so?

*Soc.* We are supposed to acquire a right opinion of the differences which distinguish one thing from another when we have already a right opinion of them, and so we go round and round;—the revolution of the scytal, or pestle, or any other rotatory machine, in the same circles, is as nothing compared with such a requirement; and we may be truly described as the blind directing the blind; for to add those things which we already have, in order that we may learn what we already think, is like a soul utterly benighted.

*Theaet.* Tell me; what were you going to say just now, when you asked the question?

*Soc.* If, my boy, the argument, in speaking of adding the definition, had used the word to 'know,' and not merely 'have an opinion' of the difference, this which is the most promising of all the definitions of knowledge would have come to a pretty end, for to know is surely to acquire knowledge.

210 *Theaet.* True.

*Soc.* And so, when the question is asked, What is knowledge? this fair argument will answer 'Right opinion with knowledge,'—knowledge, that is, of difference, for this, as the said argument maintains, is adding the definition.

*Theaet.* That seems to be true.

*Soc.* But how utterly foolish, when we are asking what is knowledge, that the reply should only be, right opinion with knowledge of difference or of anything! And so, Theaetetus, knowledge is neither sensation nor true opinion, nor yet definition and explanation accompanying and added to true opinion?

How absurd it would be to repeat the word we are defining in our definition, and say that knowledge is knowledge of difference!

*Theaetetus.*      *Theaet.* I suppose not.

*SOCRATES,*      *Soc.* And are you still in labour and travail, my dear  
*THEAETETUS.* friend, or have you brought all that you have to say about  
knowledge to the birth?

*Theaet.* I am sure, Socrates, that you have elicited from me  
a good deal more than ever was in me.

*Theaetetus*      *Soc.* And does not my art show that you have brought  
has brought forth wind, and that the offspring of your brain are not worth  
forth wind. bringing up?

But to  
know that  
they know  
nothing  
*Theaet.* Very true.

*Soc.* But if, Theaetetus, you should ever conceive afresh,  
makes men you will be all the better for the present investigation, and if  
better and humbler. not, you will be soberer and humbler and gentler to other  
men, and will be too modest to fancy that you know what  
you do not know. These are the limits of my art; I can no  
further go, nor do I know aught of the things which great  
and famous men know or have known in this or former ages.  
The office of a midwife I, like my mother, have received from  
God; she delivered women, and I deliver men; but they must  
be young and noble and fair.

*Socrates is*      And now I have to go to the porch of the King Archon,  
*expecting* where I am to meet Meletus and his indictment. To-morrow  
*his trial (cp.* morning, Theodorus, I shall hope to see you again at this  
*Euthyph.* place.  
*sub fin. ;*  
*Meno sub*  
*fin.).*

SOPHIST.



## INTRODUCTION AND ANALYSIS.

THE dramatic power of the dialogues of Plato appears to diminish as the metaphysical interest of them increases (cp. *Introd.* to the *Philebus*). There are no descriptions of time, place or persons, in the *Sophist* and *Statesman*, but we are plunged at once into philosophical discussions; the poetical charm has disappeared, and those who have no taste for abstruse metaphysics will greatly prefer the earlier dialogues to the later ones. Plato is conscious of the change, and in the *Statesman* (286 B) expressly accuses himself of a tediousness in the two dialogues, which he ascribes to his desire of developing the dialectical method. On the other hand, the kindred spirit of Hegel seemed to find in the *Sophist* the crown and summit of the Platonic philosophy—here is the place at which Plato most nearly approaches to the Hegelian identity of Being and Not-being. Nor will the great importance of the two dialogues be doubted by any one who forms a conception of the state of mind and opinion which they are intended to meet. The sophisms of the day were undermining philosophy; the denial of the existence of Not-being, and of the connexion of ideas, was making truth and falsehood equally impossible. It has been said that Plato would have written differently, if he had been acquainted with the *Organon* of Aristotle. But could the *Organon* of Aristotle ever have been written unless the *Sophist* and *Statesman* had preceded? The swarm of fallacies which arose in the infancy of mental science, and which was born and bred in the decay of the pre-Socratic philosophies, was not dispelled by Aristotle, but by Socrates and Plato. The *summa genera* of thought, the nature of the proposition, of definition, of generalization, of synthesis and analysis, of division and cross-division, are clearly described, and the processes of induction and deduction are constantly employed

*Sophist.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.



*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

connected with each other. The first is the search after the Sophist, the second is the enquiry into the nature of Not-being, which occupies the middle part of the work. For 'Not-being' is the hole or division of the dialectical net in which the Sophist has hidden himself. He is the imaginary impersonation of false opinion. Yet he denies the possibility of false opinion; for falsehood is that which is not, and therefore has no existence. At length the difficulty is solved; the answer, in the language of the Republic, appears 'tumbling out at our feet.' Acknowledging that there is a communion of kinds with kinds, and not merely one Being or Good having different names, or several isolated ideas or classes incapable of communion, we discover 'Not-being' to be the other of 'Being.' Transferring this to language and thought, we have no difficulty in apprehending that a proposition may be false as well as true. The Sophist, drawn out of the shelter which Cynic and Megarian paradoxes have temporarily afforded him, is proved to be a dissembler and juggler with words.

The chief points of interest in the dialogue are: (I) the character attributed to the Sophist: (II) the dialectical method: (III) the nature of the puzzle about 'Not-being:' (IV) the battle of the philosophers: (V) the relation of the Sophist to other dialogues.

I. The Sophist in Plato is the master of the art of illusion; the charlatan, the foreigner, the prince of esprits-faux, the hireling who is not a teacher, and who, from whatever point of view he is regarded, is the opposite of the true teacher. He is the 'evil one,' the ideal representative of all that Plato most disliked in the moral and intellectual tendencies of his own age; the adversary of the almost equally ideal Socrates. He seems to be always growing in the fancy of Plato, now boastful, now eristic, now clothing himself in rags of philosophy, now more akin to the rhetorician or lawyer, now haranguing, now questioning, until the final appearance in the Politicus of his departing shadow in the disguise of a statesman. We are not to suppose that Plato intended by such a description to depict Protagoras or Gorgias, or even Thrasyarchus, who all turn out to be 'very good sort of people when we know them,' and all of them part on good terms with Socrates. But he is speaking of a being as imaginary as the wise man of the Stoics, and whose character varies in different dialogues. Like mythology, Greek philosophy

has a tendency to personify ideas. And the Sophist is not merely a teacher of rhetoric for a fee of one or fifty drachmae (Crat. 384 B), but an ideal of Plato's in which the falsehood of all mankind is reflected.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

A milder tone is adopted towards the Sophists in a well-known passage of the Republic (vi. 492), where they are described as the followers rather than the leaders of the rest of mankind. Plato ridicules the notion that any individuals can corrupt youth to a degree worth speaking of in comparison with the greater influence of public opinion. But there is no real inconsistency between this and other descriptions of the Sophist which occur in the Platonic writings. For Plato is not justifying the Sophists in the passage just quoted, but only representing their power to be contemptible; they are to be despised rather than feared, and are no worse than the rest of mankind. But a teacher or statesman may be justly condemned, who is on a level with mankind when he ought to be above them. There is another point of view in which this passage should also be considered. The great enemy of Plato is the world, not exactly in the theological sense, yet in one not wholly different—the world as the hater of truth and lover of appearance, occupied in the pursuit of gain and pleasure rather than of knowledge, banded together against the few good and wise men, and devoid of true education. This creature has many heads: rhetoricians, lawyers, statesmen, poets, sophists. But the Sophist is the Proteus who takes the likeness of all of them; all other deceivers have a piece of him in them. And sometimes he is represented as the corrupter of the world; and sometimes the world as the corrupter of him and of itself.

Of late years the Sophists have found an enthusiastic defender in the distinguished historian of Greece. He appears to maintain (1) that the term 'Sophist' is not the name of a particular class, and would have been applied indifferently to Socrates and Plato, as well as to Gorgias and Protagoras; (2) that the bad sense was imprinted on the word by the genius of Plato; (3) that the principal Sophists were not the corrupters of youth (for the Athenian youth were no more corrupted in the age of Demosthenes than in the age of Pericles), but honourable and estimable persons, who supplied a training in literature which was generally wanted at the time. We will briefly consider how far these statements

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

appear to be justified by facts : and, 1, about the meaning of the word there arises an interesting question :—

Many words are used both in a general and a specific sense, and the two senses are not always clearly distinguished. Sometimes the generic meaning has been narrowed to the specific, while in other cases the specific meaning has been enlarged or altered. Examples of the former class are furnished by some ecclesiastical terms : apostles, prophets, bishops, elders, catholics. Examples of the latter class may also be found in a similar field : jesuits, puritans, methodists, and the like. Sometimes the meaning is both narrowed and enlarged ; and a good or bad sense will subsist side by side with a neutral one. A curious effect is produced on the meaning of a word when the very term which is stigmatized by the world (e.g. Methodists) is adopted by the obnoxious or derided class ; this tends to define the meaning. Or, again, the opposite result is produced, when the world refuses to allow some sect or body of men the possession of an honourable name which they have assumed, or applies it to them only in mockery or irony.

The term 'Sophist' is one of those words of which the meaning has been both contracted and enlarged. Passages may be quoted from Herodotus and the tragedians, in which the word is used in a neutral sense for a contriver or deviser or inventor, without including any ethical idea of goodness or badness. Poets as well as philosophers were called Sophists in the fifth century before Christ. In Plato himself the term is applied in the sense of a 'master in art,' without any bad meaning attaching to it (Symp. 208 C ; Meno 85 B). In the later Greek, again, 'sophist' and 'philosopher' became almost indistinguishable. There was no reproach conveyed by the word ; the additional association, if any, was only that of rhetorician or teacher. Philosophy had become eclecticism and imitation : in the decline of Greek thought there was no original voice lifted up 'which reached to a thousand years because of the god.' Hence the two words, like the characters represented by them, tended to pass into one another. Yet even here some differences appeared ; for the term 'Sophist' would hardly have been applied to the greater names, such as Plotinus, and would have been more often used of a professor of philosophy in general than of a maintainer of particular tenets.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

But the real question is, not whether the word 'Sophist' has all these senses, but whether there is not also a specific bad sense in which the term is applied to certain contemporaries of Socrates. Would an Athenian, as Mr. Grote supposes, in the fifth century before Christ, have included Socrates and Plato, as well as Gorgias and Protagoras, under the specific class of Sophists? To this question we must answer, No: if ever the term is applied to Socrates and Plato, either the application is made by an enemy out of mere spite, or the sense in which it is used is neutral. Plato, Xenophon, Isocrates, Aristotle, all give a bad import to the word; and the Sophists are regarded as a separate class in all of them. And in later Greek literature, the distinction is quite marked between the succession of philosophers from Thales to Aristotle, and the Sophists of the age of Socrates, who appeared like meteors for a short time in different parts of Greece. For the purposes of comedy, Socrates may have been identified with the Sophists, and he seems to complain of this in the Apology. But there is no reason to suppose that Socrates, differing by so many outward marks, would really have been confounded in the mind of Anytus, or Callicles, or of any intelligent Athenian, with the splendid foreigners who from time to time visited Athens, or appeared at the Olympic games. The man of genius, the great original thinker, the disinterested seeker after truth, the master of repartee whom no one ever defeated in an argument, was separated, even in the mind of the vulgar Athenian, by an 'interval which no geometry can express,' from the balancer of sentences, the interpreter and reciter of the poets, the divider of the meanings of words, the teacher of rhetoric, the professor of morals and manners.

2. The use of the term 'Sophist' in the dialogues of Plato also shows that the bad sense was not affixed by his genius, but already current. When Protagoras says, 'I confess that I am a Sophist,' he implies that the art which he professes has already a bad name; and the words of the young Hippocrates, when with a blush upon his face which is just seen by the light of dawn he admits that he is going to be made 'a Sophist,' would lose their point, unless the term had been discredited. There is nothing surprising in the Sophists having an evil name; that, whether deserved or not, was a natural consequence of their vocation.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

That they were foreigners, that they made fortunes, that they taught novelties, that they excited the minds of youth, are quite sufficient reasons to account for the opprobrium which attached to them. The genius of Plato could not have stamped the word anew, or have imparted the associations which occur in contemporary writers, such as Xenophon and Isocrates. Changes in the meaning of words can only be made with great difficulty, and not unless they are supported by a strong current of popular feeling. There is nothing improbable in supposing that Plato may have extended and envenomed the meaning, or that he may have done the Sophists the same kind of disservice with posterity which Pascal did to the Jesuits. But the bad sense of the word was not and could not have been invented by him, and is found in his earlier dialogues, e.g. the *Protagoras*, as well as in the later.

3. There is no ground for disbelieving that the principal Sophists, Gorgias, Protagoras, Prodicus, Hippias, were good and honourable men. The notion that they were corrupters of the Athenian youth has no real foundation, and partly arises out of the use of the term 'Sophist' in modern times. The truth is, that we know little about them; and the witness of Plato in their favour is probably not much more historical than his witness against them. Of that national decline of genius, unity, political force, which has been sometimes described as the corruption of youth, the Sophists were one among many signs;—in these respects Athens may have degenerated; but, as Mr. Grote remarks, there is no reason to suspect any greater moral corruption in the age of Demosthenes than in the age of Pericles. The Athenian youth were not corrupted in this sense, and therefore the Sophists could not have corrupted them. It is remarkable, and may be fairly set down to their credit, that Plato nowhere attributes to them that peculiar Greek sympathy with youth, which he ascribes to Parmenides, and which was evidently common in the Socratic circle. Plato delights to exhibit them in a ludicrous point of view, and to show them always rather at a disadvantage in the company of Socrates. But he has no quarrel with their characters, and does not deny that they are respectable men.

The Sophist, in the dialogue which is called after him, is exhibited in many different lights, and appears and reappears in a variety of forms. There is some want of the higher Platonic

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

art in the Eleatic Stranger eliciting his true character by a laborious process of enquiry, when he had already admitted that he knew quite well the difference between the Sophist and the Philosopher, and had often heard the question discussed;—such an anticipation would hardly have occurred in the earlier dialogues. But Plato could not altogether give up his Socratic method, of which another trace may be thought to be discerned in his adoption of a common instance before he proceeds to the greater matter in hand. Yet the example is also chosen in order to damage the ‘hooker of men’ as much as possible; each step in the pedigree of the angler suggests some injurious reflection about the Sophist. They are both hunters after a living prey, nearly related to tyrants and thieves, and the Sophist is the cousin of the parasite and flatterer. The effect of this is heightened by the accidental manner in which the discovery is made, as the result of a scientific division. His descent in another branch affords the opportunity of more ‘unsavoury comparisons.’ For he is a retail trader, and his wares are either imported or home-made, like those of other retail traders; his art is thus deprived of the character of a liberal profession. But the most distinguishing characteristic of him is, that he is a disputant, and higgles over an argument. A feature of the Eristic here seems to blend with Plato’s usual description of the Sophists, who in the early dialogues, and in the Republic, are frequently depicted as endeavouring to save themselves from disputing with Socrates by making long orations. In this character he parts company from the vain and impertinent talker in private life, who is a loser of money, while he is a maker of it.

But there is another general division under which his art may be also supposed to fall, and that is purification; and from purification is descended education, and the new principle of education is to interrogate men after the manner of Socrates, and make them teach themselves. Here again we catch a glimpse rather of a Socratic or Eristic than of a Sophist in the ordinary sense of the term. And Plato does not on this ground reject the claim of the Sophist to be the true philosopher. One more feature of the Eristic rather than of the Sophist is the tendency of the troublesome animal to run away into the darkness of Not-being. Upon the whole, we detect in him a sort of hybrid or double nature, of

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

which, except perhaps in the Euthydemus of Plato, we find no other trace in Greek philosophy; he combines the teacher of virtue with the Eristic; while in his omniscience, in his ignorance of himself, in his arts of deception, and in his lawyer-like habit of writing and speaking about all things, he is still the antithesis of Socrates and of the true teacher.

II. The question has been asked, whether the method of 'abscissio infiniti,' by which the Sophist is taken, is a real and valuable logical process. Modern science feels that this, like other processes of formal logic, presents a very inadequate conception of the actual complex procedure of the mind by which scientific truth is detected and verified. Plato himself seems to be aware that mere division is an unsafe and uncertain weapon, first, in the Statesman, when he says that we should divide in the middle, for in that way we are more likely to attain species; secondly, in the parallel precept of the Philebus, that we should not pass from the most general notions to infinity, but include all the intervening middle principles, until, as he also says in the Statesman, we arrive at the infima species; thirdly, in the Phaedrus, when he says that the dialectician will carve the limbs of truth without mangling them; and once more in the Statesman, if we cannot bisect species, we must carve them as well as we can. No better image of nature or truth, as an organic whole, can be conceived than this. So far is Plato from supposing that mere division and subdivision of general notions will guide men into all truth.

Plato does not really mean to say that the Sophist or the Statesman can be caught in this way. But these divisions and subdivisions were favourite logical exercises of the age in which he lived; and while indulging his dialectical fancy, and making a contribution to logical method, he delights also to transfix the Eristic Sophist with weapons borrowed from his own armoury. As we have already seen, the division gives him the opportunity of making the most damaging reflections on the Sophist and all his kith and kin, and to exhibit him in the most discreditable light.

Nor need we seriously consider whether Plato was right in assuming that an animal so variegated could not be confined within the limits of a single definition. In the infancy of logic, men sought

only to obtain a definition of an unknown or uncertain term ; the after reflection scarcely occurred to them that the word might have several senses, which shaded off into one another, and were not capable of being comprehended in a single notion. There is no trace of this reflection in Plato. But neither is there any reason to think, even if the reflection had occurred to him, that he would have been deterred from carrying on the war with weapons fair or unfair against the outlaw Sophist.

III. The puzzle about 'Not-being' appears to us to be one of the most unreal difficulties of ancient philosophy. We cannot understand the attitude of mind which could imagine that falsehood had no existence, if reality was denied to Not-being: How could such a question arise at all, much less become of serious importance? The answer to this, and to nearly all other difficulties of early Greek philosophy, is to be sought for in the history of ideas, and the answer is only unsatisfactory because our knowledge is defective. - In the passage from the world of sense and imagination and common language to that of opinion and reflection the human mind was exposed to many dangers, and often

'Found no end in wandering mazes lost.'

On the other hand, the discovery of abstractions was the great source of all mental improvement in after ages. It was the pushing aside of the old, the revelation of the new. But each one of the company of abstractions, if we may speak in the metaphorical language of Plato, became in turn the tyrant of the mind, the dominant idea, which would allow no other to have a share in the throne. This is especially true of the Eleatic philosophy: while the absoluteness of Being was asserted in every form of language, the sensible world and all the phenomena of experience were comprehended under Not-being. Nor was any difficulty or perplexity thus created, so long as the mind, lost in the contemplation of Being, asked no more questions, and never thought of applying the categories of Being or Not-being to mind or opinion or practical life.

But the negative as well as the positive idea had sunk deep into the intellect of man. The effect of the paradoxes of Zeno extended far beyond the Eleatic circle. And now an unforeseen consequence began to arise. If the Many were not, if all things



*Sophist.*TRODUC-  
TION.

were names of the One, and nothing could be predicated of any other thing, how could truth be distinguished from falsehood? The Eleatic philosopher would have replied that Being is alone true. But mankind had got beyond his barren abstractions: they were beginning to analyze, to classify, to define, to ask what is the nature of knowledge, opinion, sensation. Still less could they be content with the description which Achilles gives in Homer of the man whom his soul hates—

ὅς χ' ἕτερον μὲν κεύθῃ ἐνὶ φρεσίν, ἄλλο δὲ εἶπῃ.

For their difficulty was not a practical but a metaphysical one; and their conception of falsehood was really impaired and weakened by a metaphysical illusion.

The strength of the illusion seems to lie in the alternative: If we once admit the existence of Being and Not-being, as two spheres which exclude each other, no Being or reality can be ascribed to Not-being, and therefore not to falsehood, which is the image or expression of Not-being. Falsehood is wholly false; and to speak of true falsehood, as Theaetetus does (Theaet. 189 C), is a contradiction in terms. The fallacy to us is ridiculous and transparent,—no better than those which Plato satirizes in the Euthydemus. It is a confusion of falsehood and negation, from which Plato himself is not entirely free. Instead of saying, 'This is not in accordance with facts,' 'This is proved by experience to be false,' and from such examples forming a general notion of falsehood, the mind of the Greek thinker was lost in the mazes of the Eleatic philosophy. And the greater importance which Plato attributes to this fallacy, compared with others, is due to the influence which the Eleatic philosophy exerted over him. He sees clearly to a certain extent; but he has not yet attained a complete mastery over the ideas of his predecessors—they are still ends to him, and not mere instruments of thought. They are too rough-hewn to be harmonized in a single structure, and may be compared to rocks which project or overhang in some ancient city's walls. There are many such imperfect syncretisms or eclectisms in the history of philosophy. A modern philosopher, though emancipated from scholastic notions of essence or substance, might still be seriously affected by the abstract idea of necessity: or though accustomed, like Bacon, to criticize abstract notions, might not extend his criticism to the syllogism.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

The saying or thinking the thing that is not, would be the popular definition of falsehood or error. If we were met by the Sophist's objection, the reply would probably be an appeal to experience. Ten thousands, as Homer would say (*μᾶλα μυρίοι*), tell falsehoods and fall into errors. And this is Plato's reply, both in the *Cratylus* (429 D) and *Sophist*. 'Theaetetus is flying,' is a sentence in form quite as grammatical as 'Theaetetus is sitting'; the difference between the two sentences is, that the one is true and the other false. But, before making this appeal to common sense, Plato propounds for our consideration a theory of the nature of the negative.

The theory is, that Not-being is relation. Not-being is the other of Being, and has as many kinds as there are differences in Being. This doctrine is the simple converse of the famous proposition of Spinoza,—not 'Omnis determinatio est negatio,' but 'Omnis negatio est determinatio';—not, All distinction is negation, but, All negation is distinction. Not-being is the unfolding or determining of Being, and is a necessary element in all other things that are. We should be careful to observe, first, that Plato does not identify Being with Not-being; he has no idea of progression by antagonism, or of the Hegelian vibration of moments: he would not have said with Heracleitus, 'All things are and are not, and become and become not.' Secondly, he has lost sight altogether of the other sense of Not-being, as the negative of Being; although he again and again recognizes the validity of the law of contradiction. Thirdly, he seems to confuse falsehood with negation. Nor is he quite consistent in regarding Not-being as one class of Being, and yet as coextensive with Being in general. Before analyzing further the topics thus suggested, we will endeavour to trace the manner in which Plato arrived at his conception of Not-being.

In all the later dialogues of Plato, the idea of mind or intelligence becomes more and more prominent. That idea which Anaxagoras employed inconsistently in the construction of the world, Plato, in the *Philebus*, the *Sophist*, and the *Laws*, extends to all things, attributing to Providence a care, infinitesimal as well as infinite, of all creation. The divine mind is the leading religious thought of the later works of Plato. The human mind is a sort of reflection of this, having ideas of Being, Sameness, and the like.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

At times they seem to be parted by a great gulf (Parmenides); at other times they have a common nature, and the light of a common intelligence.

But this ever-growing idea of mind is really irreconcilable with the abstract Pantheism of the Eleatics. To the passionate language of Parmenides, Plato replies in a strain equally passionate:—What! has not Being mind? and is not Being capable of being known? and, if this is admitted, then capable of being affected or acted upon?—in motion, then, and yet not wholly incapable of rest. Already we have been compelled to attribute opposite determinations to Being. And the answer to the difficulty about Being may be equally the answer to the difficulty about Not-being.

The answer is, that in these and all other determinations of any notion we are attributing to it 'Not-being.' We went in search of Not-being and seemed to lose Being, and now in the hunt after Being we recover both. Not-being is a kind of Being, and in a sense co-extensive with Being. And there are as many divisions of Not-being as of Being. To every positive idea—'just,' 'beautiful,' and the like, there is a corresponding negative idea—'not-just,' 'not-beautiful,' and the like.

A doubt may be raised whether this account of the negative is really the true one. The common logicians would say that the 'not-just,' 'not-beautiful,' are not really classes at all, but are merged in one great class of the infinite or negative. The conception of Plato, in the days before logic, seems to be more correct than this. For the word 'not' does not altogether annihilate the positive meaning of the word 'just': at least, it does not prevent our looking for the 'not-just' in or about the same class in which we might expect to find the 'just.' 'Not-just is not-honourable' is neither a false nor an unmeaning proposition. The reason is that the negative proposition has really passed into an undefined positive. To say that 'not-just' has no more meaning than 'not-honourable'—that is to say, that the two cannot in any degree be distinguished, is clearly repugnant to the common use of language.

The ordinary logic is also jealous of the explanation of negation as relation, because seeming to take away the principle of contradiction. Plato, as far as we know, is the first philosopher who

distinctly enunciated this principle; and though we need not suppose him to have been always consistent with himself, there is no real inconsistency between his explanation of the negative and the principle of contradiction. Neither the Platonic notion of the negative as the principle of difference, nor the Hegelian identity of Being and Not-being, at all touch the principle of contradiction. For what is asserted about Being and Not-Being only relates to our most abstract notions, and in no way interferes with the principle of contradiction employed in the concrete. Because Not-being is identified with Other, or Being with Not-being, this does not make the proposition 'Some have not eaten' any the less a contradiction of 'All have eaten.'

The explanation of the negative given by Plato in the *Sophist* is a true but partial one; for the word 'not,' besides the meaning of 'other,' may also imply 'opposition.' And difference or opposition may be either total or partial: the not-beautiful may be other than the beautiful, or in no relation to the beautiful, or a specific class in various degrees opposed to the beautiful. And the negative may be a negation of fact or of thought (*οὐ* and *μή*). Lastly, there are certain ideas, such as 'beginning,' 'becoming,' 'the finite,' 'the abstract,' in which the negative cannot be separated from the positive, and 'Being' and 'Not-being' are inextricably blended.

Plato restricts the conception of Not-being to difference. Man is a rational animal, and is not—as many other things as are not included under this definition. He is and is not, and is because he is not. Besides the positive class to which he belongs, there are endless negative classes to which he may be referred. This is certainly intelligible, but useless. To refer a subject to a negative class is unmeaning, unless the 'not' is a mere modification of the positive, as in the example of 'not honourable' and 'dishonourable'; or unless the class is characterized by the absence rather than the presence of a particular quality.

Nor is it easy to see how Not-being any more than Sameness or Otherness is one of the classes of Being. They are aspects rather than classes of Being. Not-being can only be included in Being, as the denial of some particular class of Being. If we attempt to pursue such airy phantoms at all, the Hegelian identity of Being and Not-being is a more apt and intelligible expression of the same mental phenomenon. For Plato has not distinguished between

*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

the Being which is prior to Not-being, and the Being which is the negation of Not-being (cf. Parm. 162 A, B).

But he is not thinking of this when he says that Being comprehends Not-being. Again, we should probably go back for the true explanation to the influence which the Eleatic philosophy exercised over him. Under 'Not-being' the Eleatic had included all the realities of the sensible world. Led by this association and by the common use of language, which has been already noticed, we cannot be much surprised that Plato should have made classes of Not-being. It is observable that he does not absolutely deny that there is an opposite of Being. He is inclined to leave the question, merely remarking that the opposition, if admissible at all, is not expressed by the term 'Not-being.'

On the whole, we must allow that the great service rendered by Plato to metaphysics in the *Sophist*, is not his explanation of 'Not-being' as difference. With this he certainly laid the ghost of 'Not-being'; and we may attribute to him in a measure the credit of anticipating Spinoza and Hegel. But his conception is not clear or consistent; he does not recognize the different senses of the negative, and he confuses the different classes of Not-being with the abstract notion. As the Pre-Socratic philosopher failed to distinguish between the universal and the true, while he placed the particulars of sense under the false and apparent, so Plato appears to identify negation with falsehood, or is unable to distinguish them. The greatest service rendered by him to mental science is the recognition of the communion of classes, which, although based by him on his account of 'Not-being,' is independent of it. He clearly saw that the isolation of ideas or classes is the annihilation of reasoning. Thus, after wandering in many diverging paths, we return to common sense. And for this reason we may be inclined to do less than justice to Plato,—because the truth which he attains by a real effort of thought is to us a familiar and unconscious truism, which no one would any longer think either of doubting or examining.

IV. The later dialogues of Plato contain many references to contemporary philosophy. Both in the *Theaetetus* and in the *Sophist* he recognizes that he is in the midst of a fray; a huge irregular battle everywhere surrounds him (*Theaet.* 153 A). First, there are the two great philosophies going back into

*Sophist.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

cosmogony and poetry: the philosophy of Heraclitus, supposed to have a poetical origin in Homer, and that of the Eleatics, which in a similar spirit he conceives to be even older than Xenophanes (compare Protag. 316 E). Still older were theories of two and three principles, hot and cold, moist and dry, which were ever marrying and being given in marriage: in speaking of these, he is probably referring to Pherecydes and the early Ionians. In the philosophy of motion there were different accounts of the relation of plurality and unity, which were supposed to be joined and severed by love and hate, some maintaining that this process was perpetually going on (e. g. Heraclitus); others (e. g. Empedocles) that there was an alternation of them. Of the Pythagoreans or of Anaxagoras he makes no distinct mention. His chief opponents are, first, Eristics or Megarians; secondly, the Materialists.

The picture which he gives of both these latter schools is indistinct; and he appears reluctant to mention the names of their teachers. Nor can we easily determine how much is to be assigned to the Cynics, how much to the Megarians, or whether the 'repellent Materialists' (Theaet. 156 A) are Cynics or Atomists, or represent some unknown phase of opinion at Athens. To the Cynics and Antisthenes is commonly attributed, on the authority of Aristotle, the denial of predication, while the Megarians are said to have been Nominalists, asserting the One Good under many names to be the true Being of Zeno and the Eleatics, and, like Zeno, employing their negative dialectic in the refutation of opponents. But the later Megarians also denied predication; and this tenet, which is attributed to all of them by Simplicius, is certainly in accordance with their over-refining philosophy. The 'tyros young and old,' of whom Plato speaks (*infra* 251 B), probably include both. At any rate, we shall be safer in accepting the general description of them which he has given, and in not attempting to draw a precise line between them.

Of these Eristics, whether Cynics or Megarians, several characteristics are found in Plato:

1. They pursue verbal oppositions: 2. they make reasoning impossible by their over-accuracy in the use of language;
3. they deny predication: 4. they go from unity to plurality.

*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

without passing through the intermediate stages ; 5. they refuse to attribute motion or power to Being ; 6. they are the enemies of sense ;—whether they are the ‘friends of ideas,’ who carry on the polemic against sense, is uncertain ; probably under this remarkable expression Plato designates those who more nearly approached himself, and may be criticizing an earlier form of his own doctrines. We may observe (1) that he professes only to give us a few opinions out of many which were at that time current in Greece ; (2) that he nowhere alludes to the ethical teaching of the Cynics—unless the argument in the Protagoras, that the virtues are one and not many, may be supposed to contain a reference to their views, as well as to those of Socrates ; and unless they are the school alluded to in the Philebus, which is described as ‘being very skilful in physics, and as maintaining pleasure to be the absence of pain.’ That Antisthenes wrote a book called ‘Physicus,’ is hardly a sufficient reason for describing them as skilful in physics, which appear to have been very alien to the tendency of the Cynics.

The Idealism of the fourth century before Christ in Greece, as in other ages and countries, seems to have provoked a reaction towards Materialism. The maintainers of this doctrine are described in the Theaetetus as obstinate persons who will believe in nothing which they cannot hold in their hands, and in the Sophist (246 D) as incapable of argument. They are probably the same who are said in the Tenth Book of the Laws (888 E) to attribute the course of events to nature, art, and chance. Who they were, we have no means of determining except from Plato’s description of them. His silence respecting the Atomists might lead us to suppose that here we have a trace of them. But the Atomists were not Materialists in the grosser sense of the term, nor were they incapable of reasoning ; and Plato would hardly have described a great genius like Democritus in the disdainful terms which he uses of the Materialists. Upon the whole, we must infer that the persons here spoken of are unknown to us, like the many other writers and talkers at Athens and elsewhere, of whose endless activity of mind Aristotle in his Metaphysics has preserved an anonymous memorial.

V. The Sophist is the sequel of the Theaetetus, and is connected with the Parmenides by a direct allusion (cp. Introductions

to Theaetetus and Parmenides). In the Theaetetus we sought to discover the nature of knowledge and false opinion. But the nature of false opinion seemed impenetrable; for we were unable to understand how there could be any reality in Not-being. In the Sophist the question is taken up again; the nature of Not-being is detected, and there is no longer any metaphysical impediment in the way of admitting the possibility of falsehood. To the Parmenides, the Sophist stands in a less defined and more remote relation. There human thought is in process of disorganization; no absurdity or inconsistency is too great to be elicited from the analysis of the simple ideas of Unity or Being. In the Sophist the same contradictions are pursued to a certain extent, but only with a view to their resolution. The aim of the dialogue is to show how the few elemental conceptions of the human mind admit of a natural connexion in thought and speech, which Megarian or other sophistry vainly attempts to deny.

Sophist.

INTRODUC-  
TION

Steph. True to the appointment of the previous day, Theodorus and  
 216 Theaetetus meet Socrates at the same spot, bringing with them an Eleatic Stranger, whom Theodorus introduces as a true philosopher. Socrates, half in jest, half in earnest, declares that he must be a god in disguise, who, as Homer would say, has come to earth that he may visit the good and evil among men, and detect the foolishness of Athenian wisdom. At any rate he is a divine person, one of a class who are hardly recognized on earth; who appear in divers forms—now as statesmen, now as sophists, and are often deemed madmen. ‘Philosopher, statesman, sophist,’ says Socrates, repeating the words—‘I should like  
 217 to ask our Eleatic friend what his countrymen think of them; do they regard them as one, or three?’

ANALYSIS.

The Stranger has been already asked the same question by Theodorus and Theaetetus; and he at once replies that they are thought to be three; but to explain the difference fully would take time. He is pressed to give this fuller explanation, either in the form of a speech or of question and answer. He prefers the latter, and chooses as his respondent Theaetetus, whom he  
 218 already knows, and who is recommended to him by Socrates.

We are agreed, he says, about the name Sophist, but we may



*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

not be equally agreed about his nature. Great subjects should be approached through familiar examples, and, considering that he is a creature not easily caught, I think that, before approaching him, we should try our hand upon some more obvious animal, who may be made the subject of logical experiment; shall we say an angler? 'Very good.'

219

In the first place, the angler is an artist; and there are two kinds of art,—productive art, which includes husbandry, manufactures, imitations; and acquisitive art, which includes learning, trading, fighting, hunting. The angler's is an acquisitive art, and acquisition may be effected either by exchange or by conquest; in the latter case, either by force or craft. Conquest by craft is called hunting, and of hunting there is one kind which pursues 220 inanimate, and another which pursues animate objects; and animate objects may be either land animals or water animals, and water animals either fly over the water or live in the water. The hunting of the last is called fishing; and of fishing, one kind uses enclosures, catching the fish in nets and baskets, and another kind strikes them either with spears by night or with barbed spears or barbed hooks by day; the barbed spears are impelled from above, the barbed hooks are jerked into the head and lips of the fish, which are then drawn from below upwards. 221 Thus, by a series of divisions, we have arrived at the definition of the angler's art.

And now by the help of this example we may proceed to bring to light the nature of the Sophist. Like the angler, he is an artist, and the resemblance does not end here. For they are both hunters, and hunters of animals; the one of water, and the other 222 of land animals. But at this point they diverge, the one going to the sea and the rivers, and the other to the rivers of wealth and rich meadow-lands, in which generous youth abide. On land you may hunt tame animals, or you may hunt wild animals. And man is a tame animal, and he may be hunted either by force or persuasion;—either by the pirate, man-stealer, soldier, or by the lawyer, orator, talker. The latter use persuasion, and persuasion is either private or public. Of the private practitioners of the art, some bring gifts to those whom they hunt: these are lovers. And others take hire; and some of these flatter, and in 223 return are fed; others profess to teach virtue and receive a round

sum. And who are these last? Tell me who? Have we not unearthed the Sophist? *Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

But he is a many-sided creature, and may still be traced in another line of descent. The acquisitive art had a branch of exchange as well as of hunting, and exchange is either giving or selling; and the seller is either a manufacturer or a merchant; 224 and the merchant either retails or exports; and the exporter may export either food for the body or food for the mind. And of this trading in food for the mind, one kind may be termed the art of display, and another the art of selling learning; and learning may be a learning of the arts or of virtue. The seller of the arts may be called an art-seller; the seller of virtue, a Sophist.

Again, there is a third line, in which a Sophist may be traced. For is he less a Sophist when, instead of exporting his wares to another country, he stays at home, and retails goods, which he not only buys of others, but manufactures himself?

225 Or he may be descended from the acquisitive art in the combative line, through the pugnacious, the controversial, the disputatious arts; and he will be found at last in the eristic section of the 226 latter, and in that division of it which disputes in private for gain about the general principles of right and wrong.

And still there is a track of him which has not yet been followed out by us. Do not our household servants talk of sifting, straining, winnowing? And they also speak of carding, spinning, and the like. All these are processes of division; and of division there are two kinds,—one in which like is divided from like, and another in which the good is separated from the bad. The latter of the two is termed purification; and again, of purification, there are two sorts,—of animate bodies (which may be 227 internal or external), and of inanimate. Medicine and gymnastic are the internal purifications of the animate, and bathing the external; and of the inanimate, fulling and cleaning and other humble processes, some of which have ludicrous names. Not that dialectic is a respecter of names or persons, or a despiser of humble occupations; nor does she think much of the greater or less benefits conferred by them. For her aim is knowledge; she wants to know how the arts are related to one another, and would quite as soon learn the nature of hunting from the vermin-destroyer as from the general. And she only desires to have

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

a general name, which shall distinguish purifications of the soul from purifications of the body.

Now purification is the taking away of evil ; and there are two kinds of evil in the soul,—the one answering to disease in the 228 body, and the other to deformity. Disease is the discord or war of opposite principles in the soul ; and deformity is the want of symmetry, or failure in the attainment of a mark or measure. The latter arises from ignorance, and no one is voluntarily ignorant ; ignorance is only the aberration of the soul moving towards knowledge. And as medicine cures the diseases and gymnastic the deformity of the body, so correction cures the in- 229 justice, and education (which differs among the Hellenes from mere instruction in the arts) cures the ignorance of the soul. Again, ignorance is twofold, simple ignorance, and ignorance having the conceit of knowledge. And education is also twofold : there is the old-fashioned moral training of our forefathers, which was very troublesome and not very successful ; and another, of 230 a more subtle nature, which proceeds upon a notion that all ignorance is involuntary. The latter convicts a man out of his own mouth, by pointing out to him his inconsistencies and contradictions ; and the consequence is that he quarrels with himself, instead of quarrelling with his neighbours, and is cured of prejudices and obstructions by a mode of treatment which is equally entertaining and effectual. The physician of the soul is aware that his patient will receive no nourishment unless he has been cleaned out ; and the soul of the Great King himself, if he has not undergone this purification, is unclean and impure.

And who are the ministers of the purification ? Sophists I may 231 not call them. Yet they bear about the same likeness to Sophists as the dog, who is the gentlest of animals, does to the wolf, who is the fiercest. Comparisons are slippery things ; but for the present let us assume the resemblance of the two, which may probably be disallowed hereafter. And so, from division comes purification ; and from this, mental purification ; and from mental purification, instruction ; and from instruction, education ; and from education, the nobly-descended art of Sophistry, which is engaged in the detection of conceit. I do not however think that we have yet found the Sophist, or that his will ultimately prove to be the desired art of education ; but neither do I think that he

can long escape me, for every way is blocked. Before we make the final assault, let us take breath, and reckon up the many forms which he has assumed: (1) he was the paid hunter of wealth and birth; (2) he was the trader in the goods of the soul; (3) he was the retailer of them; (4) he was the manufacturer of his own learned wares; (5) he was the disputant; and (6) he was the purger away of prejudices—although this latter point is admitted to be doubtful.

- 232 Now, there must surely be something wrong in the professor of any art having so many names and kinds of knowledge. Does not the very number of them imply that the nature of his art is not understood? And that we may not be involved in the misunderstanding, let us observe which of his characteristics is the most prominent. Above all things he is a disputant. He will dispute and teach others to dispute about things visible and invisible—about man, about the gods, about politics, about law, about wrestling, about all things. But can he know all things?
- 233 'He cannot.' How then can he dispute satisfactorily with any one who knows? 'Impossible.' Then what is the trick of his art, and why does he receive money from his admirers? 'Because he is believed by them to know all things.' You mean to say that he seems to have a knowledge of them? 'Yes.'

- Suppose a person were to say, not that he would dispute about all things, but that he would make all things, you and me, and all other creatures, the earth and the heavens and the gods, and
- 234 would sell them all for a few pence—this would be a great jest; but not greater than if he said that he knew all things, and could teach them in a short time, and at a small cost. For all imitation is a jest, and the most graceful form of jest. Now the painter is a man who professes to make all things, and children, who see his pictures at a distance, sometimes take them for realities: and the Sophist pretends to know all things, and he, too, can deceive young men, who are still at a distance from the truth, not through their eyes, but through their ears, by the mummerly of words, and induce them to believe him. But as they grow older, and come into contact with realities, they learn by experience the futility of
- 235 his pretensions. The Sophist, then, has not real knowledge; he is only an imitator, or image-maker.

And now, having got him in a corner of the dialectical net, let

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

us divide and subdivide until we catch him. Of image-making there are two kinds,—the art of making likenesses, and the art of making appearances. The latter may be illustrated by sculpture 236 and painting, which often use illusions, and alter the proportions of figures, in order to adapt their works to the eye. And the Sophist also uses illusions, and his imitations are apparent and not real. But how can any thing be an appearance only? Here arises a difficulty which has always beset the subject of appear- 237 ances. For the argument is asserting the existence of not-being. And this is what the great Parmenides was all his life denying in prose and also in verse. ‘You will never find,’ he says, ‘that not-being is.’ And the words prove themselves! Not-being cannot be attributed to any being; for how can any being be wholly abstracted from being? Again, in every predication there is an attribution of singular or plural. But number is the most real of 238 all things, and cannot be attributed to not-being. Therefore not-being cannot be predicated or expressed; for how can we say ‘is,’ ‘are not,’ without number?

And now arises the greatest difficulty of all. If not-being is 239 inconceivable, how can not-being be refuted? And am I not contradicting myself at this moment, in speaking either in the singular or the plural of that to which I deny both plurality and unity? You, Theaetetus, have the might of youth, and I conjure you to exert yourself, and, if you can, to find an expression for not-being which does not imply being and number. ‘But I cannot.’ Then the Sophist must be left in his hole. We may call him an image-maker if we please, but he will only say, ‘And pray, what is an image?’ And we shall reply, ‘A reflection in the water, or in a mirror’; and he will say, ‘Let us shut our eyes 240 and open our minds; what is the common notion of all images?’ ‘I should answer, Such another, made in the likeness of the true.’ Real or not real? ‘Not real; at least, not in a true sense.’ And the real ‘is,’ and the not-real ‘is not’? ‘Yes.’ Then a likeness is really unreal, and essentially not. Here is a pretty complication of being and not-being, in which the many-headed Sophist has entangled us. He will at once point out that he is compelling us 241 to contradict ourselves, by affirming being of not-being. I think that we must cease to look for him in the class of imitators.

But ought we to give him up? ‘I should say, certainly not.’

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

Then I fear that I must lay hands on my father Parmenides ; but do not call me a parricide ; for there is no way out of the difficulty except to show that in some sense not-being is ; and if this is not admitted, no one can speak of falsehood, or false  
242 opinion, or imitation, without falling into a contradiction. You observe how unwilling I am to undertake the task ; for I know that I am exposing myself to the charge of inconsistency in asserting the being of not-being. But if I am to make the attempt, I think that I had better begin at the beginning.

Lightly in the days of our youth, Parmenides and others told us tales about the origin of the universe : one spoke of three principles warring and at peace again, marrying and begetting children ; another of two principles, hot and cold, dry and moist, which also formed relationships. There were the Eleatics in our part of the world, saying that all things are one ; whose doctrine begins with Xenophanes, and is even older. Ionian, and, more recently, Sicilian muses speak of a one and many which are held together by enmity and friendship, ever parting, ever meeting.  
243 Some of them do not insist on the perpetual strife, but adopt a gentler strain, and speak of alternation only. Whether they are right or not, who can say ? But one thing we can say—that they went on their way without much caring whether we understood them or not. For tell me, Theaetetus, do you understand what they mean by their assertion of unity, or by their combinations and separations of two or more principles ? I used to think, when I was young, that I knew all about not-being, and now I am in great difficulties even about being.

Let us proceed first to the examination of being. Turning to the dualist philosophers, we say to them : Is being a third element besides hot and cold ? or do you identify one or both of the two  
244 elements with being ? At any rate, you can hardly avoid resolving them into one. Let us next interrogate the patrons of the one. To them we say : Are being and one two different names for the same thing ? But how can there be two names when there is nothing but one ? Or you may identify them ; but then the name will be either the name of nothing or of itself, i.e. of a name. Again, the notion of being is conceived of as a whole—in the  
245 words of Parmenides, 'like every way unto a rounded sphere.' And a whole has parts ; but that which has parts is not one, for

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

unity has no parts. Is being, then, one, because the parts of being are one, or shall we say that being is not a whole? In the former case, one is made up of parts; and in the latter there is still plurality, viz. being, and a whole which is apart from being. And being, if not all things, lacks something of the nature of being, and becomes not-being. Nor can being ever have come into existence, for nothing comes into existence except as a whole; nor can being have number, for that which has number is a whole or sum of number. These are a few of the difficulties which are accumulating one upon another in the consideration of being.

We may proceed now to the less exact sort of philosophers. 246 Some of them drag down everything to earth, and carry on a war like that of the giants, grasping rocks and oaks in their hands. Their adversaries defend themselves warily from an invisible world, and reduce the substances of their opponents to the minutest fractions, until they are lost in generation and flux. The latter sort are civil people enough; but the materialists are rude and ignorant of dialectics; they must be taught how to argue before they can answer. Yet, for the sake of the argument, we may assume them to be better than they are, and able to give an account of themselves. They admit the existence of a mortal living creature, which is a body containing a soul, and 247 to this they would not refuse to attribute qualities—wisdom, folly, justice and injustice. The soul, as they say, has a kind of body, but they do not like to assert of these qualities of the soul, either that they are corporeal, or that they have no existence; at this point they begin to make distinctions. ‘Sons of earth,’ we say to them, ‘if both visible and invisible qualities exist, what is the common nature which is attributed to them by the term “being” or “existence”?’ And, as they are incapable of answering this question, we may as well reply for them, that being is the power of doing or suffering. Then we turn to the friends of ideas: 248 to them we say, ‘You distinguish becoming from being?’ ‘Yes,’ they will reply. ‘And in becoming you participate through the bodily senses, and in being, by thought and the mind?’ ‘Yes.’ And you mean by the word ‘participation’ a power of doing or suffering? To this they answer—I am acquainted with them, Theaetetus, and know their ways better than you do—that being

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

can neither do nor suffer, though becoming may. And we rejoin : Does not the soul know? And is not 'being' known? And are not 'knowing' and 'being known' active and passive? That which is known is affected by knowledge, and therefore is in  
249 motion. And, indeed, how can we imagine that perfect being is a mere everlasting form, devoid of motion and soul? for there can be no thought without soul, nor can soul be devoid of motion. But neither can thought or mind be devoid of some principle of rest or stability. And as children say entreatingly, 'Give us both,' so the philosopher must include both the moveable and immoveable in his idea of being. And yet, alas! he and we are in the same difficulty with which we reproached the dualists;  
250 for motion and rest are contradictions—how then can they both exist? Does he who affirms this mean to say that motion is rest, or rest motion? 'No; he means to assert the existence of some third thing, different from them both, which neither rests nor moves.' But how can there be anything which neither rests nor moves? Here is a second difficulty about being, quite as great as that about not-being. And we may hope that any light  
251 which is thrown upon the one may extend to the other.

Leaving them for the present, let us enquire what we mean by giving many names to the same thing, e.g. white, good, tall, to man; out of which tyros old and young derive such a feast of amusement. Their meagre minds refuse to predicate anything of anything; they say that good is good, and man is man; and that to affirm one of the other would be making the many one and the one many. Let us place them in a class with our previous opponents, and interrogate both of them at once. Shall we assume (1) that being and rest and motion, and all other things,  
252 are incommunicable with one another? or (2) that they all have indiscriminate communion? or (3) that there is communion of some and not of others? And we will consider the first hypothesis first of all.

(1) If we suppose the universal separation of kinds, all theories alike are swept away; the patrons of a single principle of rest or of motion, or of a plurality of immutable ideas—all alike have the ground cut from under them; and all creators of the universe by theories of composition and division, whether out of or into a finite or infinite number of elemental forms, in alternation or



*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

continuance, share the same fate. Most ridiculous is the discomfiture which attends the opponents of predication, who, like the ventriloquist Eurycles, have the voice that answers them in their own breast. For they cannot help using the words 'is,' 'apart,' 'from others,' and the like; and their adversaries are thus saved the trouble of refuting them. But (2) if all things have communion with all things, motion will rest, and rest will move; here is a *reductio ad absurdum*. Two out of the three hypotheses are thus seen to be false. The third (3) remains, which affirms that only certain things communicate with certain other things. In the alphabet and the scale there are some letters and notes 253 which combine with others, and some which do not; and the laws according to which they combine or are separated are known to the grammarian and musician. And there is a science which teaches not only what notes and letters, but what classes admit of combination with one another, and what not. This is a noble science, on which we have stumbled unawares; in seeking after the Sophist we have found the philosopher. He is the master who discerns one whole or form pervading a scattered multitude, and many such wholes combined under a higher one, and many entirely apart—he is the true dialectician. Like the Sophist, he is hard to recognize, though for the opposite reasons; the Sophist runs away into the obscurity of not-being, 254 the philosopher is dark from excess of light. And now, leaving him, we will return to our pursuit of the Sophist.

Agreeing in the truth of the third hypothesis, that some things have communion and others not, and that some may have communion with all, let us examine the most important kinds which are capable of admixture; and in this way we may perhaps find out a sense in which not-being may be affirmed to have being. Now the highest kinds are being, rest, motion; and of these, rest and motion exclude each other, but both of them are included in being; and again, they are the same with themselves and the other of each other. What is the meaning of these words, 'same' and 'other'? Are there two more kinds to be added to the three others? For sameness cannot be either rest or 255 motion, because predicated both of rest and motion; nor yet being; because if being were attributed to both of them we should attribute sameness to both of them. Nor can other be identified

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

with being; for then other, which is relative, would have the absoluteness of being. Therefore we must assume a fifth principle, which is universal, and runs through all things, for each thing is other than all other things. Thus there are five principles: (1) being, (2) motion, which is not (3) rest, and because participating both in the same and other, is and is not (4) the same with itself, and is and is not (5) other than the other. And motion is not being, but partakes of being, and therefore is and  
256 is not in the most absolute sense. Thus we have discovered that not-being is the principle of the other which runs through all things, being not excepted. And 'being' is one thing, and 'not-  
257 being' includes and is all other things. And not-being is not the opposite of being, but only the other. Knowledge has many branches, and the other or difference has as many, each of which is described by prefixing the word 'not' to some kind of knowledge. The not-beautiful is as real as the beautiful, the not-just as the just. And the essence of the not-beautiful is to be separated from and opposed to a certain kind of existence which  
258 is termed beautiful. And this opposition and negation is the not-being of which we are in search, and is one kind of being. Thus, in spite of Parmenides, we have not only discovered the existence, but also the nature of not-being—that nature we have  
259 found to be relation. In the communion of different kinds, being and other mutually interpenetrate; other is, but is other than being, and other than each and all of the remaining kinds, and therefore in an infinity of ways 'is not.' And the argument has shown that the pursuit of contradictions is childish and useless, and the very opposite of that higher spirit which criticizes the words of another according to the natural meaning of them.  
260 Nothing can be more unphilosophical than the denial of all communion of kinds. And we are fortunate in having established such a communion for another reason, because in continuing the hunt after the Sophist we have to examine the nature of discourse, and there could be no discourse if there were no communion. For the Sophist, although he can no longer deny the existence of not-being, may still affirm that not-being cannot enter into discourse, and as he was arguing before that there could be no such thing as falsehood, because there was no such thing as not-being, he may continue to argue that there is no such

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

thing as the art of image-making and phantastic, because not-being has no place in language. Hence arises the necessity of examining speech, opinion, and imagination.

And first concerning speech; let us ask the same question 261 about words which we have already answered about the kinds of being and the letters of the alphabet: To what extent do they admit of combination? Some words have a meaning when combined, and others have no meaning. One class of words describes action, another class agents: 'walks,' 'runs,' 'sleeps' 262 are examples of the first; 'stag,' 'horse,' 'lion' of the second. But no combination of words can be formed without a verb and a noun, e.g. 'A man learns'; the simplest sentence is composed of two words, and one of these must be a subject. For example, in the sentence, 'Theaetetus sits,' which is not 263 very long, 'Theaetetus' is the subject, and in the sentence 'Theaetetus flies,' 'Theaetetus' is again the subject. But the two sentences differ in quality, for the first says of you that which is true, and the second says of you that which is not true, or, in other words, attributes to you things which are not as though they were. Here is false discourse in the shortest form. And thus not only speech, but thought and opinion and imagination are proved to be both true and false. For thought is only the process of silent speech, and opinion is only the silent assent 264 or denial which follows this, and imagination is only the expression of this in some form of sense. All of them are akin to speech, and therefore, like speech, admit of true and false. And we have discovered false opinion, which is an encouraging sign of our probable success in the rest of the enquiry.

Then now let us return to our old division of like-ness-making and phantastic. When we were going to place the Sophist in one of them, a doubt arose whether there could be such a thing as an appearance, because there was no such thing as falsehood. At length falsehood has been discovered by us to exist, and we have acknowledged that the Sophist is to be found in the class of imitators. All art was divided originally by us into two 265 branches—productive and acquisitive. And now we may divide both on a different principle into the creations or imitations which are of human, and those which are of divine, origin. For we must admit that the world and ourselves and the animals did

*Sophist.*

ANALYSIS.

not come into existence by chance, or the spontaneous working  
 266 of nature, but by divine reason and knowledge. And there are  
 not only divine creations but divine imitations, such as apparitions  
 and shadows and reflections, which are equally the work of  
 a divine mind. And there are human creations and human  
 imitations too,—there is the actual house and the drawing of it.  
 Nor must we forget that image-making may be an imitation of  
 realities or an imitation of appearances, which last has been called  
 267 by us phantastic. And this phantastic may be again divided  
 into imitation by the help of instruments and impersonations.  
 And the latter may be either dissembling or unconscious, either  
 with or without knowledge. A man cannot imitate you, Theae-  
 tetus, without knowing you, but he can imitate the form of  
 justice or virtue if he have a sentiment or opinion about them.  
 Not being well provided with names, the former I will venture  
 to call the imitation of science, and the latter the imitation of  
 opinion.

The latter is our present concern, for the Sophist has no claims  
 to science or knowledge. Now the imitator, who has only opinion,  
 268 may be either the simple imitator, who thinks that he knows, or  
 the dissembler, who is conscious that he does not know, but dis-  
 guises his ignorance. And the last may be either a maker of long  
 speeches, or of shorter speeches which compel the person con-  
 versing to contradict himself. The maker of longer speeches is  
 the popular orator; the maker of the shorter is the Sophist, whose  
 art may be traced as being the

|  
 contradictory  
 |  
 dissembling  
 |  
 without knowledge  
 |  
 human and not divine  
 |  
 juggling with words  
 |  
 phantastic or unreal  
 |  
 art of image-making.

In commenting on the dialogue in which Plato most nearly  
 approaches the great modern master of metaphysics there are

INTRODUC-  
 TION.

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

several points which it will be useful to consider, such as the unity of opposites, the conception of the ideas as causes, and the relation of the Platonic and Hegelian dialectic.

The unity of opposites was the crux of ancient thinkers in the age of Plato: How could one thing be or become another? That substances have attributes was implied in common language; that heat and cold, day and night, pass into one another was a matter of experience 'on a level with the cobbler's understanding' (Theaet. 180 D). But how could philosophy explain the connexion of ideas, how justify the passing of them into one another? The abstractions of one, other, being, not-being, rest, motion, individual, universal, which successive generations of philosophers had recently discovered, seemed to be beyond the reach of human thought, like stars shining in a distant heaven. They were the symbols of different schools of philosophy: but in what relation did they stand to one another and to the world of sense? It was hardly conceivable that one could be other, or the same different. Yet without some reconciliation of these elementary ideas thought was impossible. There was no distinction between truth and falsehood, between the Sophist and the philosopher. Everything could be predicated of everything, or nothing of anything. To these difficulties Plato finds what to us appears to be the answer of common sense—that Not-being is the relative or other of Being, the defining and distinguishing principle, and that some ideas combine with others, but not all with all. It is remarkable however that he offers this obvious reply only as the result of a long and tedious enquiry; by a great effort he is able to look down as 'from a height' on the 'friends of the ideas' (248 A) as well as on the pre-Socratic philosophies. Yet he is merely asserting principles which no one who could be made to understand them would deny.

The Platonic unity of differences or opposites is the beginning of the modern view that all knowledge is of relations; it also anticipates the doctrine of Spinoza that all determination is negation. Plato takes or gives so much of either of these theories as was necessary or possible in the age in which he lived. In the Sophist, as in the Cratylus, he is opposed to the Heraclitean flux and equally to the Megarian and Cynic denial of predication, because he regards both of them as making knowledge impossible. He does not assert that everything is and is not, or

that the same thing can be affected in the same and in opposite ways at the same time and in respect of the same part of itself. The law of contradiction is as clearly laid down by him in the Republic (iv. 436 ff.; v. 454 C, D), as by Aristotle in his Organon. Yet he is aware that in the negative there is also a positive element, and that oppositions may be only differences. And in the Parmenides he deduces the many from the one and Not-being from Being, and yet shows that the many are included in the one, and that Not-being returns to Being.

In several of the later dialogues Plato is occupied with the connexion of the sciences, which in the Philebus he divides into two classes of pure and applied, adding to them there as elsewhere (Phaedr., Crat., Rep., States.) a superintending science of dialectic. This is the origin of Aristotle's Architectonic, which seems, however, to have passed into an imaginary science of essence, and no longer to retain any relation to other branches of knowledge. Of such a science, whether described as 'philosophia prima,' the science of *oûsia*, logic or metaphysics, philosophers have often dreamed. But even now the time has not arrived when the anticipation of Plato can be realized. Though many a thinker has framed a 'hierarchy of the sciences,' no one has as yet found the higher science which arrays them in harmonious order, giving to the organic and inorganic, to the physical and moral, their respective limits, and showing how they all work together in the world and in man.

Plato arranges in order the stages of knowledge and of existence. They are the steps or grades by which he rises from sense and the shadows of sense to the idea of beauty and good. Mind is in motion as well as at rest (Soph. 249 B); and may be described as a dialectical progress which passes from one limit or determination of thought to another and back again to the first. This is the account of dialectic given by Plato in the Sixth Book of the Republic (511), which regarded under another aspect is the mysticism of the Symposium (Symp. 211). He does not deny the existence of objects of sense, but according to him they only receive their true meaning when they are incorporated in a principle which is above them (Rep. vi. 511 A, B). In modern language they might be said to come first in the order of experience, last in the order of nature and reason. They are assumed, as he is fond of

*Sophist.*  
INTRODUCTION.

repeating, upon the condition that they shall give an account of themselves and that the truth of their existence shall be hereafter proved. For philosophy must begin somewhere and may begin anywhere,—with outward objects, with statements of opinion, with abstract principles. But objects of sense must lead us onward to the ideas or universals which are contained in them; the statements of opinion must be verified; the abstract principles must be filled up and connected with one another. In Plato we find, as we might expect, the germs of many thoughts which have been further developed by the genius of Spinoza and Hegel. But there is a difficulty in separating the germ from the flower, or in drawing the line which divides ancient from modern philosophy. Many coincidences which occur in them are unconscious, seeming to show a natural tendency in the human mind towards certain ideas and forms of thought. And there are many speculations of Plato which would have passed away unheeded, and their meaning, like that of some hieroglyphic, would have remained undeciphered, unless two thousand years and more afterwards an interpreter had arisen of a kindred spirit and of the same intellectual family. For example, in the *Sophist* Plato begins with the abstract and goes on to the concrete, not in the lower sense of returning to outward objects, but to the Hegelian concrete or unity of abstractions. In the intervening period hardly any importance would have been attached to the question which is so full of meaning to Plato and Hegel.

They differ however in their manner of regarding the question. For Plato is answering a difficulty; he is seeking to justify the use of common language and of ordinary thought into which philosophy had introduced a principle of doubt and dissolution. Whereas Hegel tries to go beyond common thought, and to combine abstractions in a higher unity: the ordinary mechanism of language and logic is carried by him into another region in which all oppositions are absorbed and all contradictions affirmed, only that they may be done away with. But Plato, unlike Hegel, nowhere bases his system on the unity of opposites, although in the *Parmenides* he shows an Hegelian subtlety in the analysis of one and Being.

It is difficult within the compass of a few pages to give even a faint outline of the Hegelian dialectic. No philosophy which is

*Sophist.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

worth understanding can be understood in a moment; common sense will not teach us metaphysics any more than mathematics. If all sciences demand of us protracted study and attention, the highest of all can hardly be matter of immediate intuition. Neither can we appreciate a great system without yielding a half assent to it—like flies we are caught in the spider's web; and we can only judge of it truly when we place ourselves at a distance from it. Of all philosophies Hegelianism is the most obscure: and the difficulty inherent in the subject is increased by the use of a technical language. The saying of Socrates respecting the writings of Heraclitus—'Noble is that which I understand, and that which I do not understand may be as noble; but the strength of a Delian diver is needed to swim through it'—expresses the feeling with which the reader rises from the perusal of Hegel. We may truly apply to him the words in which Plato describes the Pre-Socratic philosophers: 'He went on his way rather regardless of whether we understood him or not'; or, as he is reported himself to have said of his own pupils: 'There is only one of you who understands me, and he does *not* understand me.'

Nevertheless the consideration of a few general aspects of the Hegelian philosophy may help to dispel some errors and to awaken an interest about it. (i) It is an ideal philosophy which, in popular phraseology, maintains not matter but mind to be the truth of things, and this not by a mere crude substitution of one word for another, but by showing either of them to be the complement of the other. Both are creations of thought, and the difference in kind which seems to divide them may also be regarded as a difference of degree. One is to the other as the real to the ideal, and both may be conceived together under the higher form of the notion. (ii) Under another aspect it views all the forms of sense and knowledge as stages of thought which have always existed implicitly and unconsciously, and to which the mind of the world, gradually disengaged from sense, has become awakened. The present has been the past. The succession in time of human ideas is also the eternal 'now'; it is historical and also a divine ideal. The history of philosophy stripped of personality and of the other accidents of time and place is gathered up into philosophy, and again philosophy clothed in circumstance expands into history. (iii) Whether regarded as present or past, under the



*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

form of time or of eternity, the spirit of dialectic is always moving onwards from one determination of thought to another, receiving each successive system of philosophy and subordinating it to that which follows—impelled by an irresistible necessity from one idea to another until the cycle of human thought and existence is complete. It follows from this that all previous philosophies which are worthy of the name are not mere opinions or speculations, but stages or moments of thought which have a necessary place in the world of mind. They are no longer the last word of philosophy, for another and another has succeeded them, but they still live and are mighty; in the language of the Greek poet, 'There is a great God in them, and he grows not old.' (iv) This vast ideal system is supposed to be based upon experience. At each step it professes to carry with it the 'witness of eyes and ears' and of common sense, as well as the internal evidence of its own consistency; it has a place for every science, and affirms that no philosophy of a narrower type is capable of comprehending all true facts.

The Hegelian dialectic may be also described as a movement from the simple to the complex. Beginning with the generalizations of sense, (1) passing through ideas of quality, quantity, measure, number, and the like, (2) ascending from presentations, that is pictorial forms of sense, to representations in which the picture vanishes and the essence is detached in thought from the outward form, (3) combining the I and the not-I, or the subject and object, the natural order of thought is at last found to include the leading ideas of the sciences and to arrange them in relation to one another. Abstractions grow together and again become concrete in a new and higher sense. They also admit of development from within in their own spheres. Everywhere there is a movement of attraction and repulsion going on—an attraction or repulsion of ideas of which the physical phenomenon described under a similar name is a figure. Freedom and necessity, mind and matter, the continuous and the discrete, cause and effect, are perpetually being severed from one another in thought, only to be perpetually reunited. The finite and infinite, the absolute and relative are not really opposed; the finite and the negation of the finite are alike lost in a higher or positive infinity, and the absolute is the sum or correlation of all relatives. When this

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

reconciliation of opposites is finally completed in all its stages, the mind may come back again and review the things of sense, the opinions of philosophers, the strife of theology and politics, without being disturbed by them. Whatever is, if not the very best—and what is the best, who can tell?—is, at any rate, historical and rational, suitable to its own age, unsuitable to any other. Nor can any efforts of speculative thinkers or of soldiers and statesmen materially quicken the ‘process of the suns.’

Hegel was quite sensible how great would be the difficulty of presenting philosophy to mankind under the form of opposites. Most of us live in the one-sided truth which the understanding offers to us, and if occasionally we come across difficulties like the time-honoured controversy of necessity and free-will, or the Eleatic puzzle of Achilles and the tortoise, we relegate some of them to the sphere of mystery, others to the book of riddles, and go on our way rejoicing. Most men (like Aristotle) have been accustomed to regard a contradiction in terms as the end of strife; to be told that contradiction is the life and mainspring of the intellectual world is indeed a paradox to them. Every abstraction is at first the enemy of every other, yet they are linked together, each with all, in the chain of Being. The struggle for existence is not confined to the animals, but appears in the kingdom of thought. The divisions which arise in thought between the physical and moral and between the moral and intellectual, and the like, are deepened and widened by the formal logic which elevates the defects of the human faculties into Laws of Thought; they become a part of the mind which makes them and is also made up of them. Such distinctions become so familiar to us that we regard the thing signified by them as absolutely fixed and defined. These are some of the illusions from which Hegel delivers us by placing us above ourselves, by teaching us to analyze the growth of ‘what we are pleased to call our minds,’ by reverting to a time when our present distinctions of thought and language had no existence.

Of the great dislike and childish impatience of his system which would be aroused among his opponents, he was fully aware, and would often anticipate the jests which the rest of the world, ‘in the superfluity of their wits,’ were likely to make upon him. Men are annoyed at what puzzles them; they think what

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

they cannot easily understand to be full of danger. Many a sceptic has stood, as he supposed, firmly rooted in the categories of the understanding which Hegel resolves into their original nothingness. For, like Plato, he 'leaves no stone unturned' in the intellectual world. Nor can we deny that he is unnecessarily difficult, or that his own mind, like that of all metaphysicians, was too much under the dominion of his system and unable to see beyond: or that the study of philosophy, if made a serious business (cp. Rep. vii. 538), involves grave results to the mind and life of the student. For it may encumber him without enlightening his path; and it may weaken his natural faculties of thought and expression without increasing his philosophical power. The mind easily becomes entangled among abstractions, and loses hold of facts. The glass which is adapted to distant objects takes away the vision of what is near and present to us.

To Hegel, as to the ancient Greek thinkers, philosophy was a religion, a principle of life as well as of knowledge, like the idea of good in the Sixth Book of the Republic, a cause as well as an effect, the source of growth as well as of light. In forms of thought which by most of us are regarded as mere categories, he saw or thought that he saw a gradual revelation of the Divine Being. He would have been said by his opponents to have confused God with the history of philosophy, and to have been incapable of distinguishing ideas from facts. And certainly we can scarcely understand how a deep thinker like Hegel could have hoped to revive or supplant the old traditional faith by an unintelligible abstraction: or how he could have imagined that philosophy consisted only or chiefly in the categories of logic. For abstractions, though combined by him in the notion, seem to be never really concrete; they are a metaphysical anatomy, not a living and thinking substance. Though we are reminded by him again and again that we are gathering up the world in ideas, we feel after all that we have not really spanned the gulf which separates *φαινόμενα* from *ὄντα*.

Having in view some of these difficulties, he seeks—and we may follow his example—to make the understanding of his system easier (*a*) by illustrations, and (*b*) by pointing out the coincidence of the speculative idea and the historical order of thought.

(*a*) If we ask how opposites can coexist, we are told that many

*Sophist.*

INTRODUCTORY  
LECTURE.

different qualities inhere in a flower or a tree or in any other concrete object, and that any conception of space or matter or time involves the two contradictory attributes of divisibility and continuousness. We may ponder over the thought of number, reminding ourselves that every unit both implies and denies the existence of every other, and that the one is many—a sum of fractions, and the many one—a sum of units. We may be reminded that in nature there is a centripetal as well as a centrifugal force, a regulator as well as a spring, a law of attraction as well as of repulsion. The way to the West is the way also to the East; the north pole of the magnet cannot be divided from the south pole; two *minus* signs make a *plus* in Arithmetic and Algebra. Again, we may liken the successive layers of thought to the deposits of geological strata which were once fluid and are now solid, which were at one time uppermost in the series and are now hidden in the earth; or to the successive rinds or barks of trees which year by year pass inward; or to the ripple of water which appears and reappears in an ever-widening circle. Or our attention may be drawn to ideas which the moment we analyze them involve a contradiction, such as ‘beginning’ or ‘becoming,’ or to the opposite poles, as they are sometimes termed, of necessity and freedom, of idea and fact. We may be told to observe that every negative is a positive, that differences of kind are resolvable into differences of degree, and that differences of degree may be heightened into differences of kind. We may remember the common remark that there is much to be said on both sides of a question. We may be recommended to look within and to explain how opposite ideas can coexist in our own minds; and we may be told to imagine the minds of all mankind as one mind in which the true ideas of all ages and countries inhere. In our conception of God in his relation to man or of any union of the divine and human nature, a contradiction appears to be unavoidable. Is not the reconciliation of mind and body a necessity, not only of speculation but of practical life? Reflections such as these will furnish the best preparation and give the right attitude of mind for understanding the Hegelian philosophy.

(b) Hegel’s treatment of the early Greek thinkers affords the readiest illustration of his meaning in conceiving all philosophy

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

under the form of opposites. The first abstraction is to him the beginning of thought. Hitherto there had only existed a tumultuous chaos of mythological fancy, but when Thales said 'All is water' a new era began to dawn upon the world. Man was seeking to grasp the universe under a single form which was at first simply a material element, the most equable and colourless and universal which could be found. But soon the human mind became dissatisfied with the emblem, and after ringing the changes on one element after another, demanded a more abstract and perfect conception, such as one or Being, which was absolutely at rest. But the positive had its negative, the conception of Being involved Not-being, the conception of one, many, the conception of a whole, parts. Then the pendulum swung to the other side, from rest to motion, from Xenophanes to Heracleitus. The opposition of Being and Not-being projected into space became the atoms and void of Leucippus and Democritus. Until the Atomists, the abstraction of the individual did not exist; in the philosophy of Anaxagoras the idea of mind, whether human or divine, was beginning to be realized. The pendulum gave another swing, from the individual to the universal, from the object to the subject. The Sophist first uttered the word 'Man is the measure of all things,' which Socrates presented in a new form as the study of ethics. Once more we return from mind to the object of mind, which is knowledge, and out of knowledge the various degrees or kinds of knowledge more or less abstract were gradually developed. The threefold division of logic, physic, and ethics, foreshadowed in Plato, was finally established by Aristotle and the Stoics. Thus, according to Hegel, in the course of about two centuries by a process of antagonism and negation the leading thoughts of philosophy were evolved.

There is nothing like this progress of opposites in Plato, who in the Symposium denies the possibility of reconciliation until the opposition has passed away. In his own words, there is an absurdity in supposing that 'harmony is discord; for in reality harmony consists of notes of a higher and lower pitch which disagreed once, but are now reconciled by the art of music' (Symp. 187 A, B). He does indeed describe objects of sense as regarded by us sometimes from one point of view and sometimes from another. As he says at the end of the Fifth Book of the Republic,

*Sophist.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

'There is nothing light which is not heavy, or great which is not small.' And he extends this relativity to the conceptions of just and good, as well as to great and small. In like manner he acknowledges that the same number may be more or less in relation to other numbers without any increase or diminution (Theaet. 155 A, B). But the perplexity only arises out of the confusion of the human faculties; the art of measuring shows us what is truly great and truly small. Though the just and good in particular instances may vary, the *idea* of good is eternal and unchangeable. And the *idea* of good is the source of knowledge and also of Being, in which all the stages of sense and knowledge are gathered up and from being hypotheses become realities.

Leaving the comparison with Plato we may now consider the value of this invention of Hegel. There can be no question of the importance of showing that two contraries or contradictories may in certain cases be both true. The silliness of the so-called laws of thought ('All  $A=A$ ,' or, in the negative form, 'Nothing can at the same time be both  $A$ , and not  $A$ ') has been well exposed by Hegel himself (Wallace's Hegel, p. 184), who remarks that 'the form of the maxim is virtually self-contradictory, for a proposition implies a distinction between subject and predicate, whereas the maxim of identity, as it is called,  $A=A$ , does not fulfil what its form requires. Nor does any mind ever think or form conceptions in accordance with this law, nor does any existence conform to it.' Wisdom of this sort is well parodied in Shakespeare<sup>1</sup>. Unless we are willing to admit that two contradictories may be true, many questions which lie at the threshold of mathematics and of morals will be insoluble puzzles to us.

The influence of opposites is felt in practical life. The understanding sees one side of a question only—the common sense of mankind joins one of two parties in politics, in religion, in philosophy. Yet, as everybody knows, truth is not wholly the possession of either. But the characters of men are one-sided and accept this or that aspect of the truth. The understanding is strong in a single abstract principle and with this lever moves mankind. Few attain to a balance of principles or recognize

<sup>1</sup> Twelfth Night, Act iv. Sc. 2: '*Clown*. For as the old hermit of Prague, that never saw pen and ink, very wittily said to a niece of King Gorboduc, "That that is is" . . . for what is "that" but "that," and "is" but "is"?'

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

truly how in all human things there is a thesis and antithesis, a law of action and of reaction. In politics we require order as well as liberty, and have to consider the proportions in which under given circumstances they may be safely combined. In religion there is a tendency to lose sight of morality, to separate goodness from the love of truth, to worship God without attempting to know him. In philosophy again there are two opposite principles, of immediate experience and of those general or *a priori* truths which are supposed to transcend experience. But the common sense or common opinion of mankind is incapable of apprehending these opposite sides or views—men are determined by their natural bent to one or other of them; they go straight on for a time in a single line, and may be many things by turns but not at once.

Hence the importance of familiarizing the mind with forms which will assist us in conceiving or expressing the complex or contrary aspects of life and nature. The danger is that they may be too much for us, and obscure our appreciation of facts. As the complexity of mechanics cannot be understood without mathematics, so neither can the many-sidedness of the mental and moral world be truly apprehended without the assistance of new forms of thought. One of these forms is the unity of opposites. Abstractions have a great power over us, but they are apt to be partial and one-sided, and only when modified by other abstractions do they make an approach to the truth. Many a man has become a fatalist because he has fallen under the dominion of a single idea. He says to himself, for example, that he must be either free or necessary—he cannot be both. Thus in the ancient world whole schools of philosophy passed away in the vain attempt to solve the problem of the continuity or divisibility of matter. And in comparatively modern times, though in the spirit of an ancient philosopher, Bishop Berkeley, feeling a similar perplexity, is inclined to deny the truth of infinitesimals in mathematics. Many difficulties arise in practical religion from the impossibility of conceiving body and mind at once and in adjusting their movements to one another. There is a border ground between them which seems to belong to both; and there is as much difficulty in conceiving the body without the soul as the soul without the body. To the 'either' and 'or' philosophy ('Everything is either A or not A') should at least be added the clause 'or neither,' 'or both.'

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

The double form makes reflection easier and more conformable to experience, and also more comprehensive. But in order to avoid paradox and the danger of giving offence to the unmetaphysical part of mankind, we may speak of it as due to the imperfection of language or the limitation of human faculties. It is nevertheless a discovery which, in Platonic language, may be termed a 'most gracious aid to thought.'

The doctrine of opposite moments of thought or of progression by antagonism, further assists us in framing a scheme or system of the sciences. The negation of one gives birth to another of them. The double notions are the joints which hold them together. The simple is developed into the complex, the complex returns again into the simple. Beginning with the highest notion of mind or thought, we may descend by a series of negations to the first generalizations of sense. Or again we may begin with the simplest elements of sense and proceed upwards to the highest being or thought. Metaphysic is the negation or absorption of physiology—physiology of chemistry—chemistry of mechanical philosophy. Similarly in mechanics, when we can no further go we arrive at chemistry—when chemistry becomes organic we arrive at physiology: when we pass from the outward and animal to the inward nature of man we arrive at moral and metaphysical philosophy. These sciences have each of them their own methods and are pursued independently of one another. But to the mind of the thinker they are all one—latent in one another—developed out of one another.

This method of opposites has supplied new instruments of thought for the solution of metaphysical problems, and has thrown down many of the walls within which the human mind was confined. Formerly when philosophers arrived at the infinite and absolute, they seemed to be lost in a region beyond human comprehension. But Hegel has shown that the absolute and infinite are no more true than the relative and finite, and that they must alike be negated before we arrive at a true absolute or a true infinite. The conceptions of the infinite and absolute as ordinarily understood are tiresome because they are unmeaning, but there is no peculiar sanctity or mystery in them. We might as well make an infinitesimal series of fractions or a perpetually recurring decimal the object of our worship. They are the widest and also



*Sophist.* the thinnest of human ideas, or, in the language of logicians, they have the greatest extension and the least comprehension. Of all words they may be truly said to be the most inflated with a false meaning. They have been handed down from one philosopher to another until they have acquired a religious character. They seem also to derive a sacredness from their association with the Divine Being. Yet they are the poorest of the predicates under which we describe him—signifying no more than this, that he is not finite, that he is not relative, and tending to obscure his higher attributes of wisdom, goodness, truth.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The system of Hegel frees the mind from the dominion of abstract ideas. We acknowledge his originality, and some of us delight to wander in the mazes of thought which he has opened to us. For Hegel has found admirers in England and Scotland when his popularity in Germany has departed, and he, like the philosophers whom he criticizes, is of the past. No other thinker has ever dissected the human mind with equal patience and minuteness. He has lightened the burden of thought because he has shown us that the chains which we wear are of our own forging. To be able to place ourselves not only above the opinions of men but above their modes of thinking, is a great height of philosophy. This dearly obtained freedom, however, we are not disposed to part with, or to allow him to build up in a new form the 'beggarly elements' of scholastic logic which he has thrown down. So far as they are aids to reflection and expression, forms of thought are useful, but no further:—we may easily have too many of them.

And when we are asked to believe the Hegelian to be the sole or universal logic, we naturally reply that there are other ways in which our ideas may be connected. The triplets of Hegel, the division into being, essence, and notion, are not the only or necessary modes in which the world of thought can be conceived. There may be an evolution by degrees as well as by opposites. The word 'continuity' suggests the possibility of resolving all differences into differences of quantity. Again, the opposites themselves may vary from the least degree of diversity up to contradictory opposition. They are not like numbers and figures, always and everywhere of the same value. And therefore the edifice which is constructed out of them has merely an imaginary

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

symmetry, and is really irregular and out of proportion. The spirit of Hegelian criticism should be applied to his own system, and the terms Being, Not-being, existence, essence, notion, and the like challenged and defined. For if Hegel introduces a great many distinctions, he obliterates a great many others by the help of the universal solvent 'is not,' which appears to be the simplest of negations, and yet admits of several meanings. Neither are we able to follow him in the play of metaphysical fancy which conducts him from one determination of thought to another. But we begin to suspect that this vast system is not God within us, or God immanent in the world, and may be only the invention of an individual brain. The 'beyond' is always coming back upon us however often we expel it. We do not easily believe that we have within the compass of the mind the form of universal knowledge. We rather incline to think that the method of knowledge is inseparable from actual knowledge, and wait to see what new forms may be developed out of our increasing experience and observation of man and nature. We are conscious of a Being who is without us as well as within us. Even if inclined to Pantheism we are unwilling to imagine that the meagre categories of the understanding, however ingeniously arranged or displayed, are the image of God;—that what all religions were seeking after from the beginning was the Hegelian philosophy which has been revealed in the latter days. The great metaphysician, like a prophet of old, was naturally inclined to believe that his own thoughts were divine realities. We may almost say that whatever came into his head seemed to him to be a necessary truth. He never appears to have criticized himself, or to have subjected his own ideas to the process of analysis which he applies to every other philosopher.

Hegel would have insisted that his philosophy should be accepted as a whole or not at all. He would have urged that the parts derived their meaning from one another and from the whole. He thought that he had supplied an outline large enough to contain all future knowledge, and a method to which all future philosophies must conform. His metaphysical genius is especially shown in the construction of the categories—a work which was only begun by Kant, and elaborated to the utmost by himself. But is it really true that the part has no meaning when separated

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

from the whole, or that knowledge to be knowledge at all must be universal? Do all abstractions shine only by the reflected light of other abstractions? May they not also find a nearer explanation in their relation to phenomena? If many of them are correlatives they are not all so, and the relations which subsist between them vary from a mere association up to a necessary connexion. Nor is it easy to determine how far the unknown element affects the known, whether, for example, new discoveries may not one day supersede our most elementary notions about nature. To a certain extent all our knowledge is conditional upon what may be known in future ages of the world. We must admit this hypothetical element, which we cannot get rid of by an assumption that we have already discovered the method to which all philosophy must conform. Hegel is right in preferring the concrete to the abstract, in setting actuality before possibility, in excluding from the philosopher's vocabulary the word 'inconceivable.' But he is too well satisfied with his own system ever to consider the effect of what is unknown on the element which is known. To the Hegelian all things are plain and clear, while he who is outside the charmed circle is in the mire of ignorance and 'logical impurity': he who is within is omniscient, or at least has all the elements of knowledge under his hand.

Hegelianism may be said to be a transcendental defence of the world as it is. There is no room for aspiration and no need of any: 'what is actual is rational, what is rational is actual.' But a good man will not readily acquiesce in this aphorism. He knows of course that all things proceed according to law whether for good or evil. But when he sees the misery and ignorance of mankind he is convinced that without any interruption of the uniformity of nature the condition of the world may be indefinitely improved by human effort. There is also an adaptation of persons to times and countries, but this is very far from being the fulfilment of their higher natures. The man of the seventeenth century is unfitted for the eighteenth, and the man of the eighteenth for the nineteenth, and most of us would be out of place in the world of a hundred years hence. But all higher minds are much more akin than they are different: genius is of all ages, and there is perhaps more uniformity in excellence than in mediocrity. The sublimer intelligences of mankind—Plato, Dante,

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

Sir Thomas More—meet in a higher sphere above the ordinary ways of men; they understand one another from afar, notwithstanding the interval which separates them. They are ‘the spectators of all time and of all existence’; their works live for ever; and there is nothing to prevent the force of their individuality breaking through the uniformity which surrounds them. But such disturbers of the order of thought Hegel is reluctant to acknowledge.

The doctrine of Hegel will to many seem the expression of an indolent conservatism, and will at any rate be made an excuse for it. The mind of the patriot rebels when he is told that the worst tyranny and oppression has a natural fitness: he cannot be persuaded, for example, that the conquest of Prussia by Napoleon I. was either natural or necessary, or that any similar calamity befalling a nation should be a matter of indifference to the poet or philosopher. We may need such a philosophy or religion to console us under evils which are irremediable, but we see that it is fatal to the higher life of man. It seems to say to us, ‘The world is a vast system or machine which can be conceived under the forms of logic, but in which no single man can do any great good or any great harm. Even if it were a thousand times worse than it is, it could be arranged in categories and explained by philosophers. And what more do we want?’

The philosophy of Hegel appeals to an historical criterion: the ideas of men have a succession in time as well as an order of thought. But the assumption that there is a correspondence between the succession of ideas in history and the natural order of philosophy is hardly true even of the beginnings of thought. And in later systems forms of thought are too numerous and complex to admit of our tracing in them a regular succession. They seem also to be in part reflections of the past, and it is difficult to separate in them what is original and what is borrowed. Doubtless they have a relation to one another—the transition from Descartes to Spinoza or from Locke to Berkeley is not a matter of chance, but it can hardly be described as an alternation of opposites or figured to the mind by the vibrations of a pendulum. Even in Aristotle and Plato, rightly understood, we cannot trace this law of action and reaction. They are both idealists, although to the one the idea is actual and immanent,—to

*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

the other only potential and transcendent, as Hegel himself has pointed out (Wallace's Hegel, p. 223). The true meaning of Aristotle has been disguised from us by his own appeal to fact and the opinions of mankind in his more popular works, and by the use made of his writings in the Middle Ages. No book, except the Scriptures, has been so much read, and so little understood. The Pre-Socratic philosophies are simpler, and we may observe a progress in them; but is there any regular succession? The ideas of Being, change, number, seem to have sprung up contemporaneously in different parts of Greece and we have no difficulty in constructing them out of one another—we can see that the union of Being and Not-being gave birth to the idea of change or Becoming and that one might be another aspect of Being. Again, the Eleatics may be regarded as developing in one direction into the Megarian school, in the other into the Atomists, but there is no necessary connexion between them. Nor is there any indication that the deficiency which was felt in one school was supplemented or compensated by another. They were all efforts to supply the want which the Greeks began to feel at the beginning of the sixth century before Christ,—the want of abstract ideas. Nor must we forget the uncertainty of chronology;—if, as Aristotle says, there were Atomists before Leucippus, Eleatics before Xenophanes, and perhaps 'patrons of the flux' before Heracleitus, Hegel's order of thought in the history of philosophy would be as much disarranged as his order of religious thought by recent discoveries in the history of religion.

Hegel is fond of repeating that all philosophies still live and that the earlier are preserved in the later; they are refuted, and they are not refuted, by those who succeed them. Once they reigned supreme, now they are subordinated to a power or idea greater or more comprehensive than their own. The thoughts of Socrates and Plato and Aristotle have certainly sunk deep into the mind of the world, and have exercised an influence which will never pass away; but can we say that they have the same meaning in modern and ancient philosophy? Some of them, as for example the words 'Being,' 'essence,' 'matter,' 'form,' either have become obsolete, or are used in new senses, whereas 'individual,' 'cause,' 'motive,' have acquired an exaggerated importance. Is the manner in which the logical de-

terminations of thought, or 'categories' as they may be termed, have been handed down to us, really different from that in which other words have come down to us? Have they not been equally subject to accident, and are they not often used by Hegel himself in senses which would have been quite unintelligible to their original inventors—as for example, when he speaks of the 'ground' of Leibnitz ('Everything has a sufficient ground') as identical with his own doctrine of the 'notion' (Wallace's Hegel, p. 195), or the 'Being and Not-being' of Heraclitus as the same with his own 'Becoming'?

As the historical order of thought has been adapted to the logical, so we have reason for suspecting that the Hegelian logic has been in some degree adapted to the order of thought in history. There is unfortunately no criterion to which either of them can be subjected, and not much forcing was required to bring either into near relations with the other. We may fairly doubt whether the division of the first and second parts of logic in the Hegelian system has not really arisen from a desire to make them accord with the first and second stages of the early Greek philosophy. Is there any reason why the conception of measure in the first part, which is formed by the union of quality and quantity, should not have been equally placed in the second division of mediate or reflected ideas? The more we analyze them the less exact does the coincidence of philosophy and the history of philosophy appear. Many terms which were used absolutely in the beginning of philosophy, such as 'Being,' 'matter,' 'cause,' and the like, became relative in the subsequent history of thought. But Hegel employs some of them absolutely, some relatively, seemingly without any principle and without any regard to their original significance.

The divisions of the Hegelian logic bear a superficial resemblance to the divisions of the scholastic logic. The first part answers to the term, the second to the proposition, the third to the syllogism. These are the grades of thought under which we conceive the world, first, in the general terms of quality, quantity, measure; secondly, under the relative forms of 'ground' and existence, substance and accidents, and the like; thirdly in syllogistic forms of the individual mediated with the universal by the help of the particular. Of syllogisms there are various

*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

kinds,—qualitative, quantitative, inductive, mechanical, teleological, —which are developed out of one another. But is there any meaning in reintroducing the forms of the old logic? Who ever thinks of the world as a syllogism? What connexion is there between the proposition and our ideas of reciprocity, cause and effect, and similar relations? It is difficult enough to conceive all the powers of nature and mind gathered up in one. The difficulty is greatly increased when the new is confused with the old, and the common logic is the Procrustes' bed into which they are forced.

The Hegelian philosophy claims, as we have seen, to be based upon experience: it abrogates the distinction of *a priori* and *a posteriori* truth. It also acknowledges that many differences of kind are resolvable into differences of degree. It is familiar with the terms 'evolution,' 'development,' and the like. Yet it can hardly be said to have considered the forms of thought which are best adapted for the expression of facts. It has never applied the categories to experience; it has not defined the differences in our ideas of opposition, or development, or cause and effect, in the different sciences which make use of these terms. It rests on a knowledge which is not the result of exact or serious enquiry, but is floating in the air; the mind has been imperceptibly informed of some of the methods required in the sciences. Hegel boasts that the movement of dialectic is at once necessary and spontaneous: in reality it goes beyond experience and is unverified by it. Further, the Hegelian philosophy, while giving us the power of thinking a great deal more than we are able to fill up, seems to be wanting in some determinations of thought which we require. We cannot say that physical science, which at present occupies so large a share of popular attention, has been made easier or more intelligible by the distinctions of Hegel. Nor can we deny that he has sometimes interpreted physics by metaphysics, and confused his own philosophical fancies with the laws of nature. The very freedom of the movement is not without suspicion, seeming to imply a state of the human mind which has entirely lost sight of facts. Nor can the necessity which is attributed to it be very stringent, seeing that the successive categories or determinations of thought in different parts of his writings are arranged by the philosopher

in different ways. What is termed necessary evolution seems to be only the order in which a succession of ideas presented themselves to the mind of Hegel at a particular time.

The nomenclature of Hegel has been made by himself out of the language of common life. He uses a few words only which are borrowed from his predecessors, or from the Greek philosophy, and these generally in a sense peculiar to himself. The first stage of his philosophy answers to the word 'is,' the second to the word 'has been,' the third to the words 'has been' and 'is' combined. In other words, the first sphere is immediate, the second mediated by reflection, the third or highest returns into the first, and is both mediate and immediate. As Luther's Bible was written in the language of the common people, so Hegel seems to have thought that he gave his philosophy a truly German character by the use of idiomatic German words. But it may be doubted whether the attempt has been successful. First because such words as 'in sich seyn,' 'an sich seyn,' 'an und für sich seyn,' though the simplest combinations of nouns and verbs, require a difficult and elaborate explanation. The simplicity of the words contrasts with the hardness of their meaning. Secondly, the use of technical phraseology necessarily separates philosophy from general literature; the student has to learn a new language of uncertain meaning which he with difficulty remembers. No former philosopher had ever carried the use of technical terms to the same extent as Hegel. The language of Plato or even of Aristotle is but slightly removed from that of common life, and was introduced naturally by a series of thinkers: the language of the scholastic logic has become technical to us, but in the Middle Ages was the vernacular Latin of priests and students. The higher spirit of philosophy, the spirit of Plato and Socrates, rebels against the Hegelian use of language as mechanical and technical.

Hegel is fond of etymologies and often seems to trifle with words. He gives etymologies which are bad, and never considers that the meaning of a word may have nothing to do with its derivation. He lived before the days of Comparative Philology or of Comparative Mythology and Religion, which would have opened a new world to him. He makes no allowance for the element of chance either in language or thought; and perhaps



*Sophist.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

there is no greater defect in his system than the want of a sound theory of language. He speaks as if thought, instead of being identical with language, was wholly independent of it. It is not the actual growth of the mind, but the imaginary growth of the Hegelian system, which is attractive to him.

Neither are we able to say why of the common forms of thought some are rejected by him, while others have an undue prominence given to them. Some of them, such as 'ground' and 'existence,' have hardly any basis either in language or philosophy, while others, such as 'cause' and 'effect,' are but slightly considered. All abstractions are supposed by Hegel to derive their meaning from one another. This is true of some, but not of all, and in different degrees. There is an explanation of abstractions by the phenomena which they represent, as well as by their relation to other abstractions. If the knowledge of all were necessary to the knowledge of any one of them, the mind would sink under the load of thought. Again, in every process of reflection we seem to require a standing ground, and in the attempt to obtain a complete analysis we lose all fixedness. If, for example, the mind is viewed as the complex of ideas, or the difference between things and persons denied, such an analysis may be justified from the point of view of Hegel: but we shall find that in the attempt to criticize thought we have lost the power of thinking, and, like the Heracliteans of old, have no words in which our meaning can be expressed. Such an analysis may be of value as a corrective of popular language or thought, but should still allow us to retain the fundamental distinctions of philosophy.

In the Hegelian system ideas supersede persons. The world of thought, though sometimes described as Spirit or 'Geist,' is really impersonal. The minds of men are to be regarded as one mind, or more correctly as a succession of ideas. Any comprehensive view of the world must necessarily be general, and there may be a use with a view to comprehensiveness in dropping individuals and their lives and actions. In all things, if we leave out details, a certain degree of order begins to appear; at any rate we can make an order which, with a little exaggeration or disproportion in some of the parts, will cover the whole field of philosophy. But are we therefore justified in saying that ideas are the causes

*Sophist.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

of the great movement of the world rather than the personalities which conceived them? The great man is the expression of his time, and there may be peculiar difficulties in his age which he cannot overcome. He may be out of harmony with his circumstances, too early or too late, and then all his thoughts perish; his genius passes away unknown. But not therefore is he to be regarded as a mere waif or stray in human history, any more than he is the mere creature or expression of the age in which he lives. His ideas are inseparable from himself, and would have been nothing without him. Through a thousand personal influences they have been brought home to the minds of others. He starts from antecedents, but he is great in proportion as he disengages himself from them or absorbs himself in them. Moreover the types of greatness differ; while one man is the expression of the influences of his age, another is in antagonism to them. One man is borne on the surface of the water; another is carried forward by the current which flows beneath. The character of an individual, whether he be independent of circumstances or not, inspires others quite as much as his words. What is the teaching of Socrates apart from his personal history, or the doctrines of Christ apart from the Divine life in which they are embodied? Has not Hegel himself delineated the greatness of the life of Christ as consisting in his 'Schicksalslosigkeit' or independence of the destiny of his race? Do not persons become ideas, and is there any distinction between them? Take away the five greatest legislators, the five greatest warriors, the five greatest poets, the five greatest founders or teachers of a religion, the five greatest philosophers, the five greatest inventors,—where would have been all that we most value in knowledge or in life? And can that be a true theory of the history of philosophy which, in Hegel's own language, 'does not allow the individual to have his right'?

Once more, while we readily admit that the world is relative to the mind, and the mind to the world, and that we must suppose a common or correlative growth in them, we shrink from saying that this complex nature can contain, even in outline, all the endless forms of Being and knowledge. Are we not 'seeking the living among the dead' and dignifying a mere logical skeleton with the name of philosophy and almost of God? When we look

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

far away into the primeval sources of thought and belief, do we suppose that the mere accident of our being the heirs of the Greek philosophers can give us a right to set ourselves up as having the true and only standard of reason in the world? Or when we contemplate the infinite worlds in the expanse of heaven can we imagine that a few meagre categories derived from language and invented by the genius of one or two great thinkers contain the secret of the universe? Or, having regard to the ages during which the human race may yet endure, do we suppose that we can anticipate the proportions human knowledge may attain even within the short space of one or two thousand years?

Again, we have a difficulty in understanding how ideas can be causes, which to us seems to be as much a figure of speech as the old notion of a creator artist, 'who makes the world by the help of the demigods' (Plato, *Tim.*), or with 'a golden pair of compasses' measures out the circumference of the universe (Milton, *P. L.*). We can understand how the idea in the mind of an inventor is the cause of the work which is produced by it; and we can dimly imagine how this universal frame may be animated by a divine intelligence. But we cannot conceive how all the thoughts of men that ever were, which are themselves subject to so many external conditions of climate, country, and the like, even if regarded as the single thought of a Divine Being, can be supposed to have made the world. We appear to be only wrapping up ourselves in our own conceits—to be confusing cause and effect—to be losing the distinction between reflection and action, between the human and divine.

These are some of the doubts and suspicions which arise in the mind of a student of Hegel, when, after living for a time within the charmed circle, he removes to a little distance and looks back upon what he has learnt, from the vantage-ground of history and experience. The enthusiasm of his youth has passed away, the authority of the master no longer retains a hold upon him. But he does not regret the time spent in the study of him. He finds that he has received from him a real enlargement of mind, and much of the true spirit of philosophy, even when he has ceased to believe in him. He returns again and again to his writings as to the recollections of a first love, not undeserving of his

admiration still. Perhaps if he were asked how he can admire without believing, or what value he can attribute to what he knows to be erroneous, he might answer in some such manner as the following :—

1. That in Hegel he finds glimpses of the genius of the poet and of the common sense of the man of the world. His system is not cast in a poetic form, but neither has all this load of logic extinguished in him the feeling of poetry. He is the true countryman of his contemporaries Goethe and Schiller. Many fine expressions are scattered up and down in his writings, as when he tells us that ‘the Crusaders went to the Sepulchre but found it empty.’ He delights to find vestiges of his own philosophy in the older German mystics. And though he can be scarcely said to have mixed much in the affairs of men, for, as his biographer tells us, ‘he lived for thirty years in a single room,’ yet he is far from being ignorant of the world. No one can read his writings without acquiring an insight into life. He loves to touch with the spear of logic the follies and self-deceptions of mankind, and make them appear in their natural form, stripped of the disguises of language and custom. He will not allow men to defend themselves by an appeal to one-sided or abstract principles. In this age of reason any one can too easily find a reason for doing what he likes (Wallace, p. 197). He is suspicious of a distinction which is often made between a person’s character and his conduct. His spirit is the opposite of that of Jesuitism or casuistry (Wallace, p. 181). He affords an example of a remark which has been often made, that in order to know the world it is not necessary to have had a great experience of it.

2. Hegel, if not the greatest philosopher, is certainly the greatest critic of philosophy who ever lived. No one else has equally mastered the opinions of his predecessors or traced the connexion of them in the same manner. No one has equally raised the human mind above the trivialities of the common logic and the unmeaningness of ‘mere’ abstractions, and above imaginary possibilities, which, as he truly says, have no place in philosophy. No one has won so much for the kingdom of ideas. Whatever may be thought of his own system it will hardly be denied that he has overthrown Locke, Kant, Hume, and the so-called philosophy of common sense. He shows us that only by the study of meta-

*Sophist.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

physics can we get rid of metaphysics, and that those who are in theory most opposed to them are in fact most entirely and hopelessly enslaved by them: 'die reinen Physiker sind nur die Thiere.' The disciple of Hegel will hardly become the slave of any other system-maker. What Bacon seems to promise him he will find realized in the great German thinker, an emancipation nearly complete from the influences of the scholastic logic.

3. Many of those who are least disposed to become the votaries of Hegelianism nevertheless recognize in his system a new logic supplying a variety of instruments and methods hitherto unemployed. We may not be able to agree with him in assimilating the natural order of human thought with the history of philosophy, and still less in identifying both with the divine idea or nature. But we may acknowledge that the great thinker has thrown a light on many parts of human knowledge, and has solved many difficulties. We cannot receive his doctrine of opposites as the last word of philosophy, but still we may regard it as a very important contribution to logic. We cannot affirm that words have no meaning when taken out of their connexion in the history of thought. But we recognize that their meaning is to a great extent due to association, and to their correlation with one another. We see the advantage of viewing in the concrete what mankind regard only in the abstract. There is much to be said for his faith or conviction, that God is immanent in the world,—within the sphere of the human mind, and not beyond it. It was natural that he himself, like a prophet of old, should regard the philosophy which he had invented as the voice of God in man. But this by no means implies that he conceived himself as creating God in thought. He was the servant of his own ideas and not the master of them. The philosophy of history and the history of philosophy may be almost said to have been discovered by him. He has done more to explain Greek thought than all other writers put together. Many ideas of development, evolution, reciprocity, which have become the symbols of another school of thinkers may be traced to his speculations. In the theology and philosophy of England as well as of Germany, and also in the lighter literature of both countries, there are always appearing 'fragments of the great banquet' of Hegel.

# SOPHIST.

## PERSONS OF THE DIALOGUE.

THEODORUS.

THEAETETUS.

SOCRATES.

AN ELEATIC STRANGER, whom Theodorus and Theaetetus bring with them:

The younger SOCRATES, who is a silent auditor.

Steph.  
216

*Theodorus.* HERE we are, Socrates, true to our agreement of yesterday; and we bring with us a stranger from Elea, who is a disciple of Parmenides and Zeno, and a true philosopher.

*Socrates.* Is he not rather a god, Theodorus, who comes to us in the disguise of a stranger? For Homer says that all the gods, and especially the god of strangers, are companions of the meek and just, and visit the good and evil among men. And may not your companion be one of those higher powers, a cross-examining deity, who has come to spy out our weakness in argument, and to cross-examine us?

*Theod.* Nay, Socrates, he is not one of the disputatious sort—he is too good for that. And, in my opinion, he is not a god at all; but divine he certainly is, for this is a title which I should give to all philosophers.

*Soc.* Capital, my friend! and I may add that they are almost as hard to be discerned as the gods. For the true philosophers, and such as are not merely made up for the occasion, appear in various forms unrecognized by the ignorance of men, and they 'hover about cities,' as Homer declares, looking 'from above upon human life; and some think nothing of them, and others can never think enough; and sometimes they appear as statesmen, and sometimes as sophists; and then, again, to many they seem to be no better

*Sophist.*

THEODORUS,  
SOCRATES.

The Eleatic stranger, who is introduced by Theodorus, is taken by Socrates for some cross-examining deity; and Theodorus acknowledges that, though not a god, he is at any rate a divine man.

*Sophist.*SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
STRANGER.A question  
is put to  
him : Are  
the sophist,  
statesman,  
and philo-  
sopher  
different, or  
the same ?

than madmen. I should like to ask our Eleatic friend, if he would tell us, what is thought about them in Italy, and to whom the terms are applied.

*Theod.* What terms ?*Soc.* Sophist, statesman, philosopher.

*Theod.* What is your difficulty about them, and what made you ask ?

*Soc.* I want to know whether by his countrymen they are regarded as one or two ; or do they, as the names are three, distinguish also three kinds, and assign one to each name ?

*Theod.* I dare say that the Stranger will not object to discuss the question. What do you say, Stranger ?

*Stranger.* I am far from objecting, Theodorus, nor have I any difficulty in replying that by us they are regarded as three. But to define precisely the nature of each of them is by no means a slight or easy task.

*Theod.* You have happened to light, Socrates, almost on the very question which we were asking our friend before we came hither, and he excused himself to us, as he does now to you ; although he admitted that the matter had been fully discussed, and that he remembered the answer.

The stran-  
ger may  
either speak  
at length or  
adopt the  
method of  
question  
and answer.

*Soc.* Then do not, Stranger, deny us the first favour which we ask of you : I am sure that you will not, and therefore I shall only beg of you to say whether you like and are accustomed to make a long oration on a subject which you want to explain to another, or to proceed by the method of question and answer. I remember hearing a very noble discussion in which Parmenides employed the latter of the two methods, when I was a young man, and he was far advanced in years<sup>1</sup>.

*Str.* I prefer to talk with another when he responds pleasantly, and is light in hand ; if not, I would rather have my own say.

*Soc.* Any one of the present company will respond kindly to you, and you can choose whom you like of them ; I should recommend you to take a young person—Theaetetus, for example—unless you have a preference for some one else.

*Str.* I feel ashamed, Socrates, being a new-comer into your society, instead of talking a little and hearing others talk, to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Parm., 137 ff.

be spinning out a long soliloquy or address, as if I wanted to show off. For the true answer will certainly be a very long one, a great deal longer than might be expected from such a short and simple question. At the same time, I fear that I may seem rude and ungracious if I refuse your courteous  
218 request, especially after what you have said. For I certainly cannot object to your proposal, that Theaetetus should respond, having already conversed with him myself, and being recommended by you to take him.

*Theaetetus.* But are you sure, Stranger, that this will be quite so acceptable to the rest of the company as Socrates imagines?

*Str.* You hear them applauding, Theaetetus; after that, there is nothing more to be said. Well then, I am to argue with you, and if you tire of the argument, you may complain of your friends and not of me.

*Theaet.* I do not think that I shall tire, and if I do, I shall get my friend here, young Socrates, the namesake of the elder Socrates, to help; he is about my own age, and my partner at the gymnasium, and is constantly accustomed to work with me.

*Str.* Very good; you can decide about that for yourself as we proceed. Meanwhile you and I will begin together and enquire into the nature of the Sophist, first of the three: I should like you to make out what he is and bring him to light in a discussion; for at present we are only agreed about the name, but of the thing to which we both apply the name possibly you have one notion and I another; whereas we ought always to come to an understanding about the thing itself in terms of a definition, and not merely about the name minus the definition. Now the tribe of Sophists which we are investigating is not easily caught or defined; and the world has long ago agreed, that if great subjects are to be adequately treated, they must be studied in the lesser and easier instances of them before we proceed to the greatest of all. And as I know that the tribe of Sophists is troublesome and hard to be caught, I should recommend that we practise beforehand the method which is to be applied to him on some simple and smaller thing, unless you can suggest a better way.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

On the present occasion he prefers the latter, and accepts the proposal of Socrates that Theaetetus should be his respondent.

First of all,  
What is the  
Sophist?

As he is not  
easy to  
catch, we  
had better  
begin with  
something  
simpler;



*Sophist.*      *Theæt.* Indeed I cannot.

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.      *Str.* Then suppose that we work out some lesser example which will be a pattern of the greater?

*Theæt.* Good.

e. g. with  
the angler.      *Str.* What is there which is well known and not great, and is yet as susceptible of definition as any larger thing? Shall I say an angler? He is familiar to all of us, and not a very interesting or important person.

*Theæt.* He is not.

*Str.* Yet I suspect that he will furnish us with the sort of 219 definition and line of enquiry which we want.

*Theæt.* Very good.

He is an  
artist, and  
all art is  
either  
creative or  
acquisitive.      *Str.* Let us begin by asking whether he is a man having art or not having art, but some other power.

*Theæt.* He is clearly a man of art.

*Str.* And of arts there are two kinds?

*Theæt.* What are they?

*Str.* There is agriculture, and the tending of mortal creatures, and the art of constructing or moulding vessels, and there is the art of imitation—all these may be appropriately called by a single name.

*Theæt.* What do you mean? And what is the name?

*Str.* He who brings into existence something that did not exist before is said to be a producer, and that which is brought into existence is said to be produced.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* And all the arts which were just now mentioned are characterized by this power of producing?

*Theæt.* They are.

*Str.* Then let us sum them up under the name of productive or creative art.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* Next follows the whole class of learning and cognition; then comes trade, fighting, hunting. And since none of these produces anything, but is only engaged in conquering by word or deed, or in preventing others from conquering, things which exist and have been already produced—in each and all of these branches there appears to be an art which may be called acquisitive.

*Theæt.* Yes, that is the proper name.

*Str.* Seeing, then, that all arts are either acquisitive or creative, in which class shall we place the art of the angler?

*Theaet.* Clearly in the acquisitive class.

*Str.* And the acquisitive may be subdivided into two parts: there is exchange, which is voluntary and is effected by gifts, hire, purchase; and the other part of acquisitive, which takes by force of word or deed, may be termed conquest?

*Theaet.* That is implied in what has been said.

*Str.* And may not conquest be again subdivided?

*Theaet.* How?

*Str.* Open force may be called fighting, and secret force may have the general name of hunting?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And there is no reason why the art of hunting should not be further divided.

*Theaet.* How would you make the division?

*Str.* Into the hunting of living and of lifeless prey.

*Theaet.* Yes, if both kinds exist.

220 *Str.* Of course they exist; but the hunting after lifeless things having no special name, except some sorts of diving, and other small matters, may be omitted; the hunting after living things may be called animal hunting.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And animal hunting may be truly said to have two divisions, land-animal hunting, which has many kinds and names, and water-animal hunting, or the hunting after animals who swim?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And of swimming animals, one class lives on the wing and the other in the water?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* Fowling is the general term under which the hunting of all birds is included.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* The hunting of animals who live in the water has the general name of fishing.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And this sort of hunting may be further divided also into two principal kinds?

*Theaet.* What are they?

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

The angler is to be placed in the acquisitive class.

Acquisition is voluntary (= exchange) or forcible (= conquest).

Conquest is open (= fighting) or secret (= hunting).

There is hunting of animals, and of lifeless prey;

the former includes the hunting of land animals and of water animals.

Water animals live on the wing or in the water: the fowler hunts the former, the fisherman the latter.

There are two kinds of fishing—

*Sophist.*

*Str.* There is one kind which takes them in nets, another which takes them by a blow.

STRANGER,  
THEATETUS.  
fishing with  
enclosures  
and by  
striking.

*Theact.* What do you mean, and how do you distinguish them?

*Str.* As to the first kind—all that surrounds and encloses anything to prevent egress, may be rightly called an enclosure.

*Theact.* Very true.

*Str.* For which reason twig baskets, casting-nets, nooses, creels, and the like may all be termed 'enclosures'?

*Theact.* True.

*Str.* And therefore this first kind of capture may be called by us capture with enclosures, or something of that sort?

*Theact.* Yes.

*Str.* The other kind, which is practised by a blow with hooks and three-pronged spears, when summed up under one name, may be called striking, unless you, Theaetetus, can find some better name?

*Theact.* Never mind the name—what you suggest will do very well.

There is  
striking by  
day, and  
striking by  
night: the  
former is  
called  
barbing.

*Str.* There is one mode of striking, which is done at night, and by the light of a fire, and is by the hunters themselves called firing, or spearing by firelight.

*Theact.* True.

*Str.* And the fishing by day is called by the general name of barbing, because the spears, too, are barbed at the point.

*Theact.* Yes, that is the term.

Barbing is  
of two  
kinds,—  
spearing  
and ANG-  
LING.

*Str.* Of this barb-fishing, that which strikes the fish who is below from above is called spearing, because this is the way in which the three-pronged spears are mostly used.

*Theact.* Yes, it is often called so.

*Str.* Then now there is only one kind remaining.

*Theact.* What is that?

*Str.* When a hook is used, and the fish is not struck in any chance part of his body, as he is with the spear, but only about the head and mouth, and is then drawn out from below upwards with reeds and rods:—What is the right name of that mode of fishing, Theaetetus?

*Theact.* I suspect that we have now discovered the object of our search.

Recapitu-  
lation.

*Str.* Then now you and I have come to an understanding

not only about the name of the angler's art, but about the definition of the thing itself. One half of all art was acquisitive—half of the acquisitive art was conquest or taking by force, half of this was hunting, and half of hunting was hunting animals, half of this was hunting water animals—of this again, the under half was fishing, half of fishing was striking; a part of striking was fishing with a barb, and one half of this again, being the kind which strikes with a hook and draws the fish from below upwards, is the art which we have been seeking, and which from the nature of the operation is denoted angling or drawing up (*ἀσπαλιευτική, ἀνασπᾶσθαι*).

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* The result has been quite satisfactorily brought out.

*Str.* And now, following this pattern, let us endeavour to find out what a Sophist is.

The definition of the Sophist :

*Theaet.* By all means.

*Str.* The first question about the angler was, whether he was a skilled artist or unskilled?

Like the angler, he is a skilled person

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And shall we call our new friend unskilled, or a thorough master of his craft?

*Theaet.* Certainly not unskilled, for his name, as, indeed, you imply, must surely express his nature.

*Str.* Then he must be supposed to have some art.

*Theaet.* What art?

*Str.* By heaven, they are cousins! it never occurred to us.

*Theaet.* Who are cousins?

*Str.* The angler and the Sophist.

*Theaet.* In what way are they related?

*Str.* They both appear to me to be hunters.

*Theaet.* How the Sophist? Of the other we have spoken.

*Str.* You remember our division of hunting, into hunting after swimming animals and land animals?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And you remember that we subdivided the swimming and left the land animals, saying that there were many kinds of them?

and a hunter, — nothowever of a swimming, but of a land animal — man.

222 *Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* Thus far, then, the Sophist and the angler, starting from the art of acquiring, take the same road?

*Sophist.*

*Theæt.* So it would appear.

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.

The angler goes to the rivers and to the sea ; the Sophist to the broad meadow-lands of youth.

*Str.* Their paths diverge when they reach the art of animal hunting ; the one going to the sea-shore, and to the rivers and to the lakes, and angling for the animals which are in them.

*Theæt.* Very true.

*Str.* While the other goes to land and water of another sort—rivers of wealth and broad meadow-lands of generous youth ; and he also is intending to take the animals which are in them.

*Theæt.* What do you mean ?

*Str.* Of hunting on land there are two principal divisions.

*Theæt.* What are they ?

*Str.* One is the hunting of tame, and the other of wild animals.

*Theæt.* But are tame animals ever hunted ?

*Str.* Yes, if you include man under tame animals. But if you like you may say that there are no tame animals, or that, if there are, man is not among them ; or you may say that man is a tame animal but is not hunted—you shall decide which of these alternatives you prefer.

*Theæt.* I should say, Stranger, that man is a tame animal, and I admit that he is hunted.

*Str.* Then let us divide the hunting of tame animals into two parts.

*Theæt.* How shall we make the division ?

*Str.* Let us define piracy, man-stealing, tyranny, the whole military art, by one name, as hunting with violence.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* But the art of the lawyer, of the popular orator, and the art of conversation may be called in one word the art of persuasion.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* And of persuasion, there may be said to be two kinds ?

*Theæt.* What are they ?

*Str.* One is private, and the other public.

*Theæt.* Yes ; each of them forms a class.

*Str.* And of private hunting, one sort receives hire, and the other brings gifts.

*Theæt.* I do not understand you.

Hunting on land is of tame and of wild animals.

Under tame animals man is included.

Tame animals are hunted with violence, or by persuasion.

Persuasion is public or private.

The hunter in private brings gifts, like the

*Str.* You seem never to have observed the manner in which lovers hunt. *Sophist.*

*Theaet.* To what do you refer?

*Str.* I mean that they lavish gifts on those whom they hunt in addition to other inducements. STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.  
  
lover, or  
receives  
hire.

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Str.* Let us admit this, then, to be the amatory art.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* But that sort of hireling whose conversation is pleasing and who baits his hook only with pleasure and exacts nothing but his maintenance in return, we should all, if I am not mistaken, describe as possessing flattery or an art of making things pleasant. The hire-  
ling may  
seek to give  
pleasure, or  
to teach  
virtue.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And that sort, which professes to form acquaintances only for the sake of virtue, and demands a reward in the shape of money, may be fairly called by another name?

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Str.* And what is the name? Will you tell me?

*Theaet.* It is obvious enough; for I believe that we have discovered the Sophist: which is, as I conceive, the proper name for the class described. The latter  
is the So-  
PHIST.

*Str.* Then now, Theaetetus, his art may be traced as a branch of the appropriative<sup>1</sup>, acquisitive family—which hunts animals,—living—land—tame animals; which hunts man,—privately—for hire,—taking money in exchange—having the semblance of education; and this is termed Sophistry, and is a hunt after young men of wealth and rank—such is the conclusion. Recapitu-  
lation.

*Theaet.* Just so.

*Str.* Let us take another branch of his genealogy; for he is a professor of a great and many-sided art; and if we look back at what has preceded we see that he presents another aspect, besides that of which we are speaking. A new de-  
finition:

*Theaet.* In what respect?

*Str.* There were two sorts of acquisitive art; the one concerned with hunting, the other with exchange. Acquisition  
is partly  
hunting,  
partly ex-  
change;

*Theaet.* There were.

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *χειρωτική* and *πεζοθηρία*.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEALTBUSand the  
latter partly  
giving,  
partly sell-  
ing.The seller  
may sell his  
own pro-  
ductions, or  
exchange  
those of  
others : the  
exchanger  
may be a  
retailer or a  
merchant.The mer-  
chant may  
sell food for  
the body or  
food for the  
soul.*Str.* And of the art of exchange there are two divisions, the one of giving, and the other of selling.*Theact.* Let us assume that.*Str.* Next, we will suppose the art of selling to be divided into two parts.*Theact.* How?*Str.* There is one part which is distinguished as the sale of a man's own productions ; another, which is the exchange of the works of others.*Theact.* Certainly.*Str.* And is not that part of exchange which takes place in the city, being about half of the whole, termed retailing?*Theact.* Yes.*Str.* And that which exchanges the goods of one city for those of another by selling and buying is the exchange of the merchant?*Theact.* To be sure.*Str.* And you are aware that this exchange of the merchant is of two kinds: it is partly concerned with food for the use of the body, and partly with the food of the soul which is bartered and received in exchange for money.*Theact.* What do you mean?*Str.* You want to know what is the meaning of food for the soul ; the other kind you surely understand.*Theact.* Yes.*Str.* Take music in general and painting and marionette playing and many other things, which are purchased in one city, and carried away and sold in another—wares of the soul which are hawked about either for the sake of instruction or amusement ;—may not he who takes them about and sells them be quite as truly called a merchant as he who sells meats and drinks?*Theact.* To be sure he may.*Str.* And would you not call by the same name him who buys up knowledge and goes about from city to city exchanging his wares for money?*Theact.* Certainly I should.*Str.* Of this merchandise of the soul, may not one part be fairly termed the art of display? And there is another part which is certainly not less ridiculous, but being a trade inThe latter  
may be sup-  
plied by the  
art of dis-

learning must be called by some name germane to the matter ? *Sophist.*

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* The latter should have two names,—one descriptive of the sale of the knowledge of virtue, and the other of the sale of other kinds of knowledge. STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.  
play or by  
a trade in  
learning.

*Theæt.* Of course.

*Str.* The name of art-seller corresponds well enough to the latter ; but you must try and tell me the name of the other. The trader  
in learning  
is the art-  
seller, or  
the seller of  
virtue —the  
SOPHIST.

*Theæt.* He must be the Sophist, whom we are seeking ; no other name can possibly be right.

*Str.* No other ; and so this trader in virtue again turns out to be our friend the Sophist, whose art may now be traced from the art of acquisition through exchange, trade, merchandise, to a merchandise of the soul which is concerned with speech and the knowledge of virtue.

*Theæt.* Quite true.

*Str.* And there may be a third reappearance of him ;—for he may have settled down in a city, and may fabricate as well as buy these same wares, intending to live by selling them, and he would still be called a Sophist ? The So-  
phist may  
fabricate,  
as well as  
buy, his  
wares.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* Then that part of the acquisitive art which exchanges, and of exchange which either sells a man's own productions or retails those of others, as the case may be, and in either way sells the knowledge of virtue, you would again term Sophistry ?

*Theæt.* I must, if I am to keep pace with the argument.

*Str.* Let us consider once more whether there may not be yet another aspect of sophistry. A fresh  
start.

*Theæt.* What is it ?

225 *Str.* In the acquisitive there was a subdivision of the combative or fighting art. The fight-  
ing art is a  
part of the  
acquisitive,  
and is either  
competitive  
or conten-  
tious.

*Theæt.* There was.

*Str.* Perhaps we had better divide it.

*Theæt.* What shall be the divisions ?

*Str.* There shall be one division of the competitive, and another of the pugnacious.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* That part of the pugnacious which is a contest of



*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

Contention is either of bodily strength, or of words. The latter is controversy, which is also of two kinds, public (forensic) and private (disputation).

Disputation, when proceeding by rules of art, is called argumentation; and this either wastes or makes money.

bodily strength may be properly called by some such name as violent.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And when the war is one of words, it may be termed controversy?

*Theaet.* Yes.*Str.* And controversy may be of two kinds.*Theaet.* What are they?

*Str.* When long speeches are answered by long speeches, and there is public discussion about the just and unjust, that is forensic controversy.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And there is a private sort of controversy, which is cut up into questions and answers, and this is commonly called disputation?

*Theaet.* Yes, that is the name.

*Str.* And of disputation, that sort which is only a discussion about contracts, and is carried on at random, and without rules of art, is recognized by the reasoning faculty to be a distinct class, but has hitherto had no distinctive name, and does not deserve to receive one from us.

*Theaet.* No; for the different sorts of it are too minute and heterogeneous.

*Str.* But that which proceeds by rules of art to dispute about justice and injustice in their own nature, and about things in general, we have been accustomed to call argumentation (Eristic)?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And of argumentation, one sort wastes money, and the other makes money.

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* Suppose we try and give to each of these two classes a name.

*Theaet.* Let us do so.

*Str.* I should say that the habit which leads a man to neglect his own affairs for the pleasure of conversation, of which the style is far from being agreeable to the majority of his hearers, may be fairly termed loquacity: such is my opinion.

*Theaet.* That is the common name for it.

*Str.* But now who the other is, who makes money out of private disputation, it is your turn to say. *Sophist.*

*Theæt.* There is only one true answer : he is the wonderful Sophist, of whom we are in pursuit, and who reappears again for the fourth time. STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.  
That which makes money is the art of the Sophist.

226 *Str.* Yes, and with a fresh pedigree, for he is the money-making species of the Eristic, disputatious, controversial, pugnacious, combative, acquisitive family, as the argument has already proven.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* How true was the observation that he was a many-sided animal, and not to be caught with one hand, as they say !

*Theæt.* Then you must catch him with two.

*Str.* Yes, we must, if we can. And therefore let us try another track in our pursuit of him : You are aware that there are certain menial occupations which have names among servants ? Another track :  
There are arts of dividing used by servants.

*Theæt.* Yes, there are many such ; which of them do you mean ?

*Str.* I mean such as sifting, straining, winnowing, threshing<sup>1</sup>.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* And besides these there are a great many more, such as carding, spinning, adjusting the warp and the woof ; and thousands of similar expressions are used in the arts.

*Theæt.* Of what are they to be patterns, and what are we going to do with them all ?

*Str.* I think that in all of these there is implied a notion of division. These afford examples of the great art of discerning,

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* Then if, as I was saying, there is one art which includes all of them, ought not that art to have one name ?

*Theæt.* And what is the name of the art ?

*Str.* The art of discerning or discriminating.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* Think whether you cannot divide this.

*Theæt.* I should have to think a long while.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *δῖνευ*, a conjecture of Professor Campbell's.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.which  
either sepa-  
rates like  
from like,  
or the bet-  
ter from the  
worse.In the latter  
case it is  
called puri-  
fication.*Str.* In all the previously named processes either like has been separated from like or the better from the worse.*Theaet.* I see now what you mean.*Str.* There is no name for the first kind of separation ; of the second, which throws away the worse and preserves the better, I do know a name.*Theaet.* What is it ?*Str.* Every discernment or discrimination of that kind, as I have observed, is called a purification.*Theaet.* Yes, that is the usual expression.*Str.* And any one may see that purification is of two kinds.*Theaet.* Perhaps so, if he were allowed time to think ; but I do not see at this moment.*Str.* There are many purifications of bodies which may with propriety be comprehended under a single name.*Theaet.* What are they, and what is their name ?Purification  
is of bodies  
animate  
(which may  
be internal  
or external),  
and of  
bodies in-  
animate :  
the latter  
sort has  
ridiculous  
names ap-  
plied to it.But scienti-  
fic method  
ignores dis-  
tinctions of  
high and  
low.*Str.* There is the purification of living bodies in their inward and in their outward parts, of which the former is duly effected by medicine and gymnastic, the latter by the not very dignified art of the bath-man ; and there is the purification of inanimate substances—to this the arts of fulling and of furbishing in general attend in a number of minute particulars, having a variety of names which are thought ridiculous.*Theaet.* Very true.*Str.* There can be no doubt that they are thought ridiculous, Theaetetus ; but then the dialectical art never considers whether the benefit to be derived from the purge is greater or less than that to be derived from the sponge, and has not more interest in the one than in the other ; her endeavour is to know what is and is not kindred in all arts, with a view to the acquisition of intelligence ; and having this in view, she honours them all alike, and when she makes comparisons, she counts one of them not a whit more ridiculous than another ; nor does she esteem him who adduces as his example of hunting, the general's art, at all more decorous than another who cites that of the vermin-destroyer, but only as the greater pretender of the two. And as to your question concerning the name which was to

comprehend all these arts of purification, whether of animate or inanimate bodies, the art of dialectic is in no wise particular about fine words, if she may be only allowed to have a general name for all other purifications, binding them up together and separating them off from the purification of the soul or intellect. For this is the purification at which she wants to arrive, and this we should understand to be her aim.

*Sophist.*  
*STRANGER,*  
*THEAETETUS.*  
  
There is also a purification of the soul.

*Theaet.* Yes, I understand ; and I agree that there are two sorts of purification, and that one of them is concerned with the soul, and that there is another which is concerned with the body.

*Str.* Excellent ; and now listen to what I am going to say, and try to divide further the first of the two.

*Theaet.* Whatever line of division you suggest, I will endeavour to assist you.

*Str.* Do we admit that virtue is distinct from vice in the soul ?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And purification was to leave the good and to cast out whatever is bad ?

Purification is to take away evils.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* Then any taking away of evil from the soul may be properly called purification ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And in the soul there are two kinds of evil.

*Theaet.* What are they ?

228 *Str.* The one may be compared to disease in the body, the other to deformity.

*Theaet.* I do not understand.

*Str.* Perhaps you have never reflected that disease and discord are the same.

*Theaet.* To this, again, I know not what I should reply.

*Str.* Do you not conceive discord to be a dissolution of kindred elements, originating in some disagreement ?

*Theaet.* Just that.

*Str.* And is deformity anything but the want of measure, which is always unsightly ?

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Str.* And do we not see that opinion is opposed to

There are two evils of the body, — disease or discord, and deformity or want of measure ;

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

desire, pleasure to anger, reason to pain, and that all these elements are opposed to one another in the souls of bad men?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

and two  
correspond-  
ing evils of  
the soul,—  
vice and  
ignorance.

*Str.* And yet they must all be akin?*Theaet.* Of course.

*Str.* Then we shall be right in calling vice a discord and disease of the soul?

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Str.* And when things having motion, and aiming at an appointed mark, continually miss their aim and glance aside, shall we say that this is the effect of symmetry among them, or of the want of symmetry?

*Theaet.* Clearly of the want of symmetry.

*Str.* But surely we know that no soul is voluntarily ignorant of anything?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Str.* And what is ignorance but the aberration of a mind which is bent on truth, and in which the process of understanding is perverted?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* Then we are to regard an unintelligent soul as deformed and devoid of symmetry?

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* Then there are these two kinds of evil in the soul—the one which is generally called vice, and is obviously a disease of the soul . . .

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And there is the other, which they call ignorance, and which, because existing only in the soul<sup>1</sup>, they will not allow to be vice.

*Theaet.* I certainly admit what I at first disputed—that there are two kinds of vice in the soul, and that we ought to consider cowardice, intemperance, and injustice to be all alike forms of disease in the soul, and ignorance, of which there are all sorts of varieties, to be deformity.

*Str.* And in the case of the body are there not two arts which have to do with the two bodily states?

*Theaet.* What are they?

The arts  
which take  
away the  
evils of the  
body are

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'although there is no other vice in the soul but this.'

*Str.* There is gymnastic, which has to do with deformity, and medicine, which has to do with disease. *Sophist.*

*Theaet.* True.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

229 *Str.* And where there is insolence and injustice and cowardice, is not chastisement the art which is most required<sup>1</sup>? *medicine and gymnastic.*

*Theaet.* That certainly appears to be the opinion of mankind. *The arts which take away the evils of the soul are correction and instruction.*

*Str.* Again, of the various kinds of ignorance, may not instruction be rightly said to be the remedy?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And of the art of instruction, shall we say that there is one or many kinds? At any rate there are two principal ones. Think.

*Theaet.* I will.

*Str.* I believe that I can see how we shall soonest arrive at the answer to this question.

*Theaet.* How?

*Str.* If we can discover a line which divides ignorance into two halves. For a division of ignorance into two parts will certainly imply that the art of instruction is also twofold, answering to the two divisions of ignorance. *A division of instruction can only be obtained by dividing ignorance.*

*Theaet.* Well, and do you-see what you are looking for?

*Str.* I do seem to myself to see one very large and bad sort of ignorance which is quite separate, and may be weighed in the scale against all other sorts of ignorance put together. *One sort of ignorance is unconscious.*

*Theaet.* What is it?

*Str.* When a person supposes that he knows, and does not know; this appears to be the great source of all the errors of the intellect.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And this, if I am not mistaken, is the kind of ignorance which specially earns the title of stupidity.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* What name, then, shall be given to the sort of instruction which gets rid of this?

*Theaet.* The instruction which you mean, Stranger, is, I

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *δίκη*, or reading *δίκη*.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.The in-  
struction  
correspond-  
ing to this  
is called  
education.Of educa-  
tion there  
are two  
kinds : the  
old ad-  
monitory  
system,  
based on  
the doctrine  
that ignor-  
ance is  
voluntary,  
and  
another,  
based  
on the  
opposite  
doctrine,  
which pro-  
ceeds by  
driving  
men into  
contra-  
dictions  
and so  
teaching  
them to  
think ; and  
by refuting  
them and  
purging  
away their  
prejudices  
and vanity.

should imagine, not the teaching of handicraft arts, but what, thanks to us, has been termed education in this part of the world.

*Str.* Yes, Theaetetus, and by nearly all Hellenes. But we have still to consider whether education admits of any further division.

*Theaet.* We have.

*Str.* I think that there is a point at which such a division is possible.

*Theaet.* Where ?

*Str.* Of education, one method appears to be rougher, and another smoother.

*Theaet.* How are we to distinguish the two ?

*Str.* There is the time-honoured mode which our fathers commonly practised towards their sons, and which is still adopted by many—either of roughly reproving their errors, 230 or of gently advising them ; which varieties may be correctly included under the general term of admonition.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* But whereas some appear to have arrived at the conclusion that all ignorance is involuntary, and that no one who thinks himself wise is willing to learn any of those things in which he is conscious of his own cleverness, and that the admonitory sort of instruction gives much trouble and does little good—

*Theaet.* There they are quite right.

*Str.* Accordingly, they set to work to eradicate the spirit of conceit in another way.

*Theaet.* In what way ?

*Str.* They cross-examine a man's words, when he thinks that he is saying something and is really saying nothing, and easily convict him of inconsistencies in his opinions ; these they then collect by the dialectical process, and placing them side by side, show that they contradict one another about the same things, in relation to the same things, and in the same respect. He, seeing this, is angry with himself, and grows gentle towards others, and thus is entirely delivered from great prejudices and harsh notions, in a way which is most amusing to the hearer, and produces the most lasting good effect on the person who is the subject of the operation.

For as the physician considers that the body will receive no benefit from taking food until the internal obstacles have been removed, so the purifier of the soul is conscious that his patient will receive no benefit from the application of knowledge until he is refuted, and from refutation learns modesty; he must be purged of his prejudices first and made to think that he knows only what he knows, and no more.

*Sophist.*  
STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS

*Theaet.* That is certainly the best and wisest state of mind.

*Str.* For all these reasons, Theaetetus, we must admit that refutation is the greatest and chiefest of purifications, and he who has not been refuted, though he be the Great King himself, is in an awful state of impurity; he is uninstructed and deformed in those things in which he who would be truly blessed ought to be fairest and purest.

Refutation  
is the  
greatest of  
purifica-  
tions.

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* And who are the ministers of this art? I am afraid  
231 to say the Sophists.

*Theaet.* Why?

*Str.* Lest we should assign to them too high a prerogative.

*Theaet.* Yet the Sophist has a certain likeness to our minister of purification.

*Str.* Yes, the same sort of likeness which a wolf, who is the fiercest of animals, has to a dog, who is the gentlest. But he who would not be found tripping, ought to be very careful in this matter of comparisons, for they are most slippery things. Nevertheless, let us assume that the Sophists are the men. I say this provisionally, for I think that the line which divides them will be marked enough if proper care is taken.

Let us  
assume  
that the  
Sophist  
practises  
this art.

*Theaet.* Likely enough.

*Str.* Let us grant, then, that from the discerning art comes purification, and from purification let there be separated off a part which is concerned with the soul; of this mental purification instruction is a portion, and of instruction education, and of education, that refutation of vain conceit which has been discovered in the present argument; and let this be called by you and me the nobly-descended art of Sophistry.

Recapitu-  
lation.

*Theaet.* Very well; and yet, considering the number of forms in which he has presented himself, I begin to doubt



*Sophist.*

how I can with any truth or confidence describe the real nature of the Sophist.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Str.* You naturally feel perplexed; and yet I think that he must be still more perplexed in his attempt to escape us, for as the proverb says, when every way is blocked, there is no escape; now, then, is the time of all others to set upon him.

*Theaet.* True.

Thus far  
the Sophist  
has been  
(1) a paid  
hunter of  
wealth and  
youth;

*Str.* First let us wait a moment and recover breath, and while we are resting, we may reckon up in how many forms he has appeared. In the first place, he was discovered to be a paid hunter after wealth and youth.

*Theaet.* Yes.

(2) a merchant in  
the goods  
of the soul;

*Str.* In the second place, he was a merchant in the goods of the soul.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

(3) a re-  
tailer,

*Str.* In the third place, he has turned out to be a retailer of the same sort of wares.

and (4) a  
manu-  
facturer of  
learned  
wares;

*Theaet.* Yes; and in the fourth place, he himself manufactured the learned wares which he sold.

(5) a hero  
of debate;

*Str.* Quite right; I will try and remember the fifth myself. He belonged to the fighting class, and was further distinguished as a hero of debate, who professed the eristic art.

*Theaet.* True.

(6) a purger  
of souls.

*Str.* The sixth point was doubtful, and yet we at last agreed that he was a purger of souls, who cleared away notions obstructive to knowledge.

*Theaet.* Very true.

But what  
is the  
common  
principle  
which  
unites his  
many  
callings?

*Str.* Do you not see that when the professor of any art has 232 one name and many kinds of knowledge, there must be something wrong? The multiplicity of names which is applied to him shows that the common principle to which all these branches of knowledge are tending, is not understood.

*Theaet.* I should imagine this to be the case.

His chief  
characteristic is  
disputation  
and the  
teaching of  
disputa-  
tion.

*Str.* At any rate we will understand him, and no indolence shall prevent us. Let us begin again, then, and re-examine some of our statements concerning the Sophist; there was one thing which appeared to me especially characteristic of him.

*Theaet.* To what are you referring?

*Str.* We were saying of him, if I am not mistaken, that he was a disputer ?

*Sophist.*

*Theact.* We were.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Str.* And does he not also teach others the art of disputation ?

*Theact.* Certainly he does.

*Str.* And about what does he profess that he teaches men to dispute ? To begin at the beginning - Does he make them able to dispute about divine things, which are invisible to men in general ?

*Theact.* At any rate, he is said to do so.

*Str.* And what do you say of the visible things in heaven and earth, and the like ?

*Theact.* Certainly he disputes, and teaches to dispute about them.

*Str.* Then, again, in private conversation, when any universal assertion is made about generation and essence, we know that such persons are tremendous argufiers, and are able to impart their own skill to others.

*Theact.* Undoubtedly.

*Str.* And do they not profess to make men able to dispute about law and about politics in general ?

*Theact.* Why, no one would have anything to say to them, if they did not make these professions.

*Str.* In all and every art, what the craftsman ought to say in answer to any question is written down in a popular form, and he who likes may learn.

*Theact.* I suppose that you are referring to the precepts of Protagoras about wrestling and the other arts ?

*Str.* Yes, my friend, and about a good many other things. In a word, is not the art of disputation a power of disputing about all things ?

He can  
dispute  
about all  
things.

*Theact.* Certainly ; there does not seem to be much which is left out.

*Str.* But oh ! my dear youth, do you suppose this possible ? for perhaps your young eyes may see things which to our duller sight do not appear.

233 *Theact.* To what are you alluding ? I do not think that I understand your present question.

*Str.* I ask whether anybody can understand all things.

*Sophist.**Theæt.* Happy would mankind be if such a thing were possible !STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.But he  
cannot  
know all  
things.*Str.* But how can any one who is ignorant dispute in a rational manner against him who knows ?*Theæt.* He cannot.*Str.* Then why has the sophistical art such a mysterious power ?*Theæt.* To what do you refer ?Then why  
is he held  
in such  
esteem ?*Str.* How do the Sophists make young men believe in their supreme and universal wisdom ? For if they neither disputed nor were thought to dispute rightly, or being thought to do so were deemed no wiser for their controversial skill, then, to quote your own observation, no one would give them money or be willing to learn their art.*Theæt.* They certainly would not.*Str.* But they are willing.*Theæt.* Yes, they are.Because he  
is supposed  
to know,*Str.* Yes, and the reason, as I should imagine, is that they are supposed to have knowledge of those things about which they dispute ?*Theæt.* Certainly.*Str.* And they dispute about all things ?*Theæt.* True.*Str.* And therefore, to their disciples, they appear to be all-wise ?*Theæt.* Certainly.*Str.* But they are not ; for that was shown to be impossible.*Theæt.* Impossible, of course.and has the  
appearance  
of know-  
ledge.*Str.* Then the Sophist has been shown to have a sort of conjectural or apparent knowledge only of all things, which is not the truth ?*Theæt.* Exactly ; no better description of him could be given.Let us, as  
an illus-  
tration,  
imagine a  
creator of  
all things,  
which he  
makes by  
a single  
art and*Str.* Let us now take an illustration, which will still more clearly explain his nature.*Theæt.* What is it ?*Str.* I will tell you, and you shall answer me, giving your very closest attention. Suppose that a person were to profess, not that he could speak or dispute, but that he knew how to make and do all things, by a single art.

*Theaet.* All things?

*Str.* I see that you do not understand the first word that I utter, for you do not understand the meaning of 'all.'

*Theaet.* No, I do not.

*Str.* Under all things, I include you and me, and also animals and trees.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Str.* Suppose a person to say that he will make you and me, and all creatures.

234 *Theaet.* What would he mean by 'making'? He cannot be a husbandman;—for you said that he is a maker of animals.

*Str.* Yes; and I say that he is also the maker of the sea, and the earth, and the heavens, and the gods, and of all other things; and, further, that he can make them in no time, and sell them for a few pence.

*Theaet.* That must be a jest.

*Str.* And when a man says that he knows all things, and can teach them to another at a small cost, and in a short time, is not that a jest?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And is there any more artistic or graceful form of jest than imitation?

*Theaet.* Certainly not; and imitation is a very comprehensive term, which includes under one class the most diverse sorts of things.

*Str.* We know, of course, that he who professes by one art to make all things is really a painter, and by the painter's art makes resemblances of real things which have the same name with them; and he can deceive the less intelligent sort of young children, to whom he shows his pictures at a distance, into the belief that he has the absolute power of making whatever he likes.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And may there not be supposed to be an imitative art of reasoning? Is it not possible to enchant the hearts of young men by words poured through their ears, when they are still at a distance from the truth of facts, by exhibiting to them fictitious arguments, and making them think that they are true, and that the speaker is the wisest of men in all things?

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

with the  
greatest  
ease.—  
What  
would he  
be?

Not really  
a maker,  
but a  
painter or  
imitator.

So there is  
an imitative  
art of  
reasoning  
which im-  
poses upon  
youth, who  
see truth  
only at a  
distance.

*Sophist.* *Theact.* Yes; why should there not be another such art?

*STRANGER,* *Str.* But as time goes on, and their hearers advance in  
*THEAETETUS.* years, and come into closer contact with realities, and have learnt by sad experience to see and feel the truth of things, are not the greater part of them compelled to change many opinions which they formerly entertained, so that the great appears small to them, and the easy difficult, and all their dreamy speculations are overturned by the facts of life?

*Theact.* That is my view, as far as I can judge, although, at my age, I may be one of those who see things at a distance only.

*Str.* And the wish of all of us, who are your friends, is and always will be to bring you as near to the truth as we can 235 without the sad reality. And now I should like you to tell me, whether the Sophist is not visibly a magician and imitator of true being; or are we still disposed to think that he may have a true knowledge of the various matters about which he disputes?

The  
Sophist is  
a magician  
and imi-  
tator.

*Theact.* But how can he, Stranger? Is there any doubt, after what has been said, that he is to be located in one of the divisions of children's play?

*Str.* Then we must place him in the class of magicians and mimics.

*Theact.* Certainly we must.

*Str.* And now our business is not to let the animal out, for we have got him in a sort of dialectical net, and there is one thing which he decidedly will not escape.

*Theact.* What is that?

*Str.* The inference that he is a juggler.

*Theact.* Precisely my own opinion of him.

Accord-  
ingly we  
must sub-  
divide  
imitation.

*Str.* Then, clearly, we ought as soon as possible to divide the image-making art, and go down into the net, and, if the Sophist does not run away from us, to seize him according to orders and deliver him over to reason, who is the lord of the hunt, and proclaim the capture of him; and if he creeps into the recesses of the imitative art, and secretes himself in one of them, to divide again and follow him up until in some subsection of imitation he is caught. For our method of tackling each and all is one which neither he nor any other creature will ever escape in triumph.

*Theact.* Well said ; and let us do as you propose.

*Str.* Well, then, pursuing the same analytic method as before, I think that I can discern two divisions of the imitative art, but I am not as yet able to see in which of them the desired form is to be found.

*Theact.* Will you tell me first what are the two divisions of which you are speaking ?

*Str.* One is the art of likeness-making ;—generally a likeness of anything is made by producing a copy which is executed according to the proportions of the original, similar in length and breadth and depth, each thing receiving also its appropriate colour.

*Theact.* Is not this always the aim of imitation ?

*Str.* Not always ; in works either of sculpture or of painting, which are of any magnitude, there is a certain  
236 degree of deception ; for if artists were to give the true proportions of their fair works, the upper part, which is farther off, would appear to be out of proportion in comparison with the lower, which is nearer ; and so they give up the truth in their images and make only the proportions which appear to be beautiful, disregarding the real ones.

*Theact.* Quite true.

*Str.* And that which being other is also like, may we not fairly call a likeness or image ?

*Theact.* Yes.

*Str.* And may we not, as I did just now, call that part of the imitative art which is concerned with making such images the art of likeness-making ?

*Theact.* Let that be the name.

*Str.* And what shall we call those resemblances of the beautiful, which appear such owing to the unfavourable position of the spectator, whereas if a person had the power of getting a correct view of works of such magnitude, they would appear not even like that to which they profess to be like ? May we not call these 'appearances,' since they appear only and are not really like ?

*Theact.* Certainly.

*Str.* There is a great deal of this kind of thing in painting, and in all imitation.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

Two kinds of imitation :—  
There is (1) likeness-making, which reproduces exactly the proportions of the original.

But in colossal works of painting and sculpture a certain amount of deception is necessary ;

*Sophist.**Theaet.* Of course.STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.*Str.* And may we not fairly call the sort of art, which produces an appearance and not an image, phantastic art?and there-  
fore*Theaet.* Most fairly.(2) there is  
another  
kind of  
imitation,  
phantastic,  
which  
makes ap-  
pearances.*Str.* These then are the two kinds of image-making—the art of making likenesses, and phantastic or the art of making appearances?In which  
shall we  
place the  
Sophist?*Theaet.* True.*Str.* I was doubtful before in which of them I should place the Sophist, nor am I even now able to see clearly; verily he is a wonderful and inscrutable creature. And now in the cleverest manner he has got into an impossible place.*Theaet.* Yes, he has.*Str.* Do you speak advisedly, or are you carried away at the moment by the habit of assenting into giving a hasty answer?*Theaet.* May I ask to what you are referring?A grave  
difficulty:  
If falsehood  
can exist,  
then what  
is not must  
be.*Str.* My dear friend, we are engaged in a very difficult speculation—there can be no doubt of that; for how a thing can appear and seem, and not be, or how a man can say a thing which is not true, has always been and still remains a very perplexing question. Can any one say or think that falsehood really exists, and avoid being caught in a contradiction? Indeed, Theaetetus, the task is a difficult one.*Theaet.* Why?But Parmenides  
always  
denied the  
existence of  
not-being.*Str.* He who says that falsehood exists has the audacity to assert the being of not-being; for this is implied in the possibility of falsehood. But, my boy, in the days when I was a boy, the great Parmenides protested against this doctrine, and to the end of his life he continued to inculcate the same lesson—always repeating both in verse and out of verse:‘Keep your mind from this way of enquiry, for never will you show<sup>1</sup> that not-being is.’

Such is his testimony, which is confirmed by the very expression when sifted a little. Would you object to begin with the consideration of the words themselves?

<sup>1</sup> Reading *τὸ το φανῆ*.

*Theæt.* Never mind about me; I am only desirous that you should carry on the argument in the best way, and that you should take me with you.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Str.* Very good; and now say, do we venture to utter the forbidden word 'not-being'?

*Theæt.* Certainly we do.

*Str.* Let us be serious then, and consider the question neither in strife nor play: suppose that one of the hearers of Parmenides was asked, 'To what is the term "not-being" to be applied?'—do you know what sort of object he would single out in reply, and what answer he would make to the enquirer?

Let us ask :  
Of what is  
not-being  
predicable ?

*Theæt.* That is a difficult question, and one not to be answered at all by a person like myself.

*Str.* There is at any rate no difficulty in seeing that the predicate 'not-being' is not applicable to any being.

Certainly  
not of any  
being,

*Theæt.* None, certainly.

*Str.* And if not to being, then not to something.

*Theæt.* Of course not.

*Str.* It is also plain, that in speaking of something we speak of being, for to speak of an abstract something naked and isolated from all being is impossible.

and there-  
fore not of  
something,  
or of two  
or more  
things.

*Theæt.* Impossible.

*Str.* You mean by assenting to imply that he who says something must say some one thing?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* Some in the singular (*τι*) you would say is the sign of one, some in the dual (*τινέ*) of two, some in the plural (*τινές*) of many?

*Theæt.* Exactly.

*Str.* Then he who says 'not something' must say absolutely nothing.

*Theæt.* Most assuredly.

*Str.* And as we cannot admit that a man speaks and says nothing, he who says 'not-being' does not speak at all.

It is  
nothing ;

*Theæt.* The difficulty of the argument can no further go.

238 *Str.* Not yet, my friend, is the time for such a word; for there still remains of all perplexities the first and greatest, touching the very foundation of the matter.

*Theæt.* What do you mean? Do not be afraid to speak.



*Sophist.**Str.* To that which is, may be attributed some other thing which is?STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.*Theaet.* Certainly.and  
nothing  
that is can  
be predi-  
cated of it ;  
and there-  
fore not  
number  
either  
singular  
or plural.*Str.* But can anything which is, be attributed to that which is not?*Theaet.* Impossible.*Str.* And all number is to be reckoned among things which are?*Theaet.* Yes, surely number, if anything, has a real existence.*Str.* Then we must not attempt to attribute to not-being number either in the singular or plural?*Theaet.* The argument implies that we should be wrong in doing so.*Str.* But how can a man either express in words or even conceive in thought things which are not or a thing which is not without number?*Theaet.* How indeed?And yet we  
do speak  
of not-  
being, both  
in the  
singular  
and plural.*Str.* When we speak of things which are not, are we not attributing plurality to not-being?*Theaet.* Certainly.*Str.* But, on the other hand, when we say 'what is not,' do we not attribute unity?*Theaet.* Manifestly.*Str.* Nevertheless, we maintain that you may not and ought not to attribute being to not-being?*Theaet.* Most true.*Str.* Do you see, then, that not-being in itself can neither be spoken, uttered, or thought, but that it is unthinkable, unutterable, unspeakable, indescribable?*Theaet.* Quite true.*Str.* But, if so, I was wrong in telling you just now that the difficulty which was coming is the greatest of all.*Theaet.* What! is there a greater still behind?The  
greatest  
difficulty:  
The mere  
use of the  
word is a  
contra-  
diction.*Str.* Well, I am surprised, after what has been said already, that you do not see the difficulty in which he who would refute the notion of not-being is involved. For he is compelled to contradict himself as soon as he makes the attempt.*Theaet.* What do you mean? Speak more clearly.*Str.* Do not expect clearness from me. For I, who main-

tain that not-being has no part either in the one or many, just now spoke and am still speaking of not-being as one; for I say 'not-being.' Do you understand?

*Sophist.*  
*STRANGER,*  
*THEAETETUS*

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And a little while ago I said that not-being is unutterable, unspeakable, indescribable: do you follow?

*Theaet.* I do after a fashion.

*Str.* When I introduced the word 'is,' did I not contradict what I said before?

239 *Theaet.* Clearly.

*Str.* And in using the singular verb, did I not speak of not-being as one?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And when I spoke of not-being as indescribable and unspeakable and unutterable, in using each of these words in the singular, did I not refer to not-being as one?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And yet we say that, strictly speaking, it should not be defined either as one or many, and should not even be called 'it,' for the use of the word 'it' would imply a form of unity.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* How, then, can any one put any faith in me? For now, as always, I am unequal to the refutation of not-being. And therefore, as I was saying, do not look to me for the right way of speaking about not-being; but come, let us try the experiment with you.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Str.* Make a noble effort, as becomes youth, and endeavour with all your might to speak of not-being in a right manner, without introducing into it either existence or unity or plurality.

Let the youthful  
might of  
Theaetetus  
try to find  
some better  
expression.

*Theaet.* It would be a strange boldness in me which would attempt the task when I see you thus discomfited.

*Str.* Say no more of ourselves; but until we find some one or other who can speak of not-being without number, we must acknowledge that the Sophist is a clever rogue who will not be got out of his hole.

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Str.* And if we say to him that he professes an art of

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

If we call the Sophist an image-maker, he will ask us, out of his hole, 'What is an image?'—and will be satisfied with nothing short of a definition of the idea of it.

It is a resemblance of the true or real, and is not itself real.

Yet it has a sort of reality.

making appearances, he will grapple with us and retort our argument upon ourselves; and when we call him an image-maker he will say, 'Pray what do you mean at all by an image?'—and I should like to know, Theaetetus, how we can possibly answer the youngker's question?

*Theaet.* We shall doubtless tell him of the images which are reflected in water or in mirrors; also of sculptures, pictures, and other duplicates.

*Str.* I see, Theaetetus, that you have never made the acquaintance of the Sophist.

*Theaet.* Why do you think so?

*Str.* He will make believe to have his eyes shut, or to have none.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Str.* When you tell him of something existing in a mirror, or in sculpture, and address him as though he had eyes, he <sup>240</sup> will laugh you to scorn, and will pretend that he knows nothing of mirrors and streams, or of sight at all; he will say that he is asking about an idea.

*Theaet.* What can he mean?

*Str.* The common notion pervading all these objects, which you speak of as many, and yet call by the single name of image, as though it were the unity under which they were all included. How will you maintain your ground against him?

*Theaet.* How, Stranger, can I describe an image except as something fashioned in the likeness of the true?

*Str.* And do you mean this something to be some other true thing, or what do you mean?

*Theaet.* Certainly not another true thing, but only a resemblance.

*Str.* And you mean by true that which really is?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And the not true is that which is the opposite of the true?

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Str.* A resemblance, then, is not really real, if, as you say, not true?

*Theaet.* Nay, but it is in a certain sense.

*Str.* You mean to say, not in a true sense?

*Theæt.* Yes ; it is in reality only an image.

*Sophist.*

*Str.* Then what we call an image is in reality really unreal.

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Theæt.* In what a strange complication of being and not-being we are involved !

It is really  
unreal.

*Str.* Strange ! I should think so. See how, by his reciprocation of opposites, the many-headed Sophist has compelled us, quite against our will, to admit the existence of not-being.

And thus  
we are  
forced to  
admit the  
existence of  
not-being.

*Theæt.* Yes, indeed, I see.

*Str.* The difficulty is how to define his art without falling into a contradiction.

*Theæt.* How do you mean ? And where does the danger lie ?

*Str.* When we say that he deceives us with an illusion, and that his art is illusory, do we mean that our soul is led by his art to think falsely, or what do we mean ?

*Theæt.* There is nothing else to be said.

*Str.* Again, false opinion is that form of opinion which thinks the opposite of the truth :—You would assent ?

Our defini-  
tion of the  
Sophist's  
art, which  
creates  
false  
opinion,  
or again of  
a false pro-  
position  
will contain  
the same  
paradox.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* You mean to say that false opinion thinks what is not ?

*Theæt.* Of course.

*Str.* Does false opinion think that things which are not are not, or that in a certain sense they are ?

*Theæt.* Things that are not must be imagined to exist in a certain sense, if any degree of falsehood is to be possible.

*Str.* And does not false opinion also think that things which most certainly exist do not exist at all ?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* And here, again, is falsehood ?

*Theæt.* Falsehood—yes.

*Str.* And in like manner, a false proposition will be deemed to be one which asserts the non-existence of things which are, and the existence of things which are not.

*Theæt.* There is no other way in which a false proposition can arise.

241 *Str.* There is not ; but the Sophist will deny these state-ments. And indeed how can any rational man assent to

The So-  
phist will  
show us no  
mercy.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

them, when the very expressions which we have just used were before acknowledged by us to be unutterable, unspeakable, indescribable, unthinkable? Do you see his point, Theaetetus?

*Theaet.* Of course he will say that we are contradicting ourselves when we hazard the assertion, that falsehood exists in opinion and in words; for in maintaining this, we are compelled over and over again to assert being of not-being, which we admitted just now to be an utter impossibility.

*Str.* How well you remember! And now it is high time to hold a consultation as to what we ought to do about the Sophist; for if we persist in looking for him in the class of false workers and magicians, you see that the handles for objection and the difficulties which will arise are very numerous and obvious.

*Theaet.* They are indeed.

*Str.* We have gone through but a very small portion of them, and they are really infinite.

*Theaet.* If that is the case, we cannot possibly catch the Sophist.

*Str.* Shall we then be so faint-hearted as to give him up?

*Theaet.* Certainly not, I should say, if we can get the slightest hold upon him.

*Str.* Will you then forgive me, and, as your words imply, not be altogether displeased if I flinch a little from the grasp of such a sturdy argument?

*Theaet.* To be sure I will.

*Str.* I have a yet more urgent request to make.

*Theaet.* Which is — ?

*Str.* That you will promise not to regard me as a parricide.

*Theaet.* And why?

*Str.* Because, in self-defence, I must test the philosophy of my father Parmenides, and try to prove by main force that in a certain sense not-being is, and that being, on the other hand, is not.

*Theaet.* Some attempt of the kind is clearly needed.

*Str.* Yes, a blind man, as they say, might see that, and, unless these questions are decided in one way or another, no one when he speaks of false words, or false opinion, or idols, or images, or imitations, or appearances, or about the

There is one way of escape: we must put the revered words of Parmenides to the test, and prove that there is a sense in which

arts which are concerned with them, can avoid falling into ridiculous contradictions. *Sophist.*

*Theæt.* Most true.

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS—

242 *Str.* And therefore I must venture to lay hands on my father's argument; for if I am to be over-scrupulous, I shall have to give the matter up. not-being is and being is not.

*Theæt.* Nothing in the world should ever induce us to do so.

*Str.* I have a third little request which I wish to make.

*Theæt.* What is it?

*Str.* You heard me say what I have always felt and still feel—that I have no heart for this argument?

*Theæt.* I did.

*Str.* I tremble at the thought of what I have said, and expect that you will deem me mad, when you hear of my sudden changes and shiftings; let me therefore observe, that I am examining the question entirely out of regard for you.

*Theæt.* There is no reason for you to fear that I shall impute any impropriety to you, if you attempt this refutation and proof; take heart, therefore, and proceed.

*Str.* And where shall I begin the perilous enterprise? I think that the road which I must take is—

*Theæt.* Which?—Let me hear.

*Str.* I think that we had better, first of all, consider the points which at present are regarded as self-evident, lest we may have fallen into some confusion, and be too ready to assent to one another, fancying that we are quite clear about them. We must examine some ideas which are thought to be clear, but may prove to be confused.

*Theæt.* Say more distinctly what you mean.

*Str.* I think that Parmenides, and all who ever yet undertook to determine the number and nature of existences, talked to us in rather a light and easy strain.

*Theæt.* How?

*Str.* As if we had been children, to whom they repeated each his own mythus or story;—one said that there were three principles, and that at one time there was war between certain of them; and then again there was peace, and they were married and begat children, and brought them up; and another spoke of two principles,—a moist and a dry, or a hot and a cold, and made them marry and cohabit. The Eleatics, The early Greek philosophers and their doctrines.

*Sophist.* however, in our part of the world, say that all things are many in name, but in nature one; this is their mythus, which goes back to Xenophanes, and is even older. Then there are Ionian, and in more recent times Sicilian muses, who have arrived at the conclusion that to unite the two principles is safer, and to say that being is one and many, and that these are held together by enmity and friendship, ever parting, ever meeting, as the severer Muses assert, while the gentler ones do not insist on the perpetual strife and peace, but admit a relaxation and alternation of them; peace and unity some- 243 times prevailing under the sway of Aphrodite, and then again plurality and war, by reason of a principle of strife. Whether any of them spoke the truth in all this is hard to determine; besides, antiquity and famous men should have reverence, and not be liable to accusations so serious. Yet one thing may be said of them without offence—

*Theaet.* What thing?

These great men did not care to explain themselves to the common herd.

*Str.* That they went on their several ways disdaining to notice people like ourselves; they did not care whether they took us with them, or left us behind them.

*Theaet.* How do you mean?

In the days of our youth we seemed to understand what not-being meant: now we are in difficulties about being.

*Str.* I mean to say, that when they talk of one, two, or more elements, which are or have become or are becoming, or again of heat mingling with cold, assuming in some other part of their works separations and mixtures,—tell me, Theaetetus, do you understand what they mean by these expressions? When I was a younger man, I used to fancy that I understood quite well what was meant by the term ‘not-being,’ which is our present subject of dispute; and now you see in what a fix we are about it.

*Theaet.* I see.

*Str.* And very likely we have been getting into the same perplexity about ‘being,’ and yet may fancy that when anybody utters the word, we understand him quite easily, although we do not know about not-being. But we may be equally ignorant of both.

*Theaet.* I dare say.

*Str.* And the same may be said of all the terms just mentioned.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* The consideration of most of them may be deferred ; *Sophist.*  
but we had better now discuss the chief captain and leader of *STRANGER,*  
them. *THEAETETUS.*

*Theaet.* Of what are you speaking? You clearly think *Let us*  
that we must first investigate what people mean by the word *examine*  
'being.' *the notion*  
*in the light*  
*of existing*  
*philosophies.*

*Str.* You follow close at my heels, Theaetetus. For the *First, let us*  
right method, I conceive, will be to call into our presence the *ask the*  
dualistic philosophers and to interrogate them. 'Come,' we *dualists*  
will say, 'Ye, who affirm that hot and cold or any other two *whether*  
principles are the universe, what is this term which you apply *being is a*  
to both of them, and what do you mean when you say that *third principle*  
both and each of them "are"? How are we to understand *over*  
the word "are"? Upon your view, are we to suppose that *and above*  
there is a third principle over and above the other two,— *the other*  
three in all, and not two? For clearly you cannot say that *two, or one*  
one of the two principles is being, and yet attribute being *of them or*  
equally to both of them ; for, if you did, whichever of the two *both. In*  
is identified with being, will comprehend the other ; and so *any case*  
they will be one and not two.' *the two*  
*principles*  
*will be*  
*resolved*  
*into one.*

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* But perhaps you mean to give the name of 'being' to  
both of them together ?

*Theaet.* Quite likely.

244 *Str.* 'Then, friends,' we shall reply to them, 'the answer is  
plainly that the two will still be resolved into one.'

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Str.* 'Since, then, we are in a difficulty, please to tell us  
what you mean, when you speak of being ; for there can be  
no doubt that you always from the first understood your own  
meaning, whereas we once thought that we understood you,  
but now we are in a great strait. Please to begin by ex-  
plaining this matter to us, and let us no longer fancy that  
we understand you, when we entirely misunderstand you.'  
There will be no impropriety in our demanding an answer  
to this question, either of the dualists or of the pluralists ?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Str.* And what about the assertors of the oneness of the *What again*  
all—must we not endeavour to ascertain from them what *do those*  
they mean by 'being'? *who assert*  
*the oneness*



*Sophist.* *Theaet.* By all means.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

of the all  
mean by  
being? Are  
being and  
unity two  
names for  
the same  
thing?—  
But to  
admit this,  
or to admit  
that the  
name is  
different  
from the  
thing, is  
to admit  
plurality.

*Str.* Then let them answer this question: One, you say, alone is? 'Yes,' they will reply.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And there is something which you call 'being'?

*Theaet.* 'Yes.'

*Str.* And is being the same as one, and do you apply two names to the same thing?

*Theaet.* What will be their answer, Stranger?

*Str.* It is clear, Theaetetus, that he who asserts the unity of being will find a difficulty in answering this or any other question.

*Theaet.* Why so?

*Str.* To admit of two names, and to affirm that there is nothing but unity, is surely ridiculous?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And equally irrational to admit that a name is anything?

*Theaet.* How so?

*Str.* To distinguish the name from the thing, implies duality.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And yet he who identifies the name with the thing will be compelled to say that it is the name of nothing, or if he says that it is the name of something, even then the name will only be the name of a name, and of nothing else.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And the one will turn out to be only one of one, 'and being absolute unity, will represent a mere name'.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And would they say that the whole is other than the one that is, or the same with it?

*Theaet.* To be sure they would, and they actually say so.

*Str.* If being is a whole, as Parmenides sings,—

'Every way like unto the fullness of a well-rounded sphere,  
Evenly balanced from the centre on every side,  
And must needs be neither greater nor less in any way,  
Neither on this side nor on that—'

And if the  
name be  
identified  
with the  
thing, it is  
either the  
name of  
nothing or  
of a name.  
This is true  
of the one.

They  
identify  
the whole  
with the  
one which  
is: but a  
whole, as  
having  
parts, can-  
not be  
absolute  
unity,  
which is  
indivisible.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with the MSS. *καὶ τοῦ ὀνόματος αὐτὸ ἐν ὄντι.*

then being has a centre and extremes, and, having these, must also have parts. *Sophist.*

*Theaet.* True.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

245 *Str.* Yet that which has parts may have the attribute of unity in all the parts, and in this way being all and a whole, may be one?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* But that of which this is the condition cannot be absolute unity?

*Theaet.* Why not?

*Str.* Because, according to right reason, that which is truly one must be affirmed to be absolutely indivisible.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* But this indivisible, if made up of many parts, will contradict reason.

*Theaet.* I understand.

*Str.* Shall we say that being<sup>1</sup> is one and a whole, because it has the attribute of unity? Or shall we say that being is not a whole at all?

*Theaet.* That is a hard alternative to offer.

*Str.* Most true; for being, having in a certain sense the attribute of one, is yet proved not to be the same as one, and the all is therefore more than one.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And yet if being be not a whole, through having the attribute of unity, and there be such a thing as an absolute whole, being lacks something of its own nature?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* Upon this view, again, being, having a defect of being, will become not-being?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And, again, the all becomes more than one, for being and the whole will each have their separate nature.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* But if the whole does not exist at all, all the previous difficulties remain the same, and there will be the further difficulty, that besides having no being, being can never have come into being.

*Theaet.* Why so?

Is being,  
then, one  
by partic-  
ipation  
in unity,  
or is it not  
a whole?  
In either  
case we  
have to  
admit  
plurality.

And if the  
whole does  
not exist at  
all, being  
cannot  
have come  
into being;

<sup>1</sup> Reading τὸ ὅν.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.for every-  
thing which  
comes into  
being,  
comes into  
being as  
a whole.Nor can it  
partake of  
quantity.

*Str.* Because that which comes into being always comes into being as a whole, so that he who does not give whole a place among beings, cannot speak either of essence or generation as existing.

*Theaet.* Yes, that certainly appears to be true.

*Str.* Again; how can that which is not a whole have any quantity? For that which is of a certain quantity must necessarily be the whole of that quantity.

*Theaet.* Exactly.

*Str.* And there will be innumerable other points, each of them causing infinite trouble to him who says that being is either one or two.

*Theaet.* The difficulties which are dawning upon us prove this; for one objection connects with another, and they are always involving what has preceded in a greater and worse perplexity.

*Str.* We are far from having exhausted the more exact thinkers who treat of being and not-being. But let us be content to leave them, and proceed to view those who speak less precisely; and we shall find as the result of all, that the nature of being is quite as difficult to comprehend as that of not-being. 246

*Theaet.* Then now we will go to the others.

*Str.* There appears to be a sort of war of Giants and Gods going on amongst them; they are fighting with one another about the nature of essence.

*Theaet.* How is that?

Let us now  
ask the Ma-  
terialists  
and Ideal-  
ists to give  
an account  
of essence.

*Str.* Some of them are dragging down all things from heaven and from the unseen to earth, and they literally grasp in their hands rocks and oaks; of these they lay hold, and obstinately maintain, that the things only which can be touched or handled have being or essence, because they define being and body as one, and if any one else says that what is not a body exists they altogether despise him, and will hear of nothing but body.

*Theaet.* I have often met with such men, and terrible fellows they are.

*Str.* And that is the reason why their opponents cautiously defend themselves from above, out of an unseen world, mightily contending that true essence consists of certain

intelligible and incorporeal ideas ; the bodies of the materialists, which by them are maintained to be the very truth, they break up into little bits by their arguments, and affirm them to be, not essence, but generation and motion. Between the two armies, Theaetetus, there is always an endless conflict raging concerning these matters.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* Let us ask each party in turn, to give an account of that which they call essence.

*Theaet.* How shall we get it out of them ?

*Str.* With those who make being to consist in ideas, there will be less difficulty, for they are civil people enough ; but there will be very great difficulty, or rather an absolute impossibility, in getting an opinion out of those who drag everything down to matter. Shall I tell you what we must do ?

*Theaet.* What ?

*Str.* Let us, if we can, really improve them ; but if this is not possible, let us imagine them to be better than they are, and more willing to answer in accordance with the rules of argument, and then their opinion will be more worth having ; for that which better men acknowledge has more weight than that which is acknowledged by inferior men. Moreover we are no respecters of persons, but seekers after truth.

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Str.* Then now, on the supposition that they are improved, let us ask them to state their views, and do you interpret them.

*Theaet.* Agreed.

*Str.* Let them say whether they would admit that there is such a thing as a mortal animal.

*Theaet.* Of course they would.

*Str.* And do they not acknowledge this to be a body having a soul ?

*Theaet.* Certainly they do.

*Str.* Meaning to say that the soul is something which exists ?

247 *Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And do they not say that one soul is just, and another unjust, and that one soul is wise, and another foolish ?

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

The Idealists are civil enough, but the Materialists must be improved before they can be reasoned with.

The latter would admit that in the mortal animal there is a soul, and that the soul may be just and wise ; and whatever they may say of soul, they would

*Sophist.**Theæt.* Certainly.STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.*Str.* And that the just and wise soul becomes just and wise by the possession of justice and wisdom<sup>1</sup>, and the opposite under opposite circumstances?never  
venture to  
assert that  
the moral  
qualities  
are cor-  
poreal.*Theæt.* Yes, they do.*Str.* But surely that which may be present or may be absent will be admitted by them to exist?*Theæt.* Certainly.*Str.* And, allowing that justice, wisdom, the other virtues, and their opposites exist, as well as a soul in which they inhere, do they affirm any of them to be visible and tangible, or are they all invisible?*Theæt.* They would say that hardly any of them are visible.*Str.* And would they say that they are corporeal?*Theæt.* They would distinguish: the soul would be said by them to have a body; but as to the other qualities of justice, wisdom, and the like, about which you asked, they would not venture either to deny their existence, or to maintain that they were all corporeal.*Str.* Verily, Theætetus, I perceive a great improvement in them; the real aborigines, children of the dragon's teeth, would have been deterred by no shame at all, but would have obstinately asserted that nothing is which they are not able to squeeze in their hands.*Theæt.* That is pretty much their notion.What is  
the nature,  
common to  
the cor-  
poreal and  
incorporeal,  
which we  
indicate  
when we  
say that  
both 'are'?*Str.* Let us push the question; for if they will admit that any, even the smallest particle of being, is incorporeal, it is enough; they must then say what that nature is which is common to both the corporeal and incorporeal, and which they have in their mind's eye when they say of both of them that they 'are.' Perhaps they may be in a difficulty; and if this is the case, there is a possibility that they may accept a notion of ours respecting the nature of being, having nothing of their own to offer.*Theæt.* What is the notion? Tell me, and we shall soon see.It is a  
power of  
affecting*Str.* My notion would be, that anything which possesses any sort of power to affect another, or to be affected by<sup>1</sup> Reading with Professor Campbell δικαιοσύνης ἔξει καὶ φρονήσεως.

another, if only for a single moment, however trifling the cause and however slight the effect, has real existence; and I hold that the definition of being is simply power.

*Theæt.* They accept your suggestion, having nothing better of their own to offer.

*Str.* Very good; perhaps we, as well as they, may one day  
248 change our minds; but, for the present, this may be regarded as the understanding which is established with them.

*Theæt.* Agreed.

*Str.* Let us now go to the friends of ideas; of their opinions, too, you shall be the interpreter.

*Theæt.* I will.

*Str.* To them we say—You would distinguish essence from generation?

*Theæt.* 'Yes,' they reply.

*Str.* And you would allow that we participate in generation with the body, and through perception, but we participate with the soul through thought in true essence; and essence you would affirm to be always the same and immutable, whereas generation or becoming varies?

*Theæt.* Yes; that is what we should affirm.

*Str.* Well, fair sirs, we say to them, what is this participation, which you assert of both? Do you agree with our recent definition?

*Theæt.* What definition?

*Str.* We said that being was an active or passive energy, arising out of a certain power which proceeds from elements meeting with one another. Perhaps your ears, Theaetetus, may fail to catch their answer, which I recognize because I have been accustomed to hear it.

*Theæt.* And what is their answer?

*Str.* They deny the truth of what we were just now saying to the aborigines about existence.

*Theæt.* What was that?

*Str.* Any power of doing or suffering in a degree however slight was held by us to be a sufficient definition of being?

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* They deny this, and say that the power of doing or suffering is confined to becoming, and that neither power is applicable to being.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

and being  
affected by  
another.

Now we  
turn to the  
friends of  
ideas.—  
They  
acknow-  
ledge a  
distinction  
between  
generation  
and es-  
sence, and  
that we  
participate  
in the  
former with  
the body  
and in the  
latter with  
the soul.

And what  
is this par-  
ticipation?  
Is it to be  
defined,  
like being,  
to be a  
power of  
doing and  
suffering?

But they  
deny the  
appro-  
priateness  
of this  
definition  
of being.

*Sophist.**Theæt.* And is there not some truth in what they say ?STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.*Str.* Yes ; but our reply will be, that we want to ascertain from them more distinctly, whether they further admit that the soul knows, and that being or essence is known.

They admit however that the soul knows and that being is known.

*Theæt.* There can be no doubt that they say so.

But knowing and being known are active and passive.

*Str.* And is knowing and being known doing or suffering, or both, or is the one doing and the other suffering, or has neither any share in either ?

If being is acted upon, it must be in motion,—an attribute which, with life and soul, certainly belongs to perfect being.

*Theæt.* Clearly, neither has any share in either ; for if they say anything else, they will contradict themselves.*Str.* I understand ; but they will allow that if to know is active, then, of course, to be known is passive. And on this view being, in so far as it is known, is acted upon by knowledge, and is therefore in motion ; for that which is in a state of rest cannot be acted upon, as we affirm.*Theæt.* True.*Str.* And, O heavens, can we ever be made to believe that 249 motion and life and soul and mind are not present with perfect being ? Can we imagine that being is devoid of life and mind, and exists in awful unmeaningness an everlasting fixture ?*Theæt.* That would be a dreadful thing to admit, Stranger.*Str.* But shall we say that being has mind and not life ?*Theæt.* How is that possible ?*Str.* Or shall we say that both inhere in perfect being, but that it has no soul which contains them ?*Theæt.* And in what other way can it contain them ?*Str.* Or that being has mind and life and soul, but although endowed with soul remains absolutely unmoved ?*Theæt.* All three suppositions appear to me to be irrational.*Str.* Under being, then, we must include motion, and that which is moved.*Theæt.* Certainly.*Str.* Then, Theætetus, our inference is, that if there is no motion, neither is there any mind anywhere, or about anything or belonging to any one.*Theæt.* Quite true.*Str.* And yet this equally follows, if we grant that all things are in motion—upon this view too mind has no existence.But rest,  
as well as  
motion, is

*Theæt.* How so?

*Str.* Do you think that sameness of condition and mode and subject could ever exist without a principle of rest?

*Theæt.* Certainly not.

*Str.* Can you see how without them mind could exist, or come into existence anywhere?

*Theæt.* No.

*Str.* And surely contend we must in every possible way against him who would annihilate knowledge and reason and mind, and yet ventures to speak confidently about anything.

*Theæt.* Yes, with all our might.

*Str.* Then the philosopher, who has the truest reverence for these qualities, cannot possibly accept the notion of those who say that the whole is at rest, either as unity or in many forms: and he will be utterly deaf to those who assert universal motion. As children say entreatingly 'Give us both,' so he will include both the moveable and immoveable in his definition of being and all.

*Theæt.* Most true.

*Str.* And now, do we not seem to have gained a fair notion of being?

*Theæt.* Yes truly.

*Str.* Alas, Theaetetus, methinks that we are now only beginning to see the real difficulty of the enquiry into the nature of it.

*Theæt.* What do you mean?

*Str.* O my friend, do you not see that nothing can exceed our ignorance, and yet we fancy that we are saying something good?

*Theæt.* I certainly thought that we were; and I do not at all understand how we never found out our desperate case.

250 *Str.* Reflect: after having made these admissions, may we not be justly asked the same questions which we ourselves were asking of those who said that all was hot and cold?

*Theæt.* What were they? Will you recall them to my mind?

*Str.* To be sure I will, and I will remind you of them, by putting the same questions to you which I did to them, and then we shall get on.

*Theæt.* True.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

necessary  
to the  
existence of  
mind;

and the  
philosopher  
will de-  
mand both.

We must  
question  
ourselves  
as we  
questioned  
the Dual-  
ists.—Rest  
and motion,  
we say,  
both exist.  
but what is  
existence?



*Sophist.**Str.* Would you not say that rest and motion are in the most entire opposition to one another?STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.*Theaet.* Of course.*Str.* And yet you would say that both and either of them equally are?*Theaet.* I should.*Str.* And when you admit that both or either of them are, do you mean to say that both or either of them are in motion?*Theaet.* Certainly not.*Str.* Or do you wish to imply that they are both at rest, when you say that they are?*Theaet.* Of course not.It is some  
third thing  
including  
rest and  
motion, yet  
neither of  
them.*Str.* Then you conceive of being as some third and distinct nature, under which rest and motion are alike included; and, observing that they both participate in being, you declare that they are.*Theaet.* Truly we seem to have an intimation that being is some third thing, when we say that rest and motion are.*Str.* Then being is not the combination of rest and motion, but something different from them.*Theaet.* So it would appear.*Str.* Being, then, according to its own nature, is neither in motion nor at rest.*Theaet.* That is very much the truth.*Str.* Where, then, is a man to look for help who would have any clear or fixed notion of being in his mind?*Theaet.* Where, indeed?But how  
can a thing  
be neither  
at rest nor  
in motion?*Str.* I scarcely think that he can look anywhere; for that which is not in motion must be at rest, and again, that which is not at rest must be in motion; but being is placed outside of both these classes. Is this possible?*Theaet.* Utterly impossible.*Str.* Here, then, is another thing which we ought to bear in mind.*Theaet.* What?We are as  
perplexed  
about  
existence  
or being as  
we were*Str.* When we were asked to what we were to assign the appellation of not-being, we were in the greatest difficulty:—do you remember?*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Str.* And are we not now in as great a difficulty about being? *Sophist.*

*Theæt.* I should say, Stranger, that we are in one which is, if possible, even greater. *STRANGER, THEÆTETUS.*

about not-being.

*Str.* Then let us acknowledge the difficulty; and as being and not-being are involved in the same perplexity, there is hope that when the one appears more or less distinctly, the other will equally appear; and if we are able to see neither, there may still be a chance of steering our way in between them, without any great discredit.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* Let us enquire, then, how we come to predicate many names of the same thing. *A way of escape:*

*Theæt.* Give an example. *How is predication possible?*

*Str.* I mean that we speak of man, for example, under many names—that we attribute to him colours and forms and magnitudes and virtues and vices, in all of which instances and in ten thousand others we not only speak of him as a man, but also as good, and having numberless other attributes; and in the same way anything else which we originally supposed to be one is described by us as many, and under many names.

*Theæt.* That is true.

*Str.* And thus we provide a rich feast for tyros, whether young or old; for there is nothing easier than to argue that the one cannot be many, or the many one; and great is their delight in denying that a man is good; for man, they insist, is man and good is good. I dare say that you have met with persons who take an interest in such matters—they are often elderly men, whose meagre sense is thrown into amazement by these discoveries of theirs, which they believe to be the height of wisdom.

*Theæt.* Certainly, I have.

*Str.* Then, not to exclude any one who has ever speculated at all upon the nature of being, let us put our questions to them as well as to our former friends. *Let us interrogate those who deny it.*

*Theæt.* What questions?

*Str.* Shall we refuse to attribute being to motion and rest, or anything to anything, and assume that they do not mingle, and are incapable of participating in one another? Or shall *There are three alternatives :-*

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.(1) no participation;  
(2) indeterminate participation;  
(3) participation of some with some.

The first cannot be accepted: it is disastrous to all philosophies,

we gather all into one class of things communicable with one another? Or are some things communicable and others not?—Which of these alternatives, Theaetetus, will they prefer?

*Theaet.* I have nothing to answer on their behalf. Suppose that you take all these hypotheses in turn, and see what are the consequences which follow from each of them.

*Str.* Very good, and first let us assume them to say that nothing is capable of participating in anything else in any respect; in that case rest and motion cannot participate in 252 being at all.

*Theaet.* They cannot.

*Str.* But would either of them be if not participating in being?

*Theaet.* No.

*Str.* Then by this admission everything is instantly overturned, as well the doctrine of universal motion as of universal rest, and also the doctrine of those who distribute being into immutable and everlasting kinds; for all these add on a notion of being, some affirming that things 'are' truly in motion, and others that they 'are' truly at rest.

*Theaet.* Just so.

*Str.* Again, those who would at one time compound, and at another resolve all things, whether making them into one and out of one creating infinity, or dividing them into finite elements, and forming compounds out of these; whether they suppose the processes of creation to be successive or continuous, would be talking nonsense in all this if there were no admixture.

*Theaet.* True.

and those who assert it, contradict themselves.

*Str.* Most ridiculous of all will the men themselves be who want to carry out the argument and yet forbid us to call anything, because participating in some affection from another, by the name of that other.

*Theaet.* Why so?

*Str.* Why, because they are compelled to use the words 'to be,' 'apart,' 'from others,' 'in itself,' and ten thousand more, which they cannot give up, but must make the connecting links of discourse; and therefore they do not require to be refuted by others, but their enemy, as the saying is, inhabits

the same house with them; they are always carrying about with them an adversary, like the wonderful ventriloquist, Eurycles, who out of their own bellies audibly contradicts them.

*Theæt.* Precisely so; a very true and exact illustration.

*Str.* And now, if we suppose that all things have the power of communion with one another—what will follow?

*Theæt.* Even I can solve that riddle.

*Str.* How?

*Theæt.* Why, because motion itself would be at rest, and rest again in motion, if they could be attributed to one another.

*Str.* But this is utterly impossible.

*Theæt.* Of course.

*Str.* Then only the third hypothesis remains.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* For, surely, either all things have communion with all; or nothing with any other thing; or some things communicate with some things and others not.

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* And two out of these three suppositions have been found to be impossible.

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* Every one then, who desires to answer truly, will adopt the third and remaining hypothesis of the communion of some with some.

*Theæt.* Quite true.

253 *Str.* This communion of some with some may be illustrated by the case of letters; for some letters do not fit each other, while others do.

*Theæt.* Of course.

*Str.* And the vowels, especially, are a sort of bond which pervades all the other letters, so that without a vowel one consonant cannot be joined to another.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* But does every one know what letters will unite with what? Or is art required in order to do so?

*Theæt.* Art is required.

*Sophist.*  
*Symposium,*  
*Theætetus.*

The second  
alternative  
is im-  
possible;  
for if it  
were true,  
rest would  
move and  
motion  
would rest.

The third  
alternative  
of com-  
munion of  
some with  
some.

The  
analogy of  
letters,—  
vowels and  
consonants,

<sup>1</sup> Reading *δρᾶν ἱκανῶς αὐτὰ* (? αὐτό).

*Sophist.**Str.* What art?STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.*Theaet.* The art of grammar.and of  
musical  
notes.*Str.* And is not this also true of sounds high and low?—  
Is not he who has the art to know what sounds mingle, a musician, and he who is ignorant, not a musician?*Theaet.* Yes.*Str.* And we shall find this to be generally true of art or the absence of art.*Theaet.* Of course.As the  
gram-  
marian  
and mu-  
sician know  
what letters  
and notes  
rightly  
combine  
with one  
another, so  
the dia-  
lectician  
knows what  
classes  
have com-  
munion  
with each  
other and  
what not.*Str.* And as classes are admitted by us in like manner to be some of them capable and others incapable of intermixture, must not he who would rightly show what kinds will unite and what will not, proceed by the help of science in the path of argument? And will he not ask if the connecting links are universal, and so capable of intermixture with all things; and again, in divisions, whether there are not other universal classes, which make them possible?*Theaet.* To be sure he will require science, and, if I am not mistaken, the very greatest of all sciences.*Str.* How are we to call it? By Zeus, have we not lighted unwittingly upon our free and noble science, and in looking for the Sophist have we not entertained the philosopher unawares?*Theaet.* What do you mean?*Str.* Should we not say that the division according to classes, which neither makes the same other, nor makes other the same, is the business of the dialectical science?*Theaet.* That is what we should say.*Str.* Then, surely, he who can divide rightly is able to see clearly one form pervading a scattered multitude, and many different forms contained under one higher form; and again, one form knit together into a single whole and pervading many such wholes, and many forms, existing only in separation and isolation. This is the knowledge of classes which determines where they can have communion with one another and where not.*Theaet.* Quite true.*Str.* And the art of dialectic would be attributed by you only to the philosopher pure and true?*Theaet.* Who but he can be worthy?He is the  
classifier  
and only  
true philo-  
sopher.

*Str.* In this region we shall always discover the philosopher, if we look for him; like the Sophist, he is not easily discovered, but for a different reason.

*Sophist.*  
STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* For what reason?

*Str.* Because the Sophist runs away into the darkness of not-being, in which he has learned by habit to feel about, and cannot be discovered because of the darkness of the place. Is not that true?

*Theaet.* It seems to be so.

*Str.* And the philosopher, always holding converse through reason with the idea of being, is also dark from excess of light; for the souls of the many have no eye which can endure the vision of the divine.

The philosopher is hidden from excess of light; the Sophist from the darkness of the place in which he lives.

*Theaet.* Yes; that seems to be quite as true as the other.

*Str.* Well, the philosopher may hereafter be more fully considered by us, if we are disposed; but the Sophist must clearly not be allowed to escape until we have had a good look at him.

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Str.* Since, then, we are agreed that some classes have a communion with one another, and others not, and some have communion with a few and others with many, and that there is no reason why some should not have universal communion with all, let us now pursue the enquiry, as the argument suggests, not in relation to all ideas, lest the multitude of them should confuse us, but let us select a few of those which are reckoned to be the principal ones, and consider their several natures and their capacity of communion with one another, in order that if we are not able to apprehend with perfect clearness the notions of being and not-being, we may at least not fall short in the consideration of them, so far as they come within the scope of the present enquiry, if peradventure we may be allowed to assert the reality of not-being, and yet escape unscathed.

Let us examine some of the principal kinds, with reference to their power of intercommunion.

*Theaet.* We must do so.

*Str.* The most important of all the genera are those which we were just now mentioning—being and rest and motion.

*Theaet.* Yes, by far.

*Str.* And two of these are, as we affirm, incapable of communion with one another.

Most important of all are being, rest, and motion, of which the two

*Sophist.*

*Theact.* Quite incapable.

STUPID, NGERS,  
THALALILS.

*Str.* Whereas being surely has communion with both of them, for both of them are?

latter hold  
communion  
with being,  
but not  
with one  
another.

*Theact.* Of course.

*Str.* That makes up three of them.

*Theact.* To be sure.

*Str.* And each of them is other than the remaining two, but the same with itself.

*Theact.* True.

They are  
other than  
one an-  
other, but  
the same  
with them-  
selves.  
'Same'  
and 'other'  
again are  
two new  
kinds.

*Str.* But then, what is the meaning of these two words, 'same' and 'other'? Are they two new kinds other than the three, and yet always of necessity intermingling with them, and are we to have five kinds instead of three; or when we speak of the same and other, are we unconsciously speaking of one of the three first kinds?

255

*Theact.* Very likely we are.

For they  
are not  
identical  
with motion  
and rest;

*Str.* But, surely, motion and rest are neither the other nor the same.

*Theact.* How is that?

*Str.* Whatever we attribute to motion and rest in common, cannot be either of them.

*Theact.* Why not?

*Str.* Because motion would be at rest and rest in motion, for either of them, being predicated of both, will compel the other to change into the opposite of its own nature, because partaking of its opposite.

*Theact.* Quite true.

*Str.* Yet they surely both partake of the same and of the other?

*Theact.* Yes.

*Str.* Then we must not assert that motion, any more than rest, is either the same or the other.

*Theact.* No; we must not.

nor is  
being  
identical  
with 'the  
same';

*Str.* But are we to conceive that being and the same are identical?

*Theact.* Possibly.

*Str.* But if they are identical, then again in saying that motion and rest have being, we should also be saying that they are the same.

*Theact.* Which surely cannot be.

*Str.* Then being and the same cannot be one.

*Sophist.*

*Theæt.* Scarcely.

STRANGLER,  
THEÆTETUS.

*Str.* Then we may suppose the same to be a fourth class, which is now to be added to the three others.

*Theæt.* Quite true.

*Str.* And shall we call the other a fifth class? Or should we consider being and other to be two names of the same class?

nor yet  
with 'the  
other,'  
which is  
relative  
only, and  
never  
absolute.

*Theæt.* Very likely.

*Str.* But you would agree, if I am not mistaken, that existences are relative as well as absolute?

*Theæt.* Certainly.

*Str.* And the other is always relative to other?

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* But this would not be the case unless being and the other entirely differed; for, if the other, like being, were absolute as well as relative, then there would have been a kind of other which was not other than other. And now we find that what is other must of necessity be what it is in relation to some other.

*Theæt.* That is the true state of the case.

*Str.* Then we must admit the other as the fifth of our selected classes.

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* And the fifth class pervades all classes, for they all differ from one another, not by reason of their own nature, but because they partake of the idea of the other.

This fifth  
class of  
'the other'  
pervades  
all classes,  
and helps  
to dis-  
tinguish  
them.

*Theæt.* Quite true.

*Str.* Then let us now put the case with reference to each of the five.

*Theæt.* How?

*Str.* First there is motion, which we affirm to be absolutely 'other' than rest: what else can we say?

*Theæt.* It is so.

*Str.* And therefore is not rest.

*Theæt.* Certainly not.

*Str.* And yet is, because partaking of being.

Thus  
motion is  
other than  
rest,—i. e.  
is not rest;  
yet it *is*,  
since it  
partakes of  
being.

256 *Theæt.* True.

*Str.* Again, motion is other than the same?

*Theæt.* Just so.

It is other  
than the  
same and



*Sophist.**Str.* And is therefore not the same.STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.*Theaet.* It is not.not the  
same, but  
in different  
senses.*Str.* Yet, surely, motion is the same, because all things partake of the same.*Theaet.* Very true.*Str.* Then we must admit, and not object to say, that motion is the same and is not the same, for we do not apply the terms 'same' and 'not the same,' in the same sense; but we call it the 'same,' in relation to itself, because partaking of the same; and not the same, because having communion with the other, it is thereby severed from the same, and has become not that but other, and is therefore rightly spoken of as 'not the same.'*Theaet.* To be sure.*Str.* And if absolute motion in any point of view partook of rest, there would be no absurdity in calling motion stationary.*Theaet.* Quite right,—that is, on the supposition that some classes mingle with one another, and others not.*Str.* That such a communion of kinds is according to nature, we had already proved<sup>1</sup> before we arrived at this part of our discussion.*Theaet.* Certainly.Again,  
motion is  
other than  
the other;  
and there-  
fore other  
and not  
other.*Str.* Let us proceed, then. May we not say that motion is other than the other, having been also proved by us to be other than the same and other than rest?*Theaet.* That is certain.*Str.* Then, according to this view, motion is other and also not other?*Theaet.* True.*Str.* What is the next step? Shall we say that motion is other than the three and not other than the fourth,—for we agreed that there are five classes about and in the sphere of which we proposed to make enquiry?*Theaet.* Surely we cannot admit that the number is less than it appeared to be just now.Once more,  
motion is  
other than  
being, yet  
partakes of*Str.* Then we may without fear contend that motion is other than being?<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, 252.

*Theaet.* Without the least fear.

*Str.* The plain result is that motion, since it partakes of being, really is and also is not?

*Theaet.* Nothing can be plainer.

*Str.* Then not-being necessarily exists in the case of motion and of every class; for the nature of the other entering into them all, makes each of them other than being, and so non-existent; and therefore of all of them, in like manner, we may truly say that they are not; and again, inasmuch as they partake of being, that they are and are existent.

*Theaet.* So we may assume.

*Str.* Every class, then, has plurality of being and infinity of not-being.

257 *Theaet.* So we must infer.

*Str.* And being itself may be said to be other than the other kinds.

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* Then we may infer that being is not, in respect of as many other things as there are; for not being these it is itself one, and is not the other things, which are infinite in number.

*Theaet.* That is not far from the truth.

*Str.* And we must not quarrel with this result, since it is of the nature of classes to have communion with one another; and if any one denies our present statement [viz. that being is not, etc.], let him first argue with our former conclusion [i.e. respecting the communion of ideas], and then he may proceed to argue with what follows.

*Theaet.* Nothing can be fairer.

*Str.* Let me ask you to consider a further question.

*Theaet.* What question?

*Str.* When we speak of not-being, we speak, I suppose, not of something opposed to being, but only different.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Str.* When we speak of something as not great, does the expression seem to you to imply what is little any more than what is equal?

*Theaet.* Certainly not.

*Str.* The negative particles, *οὐ* and *μη*, when prefixed to words, do not imply opposition, but only difference from the

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

being, and therefore is and is not.

Thus there is found to be an existence of not-being in the case of motion, occasioned by the nature of the other, and in every other kind, being not excepted.

For being is itself, but is not all other things.

A negative particle does not

*Sophist.*  
STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

imply oppo-  
sition, but  
only differ-  
ence.

The parts  
of other-  
ness or  
difference  
and of  
knowledge  
correspond:  
the former  
are ex-  
pressed by  
prefixing  
'not' to  
the names  
of the cor-  
responding  
parts of  
knowledge.

Thus the  
not-beauti-  
ful is the  
other of the  
beautiful,  
and is  
equally real  
with it.

And so of  
other  
things.

words, or more correctly from the things represented by the words, which follow them.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* There is another point to be considered, if you do not object.

*Theaet.* What is it?

*Str.* The nature of the other appears to me to be divided into fractions like knowledge.

*Theaet.* How so?

*Str.* Knowledge, like the other, is one; and yet the various parts of knowledge have each of them their own particular name, and hence there are many arts and kinds of knowledge.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* And is not the case the same with the parts of the other, which is also one?

*Theaet.* Very likely; but will you tell me how?

*Str.* There is some part of the other which is opposed to the beautiful?

*Theaet.* There is.

*Str.* Shall we say that this has or has not a name?

*Theaet.* It has; for whatever we call not-beautiful is other than the beautiful, not than something else.

*Str.* And now tell me another thing.

*Theaet.* What?

*Str.* Is the not-beautiful anything but this—an existence parted off from a certain kind of existence, and again from another point of view opposed to an existing something?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* Then the not-beautiful turns out to be the opposition of being to being?

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* But upon this view, is the beautiful a more real and the not-beautiful a less real existence?

*Theaet.* Not at all.

*Str.* And the not-great may be said to exist, equally with the great?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And, in the same way, the just must be placed in the same category with the not-just—the one cannot be said to have any more existence than the other.

*Theaet.* True.

*Sophist.*

*Str.* The same may be said of other things; seeing that the nature of the other has a real existence, the parts of this nature must equally be supposed to exist.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Of course.

*Str.* Then, as would appear, the opposition of a part of the other, and of a part of being, to one another, is, if I may venture to say so, as truly essence as being itself, and implies not the opposite of being, but only what is other than being.

The opposition between the parts of being and other is also being.

*Theaet.* Beyond question.

*Str.* What then shall we call it?

*Theaet.* Clearly, not-being; and this is the very nature for which the Sophist compelled us to search.

*Str.* And has not this, as you were saying, as real an existence as any other class? May I not say with confidence that not-being has an assured existence, and a nature of its own? Just as the great was found to be great and the beautiful beautiful, and the not-great not-great, and the not-beautiful not-beautiful, in the same manner not-being has been found to be and is not-being, and is to be reckoned one among the many classes of being. Do you, Theaetetus, still feel any doubt of this?

Not-being is a kind of being,

*Theaet.* None whatever.

*Str.* Do you observe that our scepticism has carried us beyond the range of Parmenides' prohibition?

*Theaet.* In what?

*Str.* We have advanced to a further point, and shown him more than he forbade us to investigate.

*Theaet.* How is that?

*Str.* Why, because he says—

‘Not-being never is<sup>1</sup>, and do thou keep thy thoughts from this way of enquiry.’

*Theaet.* Yes, he says so.

*Str.* Whereas, we have not only proved that things which are not are, but we have shown what form of being not-being is; for we have shown that the nature of the other is, and is

which includes all things other than some given thing,

<sup>1</sup> Reading *τοῦτο φανῆ*.

*Sophist.*  
STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

distributed over all things in their relations to one another, and whatever part of the other is contrasted with being, this is precisely what we have ventured to call not-being.

*Theaet.* And surely, Stranger, we were quite right.

Our theory  
rests upon  
the com-  
munion of  
kinds.

*Str.* Let not any one say, then, that while affirming the opposition of not-being to being, we still assert the being of not-being; for as to whether there is an opposite of being, to that enquiry we have long said good-bye—it may or may not be, and may or may not be capable of definition. But as 259 touching our present account of not-being, let a man either convince us of error, or, so long as he cannot, he too must say, as we are saying, that there is a communion of classes, and that being, and difference or other, traverse all things and mutually interpenetrate, so that the other partakes of being, and by reason of this participation is, and yet is not that of which it partakes, but other, and being other than being, it is clearly a necessity that not-being should be. And again, being, through partaking of the other, becomes a class other than the remaining classes, and being other than all of them, is not each one of them, and is not all the rest, so that undoubtedly there are thousands upon thousands of cases in which being is not, and all other things, whether regarded individually or collectively, in many respects are, and in many respects are not.

*Theaet.* True.

We should  
let alone  
verbal  
puzzles.

*Str.* And he who is sceptical of this contradiction, must think how he can find something better to say; or if he sees a puzzle, and his pleasure is to drag words this way and that, the argument will prove to him, that he is not making a worthy use of his faculties; for there is no charm in such puzzles, and there is no difficulty in detecting them; but we can tell him of something else the pursuit of which is noble and also difficult.

*Theaet.* What is it?

*Str.* A thing of which I have already spoken;—letting alone these puzzles as involving no difficulty, he should be able to follow and criticize in detail every argument, and when a man says that the same is in a manner other, or that other is the same, to understand and refute him from his own point of view, and in the same respect in which he asserts

either of these affections. But to show that somehow and in some sense the same is other, or the other same, or the great small, or the like unlike; and to delight in always bringing forward such contradictions, is no real refutation, but is clearly the new-born babe of some one who is only beginning to approach the problem of being.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Str.* For certainly, my friend, the attempt to separate all existences from one another is a barbarism and utterly unworthy of an educated or philosophical mind.

*Theaet.* Why so?

*Str.* The attempt at universal separation is the final annihilation of all reasoning; for only by the union of conceptions with one another do we attain to discourse of reason.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And, observe that we were only just in time in making a resistance to such separatists, and compelling them to admit that one thing mingles with another.

*Theaet.* Why so?

*Str.* Why, that we might be able to assert discourse to be a kind of being; for if we could not, the worst of all consequences would follow; we should have no philosophy. Moreover, the necessity for determining the nature of discourse presses upon us at this moment; if utterly deprived of it, we could no more hold discourse; and deprived of it we should be if we admitted that there was no admixture of natures at all.

The utter separation of all existences would deprive us of discourse, and without discourse we could have no philosophy.

*Theaet.* Very true. But I do not understand why at this moment we must determine the nature of discourse.

*Str.* Perhaps you will see more clearly by the help of the following explanation.

*Theaet.* What explanation?

*Str.* Not-being has been acknowledged by us to be one among many classes diffused over all being.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And thence arises the question, whether not-being mingles with opinion and language.

*Theaet.* How so?

*Str.* If not-being has no part in the proposition, then all things must be true; but if not-being has a part, then false opinion and false speech are possible, for to think or to say

*Sophist.* what is not—is falsehood, which thus arises in the region of thought and in speech.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* That is quite true.

*Str.* And where there is falsehood surely there must be deceit.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And if there is deceit, then all things must be full of idols and images and fancies.

*Theaet.* To be sure.

*Str.* Into that region the Sophist, as we said, made his escape, and, when he had got there, denied the very possibility of falsehood; no one, he argued, either conceived or uttered falsehood, inasmuch as not-being did not in any way partake of being.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And now, not-being has been shown to partake of being, and therefore he will not continue fighting in this direction, but he will probably say that some ideas partake of not-being, and some not, and that language and opinion are of the non-partaking class; and he will still fight to the death against the existence of the image-making and phantastic art, in which we have placed him, because, as he will say, opinion and language do not partake of not-being, and unless this participation exists, there can be no such thing as falsehood. And, with the view of meeting this evasion, we must begin by enquiring into the nature of language, opinion, and imagination, in order that when we find them we may find also that they have communion with not-being, and, having made out 261 the connexion of them, may thus prove that falsehood exists; and therein we will imprison the Sophist, if he deserves it, or, if not, we will let him go again and look for him in another class.

*Theaet.* Certainly, Stranger, there appears to be truth in what was said about the Sophist at first, that he was of a class not easily caught, for he seems to have abundance of defences, which he throws up, and which must every one of them be stormed before we can reach the man himself. And even now, we have with difficulty got through his first defence, which is the not-being of not-being, and lo! here is another; for we have still to show that falsehood exists in

We left the Sophist, in the region of images, denying the possibility of falsehood. But now that not-being has been shown to partake of being, this line of defence can no longer be maintained. Yet he will still evade us by denying that opinion and language partake of not-being.

the sphere of language and opinion, and there will be another and another line of defence without end.

*Sophist.*

*Str.* Any one, Theaetetus, who is able to advance even a little ought to be of good cheer, for what would he who is dispirited at a little progress do, if he were making none at all, or even undergoing a repulse? Such a faint heart, as the proverb says, will never take a city: but now that we have succeeded thus far, the citadel is ours, and what remains is easier.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theact.* Very true.

*Str.* Then, as I was saying, let us first of all obtain a conception of language and opinion, in order that we may have clearer grounds for determining, whether not-being has any concern with them, or whether they are both always true, and neither of them ever false.

We want  
to obtain  
a clear  
conception  
of lan-  
guage and  
opinion.

*Theact.* True.

*Str.* Then, now, let us speak of names, as before we were speaking of ideas and letters; for that is the direction in which the answer may be expected.

*Theact.* And what is the question at issue about names?

*Str.* The question at issue is whether all names may be connected with one another, or none, or only some of them.

As with  
letters,  
so with  
names:  
only some  
can be  
connected.

*Theact.* Clearly the last is true.

*Str.* I understand you to say that words which have a meaning when in sequence may be connected, but that words which have no meaning when in sequence cannot be connected?

*Theact.* What are you saying?

*Str.* What I thought that you intended when you gave your assent; for there are two sorts of intimation of being which are given by the voice.

*Theact.* What are they?

*Str.* One of them is called nouns, and the other verbs.

*Theact.* Describe them.

262 *Str.* That which denotes action we call a verb.

*Theact.* True.

*Str.* And the other, which is an articulate mark set on those who do the actions, we call a noun.

*Theact.* Quite true.

*Str.* A succession of nouns only is not a sentence, any more than of verbs without nouns.

Neither  
nouns alone  
nor verbs



*Sophist.**Theaet.* I do not understand you.STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.  
alone make  
a sentence.*Str.* I see that when you gave your assent you had something else in your mind. But what I intended to say was, that a mere succession of nouns or of verbs is not discourse.*Theaet.* What do you mean?*Str.* I mean that words like 'walks,' 'runs,' 'sleeps,' or any other words which denote action, however many of them you string together, do not make discourse.*Theaet.* How can they?*Str.* Or, again, when you say 'lion,' 'stag,' 'horse,' or any other words which denote agents—neither in this way of stringing words together do you attain to discourse; for there is no expression of action or inaction, or of the existence of existence or non-existence indicated by the sounds, until verbs are mingled with nouns; then the words fit, and the smallest combination of them forms language, and is the simplest and least form of discourse.*Theaet.* Again I ask, What do you mean?*Str.* When any one says 'A man learns,' should you not call this the simplest and least of sentences?*Theaet.* Yes.*Str.* Yes, for he now arrives at the point of giving an intimation about something which is, or is becoming, or has become, or will be. And he not only names, but he does something, by connecting verbs with nouns; and therefore we say that he discourses, and to this connexion of words we give the name of discourse.*Theaet.* True.*Str.* And as there are some things which fit one another, and other things which do not fit, so there are some vocal signs which do, and others which do not, combine and form discourse.*Theaet.* Quite true.*Str.* There is another small matter.*Theaet.* What is it?*Str.* A sentence must and cannot help having a subject.*Theaet.* True.*Str.* And must be of a certain quality.*Theaet.* Certainly.*Str.* And now let us mind what we are about.A sentence  
must have  
a subject,  
and be of  
a certain  
quality,—  
i.e. true or  
false.

*Theaet.* We must do so.

*Sophist.*

*Str.* I will repeat a sentence to you in which a thing and an action are combined, by the help of a noun and a verb ; and you shall tell me of whom the sentence speaks.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.  
Examples.

*Theaet.* I will, to the best of my power.

263 *Str.* 'Theaetetus sits'—not a very long sentence.

*Theaet.* Not very.

*Str.* Of whom does the sentence speak, and who is the subject ? that is what you have to tell.

*Theaet.* Of me ; I am the subject.

*Str.* Or this sentence, again—

*Theaet.* What sentence ?

*Str.* 'Theaetetus, with whom I am now speaking, is flying.'

*Theaet.* That also is a sentence which will be admitted by every one to speak of me, and to apply to me.

*Str.* We agreed that every sentence must necessarily have a certain quality.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And what is the quality of each of these two sentences ?

*Theaet.* The one, as I imagine, is false, and the other true.

*Str.* The true says what is true about you ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And the false says what is other than true ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And therefore speaks of things which are not as if they were ?

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And says that things are real of you which are not ; for, as we were saying, in regard to each thing or person, there is much that is and much that is not.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* The second of the two sentences which related to you was first of all an example of the shortest form consistent with our definition.

*Theaet.* Yes, this was implied in our recent admission.

*Str.* And, in the second place, it related to a subject ?

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* Who must be you, and can be nobody else ?

*Theaet.* Unquestionably.

*Str.* And it would be no sentence at all if there were

A true sentence says what is true of its subject, a false sentence what is false.

*Sophist.* no subject, for, as we proved, a sentence which has no subject is impossible.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

Thus false  
discourse is  
possible,  
and there-  
fore false  
thought,  
opinion,  
imagin-  
ation, which  
are akin  
to it, are  
also pos-  
sible.

*Str.* When other, then, is asserted of you as the same, and not-being as being, such a combination of nouns and verbs is really and truly false discourse.

*Theaet.* Most true.

*Str.* And therefore thought, opinion, and imagination are now proved to exist in our minds both as true and false.

*Theaet.* How so?

*Str.* You will know better if you first gain a knowledge of what they are, and in what they severally differ from one another.

*Theaet.* Give me the knowledge which you would wish me to gain.

Thought is  
the un-  
uttered  
conversa-  
tion of the  
soul, which,  
when  
uttered,  
becomes  
speech.

*Str.* Are not thought and speech the same, with this exception, that what is called thought is the unuttered conversation of the soul with herself?

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* But the stream of thought which flows through the lips and is audible is called speech?

*Theaet.* True.

Opinion is  
silent  
affirmation  
or denial.

*Str.* And we know that there exists in speech . . .

*Theaet.* What exists?

*Str.* Affirmation.

*Theaet.* Yes, we know it.

264

*Str.* When the affirmation or denial takes place in silence and in the mind only, have you any other name by which to call it but opinion?

*Theaet.* There can be no other name.

Imagin-  
ation is  
opinion  
expressed  
in a form  
of sense.

*Str.* And when opinion is presented, not simply, but in some form of sense, would you not call it imagination?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* And seeing that language is true and false, and that thought is the conversation of the soul with herself, and opinion is the end of thinking, and imagination or phantasy is the union of sense and opinion, the inference is that some of them, since they are akin to language, should have an element of falsehood as well as of truth?

*Theaet.* Certainly.

*Str.* Do you perceive, then, that false opinion and speech have been discovered sooner than we expected?—For just now we seemed to be undertaking a task which would never be accomplished.

*Theæt.* I perceive.

*Str.* Then let us not be discouraged about the future ; but now having made this discovery, let us go back to our previous classification.

*Theæt.* What classification?

*Str.* We divided image-making into two sorts ; the one likeness-making, the other imaginative or phantastic.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* And we said that we were uncertain in which we should place the Sophist.

*Theæt.* We did say so.

*Str.* And our heads began to go round more and more when it was asserted. that there is no such thing as an image or idol or appearance, because in no manner or time or place can there ever be such a thing as falsehood.

*Theæt.* True.

*Str.* And now, since there has been shown to be false speech and false opinion, there may be imitations of real existences, and out of this condition of the mind an art of deception may arise.

*Theæt.* Quite possible.

*Str.* And we have already admitted, in what preceded, that the Sophist was lurking in one of the divisions of the likeness-making art?

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* Let us, then, renew the attempt, and in dividing any class, always take the part to the right, holding fast to that which holds the Sophist, until we have stripped him of all his common properties, and reached his difference or peculiar. Then we may exhibit him in his true nature, first to ourselves and then to kindred dialectical spirits.

*Theæt.* Very good.

*Str.* You may remember that all art was originally divided by us into creative and acquisitive.

*Theæt.* Yes.

*Str.* And the Sophist was flitting before us in the acquisitive

*Sophist.*  
STRANGER,  
THEÆTÆTUS.

Recapitulation from 235 ff. (*supra*).—We divided image-making into likeness-making and phantastic, and then the difficulty which we have just solved arose.

*Sophist.*STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

We have traced the Sophist's descent through the subdivisions of acquisitive : let us now look for him in the branches of creative, of which imitation is one. Creative art is (1) human, (2) divine.

class, in the subdivisions of hunting, contests, merchandize, and the like.

*Theaet.* Very true.

*Str.* But now that the imitative art has enclosed him, it is clear that we must begin by dividing the art of creation ; for imitation is a kind of creation—of images, however, as we affirm, and not of real things.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

*Str.* In the first place, there are two kinds of creation.

*Theaet.* What are they ?

*Str.* One of them is human and the other divine.

*Theaet.* I do not follow.

*Str.* Every power, as you may remember our saying originally, which causes things to exist, not previously existing, was defined by us as creative.

*Theaet.* I remember.

*Str.* Looking, now, at the world and all the animals and plants, at things which grow upon the earth from seeds and roots, as well as at inanimate substances which are formed within the earth, fusile or non-fusile, shall we say that they come into existence—not having existed previously—by the creation of God, or shall we agree with vulgar opinion about them ?

*Theaet.* What is it ?

*Str.* The opinion that nature brings them into being from some spontaneous and unintelligent cause. Or shall we say that they are created by a divine reason and a knowledge which comes from God ?

Nature is to be attributed to an intelligent cause, not to an unintelligent.

*Theaet.* I dare say that, owing to my youth, I may often waver in my view, but now when I look at you and see that you incline to refer them to God, I defer to your authority.

*Str.* Nobly said, Theaetetus, and if I thought that you were one of those who would hereafter change your mind, I would have gently argued with you, and forced you to assent ; but as I perceive that you will come of yourself and without any argument of mine, to that belief which, as you say, attracts you, I will not forestall the work of time. Let me suppose, then, that things which are said to be made by nature are the work of divine art, and that things which are

made by man out of these are works of human art. And so there are two kinds of making and production, the one human and the other divine.

*Sophist.*  
*STRANGER,*  
*THEAETETUS.*

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* Then, now, subdivide each of the two sections which we have already.

*Theaet.* How do you mean?

266 *Str.* I mean to say that you should make a vertical division of production or invention, as you have already made a lateral one.

*Theaet.* I have done so.

*Str.* Then, now, there are in all four parts or segments—two of them have reference to us and are human, and two of them have reference to the gods and are divine.

Both in divine and in human creation there is a division for realities and a division for images and likenesses.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And, again, in the division which was supposed to be made in the other way, one part in each subdivision is the making of the things themselves, but the two remaining parts may be called the making of likenesses; and so the productive art is again divided into two parts.

*Theaet.* Tell me the divisions once more.

*Str.* I suppose that we, and the other animals, and the elements out of which things are made—fire, water, and the like—are known by us to be each and all the creation and work of God.

*Theaet.* True.

*Str.* And there are images of them, which are not them, but which correspond to them; and these are also the creation of a wonderful skill.

Divinely made images are such as dreams, shadows, transposed likenesses.

*Theaet.* What are they?

*Str.* The appearances which spring up of themselves in sleep or by day, such as a shadow when darkness arises in a fire, or the reflection which is produced when the light in bright and smooth objects meets on their surface with an external light, and creates a perception the opposite of our ordinary sight.

*Theaet.* Yes; and the images as well as the creation are equally the work of a divine hand.

*Str.* And what shall we say of human art? Do we not make one house by the art of building, and another by the

A human image is (e. g.) the

*Sophist.* art of drawing, which is a sort of dream created by man for those who are awake?

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Quite true.

drawing of  
a house.

*Str.* And other products of human creation are also twofold and go in pairs; there is the thing, with which the art of making the thing is concerned, and the image, with which imitation is concerned.

*Theaet.* Now I begin to understand, and am ready to acknowledge that there are two kinds of production, and each of them twofold; in the lateral division there is both a divine and a human production; in the vertical there are realities and a creation of a kind of similitudes.

Such un-  
realities  
are pro-  
duced by  
phantastic.

*Str.* And let us not forget that of the imitative class the one part was to have been likeness-making, and the other phantastic, if it could be shown that falsehood is a reality and belongs to the class of real being.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* And this appeared to be the case; and therefore now, without hesitation, we shall number the different kinds as two.

*Theaet.* True.

Phantastic  
is further  
divided into  
mimicry  
or imitation  
and a  
nameless  
section.

*Str.* Then, now, let us again divide the phantastic art.

267

*Theaet.* Where shall we make the division?

*Str.* There is one kind which is produced by an instrument, and another in which the creator of the appearance is himself the instrument.

*Theaet.* What do you mean?

*Str.* When any one makes himself appear like another in his figure or his voice, imitation is the name for this part of the phantastic art.

*Theaet.* Yes.

*Str.* Let this, then, be named the art of mimicry, and this the province assigned to it; as for the other division, we are weary and will give that up, leaving to some one else the duty of making the class and giving it a suitable name.

*Theaet.* Let us do as you say—assign a sphere to the one and leave the other.

A further  
distinction  
is to be  
drawn

*Str.* There is a further distinction, Theaetetus, which is worthy of our consideration, and for a reason which I will tell you.

*Theæt.* Let me hear.

*Str.* There are some who imitate, knowing what they imitate, and some who do not know. And what line of distinction can there possibly be greater than that which divides ignorance from knowledge?

*Theæt.* There can be no greater.

*Str.* Was not the sort of imitation of which we spoke just now the imitation of those who know? For he who would imitate you would surely know you and your figure?

*Theæt.* Naturally.

*Str.* And what would you say of the figure or form of justice or of virtue in general? Are we not well aware that many, having no knowledge of either, but only a sort of opinion, do their best to show that this opinion is really entertained by them, by expressing it, as far as they can, in word and deed?

*Theæt.* Yes, that is very common.

*Str.* And do they always fail in their attempt to be thought just, when they are not? Or is not the very opposite true?

*Theæt.* The very opposite.

*Str.* Such a one, then, should be described as an imitator—to be distinguished from the other, as he who is ignorant is distinguished from him who knows?

*Theæt.*—True.

*Str.* Can we find a suitable name for each of them? This is clearly not an easy task; for among the ancients there was some confusion of ideas, which prevented them from attempting to divide genera into species; wherefore there is no great abundance of names. Yet, for the sake of distinctness, I will make bold to call the imitation which coexists with opinion, the imitation of appearance—that which coexists with science, a scientific or learned imitation.

*Theæt.* Granted.

*Str.* The former is our present concern, for the Sophist was classed with imitators indeed, but not among those who have knowledge.

*Theæt.* Very true.

*Str.* Let us, then, examine our imitator of appearance, and

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEÆTETUS.

between  
the mimic  
who knows,  
and the  
mimic who  
is ignorant.

The latter  
is the  
mimic of  
appear-  
ance; the  
former, the  
learned  
mimic.



*Sophist.*

see whether he is sound, like a piece of iron, or whether there is still some crack in him.

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Let us examine him.

The mimic  
of appear-  
ance may  
be uncon-  
scious of  
his igno-  
rance or a  
dissembler.

*Str.* Indeed there is a very considerable crack; for if you look, you find that one of the two classes of imitators is a simple creature, who thinks that he knows that which he only 268 fancies; the other sort has knocked about among arguments, until he suspects and fears that he is ignorant of that which to the many he pretends to know.

*Theaet.* There are certainly the two kinds which you describe.

*Str.* Shall we regard one as the simple imitator—the other as the dissembling or ironical imitator?

*Theaet.* Very good.

*Str.* And shall we further speak of this latter class as having one or two divisions?

*Theaet.* Answer yourself.

There is a  
dissembler  
in public  
and a  
dissembler  
in private.  
The latter  
is the  
SO-PHIST.

*Str.* Upon consideration, then, there appear to me to be two; there is the dissembler, who harangues a multitude in public in a long speech, and the dissembler, who in private and in short speeches compels the person who is conversing with him to contradict himself.

*Theaet.* What you say is most true.

*Str.* And who is the maker of the longer speeches? Is he the statesman or the popular orator?

*Theaet.* The latter.

*Str.* And what shall we call the other? Is he the philosopher or the Sophist?

*Theaet.* The philosopher he cannot be, for upon our view he is ignorant; but since he is an imitator of the wise he will have a name which is formed by an adaptation of the word σοφός. What shall we name him? I am pretty sure that I cannot be mistaken in terming him the true and very Sophist.

*Str.* Shall we bind up his name as we did before, making a chain from one end of his genealogy to the other?

*Theaet.* By all means.

His full  
genealogy.

*Str.* He, then<sup>1</sup>, who traces the pedigree of his art as follows—who, belonging to the conscious or dissembling

<sup>1</sup> Reading τὸν δῆ.

section of the art of causing self-contradiction, is an imitator of appearance, and is separated from the class of phantastic which is a branch of image-making into that further division of creation, the juggling of words, a creation human, and not divine—any one who affirms the real Sophist to be of this blood and lineage will say the very truth.

*Sophist.*

STRANGER,  
THEAETETUS.

*Theaet.* Undoubtedly.



STATESMAN.



## INTRODUCTION AND ANALYSIS.

IN the *Phaedrus*, the *Republic*, the *Philebus*, the *Parmenides*, and the *Sophist*, we may observe the tendency of Plato to combine two or more subjects or different aspects of the same subject in a single dialogue. In the *Sophist* and *Statesman* especially we note that the discussion is partly regarded as an illustration of method, and that analogies are brought from afar which throw light on the main subject. And in his later writings generally we further remark a decline of style, and of dramatic power; the characters excite little or no interest, and the digressions are apt to overlay the main thesis; there is not the 'callida junctura' of an artistic whole. Both the serious discussions and the jests are sometimes out of place. The invincible Socrates is withdrawn from view; and new foes begin to appear under old names. Plato is now chiefly concerned, not with the original Sophist, but with the sophistry of the schools of philosophy, which are making reasoning impossible; and is driven by them out of the regions of transcendental speculation back into the path of common sense. A logical or psychological phase takes the place of the doctrine of Ideas in his mind. He is constantly dwelling on the importance of regular classification, and of not putting words in the place of things. He has banished the poets, and is beginning to use a technical language. He is bitter and satirical, and seems to be sadly conscious of the realities of human life. Yet the ideal glory of the Platonic philosophy is not extinguished. He is still looking for a city in which kings are either philosophers or gods (cp. *Laws*, iv. 713).

*Statesman.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The *Statesman* has lost the grace and beauty of the earlier dialogues. The mind of the writer seems to be so overpowered in the effort of thought as to impair his style; at least his gift of expression does not keep up with the increasing difficulty of his

**Statesman.** theme. The idea of the king or statesman and the illustration of method are connected, not like the love and rhetoric of the Phaedrus, by 'little invisible pegs,' but in a confused and inartistic manner, which fails to produce any impression of a whole on the mind of the reader. Plato apologizes for his tediousness, and acknowledges that the improvement of his audience has been his only aim in some of his digressions. His own image may be used as a motto of his style: like an inexperienced statuary he has made the figure or outline too large (277 A), and is unable to give the proper colours or proportions to his work. He makes mistakes only to correct them—this seems to be his way of drawing attention to common dialectical errors. The Eleatic stranger, here, as in the Sophist, has no appropriate character, and appears only as the expositor of a political ideal, in the delineation of which he is frequently interrupted by purely logical illustrations. The younger Socrates resembles his namesake in nothing but a name. The dramatic character is so completely forgotten, that a special reference is twice made to discussions in the Sophist; and this, perhaps, is the strongest ground which can be urged for doubting the genuineness of the work. But, when we remember that a similar allusion is made in the Laws (v. 739) to the Republic, we see that the entire disregard of dramatic propriety is not always a sufficient reason for doubting the genuineness of a Platonic writing (see *infra*).

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The search after the Statesman, which is carried on, like that for the Sophist, by the method of dichotomy, gives an opportunity for many humorous and satirical remarks. Several of the jests are mannered and laboured: for example, the turn of words with which the dialogue opens; or the clumsy joke about man being an animal, who has a power of two-feet—both which are suggested by the presence of Theodorus, the geometrician. There is political as well as logical insight in refusing to admit the division of mankind into Hellenes and Barbarians: 'if a crane could speak, he would in like manner oppose men and all other animals to cranes.' The pride of the Hellene is further humbled, by being compared to a Phrygian or Lydian. Plato glories in this impartiality of the dialectical method, which places birds in juxtaposition with men, and the king side by side with the bird-catcher; king or vermin-destroyer are objects of equal interest to science (cp. Parmen.

130 D, E). There are other passages which show that the irony of Socrates was a lesson which Plato was not slow in learning—as, for example, the passing remark, that ‘the kings and statesmen of our day are in their breeding and education very like their subjects;’ or the anticipation that the rivals of the king will be found in the class of servants; or the imposing attitude of the priests, who are the established interpreters of the will of heaven, authorized by law. Nothing is more bitter in all his writings than his comparison of the contemporary politicians to lions, centaurs, satyrs, and other animals of a feebler sort, who are ever changing their forms and natures. But, as in the later dialogues generally, the play of humour and the charm of poetry have departed, never to return.

Still the *Politicus* contains a higher and more ideal conception of politics than any other of Plato’s writings. The city of which there is a pattern in heaven (*Rep.* ix), is here described as a *Paradiacal* state of human society. In the truest sense of all, the ruler is not man but God; and such a government existed in a former cycle of human history, and may again exist when the gods resume their care of mankind. In a secondary sense, the true form of government is that which has scientific rulers, who are irresponsible to their subjects. Not power but knowledge is the characteristic of a king or royal person. And the rule of a man is better and higher than law, because he is more able to deal with the infinite complexity of human affairs. But mankind, in despair of finding a true ruler, are willing to acquiesce in any law or custom which will save them from the caprice of individuals. They are ready to accept any of the six forms of government which prevail in the world. To the Greek, *nomos* was a sacred word, but the political idealism of Plato soars into a region beyond; for the laws he would substitute the intelligent will of the legislator. Education is originally to implant in men’s minds a sense of truth and justice, which is the divine bond of states, and the legislator is to contrive human bonds, by which dissimilar natures may be united in marriage and supply the deficiencies of one another. As in the *Republic*, the government of philosophers, the causes of the perversion of states, the regulation of marriages, are still the political problems with which Plato’s mind is occupied. He treats them more slightly, partly because the dialogue is



*Statesman.* shorter, and also because the discussion of them is perpetually crossed by the other interest of dialectic, which has begun to absorb him.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The plan of the Politicus or Statesman may be briefly sketched as follows: (1) By a process of division and subdivision we discover the true herdsman or king of men. But before we can rightly distinguish him from his rivals, we must view him, (2) as he is presented to us in a famous ancient tale: the tale will also enable us to distinguish the divine from the human herdsman or shepherd: (3) and besides our fable, we must have an example; for our example we will select the art of weaving, which will have to be distinguished from the kindred arts; and then, following this pattern, we will separate the king from his subordinates or competitors. (4) But are we not exceeding all due limits; and is there not a measure of all arts and sciences, to which the art of discourse must conform? There is; but before we can apply this measure, we must know what is the aim of discourse: and our discourse only aims at the dialectical improvement of ourselves and others.—Having made our apology, we return once more to the king or statesman, and proceed to contrast him with pretenders in the same line with him, under their various forms of government. (5) His characteristic is, that he alone has science, which is superior to law and written enactments; these do but spring out of the necessities of mankind, when they are in despair of finding the true king. (6) The sciences which are most akin to the royal are the sciences of the general, the judge, the orator, which minister to him, but even these are subordinate to him. (7) Fixed principles are implanted by education, and the king or statesman completes the political web by marrying together dissimilar natures, the courageous and the temperate, the bold and the gentle, who are the warp and the woof of society.

The outline may be filled up as follows:—

ANALYSIS. *Soc.* I have reason to thank you, Theodorus, for the acquaintance of Theaetetus and the Stranger. *Theod.* And you will have three times as much reason to thank me when they have delineated the Statesman and Philosopher, as well as the Sophist. *Soc.* Does the great geometrician apply the same measure to all three? Are they not divided by an interval which no geometrical

*Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

ratio can express? *Theod.* By the god Ammon, Socrates, you are right; and I am glad to see that you have not forgotten your geometry. But before I retaliate on you, I must request the Stranger to finish the argument. . . . The Stranger suggests that Theaetetus shall be allowed to rest, and that Socrates the younger shall respond in his place; Theodorus agrees to the  
258 suggestion, and Socrates remarks that the name of the one and the face of the other give him a right to claim relationship with both of them. They propose to take the Statesman after the Sophist; his path they must determine, and part off all other ways, stamping upon them a single negative form (cp. *Soph.* 257).

The Stranger begins the enquiry by making a division of the arts and sciences into theoretical and practical—the one kind concerned with knowledge exclusively, and the other with action; arithmetic and the mathematical sciences are examples of the former, and carpentering and handicraft arts of the latter (cp. *Philebus*, 55 ff.). Under which of the two shall we place the Statesman? Or rather, shall we not first ask, whether the king,  
259 statesman, master, householder, practise one art or many? As the adviser of a physician may be said to have medical science and to be a physician, so the adviser of a king has royal science and is a king. And the master of a large household may be compared to the ruler of a small state. Hence we conclude that the science of the king, statesman, and householder is one and the same. And this science is akin to knowledge rather than to action. For a king rules with his mind, and not with his hands.

But theoretical science may be a science either of judging,  
260 like arithmetic, or of ruling and superintending, like that of the architect or master-builder. And the science of the king is of the latter nature; but the power which he exercises is underived and uncontrolled,—a characteristic which distinguishes him from heralds, prophets, and other inferior officers. He is the wholesale dealer in command, and the herald, or other officer, retails  
261 his commands to others. Again, a ruler is concerned with the production of some object, and objects may be divided into living and lifeless, and rulers into the rulers of living and lifeless objects. And the king is not like the master-builder, concerned with lifeless matter, but has the task of managing living animals.

*Statesman.* And the tending of living animals may be either a tending of individuals, or a managing of herds. And the Statesman is not a groom, but a herdsman, and his art may be called either the art of managing a herd, or the art of collective management:—Which do you prefer? ‘No matter.’ Very good, Socrates, and if you are not too particular about words you will be all the richer some day in true wisdom. But how would you subdivide the herds-  
ANALYSIS. man’s art? ‘I should say, that there is one management of men, and another of beasts.’ Very good, but you are in too great a hurry to get to man. All divisions which are rightly made should cut through the middle; if you attend to this rule, you will be more likely to arrive at classes. ‘I do not understand the nature of my mistake.’ Your division was like a division of the human race into Hellenes and Barbarians, or into Lydians or Phrygians and all other nations, instead of into male and female; or like a division of number into ten thousand and all other numbers, instead of into odd and even. And I should like you to observe  
 262 further, that though I maintain a class to be a part, there is no similar necessity for a part to be a class. But to return to your division, you spoke of men and other animals as two classes—the second of which you comprehended under the general name of beasts. This is the sort of division which an intelligent crane would make: he would put cranes into a class by themselves for their special glory, and jumble together all others, including man, in the class of beasts. An error of this kind can only be avoided  
 264 by a more regular subdivision. Just now we divided the whole class of animals into gregarious and non-gregarious, omitting the previous division into tame and wild. We forgot this in our hurry to arrive at man, and found by experience, as the proverb says, that ‘the more haste the worse speed.’

And now let us begin again at the art of managing herds. You have probably heard of the fish-preserves in the Nile and in the ponds of the Great King, and of the nurseries of geese and cranes in Thessaly. These suggest a new division into the rearing or management of land-herds and of water-herds:—I need not say with which the king is concerned. And land-herds may be divided into walking and flying; and every idiot knows that the political animal is a pedestrian. At this point we may take a  
 265 longer or a shorter road, and as we are already near the end,

*Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

I see no harm in taking the longer, which is the way of mesotomy, and accords with the principle which we were laying down. The tame, walking, herding animal, may be divided into two classes—the horned and the hornless, and the king is concerned with the hornless; and these again may be subdivided into animals having or not having cloven feet, or mixing or not mixing the breed; and the king or statesman has the care of animals which have not cloven feet, and which do not mix the breed.

266 And now, if we omit dogs, who can hardly be said to herd, I think that we have only two species left which remain undivided: and how are we to distinguish them? To geometricians, like you and Theaetetus, I can have no difficulty in explaining that man is a diameter, having a power of two feet; and the power of four-legged creatures, being the double of two feet, is the diameter of our diameter. There is another excellent jest which I spy in the two remaining species. Men and birds are both bipeds, and human beings are running a race with the airiest and freest of creation, in which they are far behind their competitors;—this is a great joke, and there is a still better in the juxtaposition of the bird-taker and the king, who may be seen scampering after them. For, as we remarked in discussing the Sophist, the dialectical method is no respecter of persons. But we might have proceeded, as I was saying, by another and a shorter road. In that case we should have begun by dividing land animals into bipeds and quadrupeds, and bipeds into winged and wingless; we should then have taken the Statesman and set him over the ‘bipes implume,’ and put the reins of government into his hands.

267 Here let us sum up:—The science of pure knowledge had a part which was the science of command, and this had a part which was a science of wholesale command; and this was divided into the management of animals, and was again parted off into the management of herds of animals, and again of land animals, and these into hornless, and these into bipeds; and so at last we arrived at man, and found the political and royal science. And yet we have not clearly distinguished the political shepherd from his  
268 rivals. No one would think of usurping the prerogatives of the ordinary shepherd, who on all hands is admitted to be the trainer, matchmaker, doctor, musician of his flock. But the royal shepherd has numberless competitors, from whom he must be

*Statesman.* distinguished ; there are merchants, husbandmen, physicians, who will all dispute his right to manage the flock. I think that we can best distinguish him by having recourse to a famous old tradition, which may amuse as well as instruct us ; the narrative is perfectly true, although the scepticism of mankind is prone to doubt the tales of old. You have heard what happened in the quarrel of Atreus and Thyestes? ‘You mean about the golden lamb?’ No, not that ; but another part of the story, which tells 269 how the sun and stars once arose in the west and set in the east, and that the god reversed their motion, as a witness to the right of Atreus. ‘There is such a story.’ And no doubt you have heard of the empire of Cronos, and of the earthborn men? The origin of these and the like stories is to be found in the tale which I am about to narrate.

There was a time when God directed the revolutions of the world, but at the completion of a certain cycle he let go ; and the world, by a necessity of its nature, turned back, and went round the other way. For divine things alone are unchangeable ; but the earth and heavens, although endowed with many glories, have a body, and are therefore liable to perturbation. In the case of the world, the perturbation is very slight, and amounts only to a reversal of motion. For the lord of moving things is alone self-moved ; neither can piety allow that he goes at one time in one direction and at another time in another ; or that God has given the universe opposite motions ; or that there are two gods, one turning it in one direction, another in another. But the truth 270 is, that there are two cycles of the world, and in one of them it is governed by an immediate Providence, and receives life and immortality, and in the other is let go again, and has a reverse action during infinite ages. This new action is spontaneous, and is due to exquisite perfection of balance, to the vast size of the universe, and to the smallness of the pivot upon which it turns. All changes in the heaven affect the animal world, and this being the greatest of them, is most destructive to men and animals. At the beginning of the cycle before our own very few of them had survived ; and on these a mighty change passed. For their life was reversed like the motion of the world, and first of all coming to a stand then quickly returned to youth and beauty. The white locks of the aged became black ; the cheeks of the bearded man

Statesman.

ANALYSIS.

were restored to their youth and fineness; the young men grew softer and smaller, and, being reduced to the condition of children in mind as well as body, began to vanish away; and the bodies of those who had died by violence, in a few moments underwent  
 271 a parallel change and disappeared. In that cycle of existence there was no such thing as the procreation of animals from one another, but they were born of the earth, and of this our ancestors, who came into being immediately after the end of the last cycle and at the beginning of this, have preserved the recollection. Such traditions are often now unduly discredited, and yet they may be proved by internal evidence. For observe how consistent the narrative is; as the old returned to youth, so the dead returned to life; the wheel of their existence having been reversed, they rose again from the earth: a few only were reserved by God for another destiny. Such was the origin of the earthborn men.

‘And is this cycle, of which you are speaking, the reign of Cronos, or our present state of existence?’ No, Socrates, that blessed and spontaneous life belongs not to this, but to the previous state, in which God was the governor of the whole world, and other gods subject to him ruled over parts of the world, as is still the case in certain places. They were shepherds of men and animals, each of them sufficing for those of whom he had the care. And there was no violence among them, or war, or devouring of one another. Their life was spontaneous, because in those days God ruled over man; and he was to man what man is now to the animals. Under his government there were no estates, or  
 272 private possessions, or families; but the earth produced a sufficiency of all things, and men were born out of the earth, having no traditions of the past; and as the temperature of the seasons was mild, they took no thought for raiment, and had no beds, but lived and dwelt in the open air.

Such was the age of Cronos, and the age of Zeus is our own. Tell me, which is the happier of the two? Or rather, shall I tell you that the happiness of these children of Cronos must have depended on how they used their time? If having boundless leisure, and the power of discoursing not only with one another but with the animals, they had employed these advantages with a view to philosophy, gathering from every nature some addition to

*Statesman.* their store of knowledge ;—or again, if they had merely eaten and drunk, and told stories to one another, and to the beasts ;—in either case, I say, there would be no difficulty in answering the question. But as nobody knows which they did, the question must remain unanswered. And here is the point of my tale. In the fulness of time, when the earthborn men had all passed away, the ruler of the universe let go the helm, and became a spectator ; and destiny and natural impulse swayed the world. At the same instant all the inferior deities gave up their hold ; the whole 273 universe rebounded, and there was a great earthquake, and utter ruin of all manner of animals. After a while the tumult ceased, and the universal creature settled down in his accustomed course, having authority over all other creatures, and following the instructions of his God and Father, at first more precisely, afterwards with less exactness. The reason of the falling off was the disengagement of a former chaos ; ‘a muddy vesture of decay’ was a part of his original nature, out of which he was brought by his Creator, under whose immediate guidance, while he remained in that former cycle, the evil was minimized and the good increased to the utmost. And in the beginning of the new cycle all was well enough, but as time went on, discord entered in ; at length the good was minimized and the evil everywhere diffused, and there was a danger of universal ruin. Then the Creator, seeing the world in great straits, and fearing that chaos and infinity would come again, in his tender care again placed himself at the helm and restored order, and made the world immortal and imperishable. Once more the cycle of life and generation was reversed ; the infants grew into young men, and the young men became greyheaded ; no longer did the animals spring out of the 274 earth ; as the whole world was now lord of its own progress, so the parts were to be self-created and self-nourished. At first the case of men was very helpless and pitiable ; for they were alone among the wild beasts, and had to carry on the struggle for existence without arts or knowledge, and had no food, and did not know how to get any. That was the time when Prometheus brought them fire, Hephaestus and Athene taught them arts, and other gods gave them seeds and plants. Out of these human life was framed ; for mankind were left to themselves, and ordered their own ways, living, like the universe,

in one cycle after one manner, and in another cycle after another manner. *Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

Enough of the myth, which may show us two errors of which  
275 we were guilty in our account of the king. The first and grand  
error was in choosing for our king a god, who belongs to the other  
cycle, instead of a man from our own; there was a lesser error  
also in our failure to define the nature of the royal functions.  
The myth gave us only the image of a divine shepherd, whereas  
the statesmen and kings of our own day very much resemble  
their subjects in education and breeding. On retracing our steps  
we find that we gave too narrow a designation to the art which  
was concerned with command-for-self over living creatures, when  
we called it the 'feeding' of animals in flocks. This would apply  
to all shepherds, with the exception of the Statesman; but if we  
say 'managing' or 'tending' animals, the term would include him  
276 as well. Having remodelled the name, we may subdivide as  
before, first separating the human from the divine shepherd or  
manager. Then we may subdivide the human art of governing  
into the government of willing and unwilling subjects—royalty  
and tyranny—which are the extreme opposites of one another,  
277 although we in our simplicity have hitherto confounded them.

And yet the figure of the king is still defective. We have taken  
up a lump of fable, and have used more than we needed. Like  
statuaries, we have made some of the features out of proportion,  
and shall lose time in reducing them. Or our mythus may be  
compared to a picture, which is well drawn in outline, but is not  
yet enlivened by colour. And to intelligent persons language is,  
or ought to be, a better instrument of description than any picture.  
'But what, Stranger, is the deficiency of which you speak?' No  
higher truth can be made clear without an example; every man  
seems to know all things in a dream, and to know nothing when  
he is awake. And the nature of example can only be illustrated  
278 by an example. Children are taught to read by being made to  
compare cases in which they do not know a certain letter with  
cases in which they know it, until they learn to recognize it in all  
its combinations. Example comes into use when we identify  
something unknown with that which is known, and form a com-  
mon notion of both of them. Like the child who is learning his  
letters, the soul recognizes some of the first elements of things;



*Statesman.* and then again is at fault and unable to recognize them when they are translated into the difficult language of facts. Let us, then, 279  
*ANALYSIS.* take an example, which will illustrate the nature of example, and will also assist us in characterizing the political science, and in separating the true king from his rivals.

I will select the example of weaving, or, more precisely, weaving of wool. In the first place, all possessions are either productive or preventive; of the preventive sort are spells and antidotes, divine and human, and also defences, and defences are either arms or screens, and screens are veils and also shields against heat and cold, and shields against heat and cold are shelters and coverings, and coverings are blankets or garments, and garments are in one piece or have many parts; and of these latter, some are stitched and others are fastened, and of these again some are made of fibres of plants and some of hair, and of these some are cemented with water and earth, and some are fastened with their own material; the latter are called clothes, and are made by the art of clothing, from which the art of weaving 280 differs only in name, as the political differs from the royal science. Thus we have drawn several distinctions, but as yet have not distinguished the weaving of garments from the kindred and co-operative arts. For the first process to which the material 281 is subjected is the opposite of weaving—I mean carding. And the art of carding, and the whole art of the fuller and the mender, are concerned with the treatment and production of clothes, as well as the art of weaving. Again, there are the arts which make the weaver's tools. And if we say that the weaver's art is the greatest and noblest of those which have to do with woollen garments,—this, although true, is not sufficiently distinct; because these other arts require to be first cleared away. Let us proceed, then, by regular steps:—There are causal or principal, and co-operative or subordinate arts. To the causal class belong the arts 282 of washing and mending, of carding and spinning the threads, and the other arts of working in wool; these are chiefly of two kinds, falling under the two great categories of composition and division. Carding is of the latter sort. But our concern is chiefly with that part of the art of wool-working which composes, and of which one kind twists and the other interlaces the threads, whether the firmer texture of the warp or the looser texture of the woof.

283 These are adapted to each other, and the orderly composition of them forms a woollen garment. And the art which presides over these operations is the art of weaving. *Statesman.*  
ANALYSIS.

But why did we go through this circuitous process, instead of saying at once that weaving is the art of entwining the warp and the woof? In order that our labour may not seem to be lost, I must explain the whole nature of excess and defect. There are two arts of measuring—one is concerned with relative size, and the other has reference to a mean or standard of what is meet. The difference between good and evil is the difference between a mean or measure and excess or defect. All things require to be compared, not only with one another, but with the mean,  
284 without which there would be no beauty and no art, whether the art of the statesman or the art of weaving or any other; for all the arts guard against excess or defect, which are real evils. This we must endeavour to show, if the arts are to exist; and the proof of this will be a harder piece of work than the demonstration of the existence of not-being which we proved in our discussion about the Sophist. At present I am content with the indirect proof that the existence of such a standard is necessary to the existence of the arts. The standard or measure, which we are now only applying to the arts, may be some day required with a view to the demonstration of absolute truth.

We may now divide this art of measurement into two parts; placing in the one part all the arts which measure the relative size or number of objects, and in the other all those which depend  
285 upon a mean or standard. Many accomplished men say that the art of measurement has to do with all things, but these persons, although in this notion of theirs they may very likely be right, are apt to fail in seeing the differences of classes—they jumble together in one the 'more' and the 'too much,' which are very different things. Whereas the right way is to find the differences of classes, and to comprehend the things which have any affinity under the same class.

I will make one more observation by the way. When a pupil at a school is asked the letters which make up a particular word, is he not asked with a view to his knowing the same letters in all words? And our enquiry about the Statesman in like manner is

*Statesman.* intended not only to improve our knowledge of politics, but  
ANALYSIS. our reasoning powers generally. Still less would any one analyze  
 the nature of weaving for its own sake. There is no difficulty  
 in exhibiting sensible images, but the greatest and noblest truths  
 have no outward form adapted to the eye of sense, and are only  
 revealed in thought. And all that we are now saying is said 286  
 for the sake of them. I make these remarks, because I want you  
 to get rid of any impression that our discussion about weaving  
 and about the reversal of the universe, and the other discussion  
 about the Sophist and not-being, were tedious and irrelevant.  
 Please to observe that they can only be fairly judged when  
 compared with what is meet; and yet not with what is meet  
 for producing pleasure, nor even meet for making discoveries,  
 but for the great end of developing the dialectical method and  
 sharpening the wits of the auditors. He who censures us, should  
 prove that, if our words had been fewer, they would have been 287  
 better calculated to make men dialecticians.

And now let us return to our king or statesman, and transfer to  
 him the example of weaving. The royal art has been separated  
 from that of other herdsmen, but not from the causal and co-  
 operative arts which exist in states; these do not admit of  
 dichotomy, and therefore they must be carved neatly, like the  
 limbs of a victim, not into more parts than are necessary. And  
 first (1) we have the large class of instruments, which includes  
 almost everything in the world; from these may be parted off  
 (2) vessels which are framed for the preservation of things, moist  
 or dry, prepared in the fire or out of the fire. The royal or 288  
 political art has nothing to do with either of these, any more  
 than with the arts of making (3) vehicles, or (4) defences, whether  
 dresses, or arms, or walls, or (5) with the art of making orna-  
 ments, whether pictures or other playthings, as they may be  
 fitly called, for they have no serious use. Then (6) there are  
 the arts which furnish gold, silver, wood, bark, and other  
 materials, which should have been put first; these, again, have  
 no concern with the kingly science; any more than the arts  
 (7) which provide food and nourishment for the human body, 289  
 and which furnish occupation to the husbandman, huntsman,  
 doctor, cook, and the like, but not to the king or statesman.  
 Further, there are small things, such as coins, seals, stamps,

*Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

which may with a little violence be comprehended in one of the above-mentioned classes. Thus they will embrace every species of property with the exception of animals,—but these have been already included in the art of tending herds. There remains only the class of slaves or ministers, among whom I expect that the real rivals of the king will be discovered. I am not speaking of the veritable slave bought with money, nor of  
 290 the hireling who lets himself out for service, nor of the trader or merchant, who at best can only lay claim to economical and not to royal science. Nor am I referring to government officials, such as heralds and scribes, for these are only the servants of the rulers, and not the rulers themselves. I admit that there may be something strange in any servants pretending to be masters, but I hardly think that I could have been wrong in supposing that the principal claimants to the throne will be of this class. Let us try once more: There are diviners and priests, who are full of pride and prerogative; these, as the law declares, know how to give acceptable gifts to the gods, and in many parts of Hellas the duty of performing solemn sacrifices is assigned to the chief magistrate, as at Athens to the King Archon. At last, then, we have found a trace of those whom we were seeking. But still they are only servants and ministers.

291 And who are these who next come into view in various forms of men and animals and other monsters appearing—lions and centaurs and satyrs—who are these? I did not know them at first, for every one looks strange when he is unexpected. But now I recognize the politician and his troop, the chief of Sophists, the prince of charlatans, the most accomplished of wizards, who must be carefully distinguished from the true king or statesman. And here I will interpose a question: What are the true forms of government? Are they not three—monarchy, oligarchy, and democracy? and the distinctions of freedom and compulsion, law and no law, poverty and riches expand these three into six. Monarchy may be divided into royalty and tyranny; oligarchy  
 292 into aristocracy and plutocracy; and democracy may observe the law or may not observe it. But are any of these governments worthy of the name? Is not government a science, and are we to suppose that scientific government is secured by the rulers being many or few, rich or poor, or by the rule being compulsory

*Statesman.* or voluntary? Can the many attain to science? In no Hellenic city are there fifty good draught players, and certainly there are not as many kings, for by kings we mean all those who are possessed of the political science. A true government must therefore be the government of one, or of a few. And they may govern us either with or without law, and whether they are poor or rich, and however they govern, provided they govern on some scientific principle,—it makes no difference. And as the physician may cure us with our will, or against our will, and by any mode of treatment, burning, bleeding, lowering, fattening, if he only proceeds scientifically: so the true governor may reduce or fatten or bleed the body corporate, while he acts according to the rules of his art, and with a view to the good of the state, whether according to law or without law.

‘I do not like the notion, that there can be good government without law.’

I must explain: Law-making certainly is the business of a king; and yet the best thing of all is, not that the law should rule, but that the king should rule, for the varieties of circumstances are endless, and no simple or universal rule can suit them all, or last for ever. The law is just an ignorant brute of a tyrant, who insists always on his commands being fulfilled under all circumstances. ‘Then why have we laws at all?’ I will answer that question by asking you whether the training master gives a different discipline to each of his pupils, or whether he has a general rule of diet and exercise which is suited to the constitutions of the majority? ‘The latter.’ The legislator, too, is obliged to lay down general laws, and cannot enact what is precisely suitable to each particular case. He cannot be sitting at every man’s side all his life, and prescribe for him the minute particulars of his duty, and therefore he is compelled to impose on himself and others the restriction of a written law. Let me suppose now, that a physician or trainer, having left directions for his patients or pupils, goes into a far country, and comes back sooner than he intended; owing to some unexpected change in the weather, the patient or pupil seems to require a different mode of treatment: Would he persist in his old commands, under the idea that all others are noxious and heterodox? Viewed in the light of science, would not the continuance of such regulations be ridiculous? And if the legislator,

*Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

296 or another like him, comes back from a far country, is he to be prohibited from altering his own laws? The common people say: Let a man persuade the city first, and then let him impose new laws. But is a physician only to cure his patients by persuasion, and not by force? Is he a worse physician who uses a little gentle violence in effecting the cure? Or shall we say, that the violence is just, if exercised by a rich man, and unjust, if by a poor man? May not any man, rich or poor, with or without law, and  
297 whether the citizens like or not, do what is for their good? The pilot saves the lives of the crew, not by laying down rules, but by making his art a law, and, like him, the true governor has a strength of art which is superior to the law. This is scientific government, and all others are imitations only. Yet no great number of persons can attain to this science. And hence follows an important result. The true political principle is to assert the inviolability of the law, which, though not the best thing possible, is best for the imperfect condition of man.

298 I will explain my meaning by an illustration:—Suppose that mankind, indignant at the rogueries and caprices of physicians and pilots, call together an assembly, in which all who like may speak, the skilled as well as the unskilled, and that in their assembly they make decrees for regulating the practice of navigation and medicine which are to be binding on these professions for all time. Suppose that they elect annually by vote or lot those to whom authority in either department is to be delegated. And  
299 let us further imagine, that when the term of their magistracy has expired, the magistrates appointed by them are summoned before an ignorant and unprofessional court, and may be condemned and punished for breaking the regulations. They even go a step further, and enact, that he who is found enquiring into the truth of navigation and medicine, and is seeking to be wise above what is written, shall be called not an artist, but a dreamer, a prating Sophist and a corrupter of youth; and if he try to persuade others to investigate those sciences in a manner contrary to the law, he shall be punished with the utmost severity. And like rules might be extended to any art or science. But what would be the consequence?

‘The arts would utterly perish, and human life, which is bad enough already, would become intolerable.’

*Statesman.* But suppose, once more, that we were to appoint some one as 300  
ANALYSIS. the guardian of the law, who was both ignorant and interested, and who perverted the law: would not this be a still worse evil than the other? 'Certainly.' For the laws are based on some experience and wisdom. Hence the wiser course is, that they should be observed, although this is not the best thing of all, but only the second best. And whoever, having skill, should try to improve them, would act in the spirit of the law-giver. But then, as we have seen, no great number of men, whether poor or rich, can be makers of laws. And so, the nearest approach to true government is, when men do nothing contrary to their own 301 written laws and national customs. When the rich preserve their customs and maintain the law, this is called aristocracy, or if they neglect the law, oligarchy. When an individual rules according to law, whether by the help of science or opinion, this is called monarchy; and when he has royal science he is a king, whether he be so in fact or not; but when he rules in spite of law, and is blind with ignorance and passion, he is called a tyrant. These forms of government exist, because men despair of the true king ever appearing among them; if he were to appear, they would joyfully hand over to him the reins of government. But, as there is no natural ruler of the hive, they meet together and make laws. And do we wonder, when the foundation of politics is in the letter only, at the miseries of states? Ought we not rather to 302 admire the strength of the political bond? For cities have endured the worst of evils time out of mind; many cities have been shipwrecked, and some are like ships foundering, because their pilots are absolutely ignorant of the science which they profess.

Let us next ask, which of these untrue forms of government is the least bad, and which of them is the worst? I said at the beginning, that each of the three forms of government, royalty, aristocracy, and democracy, might be divided into two, so that the whole number of them, including the best, will be seven. Under monarchy we have already distinguished royalty and tyranny; of oligarchy there were two kinds, aristocracy and plutocracy; and democracy may also be divided, for there is a democracy which observes, and a democracy which neglects, the laws. The government of one is the best and the worst—the government of a few is 303 less bad and less good—the government of the many is the least

bad and least good of them all, being the best of all lawless governments, and the worst of all lawful ones. But the rulers of all these states, unless they have knowledge, are maintainers of idols, and themselves idols—wizards, and also Sophists; for, after many windings, the term ‘Sophist’ comes home to them. *Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

And now enough of centaurs and satyrs: the play is ended, and they may quit the political stage. Still there remain some other and better elements, which adhere to the royal science, and must be drawn off in the refiner’s fire before the gold can become quite  
304 pure. The arts of the general, the judge, and the orator, will have to be separated from the royal art; when the separation has been made, the nature of the king will be unalloyed. Now there are inferior sciences, such as music and others; and there is a superior science, which determines whether music is to be learnt or not, and this is different from them, and the governor of them. The science which determines whether we are to use persuasion, or not, is higher than the art of persuasion; the science which  
305 determines whether we are to go to war, is higher than the art of the general. The science which makes the laws, is higher than that which only administers them. And the science which has this authority over the rest, is the science of the king or statesman.

Once more we will endeavour to view this royal science by the  
306 light of our example. We may compare the state to a web, and I will show you how the different threads are drawn into one. You would admit—would you not?—that there are parts of virtue (although this position is sometimes assailed by Eristics), and one part of virtue is temperance, and another courage. These are two principles which are in a manner antagonistic to one another; and they pervade all nature; the whole class of the good and beautiful is included under them. The beautiful may be subdivided into two lesser classes: one of these is described by us  
307 in terms expressive of motion or energy, and the other in terms expressive of rest and quietness. We say, how manly! how vigorous! how ready! and we say also, how calm! how temperate! how dignified! This opposition of terms is extended by us to all actions, to the tones of the voice, the notes of music, the workings of the mind, the characters of men. The two classes both have their exaggerations; and the exaggerations of the one are termed ‘hardness,’ ‘violence,’ ‘madness;’ of the other ‘cowardliness,’ or



*Statesman.* 'sluggishness.' And if we pursue the enquiry, we find that these opposite characters are naturally at variance, and can hardly be reconciled. In lesser matters the antagonism between them is ludicrous, but in the State may be the occasion of grave disorders, and may disturb the whole course of human life. For the orderly class are always wanting to be at peace, and hence they pass imperceptibly into the condition of slaves; and the courageous 308 sort are always wanting to go to war, even when the odds are against them, and are soon destroyed by their enemies. But the true art of government, first preparing the material by education, weaves the two elements into one, maintaining authority over the carders of the wool, and selecting the proper subsidiary arts which are necessary for making the web. The royal science is queen of educators, and begins by choosing the natures which she is to train, punishing with death and exterminating those who are violently carried away to atheism and injustice, and enslaving 309 those who are wallowing in the mire of ignorance. The rest of the citizens she blends into one, combining the stronger element of courage, which we may call the warp, with the softer element of temperance, which we may imagine to be the woof. These she binds together, first taking the eternal elements of the honourable, the good, and the just, and fastening them with a divine cord in a heaven-born nature, and then fastening the animal elements with a human cord. The good legislator can implant by education the higher principles; and where they exist there is no difficulty 310 in inserting the lesser human bonds, by which the State is held together; these are the laws of intermarriage, and of union for the sake of offspring. Most persons in their marriages seek after wealth or power; or they are clannish, and choose those who are like themselves,—the temperate marrying the temperate, and the courageous the courageous. The two classes thrive and flourish at first, but they soon degenerate; the one become mad, and the other feeble and useless. This would not have been the case, if they had both originally held the same notions about the honourable and the good; for then they never would have allowed the temperate natures to be separated from the courageous, but they would have bound them together by common honours and 311 reputations, by intermarriages, and by the choice of rulers who combine both qualities. The temperate are careful and just, but

are wanting in the power of action; the courageous fall short of them in justice, but in action are superior to them: and no state can prosper in which either of these qualities is wanting. The noblest and best of all webs or states is that which the royal science weaves, combining the two sorts of natures in a single texture, and in this enfolding freeman and slave and every other social element, and presiding over them all.

‘Your picture, Stranger, of the king and statesman, no less than of the Sophist, is quite perfect.’

*Statesman.*

ANALYSIS.

The principal subjects in the *Statesman* may be conveniently embraced under six or seven heads:—(1) the myth; (2) the dialectical interest; (3) the political aspects of the dialogue; (4) the satirical and paradoxical vein; (5) the necessary imperfection of law; (6) the relation of the work to the other writings of Plato; lastly (7), we may briefly consider the genuineness of the *Sophist* and *Statesman*, which can hardly be assumed without proof, since the two dialogues have been questioned by three such eminent Platonic scholars as Socher, Schaarschmidt, and Ueberweg.

INTRODUCTION.

I. The hand of the master is clearly visible in the myth. First in the connexion with mythology;—he wins a kind of verisimilitude for this as for his other myths, by adopting received traditions, of which he pretends to find an explanation in his own larger conception (cp. *Introduction to Critias*). The young Socrates has heard of the sun rising in the west and setting in the east, and of the earth-born men; but he has never heard the origin of these remarkable phenomena. Nor is Plato, here or elsewhere, wanting in denunciations of the incredulity of ‘this latter age,’ on which the lovers of the marvellous have always delighted to enlarge. And he is not without express testimony to the truth of his narrative;—such testimony as, in the *Timæus* (40 D), the first men gave of the names of the gods (‘They must surely have known their own ancestors’). For the first generation of the new cycle, who lived near the time, are supposed to have preserved a recollection of a previous one. He also appeals to internal evidence, viz. the perfect coherence of the tale, though he is very well aware, as he says in the *Cratylus* (436 C, D), that

*Statesman.* there may be consistency in error as well as in truth. The gravity and minuteness with which some particulars are related also lend an artful aid. The profound interest and ready assent of the young Socrates, who is not too old to be amused 'with a tale which a child would love to hear,' are a further assistance. To those who were naturally inclined to believe that the fortunes of mankind are influenced by the stars, or who maintained that some one principle, like the principle of the Same and the Other in the *Timaeus*, pervades all things in the world, the reversal of the motion of the heavens seemed necessarily to produce a reversal of the order of human life. The spheres of knowledge, which to us appear wide asunder as the poles, astronomy and medicine, were naturally connected in the minds of early thinkers, because there was little or nothing in the space between them. Thus there is a basis of philosophy, on which the improbabilities of the tale may be said to rest. These are some of the devices by which Plato, like a modern novelist, seeks to familiarize the marvellous.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The myth, like that of the *Timaeus* and *Critias*, is rather historical than poetical, in this respect corresponding to the general change in the later writings of Plato, when compared with the earlier ones. It is hardly a myth in the sense in which the term might be applied to the myth of the *Phaedrus*, the *Republic*, the *Phaedo*, or the *Gorgias*, but may be more aptly compared with the didactic tale in which Protagoras describes the fortunes of primitive man, or with the description of the gradual rise of a new society in the Third Book of the *Laws*. Some discrepancies may be observed between the mythology of the *Statesman* and the *Timaeus*, and between the *Timaeus* and the *Republic*. But there is no reason to expect that all Plato's visions of a former, any more than of a future, state of existence, should conform exactly to the same pattern. We do not find perfect consistency in his philosophy; and still less have we any right to demand this of him in his use of mythology and figures of speech. And we observe that while employing all the resources of a writer of fiction to give credibility to his tales, he is not disposed to insist upon their literal truth. Rather, as in the *Phaedo* (114 D), he says, 'Something of the kind is true;' or, as in the *Gorgias* (527 A), 'This you will think to be an old wife's tale, but you can

think of nothing truer;' or, as in the *Statesman* (277 B), he describes his work as a 'mass of mythology,' which was introduced in order to teach certain lessons; or, as in the *Phaedrus* (230 A), he secretly laughs at such stories while refusing to disturb the popular belief in them.

*Statesman.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

The greater interest of the myth consists in the philosophical lessons which Plato presents to us in this veiled form. Here, as in the tale of Er, the son of Armenius, he touches upon the question of freedom and necessity, both in relation to God and nature. For at first the universe is governed by the immediate providence of God,—this is the golden age,—but after a while the wheel is reversed, and man is left to himself. Like other theologians and philosophers, Plato relegates his explanation of the problem to a transcendental world; he speaks of what in modern language might be termed 'impossibilities in the nature of things,' hindering God from continuing immanent in the world. But there is some inconsistency; for the 'letting go' is spoken of as a divine act, and is at the same time attributed to the necessary imperfection of matter; there is also a numerical necessity for the successive births of souls. At first, man and the world retain their divine instincts, but gradually degenerate. As in the Book of Genesis, the first fall of man is succeeded by a second; the misery and wickedness of the world increase continually. The reason of this further decline is supposed to be the disorganisation of matter: the latent seeds of a former chaos are disengaged, and envelope all things. The condition of man becomes more and more miserable; he is perpetually waging an unequal warfare with the beasts. At length he obtains such a measure of education and help as is necessary for his existence. Though deprived of God's help, he is not left wholly destitute; he has received from Athene and Hephaestus a knowledge of the arts; other gods give him seeds and plants; and out of these human life is reconstructed. He now eats bread in the sweat of his brow, and has dominion over the animals, subjected to the conditions of his nature, and yet able to cope with them by divine help. Thus Plato may be said to represent in a figure—(1) the state of innocence; (2) the fall of man; (3) the still deeper decline into barbarism; (4) the restoration of man by the partial interference of God, and the natural growth of the arts and of civilised society.

*Statesman.* Two lesser features of this description should not pass unnoticed:—(1) the primitive men are supposed to be created out of the earth, and not after the ordinary manner of human generation—half the causes of moral evil are in this way removed; (2) the arts are attributed to a divine revelation: and so the greatest difficulty in the history of pre-historic man is solved. Though no one knew better than Plato that the introduction of the gods is not a reason, but an excuse for not giving a reason (*Cratylus*, 426), yet, considering that more than two thousand years later mankind are still discussing these problems, we may be satisfied to find in Plato a statement of the difficulties which arise in conceiving the relation of man to God and nature, without expecting to obtain from him a solution of them. In such a tale, as in the *Phaedrus*, various aspects of the Ideas were doubtless indicated to Plato's own mind, as the corresponding theological problems are to us. The immanence of things in the Ideas, or the partial separation of them, and the self-motion of the supreme Idea, are probably the forms in which he would have interpreted his own parable.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

He touches upon another question of great interest—the consciousness of evil—what in the Jewish Scriptures is called 'eating of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.' At the end of the narrative (272 B), the Eleatic asks his companion whether this life of innocence, or that which men live at present, is the better of the two. He wants to distinguish between the mere animal life of innocence, the 'city of pigs,' as it is comically termed by Glaucon in the *Republic*, and the higher life of reason and philosophy. But as no one can determine the state of man in the world before the Fall, 'the question must remain unanswered.' Similar questions have occupied the minds of theologians in later ages; but they can hardly be said to have found an answer. Professor Campbell well observes, that the general spirit of the myth may be summed up in the words of the *Lysis* (221): 'If evil were to perish, should we hunger any more, or thirst any more, or have any similar sensations? Yet perhaps the question what will or will not be is a foolish one, for who can tell?' As in the *Theaetetus*, evil is supposed to continue,—here, as the consequence of a former state of the world, a sort of mephitic vapour exhaling from some ancient chaos,—there, as involved

in the possibility of good, and incident to the mixed state of *Statesman*.  
man.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Once more—and this is the point of connexion with the rest of the dialogue—the myth is intended to bring out the difference between the ideal and the actual state of man. In all ages of the world men have dreamed of a state of perfection, which has been, and is to be, but never is, and seems to disappear under the necessary conditions of human society. The uselessness, the danger, the true value of such political ideals have often been discussed; youth is too ready to believe in them; age to disparage them. Plato's 'prudens quaestio' respecting the comparative happiness of men in this and in a former cycle of existence is intended to elicit this contrast between the golden age and 'the life under Zeus' which is our own. To confuse the divine and human, or hastily apply one to the other, is a 'tremendous error.' Of the ideal or divine government of the world we can form no true or adequate conception; and this our mixed state of life, in which we are partly left to ourselves, but not wholly deserted by the gods, may contain some higher elements of good and knowledge than could have existed in the days of innocence under the rule of Cronos. So we may venture slightly to enlarge a Platonic thought which admits of a further application to Christian theology. Here are suggested also the distinctions between God causing and permitting evil, and between his more and less immediate government of the world.

II. The dialectical interest of the *Statesman* seems to contend in Plato's mind with the political; the dialogue might have been designated by two equally descriptive titles—either the 'Statesman,' or 'Concerning Method.' Dialectic, which in the earlier writings of Plato is a revival of the Socratic question and answer applied to definition, is now occupied with classification; there is nothing in which he takes greater delight than in processes of division (cp. *Phaedr.* 266 B); he pursues them to a length out of proportion to his main subject, and appears to value them as a dialectical exercise, and for their own sake. A poetical vision of some order or hierarchy of ideas or sciences has already been floating before us in the *Symposium* and the *Republic*. And in the *Phaedrus* this aspect of dialectic is further sketched out, and the art of rhetoric is based on the division of

*Statesman.* the characters of mankind into their several classes. The same love of divisions is apparent in the *Gorgias*. But in a well-known passage of the *Philebus* occurs the first criticism on the nature of classification. There we are exhorted not to fall into the common error of passing from unity to infinity, but to find the intermediate classes; and we are reminded that in any process of generalization, there may be more than one class to which individuals may be referred, and that we must carry on the process of division until we have arrived at the *infima species*.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

These precepts are not forgotten, either in the *Sophist* or in the *Statesman*. The *Sophist* contains four examples of division, carried on by regular steps, until in four different lines of descent we detect the *Sophist*. In the *Statesman* the king or statesman is discovered by a similar process; and we have a summary, probably made for the first time, of possessions appropriated by the labour of man, which are distributed into seven classes. We are warned against preferring the shorter to the longer method;—if we divide in the middle, we are most likely to light upon species; at the same time, the important remark is made, that ‘a part is not to be confounded with a class.’ Having discovered the genus under which the king falls, we proceed to distinguish him from the collateral species. To assist our imagination in making this separation, we require an example. The higher ideas, of which we have a dreamy knowledge, can only be represented by images taken from the external world. But, first of all, the nature of example is explained by an example. The child is taught to read by comparing the letters in words which he knows with the same letters in unknown combinations; and this is the sort of process which we are about to attempt. As a parallel to the king we select the worker in wool, and compare the art of weaving with the royal science, trying to separate either of them from the inferior classes to which they are akin. This has the incidental advantage, that weaving and the web furnish us with a figure of speech, which we can afterwards transfer to the State.

There are two uses of examples or images—in the first place, they suggest thoughts—secondly, they give them a distinct form. In the infancy of philosophy, as in childhood, the language of pictures is natural to man: truth in the abstract is hardly won, and only by use familiarized to the mind. Examples are akin to

analogies, and have a reflex influence on thought; they people the vacant mind, and may often originate new directions of enquiry. Plato seems to be conscious of the suggestiveness of imagery; the general analogy of the arts is constantly employed by him as well as the comparison of particular arts—weaving, the refining of gold, the learning to read, music, statuary, painting, medicine, the art of the pilot—all of which occur in this dialogue alone: though he is also aware that ‘comparisons are slippery things,’ and may often give a false clearness to ideas. We shall find, in the *Philebus*, a division of sciences into practical and speculative, and into more or less speculative: here we have the idea of master-arts, or sciences which control inferior ones. Besides the supreme science of dialectic, ‘which will forget us, if we forget her,’ another master-science for the first time appears in view—the science of government, which fixes the limits of all the rest. This conception of the political or royal science as, from another point of view, the science of sciences, which holds sway over the rest, is not originally found in Aristotle, but in Plato.

The doctrine that virtue and art are in a mean, which is familiarized to us by the study of the *Nicomachean Ethics*, is also first distinctly asserted in the *Statesman* of Plato. The too much and the too little are in restless motion: they must be fixed by a mean, which is also a standard external to them. The art of measuring or finding a mean between excess and defect, like the principle of division in the *Phaedrus*, receives a particular application to the art of discourse. The excessive length of a discourse may be blamed; but who can say what is excess, unless he is furnished with a measure or standard? Measure is the life of the arts, and may some day be discovered to be the single ultimate principle in which all the sciences are contained. Other forms of thought may be noted—the distinction between causal and co-operative arts, which may be compared with the distinction between primary and co-operative causes in the *Timæus* (46 D); or between cause and condition in the *Phædo* (99); the passing mention of economical science; the opposition of rest and motion, which is found in all nature; the general conception of two great arts of composition and division, in which are contained weaving, politics, dialectic; and in connexion with the conception of a mean, the two arts of measuring.



*Statesman.* In the *Theaetetus*, Plato remarks that precision in the use of terms, though sometimes pedantic, is sometimes necessary. Here he makes the opposite reflection, that there may be a philosophical disregard of words. The evil of mere verbal oppositions, the requirement of an impossible accuracy in the use of terms, the error of supposing that philosophy was to be found in language, the danger of word-catching, have frequently been discussed by him in the previous dialogues, but nowhere has the spirit of modern inductive philosophy been more happily indicated than in the words of the Statesman:—‘If you think more about things, and less about words, you will be richer in wisdom as you grow older’ (261 E). A similar spirit is discernible in the remarkable expressions, ‘the long and difficult language of facts’ (278 D); and ‘the interrogation of every nature, in order to obtain the particular contribution of each to the store of knowledge’ (272 C). Who has described ‘the feeble intelligence of all things’ given by metaphysics better than the Eleatic Stranger in the words—‘The higher ideas can hardly be set forth except through the medium of examples; every man seems to know all things in a kind of dream, and then again nothing when he is awake’ (277 D)? Or where is the value of metaphysical pursuits more truly expressed than in the words,—‘The greatest and noblest things have no outward image of themselves visible to man: therefore we should learn to give a rational account of them’ (286 A)?

III. The political aspects of the dialogue are closely connected with the dialectical. As in the *Cratylus*, the legislator has ‘the dialectician standing on his right hand;’ so in the *Statesman*, the king or statesman is the dialectician, who, although he may be in a private station, is still a king. Whether he has the power or not, is a mere accident; or rather he has the power, for what ought to be is (‘Was ist vernünftig, das ist wirklich’); and he ought to be and is the true governor of mankind. There is a reflection in this idealism of the Socratic ‘Virtue is knowledge;’ and, without idealism, we may remark that knowledge is a great part of power. Plato does not trouble himself to construct a machinery by which ‘philosophers shall be made kings,’ as in the *Republic*: he merely holds up the ideal, and affirms that in some sense science is really supreme over human life.

He is struck by the observation 'quam parvâ sapientiâ regitur mundus,' and is touched with a feeling of the ills which afflict states. The condition of Megara before and during the Peloponnesian War, of Athens under the Thirty and afterwards, of Syracuse and the other Sicilian cities in their alternations of democratic excess and tyranny, might naturally suggest such reflections. Some states he sees already shipwrecked, others foundering for want of a pilot; and he wonders not at their destruction, but at their endurance. For they ought to have perished long ago, if they had depended on the wisdom of their rulers. The mingled pathos and satire of this remark is characteristic of Plato's later style.

The king is the personification of political science. And yet he is something more than this,—the perfectly good and wise tyrant of the Laws (iv. 710), whose will is better than any law. He is the special providence who is always interfering with and regulating all things. Such a conception has sometimes been entertained by modern theologians, and by Plato himself, of the Supreme Being. But whether applied to Divine or to human governors the conception is faulty for two reasons, neither of which are noticed by Plato:—first, because all good government supposes a degree of co-operation in the ruler and his subjects,—an 'education in politics' as well as in moral virtue; secondly, because government, whether Divine or human, implies that the subject has a previous knowledge of the rules under which he is living. There is a fallacy, too, in comparing unchangeable laws with a personal governor. For the law need not necessarily be an 'ignorant and brutal tyrant,' but gentle and humane, capable of being altered in the spirit of the legislator, and of being administered so as to meet the cases of individuals. Not only in fact, but in idea, both elements must remain—the fixed law and the living will; the written word and the spirit; the principles of obligation and of freedom; and their applications whether made by law or equity in particular cases.

There are two sides from which positive laws may be attacked:—either from the side of nature, which rises up and rebels against them in the spirit of Callicles in the Gorgias; or from the side of idealism, which attempts to soar above them,—and this is the spirit of Plato in the Statesman. But he soon falls, like Icarus,

*Statesman.* and is content to walk instead of flying; that is, to accommodate himself to the actual state of human things. Mankind have long been in despair of finding the true ruler; and therefore are ready to acquiesce in any of the five or six received forms of government as better than none. And the best thing which they can do (though only the second best in reality), is to reduce the ideal state to the conditions of actual life. Thus in the *Statesman*, as in the *Laws*, we have three forms of government, which we may venture to term, (1) the ideal, (2) the practical, (3) the sophistical—what ought to be, what might be, what is. And thus Plato seems to stumble, almost by accident, on the notion of a constitutional monarchy, or of a monarchy ruling by laws.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The divine foundations of a State are to be laid deep in education (Rep. iv. 423), and at the same time some little violence may be used in exterminating natures which are incapable of education (cp. *Laws*, x). Plato is strongly of opinion that the legislator, like the physician, may do men good against their will (cp. *Gorgias*, 522 foll.). The human bonds of states are formed by the intermarriage of dispositions adapted to supply the defects of each other. As in the *Republic*, Plato has observed that there are opposite natures in the world, the strong and the gentle, the courageous and the temperate, which, borrowing an expression derived from the image of weaving, he calls the warp and the woof of human society. To interlace these is the crowning achievement of political science. In the *Protagoras*, Socrates was maintaining that there was only one virtue, and not many: now Plato is inclined to think that there are not only parallel, but opposite virtues, and seems to see a similar opposition pervading all art and nature. But he is satisfied with laying down the principle, and does not inform us by what further steps the union of opposites is to be effected.

In the loose framework of a single dialogue Plato has thus combined two distinct subjects—politics and method. Yet they are not so far apart as they appear: in his own mind there was a secret link of connexion between them. For the philosopher or dialectician is also the only true king or statesman. In the execution of his plan Plato has invented or distinguished several important forms of thought, and made incidentally many valuable remarks. Questions of interest both in ancient and modern politics

also arise in the course of the dialogue, which may with advantage be further considered by us :—

*Statesman.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

*a.* The imaginary ruler, whether God or man, is above the law, and is a law to himself and to others. Among the Greeks as among the Jews, law was a sacred name, the gift of God, the bond of states. But in the *Statesman* of Plato, as in the New Testament, the word has also become the symbol of an imperfect good, which is almost an evil. The law sacrifices the individual to the universal, and is the tyranny of the many over the few (cp. *Rep.* i. 359). It has fixed rules which are the props of order, and will not swerve or bend in extreme cases. It is the beginning of political society, but there is something higher—an intelligent ruler, whether God or man, who is able to adapt himself to the endless varieties of circumstances. Plato is fond of picturing the advantages which would result from the union of the tyrant who has power with the legislator who has wisdom : he regards this as the best and speediest way of reforming mankind. But institutions cannot thus be artificially created, nor can the external authority of a ruler impose laws for which a nation is unprepared. The greatest power, the highest wisdom, can only proceed one or two steps in advance of public opinion. In all stages of civilization human nature, after all our efforts, remains intractable,—not like clay in the hands of the potter, or marble under the chisel of the sculptor. Great changes occur in the history of nations, but they are brought about slowly, like the changes in the frame of nature, upon which the puny arm of man hardly makes an impression. And, speaking generally, the slowest growths, both in nature and in politics, are the most permanent.

*b.* Whether the best form of the ideal is a person or a law may fairly be doubted. The former is more akin to us : it clothes itself in poetry and art, and appeals to reason more in the form of feeling : in the latter there is less danger of allowing ourselves to be deluded by a figure of speech. The ideal of the Greek state found an expression in the deification of law : the ancient Stoic spoke of a wise man perfect in virtue, who was fancifully said to be a king ; but neither they nor Plato had arrived at the conception of a person who was also a law. Nor is it easy for the Christian to think of God as wisdom, truth, holiness, and also as the wise, true, and holy one. He is always wanting to break

*Statesman.* through the abstraction and interrupt the law, in order that he may present to himself the more familiar image of a divine friend. While the impersonal has too slender a hold upon the affections to be made the basis of religion, the conception of a person on the other hand tends to degenerate into a new kind of idolatry. Neither criticism nor experience allows us to suppose that there are interferences with the laws of nature; the idea is inconceivable to us and at variance with facts. The philosopher or theologian who could realize to mankind that a person is a law, that the higher rule has no exception, that goodness, like knowledge, is also power, would breathe a new religious life into the world.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

c. Besides the imaginary rule of a philosopher or a God, the actual forms of government have to be considered. In the infancy of political science, men naturally ask whether the rule of the many or of the few is to be preferred. If by 'the few' we mean 'the good' and by 'the many,' 'the bad,' there can be but one reply: 'The rule of one good man is better than the rule of all the rest, if they are bad.' For, as Heracleitus says, 'One is ten thousand if he be the best.' If, however, we mean by the rule of the few the rule of a class neither better nor worse than other classes, not devoid of a feeling of right, but guided mostly by a sense of their own interests, and by the rule of the many the rule of all classes, similarly under the influence of mixed motives, no one would hesitate to answer—'The rule of all rather than one, because all classes are more likely to take care of all than one of another; and the government has greater power and stability when resting on a wider basis.' Both in ancient and modern times the best balanced form of government has been held to be the best; and yet it should not be so nicely balanced as to make action and movement impossible.

The statesman who builds his hope upon the aristocracy, upon the middle classes, upon the people, will probably, if he have sufficient experience of them, conclude that all classes are much alike, and that one is as good as another, and that the liberties of no class are safe in the hands of the rest. The higher ranks have the advantage in education and manners, the middle and lower in industry and self-denial; in every class, to a certain extent, a natural sense of right prevails, sometimes communicated from

the lower to the higher, sometimes from the higher to the lower, which is too strong for class interests. There have been crises in the history of nations, as at the time of the Crusades or the Reformation, or the French Revolution, when the same inspiration has taken hold of whole peoples, and permanently raised the sense of freedom and justice among mankind.

But even supposing the different classes of a nation, when viewed impartially, to be on a level with each other in moral virtue, there remain two considerations of opposite kinds which enter into the problem of government. Admitting of course that the upper and lower classes are equal in the eye of God and of the law, yet the one may be by nature fitted to govern and the other to be governed. A ruling caste does not soon altogether lose the governing qualities, nor a subject class easily acquire them. Hence the phenomenon so often observed in the old Greek revolutions, and not without parallel in modern times, that the leaders of the democracy have been themselves of aristocratic origin. The people are expecting to be governed by representatives of their own, but the true man of the people either never appears, or is quickly altered by circumstances. Their real wishes hardly make themselves felt, although their lower interests and prejudices may sometimes be flattered and yielded to for the sake of ulterior objects by those who have political power. They will often learn by experience that the democracy has become a plutocracy. The influence of wealth, though not the enjoyment of it, has become diffused among the poor as well as among the rich; and society, instead of being safer, is more at the mercy of the tyrant, who, when things are at the worst, obtains a guard—that is, an army—and announces himself as the saviour.

The other consideration is of an opposite kind. Admitting that a few wise men are likely to be better governors than the unwise many, yet it is not in their power to fashion an entire people according to their behest. When with the best intentions the benevolent despot begins his régime, he finds the world hard to move. A succession of good kings has at the end of a century left the people an inert and unchanged mass. The Roman world was not permanently improved by the hundred years of Hadrian and the Antonines. The kings of Spain during the last century

*Statesman.* were at least equal to any contemporary sovereigns in virtue and ability. In certain states of the world the means are wanting to render a benevolent power effectual. These means are not a mere external organization of posts or telegraphs, hardly the introduction of new laws or modes of industry. A change must be made in the spirit of a people as well as in their externals. The ancient legislator did not really take a blank tablet and inscribe upon it the rules which reflection and experience had taught him to be for a nation's interest; no one would have obeyed him if he had. But he took the customs which he found already existing in a half-civilized state of society: these he reduced to form and inscribed on pillars; he defined what had before been undefined, and gave certainty to what was uncertain. No legislation ever sprang, like Athene, in full power out of the head either of God or man.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Plato and Aristotle are sensible of the difficulty of combining the wisdom of the few with the power of the many. According to Plato, he is a physician who has the knowledge of a physician, and he is a king who has the knowledge of a king. But how the king, one or more, is to obtain the required power, is hardly at all considered by him. He presents the idea of a perfect government, but except the regulation for mixing different tempers in marriage, he never makes any provision for the attainment of it. Aristotle, casting aside ideals, would place the government in a middle class of citizens, sufficiently numerous for stability, without admitting the populace; and such appears to have been the constitution which actually prevailed for a short time at Athens—the rule of the Five Thousand—characterized by Thucydides as the best government of Athens which he had known. It may however be doubted how far, either in a Greek or modern state, such a limitation is practicable or desirable; for those who are left outside the pale will always be dangerous to those who are within, while on the other hand the leaven of the mob can hardly affect the representation of a great country. There is reason for the argument in favour of a property qualification; there is reason also in the arguments of those who would include all and so exhaust the political situation.

The true answer to the question is relative to the circumstances of nations. How can we get the greatest intelligence combined

*Statesman.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

with the greatest power? The ancient legislator would have found this question more easy than we do. For he would have required that all persons who had a share of government should have received their education from the state and have borne her burdens, and should have served in her fleets and armies. But though we sometimes hear the cry that we must 'educate the masses, for they are our masters,' who would listen to a proposal that the franchise should be confined to the educated or to those who fulfil political duties? Then again, we know that the masses are not our masters, and that they are more likely to become so if we educate them. In modern politics so many interests have to be consulted that we are compelled to do, not what is best, but what is possible.

d. Law is the first principle of society, but it cannot supply all the wants of society, and may easily cause more evils than it cures. Plato is aware of the imperfection of law in failing to meet the varieties of circumstances: he is also aware that human life would be intolerable if every detail of it were placed under legal regulation. It may be a great evil that physicians should kill their patients or captains cast away their ships, but it would be a far greater evil if each particular in the practice of medicine or seamanship were regulated by law. Much has been said in modern times about the duty of leaving men to themselves, which is supposed to be the best way of taking care of them. The question is often asked, What are the limits of legislation in relation to morals? And the answer is to the same effect, that morals must take care of themselves. There is a one-sided truth in these answers, if they are regarded as condemnations of the interference with commerce in the last century or of clerical persecution in the Middle Ages. But '*laissez-faire*' is not the best but only the second best. What the best is, Plato does not attempt to determine; he only contrasts the imperfection of law with the wisdom of the perfect ruler.

Laws should be just, but they must also be certain, and we are obliged to sacrifice something of their justice to their certainty. Suppose a wise and good judge, who paying little or no regard to the law, attempted to decide with perfect justice the cases that were brought before him. To the uneducated person he would appear to be the ideal of a judge. Such justice has been often



*Statesman.* exercised in primitive times, or at the present day among eastern rulers. But in the first place it depends entirely on the personal character of the judge. He may be honest, but there is no check upon his dishonesty, and his opinion can only be overruled, not by any principle of law, but by the opinion of another judging like himself without law. In the second place, even if he be ever so honest, his mode of deciding questions would introduce an element of uncertainty into human life; no one would know beforehand what would happen to him, or would seek to conform in his conduct to any rule of law. For the compact which the law makes with men, that they shall be protected if they observe the law in their dealings with one another, would have to be substituted another principle of a more general character, that they shall be protected by the law if they act rightly in their dealings with one another. The complexity of human actions and also the uncertainty of their effects would be increased tenfold. For one of the principal advantages of law is not merely that it enforces honesty, but that it makes men act in the same way, and requires them to produce the same evidence of their acts. Too many laws may be the sign of a corrupt and overcivilized state of society, too few are the sign of an uncivilized one; as soon as commerce begins to grow, men make themselves customs which have the validity of laws. Even equity, which is the exception to the law, conforms to fixed rules and lies for the most part within the limits of previous decisions.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

IV. The bitterness of the Statesman is characteristic of Plato's later style, in which the thoughts of youth and love have fled away, and we are no longer attended by the Muses or the Graces. We do not venture to say that Plato was soured by old age, but certainly the kindness and courtesy of the earlier dialogues have disappeared. He sees the world under a harder and grimmer aspect: he is dealing with the reality of things, not with visions or pictures of them: he is seeking by the aid of dialectic only, to arrive at truth. He is deeply impressed with the importance of classification: in this alone he finds the true measure of human things; and very often in the process of division curious results are obtained. For the dialectical art is no respecter of persons: king and vermin-taker are all alike to the philosopher. There may have been a time when the king

was a god, but he now is pretty much on a level with his subjects in breeding and education. Man should be well advised that he is only one of the animals, and the Hellene in particular should be aware that he himself was the author of the distinction between Hellene and Barbarian, and that the Phrygian would equally divide mankind into Phrygians and Barbarians, and that some intelligent animal, like a crane, might go a step further, and divide the animal world into cranes and all other animals. Plato cannot help laughing (cp. Theaet. 174) when he thinks of the king running after his subjects, like the pig-driver or the bird-taker. He would seriously have him consider how many competitors there are to his throne, chiefly among the class of serving-men. A good deal of meaning is lurking in the expression—‘There is no art of feeding mankind worthy the name.’ There is a similar depth in the remark,—‘The wonder about states is not that they are short-lived, but that they last so long in spite of the badness of their rulers.’

V. There is also a paradoxical element in the Statesman which delights in reversing the accustomed use of words. The law which to the Greek was the highest object of reverence is an ignorant and brutal tyrant—the tyrant is converted into a beneficent king. The sophist too is no longer, as in the earlier dialogues, the rival of the statesman, but assumes his form. Plato sees that the ideal of the state in his own day is more and more severed from the actual. From such ideals as he had once formed, he turns away to contemplate the decline of the Greek cities which were far worse now in his old age than they had been in his youth, and were to become worse and worse in the ages which followed. He cannot contain his disgust at the contemporary statesmen, sophists who had turned politicians, in various forms of men and animals, appearing, some like lions and centaurs, others like satyrs and monkeys. In this new disguise the Sophists make their last appearance on the scene: in the *Laws* Plato appears to have forgotten them, or at any rate makes only a slight allusion to them in a single passage (*Laws* x, 908 D).

VI. The Statesman is naturally connected with the Sophist. At first sight we are surprised to find that the Eleatic Stranger discourses to us, not only concerning the nature of Being and

*Statesman.* Not-being, but concerning the king and statesman. We perceive, however, that there is no inappropriateness in his maintaining the character of chief speaker, when we remember the close connexion which is assumed by Plato to exist between politics and dialectic. In both dialogues the Proteus Sophist is exhibited, first, in the disguise of an Eristic, secondly, of a false statesman. There are several lesser features which the two dialogues have in common. The styles and the situations of the speakers are very similar; there is the same love of division, and in both of them the mind of the writer is greatly occupied about method, to which he had probably intended to return in the projected 'Philosopher.'

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The Statesman stands midway between the Republic and the Laws, and is also related to the Timaeus. The mythical or cosmical element reminds us of the Timaeus, the ideal of the Republic. A previous chaos in which the elements as yet were not, is hinted at both in the Timaeus and Statesman. The same ingenious arts of giving verisimilitude to a fiction are practised in both dialogues, and in both, as well as in the myth at the end of the Republic, Plato touches on the subject of necessity and free-will. The words in which he describes the miseries of states seem to be an amplification of the 'Cities will never cease from ill' of the Republic. The point of view in both is the same; and the differences not really important, e.g. in the myth, or in the account of the different kinds of states. But the treatment of the subject in the Statesman is fragmentary, and the shorter and later work, as might be expected, is less finished, and less worked out in detail. The idea of measure and the arrangement of the sciences supply connecting links both with the Republic and the Philebus.

Moré than any of the preceding dialogues, the Statesman seems to approximate in thought and language to the Laws. There is the same decline and tendency to monotony in style, the same self-consciousness, awkwardness, and over-civility (cp. 257 A, 263 B, 265 B, 277 A, B, 283 C, 286 B, 293 A); and in the Laws is contained the pattern of that second best form of government, which, after all, is admitted to be the only attainable one in this world. The 'gentle violence,' the marriage of dissimilar natures, the figure of the warp and the woof, are also found

in the Laws. Both expressly recognize the conception of a first or ideal state, which has receded into an invisible heaven. Nor does the account of the origin and growth of society really differ in them, if we make allowance for the mythic character of the narrative in the Statesman. The virtuous tyrant is common to both of them; and the Eleatic Stranger takes up a position similar to that of the Athenian Stranger in the Laws.

Statesman.  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

VII. There would have been little disposition to doubt the genuineness of the Sophist and Statesman, if they had been compared with the Laws rather than with the Republic, and the Laws had been received, as they ought to be, on the authority of Aristotle and on the ground of their intrinsic excellence, as an undoubted work of Plato. The detailed consideration of the genuineness and order of the Platonic dialogues has been reserved for another place: a few of the reasons for defending the Sophist and Statesman may be given here.

1. The excellence, importance, and metaphysical originality of the two dialogues: no works at once so good and of such length are known to have proceeded from the hands of a forger.

2. The resemblances in them to other dialogues of Plato are such as might be expected to be found in works of the same author, and not in those of an imitator, being too subtle and minute to have been invented by another. The similar passages and turns of thought are generally inferior to the parallel passages in his earlier writings; and we might *à priori* have expected that, if altered, they would have been improved. But the comparison of the Laws proves that this repetition of his own thoughts and words in an inferior form is characteristic of Plato's later style.

3. The close connexion of them with the Theaetetus, Parmenides, and Philebus, involves the fate of these dialogues, as well as of the two suspected ones.

4. The suspicion of them seems mainly to rest on a presumption that in Plato's writings we may expect to find an uniform type of doctrine and opinion. But however we arrange the order, or narrow the circle of the dialogues, we must admit that they exhibit a growth and progress in the mind of Plato. And the appearance of change or progress is not to be regarded as impugning the

*No fixed type of Platonic thought.*

**Statesman.** genuineness of any particular writings, but may be even an argument in their favour. If we suppose the Sophist and Politicus to stand halfway between the Republic and the Laws, and in near connexion with the Theaetetus, the Parmenides, the Philebus, the arguments against them derived from differences of thought and style disappear or may be said without paradox in some degree to confirm their genuineness. There is no such interval between the Republic or Phaedrus and the two suspected dialogues, as that which separates all the earlier writings of Plato from the Laws. And the Theaetetus, Parmenides, and Philebus, supply links, by which, however different from them, they may be reunited with the great body of the Platonic writings.

INTRODUCTION.

# STATESMAN.

## PERSONS OF THE DIALOGUE.

THEODORUS.

SOCRATES.

THE ELEATIC STRANGER.

THE YOUNGER SOCRATES.

**Steph.** *Socrates.* I owe you many thanks, indeed, Theodorus, for  
<sup>257</sup> the acquaintance both of Theaetetus and of the Stranger.

*Theodorus.* And in a little while, Socrates, you will owe me three times as many, when they have completed for you the delineation of the Statesman and of the Philosopher, as well as of the Sophist.

*Soc.* Sophist, statesman, philosopher! O my dear Theodorus, do my ears truly witness that this is the estimate formed of them by the great calculator and geometrician?

*Theod.* What do you mean, Socrates?

*Soc.* I mean that you rate them all at the same value, whereas they are really separated by an interval, which no geometrical ratio can express.

*Theod.* By Ammon, the god of Cyrene, Socrates, that is a very fair hit; and shows that you have not forgotten your geometry. I will retaliate on you at some other time, but I must now ask the Stranger, who will not, I hope, tire of his goodness to us, to proceed either with the Statesman or with the Philosopher, whichever he prefers.

*Stranger.* That is my duty, Theodorus; having begun I must go on, and not leave the work unfinished. But what shall be done with Theaetetus?

*Theod.* In what respect?

*Str.* Shall we relieve him, and take his companion, the Young Socrates, instead of him? What do you advise?

*Statesman*

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
STRANGER.

Only a third of our task is done, or rather much less than a third; such a geometrician as Theodorus must know that the Statesman rises above the Sophist, and the Philosopher above the Statesman, in more than a geometrical ratio.

*Statesman.* *Theod.* Yes, give the other a turn, as you propose. The young always do better when they have intervals of rest.

SOCRATES,  
THEODORUS,  
STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES

*Soc.* I think, Stranger, that both of them may be said to be in some way related to me; for the one, as you affirm, has<sup>1</sup> the cut of my ugly face<sup>1</sup>, the other is called by my name. And we should always be on the look-out to recognize a kinsman by the style of his conversation. I myself was discoursing with Theaetetus yesterday, and I have just been listening to his answers; my namesake I have not yet examined, but I must. Another time will do for me; to-day let him answer you.

Socrates  
encourages  
his young  
namesake  
to dis-  
course  
with the  
Stranger.

*Str.* Very good. Young Socrates, do you hear what the elder Socrates is proposing?

*Young Socrates.* I do.

*Str.* And do you agree to his proposal?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

After the  
Sophist  
comes the  
Statesman.

*Str.* As you do not object, still less can I. After the Sophist, then, I think that the Statesman naturally follows next in the order of enquiry. And please to say, whether he, too, should be ranked among those who have science.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* Then the sciences must be divided as before?

*Y. Soc.* I dare say.

*Str.* But yet the division will not be the same?

*Y. Soc.* How then?

*Str.* They will be divided at some other point.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

Where  
among the  
sciences  
shall we  
discover  
his path?

*Str.* Where shall we discover the path of the Statesman? We must find and separate off, and set our seal upon this, and we will set the mark of another class upon all diverging paths. Thus the soul will conceive of all kinds of knowledge under two classes.

*Y. Soc.* To find the path is your business, Stranger, and not mine.

*Str.* Yes, Socrates, but the discovery, when once made, must be yours as well as mine.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Well, and are not arithmetic and certain other

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Theaet. 143 E.

kindred arts, merely abstract knowledge, wholly separated from action? *Statesman.*

*Y. Soc.* True.

STPANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Str.* But in the art of carpentering and all other handicrafts, the knowledge of the workman is merged in his work; he not only knows, but he also makes things which previously did not exist.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Then let us divide sciences in general into those which are practical and those which are purely intellectual. *Sciences are practical or intellectual.*

*Y. Soc.* Let us assume these two divisions of science, which is one whole.

*Str.* And are 'statesman,' 'king,' 'master,' or 'householder,' one and the same; or is there a science or art answering to each of these names? Or rather, allow me to put the matter in another way.

259 *Y. Soc.* Let me hear.

*Str.* If any one who is in a private station has the skill to advise one of the public physicians, must not he also be called a physician?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And if any one who is in a private station is able to advise the ruler of a country, may not he be said to have the knowledge which the ruler himself ought to have?

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* But surely the science of a true king is royal science?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And will not he who possesses this knowledge, whether he happens to be a ruler or a private man, when regarded only in reference to his art, be truly called 'royal'?

*Y. Soc.* He certainly ought to be.

*Str.* And the householder and master are the same?

*Y. Soc.* Of course.

*Str.* Again, a large household may be compared to a small state:—will they differ at all, as far as government is concerned?

*Y. Soc.* They will not.

*Str.* Then, returning to the point which we were just now discussing, do we not clearly see that there is one science of all of them; and this science may be called either royal or

We note that royal science may be possessed by a private man as well as by a king, and that a large household is like a small state; whence we draw the inference that king, statesman, master, householder are the same.



*Statesman.* political or economical; we will not quarrel with any one about the name.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

*Str.* This, too, is evident, that the king cannot do much with his hands, or with his whole body, towards the maintenance of his empire, compared with what he does by the intelligence and strength of his mind.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly not.

The royal science has a greater affinity to knowledge than to the manual arts or to practical life.

*Str.* Then, shall we say that the king has a greater affinity to knowledge than to manual arts and to practical life in general?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly he has.

*Str.* Then we may put all together as one and the same—statesmanship and the statesman—the kingly science and the king.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly.

*Str.* And now we shall only be proceeding in due order if we go on to divide the sphere of knowledge?

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Think whether you can find any joint or parting in knowledge.

*Y. Soc.* Tell me of what sort.

Arithmetic is the type of one kind of abstract science,—which judges; the art of building of another,—which commands.

*Str.* Such as this: You may remember that we made an art of calculation?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* Which was, unmistakeably, one of the arts of knowledge?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* And to this art of calculation which discerns the differences of numbers shall we assign any other function except to pass judgment on their differences?

*Y. Soc.* How could we?

*Str.* You know that the master-builder does not work himself, but is the ruler of workmen?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* He contributes knowledge, not manual labour?

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And may therefore be justly said to share in theoretical science?

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Str.* But he ought not, like the calculator, to regard his functions as at an end when he has formed a judgment ;— he must assign to the individual workmen their appropriate task until they have completed the work.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* Are not all such sciences, no less than arithmetic and the like, subjects of pure knowledge ; and is not the difference between the two classes, that the one sort has the power of judging only, and the other of ruling as well ?

*Y. Soc.* That is evident.

*Str.* May we not very properly say, that of all knowledge, there are two divisions—one which rules, and the other which judges ?

*Y. Soc.* I should think so.

*Str.* And when men have anything to do in common, that they should be of one mind is surely a desirable thing ?

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Then while we are at unity among ourselves, we need not mind about the fancies of others ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

*Str.* And now, in which of these divisions shall we place the king ?—Is he a judge and a kind of spectator ? Or shall we assign to him the art of command—for he is a ruler ?

The king's knowledge is of the commanding sort, and falls in that division of it which is supreme, not subordinate.

*Y. Soc.* The latter, clearly.

*Str.* Then we must see whether there is any mark of division in the art of command too. I am inclined to think that there is a distinction similar to that of manufacturer and retail dealer, which parts off the king from the herald.

*Y. Soc.* How is this ?

*Str.* Why, does not the retailer receive and sell over again the productions of others, which have been sold before ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly he does.

*Str.* And is not the herald under command, and does he not receive orders, and in his turn give them to others ?

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Then shall we mingle the kingly art in the same class with the art of the herald, the interpreter, the boatswain, the prophet, and the numerous kindred arts which exercise command ; or, as in the preceding comparison we spoke of manufacturers, or sellers for themselves, and of retailers,—

*Statesman.* seeing, too, that the class of supreme rulers, or rulers for themselves, is almost nameless—shall we make a word following the same analogy, and refer kings to a supreme or ruling-for-self science, leaving the rest to receive a name from some one else? For we are seeking the ruler; and our enquiry is not concerned with him who is not a ruler.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Thus a very fair distinction has been attained between 261 the man who gives his own commands, and him who gives another's. And now let us see if the supreme power allows of any further division.

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

*Str.* I think that it does; and please to assist me in making the division.

*Y. Soc.* At what point?

Command is for the sake of production,

*Str.* May not all rulers be supposed to command for the sake of producing something?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Nor is there any difficulty in dividing the things produced into two classes.

*Y. Soc.* How would you divide them?

*Str.* Of the whole class, some have life and some are without life.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And by the help of this distinction we may make, if we please, a subdivision of the section of knowledge which commands.

*Y. Soc.* At what point?

which is either (1) of lifeless, or (2) of living objects. . . The latter is the function of the king;

*Str.* One part may be set over the production of lifeless, the other of living objects; and in this way the whole will be divided.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* That division, then, is complete; and now we may leave one half, and take up the other; which may also be divided into two.

*Y. Soc.* Which of the two halves do you mean?

*Str.* Of course that which exercises command about animals. For, surely, the royal science is not like that of a master-workman, a science presiding over lifeless objects;—

the king has a nobler function, which is the management and control of living beings.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And the breeding and tending of living beings may be observed to be sometimes a tending of the individual ; in other cases, a common care of creatures in flocks ?

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* But the statesman is not a tender of individuals — not like the driver or groom of a single ox or horse ; he is rather to be compared with the keeper of a drove of horses or oxen.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, I see, thanks to you.

*Str.* Shall we call this art of tending many animals together, the art of managing a herd, or the art of collective management ?

*Y. Soc.* No matter ;—whichever suggests itself to us in the course of conversation.

*Str.* Very good, Socrates ; and, if you continue to be not too particular about names, you will be all the richer in wisdom when you are an old man. And now, as you say, leaving the discussion of the name,—can you see a way in  
262 which a person, by showing the art of herding to be of two kinds, may cause that which is now sought amongst twice the number of things, to be then sought amongst half that number ?

*Y. Soc.* I will try ;—there appears to me to be one management of men and another of beasts.

*Str.* You have certainly divided them in a most straightforward and manly style ; but you have fallen into an error which hereafter I think that we had better avoid.

*Y. Soc.* What is the error ?

*Str.* I think that we had better not cut off a single small portion which is not a species, from many larger portions ; the part should be a species. To separate off at once the subject of investigation, is a most excellent plan, if only the separation be rightly made ; and you were under the impression that you were right, because you saw that you would come to man ; and this led you to hasten the steps. But you should not chip off too small a piece, my friend ; the safer way is to cut through the middle ; which is also the

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

and he is the manager, not merely of individuals, but of creatures united in flocks.

It matters not whether we call his art managing a herd or collective management. If a man is not too particular about words, he will be all the richer in wisdom when he grows old.

Management of herds is of two kinds, —of men, and of beasts - - But not so fast

We have omitted intermediate steps, having only cut off one class from all the rest.

*Statesman.* more likely way of finding classes. Attention to this principle makes all the difference in a process of enquiry.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean, Stranger?

*Str.* I will endeavour to speak more plainly out of love to your good parts, Socrates; and, although I cannot at present entirely explain myself, I will try, as we proceed, to make my meaning a little clearer.

*Y. Soc.* What was the error of which, as you say, we were guilty in our recent division?

Hellenes  
and barbarians is  
a similar  
example of  
false  
division.

*Str.* The error was just as if some one who wanted to divide the human race, were to divide them after the fashion which prevails in this part of the world; here they cut off the Hellenes as one species, and all the other species of mankind, which are innumerable, and have no ties or common language, they include under the single name of 'barbarians,' and because they have one name they are supposed to be of one species also. Or suppose that in dividing numbers you were to cut off ten thousand from all the rest, and make of it one species, comprehending the rest under another separate name, you might say that here too was a single class, because you had given it a single name. Whereas you would make a much better and more equal and logical classification of numbers, if you divided them into odd and even; or of the human species, if you divided them into male and female; and only separated off Lydians or Phrygians, or any other tribe, and arrayed them against the rest of the world, when you could no longer make a division into parts which were also classes.

-263

Part and  
class.

*Y. Soc.* Very true; but I wish that this distinction between a part and a class could still be made somewhat plainer.

*Str.* O Socrates, best of men, you are imposing upon me a very difficult task. We have already digressed further from our original intention than we ought, and you would have us wander still further away. But we must now return to our subject; and hereafter, when there is a leisure hour, we will follow up the other track; at the same time, I wish you to guard against imagining that you ever heard me declare—

*Y. Soc.* What?

*Str.* That a class and a part are distinct.

Y. Soc. What did I hear, then?

Statesman.

Str. That a class is necessarily a part, but there is no similar necessity that a part should be a class; that is the view which I should always wish you to attribute to me, Socrates.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Y. Soc. So be it.

Str. There is another thing which I should like to know.

Y. Soc. What is it?

Str. The point at which we digressed; for, if I am not mistaken, the exact place was at the question, Where you would divide the management of herds. To this you appeared rather too ready to answer that there were two species of animals; man being one, and all brutes making up the other.

Y. Soc. True.

Str. I thought that in taking away a part, you imagined that the remainder formed a class, because you were able to call them by the common name of brutes.

Y. Soc. That again is true.

Str. Suppose now, O most courageous of dialecticians, that some wise and understanding creature, such as a crane is reputed to be, were, in imitation of you, to make a similar division, and set up cranes against all other animals to their own special glorification, at the same time jumbling together all the others, including man, under the appellation of brutes,—here would be the sort of error which we must try to avoid.

The crane would divide living creatures into 'cranes and all other animals.'

Y. Soc. How can we be safe?

Str. If we do not divide the whole class of animals, we shall be less likely to fall into that error.

Y. Soc. We had better not take the whole?

Str. Yes, there lay the source of error in our former division.

Y. Soc. How?

Str. You remember how that part of the art of knowledge which was concerned with command, had to do with the rearing of living creatures,—I mean, with animals in herds?

Y. Soc. Yes.

264 Str. In that case, there was already implied a division of all animals into tame and wild; those whose nature can be

In our haste we omitted this

*Statesman.* tamed are called tame, and those which cannot be tamed are called wild.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

division of  
animals  
into tame  
and wild.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And the political science of which we are in search, is and ever was concerned with tame animals, and is also confined to gregarious animals.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* But then we ought not to divide, as we did, taking the whole class at once. Neither let us be in too great haste to arrive quickly at the political science; for this mistake has already brought upon us the misfortune of which the proverb speaks.

*Y. Soc.* What misfortune?

*Str.* The misfortune of too much haste, which is too little speed.

*Y. Soc.* And all the better, Stranger; we got what we deserved.

*Str.* Very well: Let us then begin again, and endeavour to divide the collective rearing of animals; for probably the completion of the argument will best show what you are so anxious to know. Tell me, then—

*Y. Soc.* What?

The  
collective  
rearing of  
animals  
includes  
the rearing  
of both land  
and water  
herds.

*Str.* Have you ever heard, as you very likely may—for I do not suppose that you ever actually visited them—of the preserves of fishes in the Nile, and in the ponds of the Great King; or you may have seen similar preserves in wells at home?

*Y. Soc.* Yes, to be sure, I have seen them, and I have often heard the others described.

*Str.* And you may have heard also, and may have been assured by report, although you have not travelled in those regions, of nurseries of geese and cranes in the plains of Thessaly?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* I asked you, because here is a new division of the management of herds, into the management of land and of water herds.

*Y. Soc.* There is.

*Str.* And do you agree that we ought to divide the collective rearing of herds into two corresponding parts, the

one the rearing of water, and the other the rearing of land herds? *Statesman.*

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

STRANGER  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES

*Str.* There is surely no need to ask which of these two contains the royal art, for it is evident to everybody.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Any one can divide the herds which feed on dry land? *Land herds are of flying or walking animals.*

*Y. Soc.* How would you divide them?

*Str.* I should distinguish between those which fly and those which walk.

*Y. Soc.* Most true.

*Str.* And where shall we look for the political animal? Might not an idiot, so to speak, know that he is a pedestrian?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* The art of managing the walking animal has to be further divided, just as you might halve an even number.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly.

265 *Str.* Let me note that here appear in view two ways to that part or class which the argument aims at reaching,—the one a speedier way, which cuts off a small portion and leaves a large; the other agrees better with the principle which we were laying down, that as far as we can we should divide in the middle; but it is longer. We can take either of them, whichever we please. *At this point we may take either a shorter or a longer way.*

*Y. Soc.* Cannot we have both ways?

*Str.* Together? What a thing to ask! but, if you take them in turn, you clearly may.

*Y. Soc.* Then I should like to have them in turn.

*Str.* There will be no difficulty, as we are near the end; if we had been at the beginning, or in the middle, I should have demurred to your request; but now, in accordance with your desire, let us begin with the longer way; while we are fresh, we shall get on better. And now attend to the division. *Let us begin with the longer one.*

*Y. Soc.* Let me hear.

*Str.* The tame walking herding animals are distributed by nature into two classes. *The tame walking and herding*

*Y. Soc.* Upon what principle?



*Statesman.* *Str.* The one grows horns; and the other is without horns.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly.

animals  
fall into  
two classes,  
as they are  
with or  
without  
horns;

*Str.* Suppose that you divide the science which manages pedestrian animals into two corresponding parts, and define them; for if you try to invent names for them, you will find the intricacy too great.

*Y. Soc.* How must I speak of them, then?

*Str.* In this way: let the science of managing pedestrian animals be divided into two parts, and one part assigned to the horned herd, and the other to the herd that has no horns.

*Y. Soc.* All that you say has been abundantly proved, and may therefore be assumed.

*Str.* The king is clearly the shepherd of a polled herd, who have no horns.

*Y. Soc.* That is evident.

*Str.* Shall we break up this hornless herd into sections, and endeavour to assign to him what is his?

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

and the  
latter into  
those who  
do and do  
not mix  
the breed.

*Str.* Shall we distinguish them by their having or not having cloven feet, or by their mixing or not mixing the breed? You know what I mean.

*Y. Soc.* What?

*Str.* I mean that horses and asses naturally breed from one another.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* But the remainder of the hornless herd of tame animals will not mix the breed.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

The States-  
man has to  
do with the  
unmixed.

*Str.* And of which has the Statesman charge,—of the mixed or of the unmixed race?

*Y. Soc.* Clearly of the unmixed.

*Str.* I suppose that we must divide this again as before.

*Y. Soc.* We must.

Dogs are  
not herding  
animals,  
and may  
therefore  
be ex-  
cluded.

*Str.* Every tame and herding animal has now been split up, with the exception of two species; for I hardly think that dogs should be reckoned among gregarious animals.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not; but how shall we divide the two remaining species?

*Str.* There is a measure of difference which may be appropriately employed by you and Theaetetus, who are students of geometry. *Statesman.*

*Y. Soc.* What is that?

*Str.* The diameter; and, again, the diameter of a diameter<sup>1</sup>.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* How does man walk, but as a diameter whose power is two feet?

*Y. Soc.* Just so.

*Str.* And the power of the remaining kind, being the power of twice two feet, may be said to be the diameter of our diameter.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly; and now I think that I pretty nearly understand you.

*Str.* In these divisions, Socrates, I descry what would make another famous jest.

*Y. Soc.* What is it?

*Str.* Human beings have come out in the same class with the freest and airiest of creation, and have been running a race with them.

*Y. Soc.* I remark that very singular coincidence.

*Str.* And would you not expect the slowest to arrive last?

*Y. Soc.* Indeed I should.

*Str.* And there is a still more ridiculous consequence, that the king is found running about with the herd, and in close competition with the bird-catcher, who of all mankind is most of an adept at the airy life<sup>2</sup>.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Then here, Socrates, is still clearer evidence of the truth of what was said in the enquiry about the Sophist<sup>3</sup>.

*Y. Soc.* What?

*Str.* That the dialectical method is no respecter of persons,

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Next follows the division into bipeds and quadrupeds, who may be described mathematically as having a power of two and four feet.

What fun! Men and birds alone remain, and the bird-catcher is running a race with the king.

Truly dialectic is no respecter of persons.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Meno 82 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Plato is here introducing a new subdivision, i. e. that of bipeds into men and birds. Others however refer the passage to the division into quadrupeds and bipeds, making pigs compete with human beings and the pig-driver with the king. According to this explanation we must translate the words above, 'freest and airiest of creation,' 'worthiest and laziest of creation.'

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Soph. 227 B.

*Statesman.* and does not set the great above the small, but always arrives in her own way at the truest result.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly.

The shorter  
road.—  
Land-  
animals are  
bipeds or  
quad-  
rupeds,  
and bipeds  
feathered  
or without  
feathers.  
the latter  
= man.

*Str.* And now, I will not wait for you to ask me, but will of my own accord take you by the shorter road to the definition of a king.

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

*Str.* I say that we should have begun at first by dividing land animals into biped and quadruped; and since the winged herd, and that alone, comes out in the same class with man, we should divide bipeds into those which have feathers and those which have not, and when they have been divided, and the art of the management of mankind is brought to light, the time will have come to produce our Statesman and ruler, and set him like a charioteer in his place, and hand over to him the reins of state, for that too is a vocation which belongs to him.

*Y. Soc.* Very good; you have paid me the debt,—I mean, 267 that you have completed the argument, and I suppose that you added the digression by way of interest<sup>1</sup>.

*Str.* Then now, let us go back to the beginning, and join the links, which together make the definition of the name of the Statesman's art.

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

Recapitu-  
lation.

*Str.* The science of pure knowledge had, as we said originally, a part which was the science of rule or command, and from this was derived another part, which was called command-for-self, on the analogy of selling-for-self; an important section of this was the management of living animals, and this again was further limited to the management of them in herds, and again in herds of pedestrian animals. The chief division of the latter was the art of managing pedestrian animals which are without horns; this again has a part which can only be comprehended under one term by joining together three names,—shepherding pure-bred animals. The only further subdivision is the art of man-herding,—this has to do with bipeds, and is what we were seeking after, and have now found, being at once the royal and political.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Rep. VI. 507 A.

Y. Soc. To be sure.

Str. And do you think, Socrates, that we really have done as you say?

Y. Soc. What?

Str. Do you think, I mean, that we have really fulfilled our intention?—There has been a sort of discussion, and yet the investigation seems to me not to be perfectly worked out: this is where the enquiry fails.

Y. Soc. I do not understand.

Str. I will try to make the thought, which is at this moment present in my mind, clearer to us both.

Y. Soc. Let me hear.

Str. There were many arts of shepherding, and one of them was the political, which had the charge of one particular herd?

Y. Soc. Yes.

Str. And this the argument defined to be the art of rearing, not horses or other brutes, but the art of rearing man collectively?

Y. Soc. True.

Str. Note, however, a difference which distinguishes the king from all other shepherds.

Y. Soc. To what do you refer?

Str. I want to ask, whether any one of the other herdsmen has a rival who professes and claims to share with him in the management of the herd<sup>1</sup>?

Y. Soc. What do you mean?

Str. I mean to say that merchants, husbandmen, providers of food, and also training-masters and physicians, will all contend with the herdsmen of humanity, whom we call Statesmen, declaring that they themselves have the care of rearing or managing mankind, and that they rear not only the common herd, but also the rulers themselves.

Y. Soc. Are they not right in saying so?

Str. Very likely they may be, and we will consider their claim. But we are certain of this,—that no one will raise a similar claim as against the herdsman, who is allowed on all hands to be the sole and only feeder and physician of his

Statesman.

SIRANFR,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

But the  
argument  
is not  
really at  
an end.

The king,  
unlike other  
herdsmen,  
has many  
rivals, who  
dispute  
his claims  
to the  
manage-  
ment of  
the herd.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *ἐῖ τις τῶν ἄλλων τφ.*

*Statesman.* herd ; he is also their match-maker and accoucheur ; no one else knows that department of science. And he is their merry-maker and musician, as far as their nature is susceptible of such influences, and no one can console and soothe his own herd better than he can, either with the natural tones of his voice or with instruments. And the same may be said of tenders of animals in general.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* But if this is as you say, can our argument about the king be true and unimpeachable ? Were we right in selecting him out of ten thousand other claimants to be the shepherd and rearer of the human flock ?

*Y. Soc.* Surely not.

How then  
can we  
maintain  
his  
position ?

*Str.* Had we not reason just now<sup>1</sup> to apprehend, that although we may have described a sort of royal form, we have not as yet accurately worked out the true image of the Statesman ? and that we cannot reveal him as he truly is in his own nature, until we have disengaged and separated him from those who hang about him and claim to share in his prerogatives ?

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And that, Socrates, is what we must do, if we do not mean to bring disgrace upon the argument at its close.

*Y. Soc.* We must certainly avoid that.

*Str.* Then let us make a new beginning, and travel by a different road.

*Y. Soc.* What road ?

We reply  
by telling  
a famous  
tale, which  
is amusing  
as well as  
instructive.

*Str.* I think that we may have a little amusement ; there is a famous tale, of which a good portion may with advantage be interwoven, and then we may resume our series of divisions, and proceed in the old path until we arrive at the desired summit. Shall we do as I say ?

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

*Str.* Listen, then, to a tale which a child would love to hear ; and you are not too old for childish amusement.

*Y. Soc.* Let me hear.

*Str.* There did really happen, and will again happen, like many other events of which ancient tradition has preserved

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*. 267 C. D.

the record, the portent which is traditionally said to have occurred in the quarrel of Atreus and Thyestes. You have heard, no doubt, and remember what they say happened at that time?

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* I suppose you to mean the token of the birth of the golden lamb.

269 *Str.* No, not that; but another part of the story, which tells how the sun and the stars once rose in the west, and set in the east, and that the god reversed their motion, and gave them that which they now have as a testimony to the right of Atreus.

We have all heard fragments of it, such as the reversal of the motion of sun and stars, the reign of Cronus, and the story of the earth-born men.

*Y. Soc.* Yes; there is that legend also.

*Str.* Again, we have been often told of the reign of Cronos.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, very often.

*Str.* Did you ever hear that the men of former times were earth-born, and not begotten of one another?

*Y. Soc.* Yes, that is another old tradition.

*Str.* All these stories, and ten thousand others which are still more wonderful, have a common origin; many of them have been lost in the lapse of ages, or are repeated only in a disconnected form; but the origin of them is what no one has told, and may as well be told now; for the tale is suited to throw light on the nature of the king.

*Y. Soc.* Very good; and I hope that you will give the whole story, and leave out nothing.

*Str.* Listen, then. There is a time when God himself guides and helps to roll the world in its course; and there is a time, on the completion of a certain cycle, when he lets go, and the world being a living creature, and having originally received intelligence from its author and creator, turns about and by an inherent necessity revolves in the opposite direction.

The whole of the story.— There is a time when God moves and guides the world, and there is a time when he lets go, and the world moves itself but in an opposite direction. This change of motion, which is the

*Y. Soc.* Why is that?

*Str.* Why, because only the most divine things of all remain ever unchanged and the same, and body is not included in this class. Heaven and the universe, as we have termed them, although they have been endowed by the Creator with many glories, partake of a bodily nature, and therefore cannot be entirely free from perturbation. But their motion is, as far as possible, single and in the same

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

slightest  
possible, is  
due to the  
material  
element in  
the world.

place, and of the same kind ; and is therefore only subject to a reversal, which is the least alteration possible. For the lord of all moving things is alone able to move of himself ; and to think that he moves them at one time in one direction and at another time in another is blasphemy. Hence we must not say that the world is either self-moved always, or all made to go round by God in two opposite courses ; or that two Gods, having opposite purposes, make it move 270 round. But as I have already said (and this is the only remaining alternative) the world is guided at one time by an external power which is divine and receives fresh life and immortality from the renewing hand of the Creator, and again, when let go, moves spontaneously, being set free at such a time as to have, during infinite cycles of years, a reverse movement : this is due to its perfect balance, to its vast size, and to the fact that it turns on the smallest pivot.

*Y. Soc.* Your account of the world seems to be very reasonable indeed.

*Str.* Let us now reflect and try to gather from what has been said the nature of the phenomenon which we affirmed to be the cause of all these wonders. It is this.

*Y. Soc.* What ?

*Str.* The reversal which takes place from time to time of the motion of the universe.

*Y. Soc.* How is that the cause ?

*Str.* Of all changes of the heavenly motions, we may consider this to be the greatest and most complete.

*Y. Soc.* I should imagine so.

*Str.* And it may be supposed to result in the greatest changes to the human beings who are the inhabitants of the world at the time.

*Y. Soc.* Such changes would naturally occur.

*Str.* And animals, as we know, survive with difficulty great and serious changes of many different kinds when they come upon them at once.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Hence there necessarily occurs a great destruction of them, which extends also to the life of man ; few survivors of the race are left, and those who remain become the subjects of several novel and remarkable phenomena, and of one in

particular, which takes place at the time when the transition is made to the cycle opposite to that in which we are now living.

*Y. Soc.* What is it?

*Str.* The life of all animals first came to a standstill, and the mortal nature ceased to be or look older, and was then reversed and grew young and delicate; the white locks of the aged darkened again, and the cheeks of the bearded man became smooth, and recovered their former bloom; the bodies of youths in their prime grew softer and smaller, continually by day and night returning and becoming assimilated to the nature of a newly-born child in mind as well as body; in the succeeding stage they wasted away and wholly disappeared. And the bodies of those who died by violence at that time quickly passed through the like changes, and in a few days were no more seen.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

At the time of transition from our cycle to the opposite, a retrogression takes place in the life of men and animals.

271 *Y. Soc.* Then how, Stranger, were the animals created in those days; and in what way were they begotten of one another?

*Str.* It is evident, Socrates, that there was no such thing in the then order of nature as the procreation of animals from one another; the earth-born race, of which we hear in story, was the one which existed in those days—they rose again from the ground; and of this tradition, which is now-a-days often unduly discredited, our ancestors, who were nearest in point of time to the end of the last period and came into being at the beginning of this, are to us the heralds. And mark how consistent the sequel of the tale is; after the return of age to youth, follows the return of the dead, who are lying in the earth, to life; simultaneously with the reversal of the world the wheel of their generation has been turned back, and they are put together and rise and live in the opposite order, unless God has carried any of them away to some other lot. According to this tradition they of necessity sprang from the earth and have the name of earth-born, and so the above legend clings to them.

Men, in the age of Cronus, sprang, not from one another, but from the earth.

The tale is so consistent that it must be true.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly that is quite consistent with what has preceded; but tell me, was the life which you said existed in the reign of Cronos in that cycle of the world, or in this? For the change in the course of the stars and the sun must have occurred in both.



*Statesman.*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.Description  
of the life  
of inno-  
cence  
which  
prevailed  
in the days  
when God  
governed  
the world.

*Str.* I see that you enter into my meaning;—no, that blessed and spontaneous life does not belong to the present cycle of the world, but to the previous one, in which God superintended the whole revolution of the universe; and the several parts of the universe were distributed under the rule of certain inferior deities, as is the way in some places still. There were demigods, who were the shepherds of the various species and herds of animals, and each one was in all respects sufficient for those of whom he was the shepherd; neither was there any violence, or devouring of one another, or war or quarrel among them; and I might tell of ten thousand other blessings, which belonged to that dispensation. The reason why the life of man was, as tradition says, spontaneous, is as follows: In those days God himself was their shepherd, and ruled over them, just as man, who is by comparison a divine being, still rules over the lower animals. Under him there were no forms of government or separate possession of women and children; for all men rose again from the earth, having no memory of the past. And although they had nothing of this sort, the earth gave them fruits in abundance, which grew on trees and shrubs unbidden, and were not planted by the hand of man. And they dwelt naked, and mostly in the open air, for the temperature of their seasons was mild; and they had no beds, but lay on soft couches of grass, which grew plentifully out of the earth. Such was the life of man in the days of Cronos, Socrates; the character of our present life, which is said to be under Zeus, you know from your own experience. Can you, and will you, determine which of them you deem the happier? 272

Which  
would you  
call hap-  
pier, that  
life or our  
own?*Y. Soc.* Impossible.*Str.* Then shall I determine for you as well as I can?*Y. Soc.* By all means.We cannot  
say; for  
the life of  
innocence  
might be  
a life of  
philosophy,  
or of mere  
eating and  
drinking.

*Str.* Suppose that the nurslings of Cronos, having this boundless leisure, and the power of holding intercourse, not only with men, but with the brute creation, had used all these advantages with a view to philosophy, conversing with the brutes as well as with one another, and learning of every nature which was gifted with any special power, and was able to contribute some special experience to the store of

wisdom, there would be no difficulty in deciding that they would be a thousand times happier than the men of our own day. Or, again, if they had merely eaten and drunk until they were full, and told stories to one another and to the animals—such stories as are now attributed to them—in this case also, as I should imagine, the answer would be easy. But until some satisfactory witness can be found of the love of that age for knowledge and discussion, we had better let the matter drop, and give the reason why we have unearthed this tale, and then we shall be able to get on. In the fulness of time, when the change was to take place, and the earth-born race had all perished, and every soul had completed its proper cycle of births and been sown in the earth her appointed number of times, the pilot of the universe let the helm go, and retired to his place of view; and then Fate and innate desire reversed the motion of the world. Then also all the inferior deities who share the rule of the supreme power, being informed of what was happening, let go the parts of the world which were under their

273 control. And the world turning round with a sudden shock, being impelled in an opposite direction from beginning to end, was shaken by a mighty earthquake, which wrought a new destruction of all manner of animals. Afterwards, when sufficient time had elapsed, the tumult and confusion and earthquake ceased, and the universal creature, once more at peace, attained to a calm, and settled down into his own orderly and accustomed course, having the charge and rule of himself and of all the creatures which are contained in him, and executing, as far as he remembered them, the instructions of his Father and Creator, more precisely at first, but afterwards with less exactness. The reason of the falling off was the admixture of matter in him; this was inherent in the primal nature, which was full of disorder, until attaining to the present order. From God, the constructor, the world received all that is good in him, but from a previous state came elements of evil and unrighteousness, which, thence derived, first of all passed into the world, and were then transmitted to the animals. While the world was aided by the pilot in nurturing the animals, the evil was small, and great the good which he produced, but after the

*Statesman.*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

When God let the world go, at first there was a great earthquake, but things soon settled down.

The creature at first remembered his Creator, but afterwards forgot him. And so there arose great disorder, which continued until God once more took the helm and the old order was reinstated.

*Statesman.*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.At the  
beginning  
of our  
cycle there  
was another  
change in  
the life of  
man, oppo-  
site to the  
former.Man, being  
found un-  
equal  
to the  
struggle  
for exist-  
ence, is  
helped by  
Prometh-  
eus, He-  
phaestus,  
and  
Athene.

separation, when the world was let go, at first all proceeded well enough; but, as time went on, there was more and more forgetting, and the old discord again held sway and burst forth in full glory; and at last small was the good, and great was the admixture of evil, and there was a danger of universal ruin to the world, and to the things contained in him. Wherefore God, the orderer of all, in his tender care, seeing that the world was in great straits, and fearing that all might be dissolved in the storm and disappear in infinite chaos, again seated himself at the helm; and bringing back the elements which had fallen into dissolution and disorder to the motion which had prevailed under his dispensation, he set them in order and restored them, and made the world imperishable and immortal. And this is the whole tale, of which the first part will suffice to illustrate the nature of the king. For when the world turned towards the present cycle of generation, the age of man again stood still, and a change opposite to the previous one was the result. The small creatures which had almost disappeared grew in stature, and the newly-born children of the earth became grey and died and sank into the earth again. All things changed, imitating 274 and following the condition of the universe, and of necessity agreeing with that in their mode of conception and generation and nurture; for no animal was any longer allowed to come into being in the earth through the agency of other creative beings, but as the world was ordained to be the lord of his own progress, in like manner the parts were ordained to grow and generate and give nourishment, as far as they could, of themselves, impelled by a similar movement. And so we have arrived at the real end of this discourse; for although there might be much to tell of the lower animals, and of the condition out of which they changed and of the causes of the change, about men there is not much, and that little is more to the purpose. Deprived of the care of God, who had possessed and tended them, they were left helpless and defenceless, and were torn in pieces by the beasts, who were naturally fierce and had now grown wild. And in the first ages they were still without skill or resource; the food which once grew spontaneously had failed, and as yet they knew not how to procure it, because they had never felt

the pressure of necessity. For all these reasons they were in a great strait; wherefore also the gifts spoken of in the old tradition were imparted to man by the gods, together with so much teaching and education as was indispensable; fire was given to them by Prometheus, the arts by Hephaestus and his fellow-worker, Athene, seeds and plants by others. From these is derived all that has helped to frame human life; since the care of the Gods, as I was saying, had now failed men, and they had to order their course of life for themselves, and were their own masters, just like the universal creature whom they imitate and follow, ever changing, as he changes, and ever living and growing, at one time in one manner, and at another time in another. Enough of the story, which may be of use in showing us how greatly we erred in the delineation of the king and the statesman in our previous discourse.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* What was this great error of which you speak?

*Str.* There were two; the first a lesser one, the other was an error on a much larger and grander scale.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

Two mistakes made by us:—  
(1) we did not speak of a king or statesman of the present cycle; or  
(2) define the nature of his rule.

275 *Str.* I mean to say that when we were asked about a king and statesman of the present cycle and generation, we told of a shepherd of a human flock who belonged to the other cycle, and of one who was a god when he ought to have been a man; and this was a great error. Again, we declared him to be the ruler of the entire State, without explaining how: this was not the whole truth, nor very intelligible; but still it was true, and therefore the second error was not so great as the first.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Before we can expect to have a perfect description of the statesman we must define the nature of his office.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* And the myth was introduced in order to show, not only that all others are rivals of the true shepherd who is the object of our search, but in order that we might have a clearer view of him who is alone worthy to receive this appellation, because he alone of shepherds and herdsmen, according to the image which we have employed, has the care of human beings.

*Statesman.* *Y. Soc.* Very true.

STRANGLER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

The true shepherd is greater even than a king ; for now-a-days kings and their subjects are much upon a level.

Command-for-self over herds should be called not 'rearing of herds,' but by some more general term, such as 'tending' or 'management' of herds, which will include the king.

We may then subdivide the 'tending' of herds as we subdivided the 'rearing' of herds.

*Str.* And I cannot help thinking, Socrates, that the form of the divine shepherd is even higher than that of a king ; whereas the statesmen who are now on earth seem to be much more like their subjects in character, and much more nearly to partake of their breeding and education.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Still they must be investigated all the same, to see whether, like the divine shepherd, they are above their subjects or on a level with them.

*Y. Soc.* Of course.

*Str.* To resume :—Do you remember that we spoke of a command-for-self exercised over animals, not singly but collectively, which we called the art of rearing a herd ?

*Y. Soc.* Yes, I remember.

*Str.* There, somewhere, lay our error ; for we never included or mentioned the Statesman ; and we did not observe that he had no place in our nomenclature.

*Y. Soc.* How was that ?

*Str.* All other herdsmen 'rear' their herds, but this is not a suitable term to apply to the Statesman ; we should use a name which is common to them all.

*Y. Soc.* True, if there be such a name.

*Str.* Why, is not 'care' of herds applicable to all ? For this implies no feeding, or any special duty ; if we say either 'tending' the herds, or 'managing' the herds, or 'having the care' of them, the same word will include all, and then we may wrap up the Statesman with the rest, as the argument seems to require.

*Y. Soc.* Quite right ; but how shall we take the next step 276 in the division ?

*Str.* As before we divided the art of 'rearing' herds accordingly as they were land or water herds, winged and wingless, mixing or not mixing the breed, horned and hornless, so we may divide by these same differences the 'tending' of herds, comprehending in our definition the kingship of to-day and the rule of Cronos.

*Y. Soc.* That is clear ; but I still ask, what is to follow.

*Str.* If the word had been 'managing' herds, instead of feeding or rearing them, no one would have argued that

there was no care of men in the case of the politician, although it was justly contended, that there was no human art of feeding them which was worthy of the name, or at least, if there were, many a man had a prior and greater right to share in such an art than any king.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* But no other art or science will have a prior or better right than the royal science to care for human society and to rule over men in general.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Str.* In the next place, Socrates, we must surely notice that a great error was committed at the end of our analysis.

*Y. Soc.* What was it?

*Str.* Why, supposing we were ever so sure that there is such an art as the art of rearing or feeding bipeds, there was no reason why we should call this the royal or political art, as though there were no more to be said.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

*Str.* Our first duty, as we were saying, was to remodel the name, so as to have the notion of care rather than of feeding, and then to divide, for there may be still considerable divisions.

*Y. Soc.* How can they be made?

*Str.* First, by separating the divine shepherd from the human guardian or manager.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And the art of management which is assigned to man would again have to be subdivided.

*Y. Soc.* On what principle?

*Str.* On the principle of voluntary and compulsory.

*Y. Soc.* Why?

*Str.* Because, if I am not mistaken, there has been an error here; for our simplicity led us to rank king and tyrant together, whereas they are utterly distinct, like their modes of government.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* Then, now, as I said, let us make the correction and divide human care into two parts, on the principle of voluntary and compulsory.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

But we should not, as before, hastily call the art of managing bipeds the royal art.

It must first be subdivided into divine and human management; and the latter into voluntary and compulsory, that the king may be distinguished from the tyrant.

*Statesman.*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Str.* And if we call the management of violent rulers tyranny, and the voluntary management of herds of voluntary bipeds politics, may we not further assert that he who has this latter art of management is the true king and statesman?

*Y. Soc.* I think, Stranger, that we have now completed the account of the Statesman. 277

Alas ! the picture of the king is both overdone and defective.

*Str.* Would that we had, Socrates, but I have to satisfy myself as well as you ; and in my judgment the figure of the king is not yet perfected ; like statuary who, in their too great haste, having overdone the several parts of their work, lose time in cutting them down, so too we, partly out of haste, partly out of a magnanimous desire to expose our former error, and also because we imagined that a king required grand illustrations, have taken up a marvellous lump of fable, and have been obliged to use more than was necessary. This made us discourse at large, and, nevertheless, the story never came to an end. And our discussion might be compared to a picture of some living being which had been fairly drawn in outline, but had not yet attained the life and clearness which is given by the blending of colours. Now to intelligent persons a living being had better be delineated by language and discourse than by any painting or work of art : to the duller sort by works of art.

*Y. Soc.* Very true ; but what is the imperfection which still remains ? I wish that you would tell me.

We seem only to know the higher ideas through examples dimly.

*Str.* The higher ideas, my dear friend, can hardly be set forth except through the medium of examples ; every man seems to know all things in a dreamy sort of way, and then again to wake up and to know nothing.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean ?

*Str.* I fear that I have been unfortunate in raising a question about our experience of knowledge.

*Y. Soc.* Why so ?

*Str.* Why, because my 'example' requires the assistance of another example.

*Y. Soc.* Proceed ; you need not fear that I shall tire.

The use of examples illustrated by the way

*Str.* I will proceed, finding, as I do, such a ready listener in you : when children are beginning to know their letters—

*Y. Soc.* What are you going to say ?

*Statesman.*

*Str.* That they distinguish the several letters well enough  
278 in very short and easy syllables, and are able to tell them  
correctly.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Whereas in other syllables they do not recognize  
them, and think and speak falsely of them.

in which  
children  
learn to  
know  
letters in  
different  
com-  
binations.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Will not the best and easiest way of bringing them to  
a knowledge of what they do not as yet know be—

*Y. Soc.* Be what ?

*Str.* To refer them first of all to cases in which they judge  
correctly about the letters in question, and then to compare  
these with the cases in which they do not as yet know, and  
to show them that the letters are the same, and have the  
same character in both combinations, until all cases in which  
they are right have been placed side by side with all cases  
in which they are wrong. In this way they have examples,  
and are made to learn that each letter in every combination  
is always the same and not another, and is always called by  
the same name.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Are not examples formed in this manner ? We take  
a thing and compare it with another distinct instance of the  
same thing, of which we have a right conception, and out of  
the comparison there arises one true notion, which includes  
both of them.

*Y. Soc.* Exactly.

*Str.* Can we wonder, then, that the soul has the same un-  
certainty about the alphabet of things, and sometimes and in  
some cases is firmly fixed by the truth in each particular, and  
then, again, in other cases is altogether at sea ; having some-  
how or other a correct notion of combinations ; but when the  
elements are transferred into the long and difficult language  
(syllables) of facts, is again ignorant of them ?

The  
method by  
which we  
learn ' the  
long and  
difficult  
language of  
facts ' is  
similar.

*Y. Soc.* There is nothing wonderful in that.

*Str.* Could any one, my friend, who began with false  
opinion ever expect to arrive even at a small portion of truth  
and to attain wisdom ?

*Y. Soc.* Hardly.



*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Str.* Then you and I will not be far wrong in trying to see the nature of example in general in a small and particular instance ; afterwards from lesser things we intend to pass to the royal class, which is the highest form of the same nature, and endeavour to discover by rules of art what the management of cities is ; and then the dream will become a reality to us.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Then, once more, let us resume the previous argument, and as there were innumerable rivals of the royal race who claim to have the care of states, let us part them all off, and leave him alone ; and, as I was saying, a model or example of this process has first to be framed.

*Y. Soc.* Exactly.

Weaving  
may be  
made a  
model of  
the States-  
man's art.

*Str.* What model is there which is small, and yet has any analogy with the political occupation ? Suppose, Socrates, that if we have no other example at hand, we choose weaving, or, more precisely, weaving of wool—this will be quite enough, without taking the whole of weaving, to illustrate our meaning ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Why should we not apply to weaving the same processes of division and subdivision which we have already applied to other classes ; going once more as rapidly as we can through all the steps until we come to that which is needed for our purpose ?

*Y. Soc.* How do you mean ?

*Str.* I shall reply by actually performing the process.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

Partings-  
off of larger  
classes  
from which  
weaving is  
descended.

*Str.* All things which we make or acquire are either creative or preventive ; of the preventive class are antidotes, divine and human, and also defences ; and defences are either military weapons or protections ; and protections are veils, and also shields against heat and cold ; and shields against heat and cold are shelters and coverings ; and coverings are blankets and garments ; and garments are some of them in one piece, and others of them are made in several parts ; and of these latter some are stitched, others are fastened and not stitched ; and of the not stitched, some are made of the sinews of plants, and some of hair ; and of these, again, some are

cemented with water and earth, and others are fastened together by themselves. And these last defences and coverings which are fastened together by themselves are called clothes, and the art which superintends them we may call, from the nature of the operation, the art of clothing, just as before the art of the Statesman was derived from the State ; and may we not say that the art of weaving, at least that largest portion of it which was concerned with the making of clothes (cp. 279 B), differs only in name from this art of clothing, in the same way that, in the previous case, the royal science differed from the political ?

*Y. Soc.* Most true.

*Str.* In the next place, let us make the reflection, that the art of weaving clothes, which an incompetent person might fancy to have been sufficiently described, has been separated off from several others which are of the same family, but not from the co-operative arts.

*Y. Soc.* And which are the kindred arts ?

*Str.* I see that I have not taken you with me. So I think that we had better go backwards, starting from the end. We just now parted off from the weaving of clothes, the making of blankets, which differ from each other in that one is put under and the other is put around : and these are what I termed kindred arts.

*Y. Soc.* I understand.

*Str.* And we have subtracted the manufacture of all articles made of flax and cords, and all that we just now metaphorically termed the sinews of plants, and we have also separated off the process of felting and the putting together of materials by stitching and sewing, of which the most important part is the cobbler's art.

*Y. Soc.* Precisely.

*Str.* Then we separated off the currier's art, which prepared coverings in entire pieces, and the art of sheltering, and subtracted the various arts of making water-tight which are employed in building, and in general in carpentering, and in other crafts, and all such arts as furnish impediments to thieving and acts of violence, and are concerned with making the lids of boxes and the fixing of doors, being divisions of the art of joining ; and we also cut off the manu-

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

The art of weaving and the art of making clothes differ only in name, like the royal and the political sciences.

Recapitulation of the arts which have been parted off from weaving.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Weaving is  
an art of  
protection  
against  
cold, which  
fabricates  
woollen  
defences.  
But it must  
be further  
disting-  
guished.

facture of arms, which is a section of the great and manifold art of making defences; and we originally began by parting off the whole of the magic art which is concerned with antidotes, and have left, as would appear, the very art of which we were in search, the art of protection against winter cold, which fabricates woollen defences, and has the name of weaving.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Yes, my boy, but that is not all; for the first process to which the material is subjected is the opposite of weaving.

*Y. Soc.* How so?

*Str.* Weaving is a sort of uniting?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* But the first process is a separation of the clotted and matted fibres?

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

Weaving  
is not  
carding;

*Str.* I mean the work of the carder's art; for we cannot say that carding is weaving, or that the carder is a weaver.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

nor making  
the warp or  
the woof;

*Str.* Again, if a person were to say that the art of making the warp and the woof was the art of weaving, he would say what was paradoxical and false.

*Y. Soc.* To be sure.

nor fulling,  
nor  
mending;

*Str.* Shall we say that the whole art of the fuller or of the mender has nothing to do with the care and treatment of clothes, or are we to regard all these as arts of weaving?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

*Str.* And yet surely all these arts will maintain that they are concerned with the treatment and production of clothes; they will dispute the exclusive prerogative of weaving, and though assigning a larger sphere to that, will still reserve a considerable field for themselves.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

nor any art  
which  
makes  
tools for  
weaving.

*Str.* Besides these, there are the arts which make tools and instruments of weaving, and which will claim at least to be co-operative causes in every work of the weaver.

*Y. Soc.* Most true.

*Str.* Well, then, suppose that we define weaving, or rather that part of it which has been selected by us, to be the greatest and noblest of arts which are concerned with woollen

garments—shall we be right? Is not the definition, although true, wanting in clearness and completeness; for do not all those other arts require to be first cleared away?

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* Then the next thing will be to separate them, in order that the argument may proceed in a regular manner?

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

*Str.* Let us consider, in the first place, that there are two kinds of arts entering into everything which we do.

*Y. Soc.* What are they?

*Str.* The one kind is the conditional or co-operative, the other the principal cause.

All arts are either causal or co-operative.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* The arts which do not manufacture the actual thing, but which furnish the necessary tools for the manufacture, without which the several arts could not fulfil their appointed work, are co-operative; but those which make the things themselves are causal.

Co-operative arts make tools, the causal use them in production.

*Y. Soc.* A very reasonable distinction.

*Str.* Thus the arts which make spindles, combs, and other instruments of the production of clothes, may be called co-operative, and those which treat and fabricate the things themselves, causal.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

282 *Str.* The arts of washing and mending, and the other preparatory arts which belong to the causal class, and form a division of the great art of adornment, may be all comprehended under what we call the fuller's art.

In the case of working in wool, washing, mending, carding, spinning, etc. belong to the causal class.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Carding and spinning threads and all the parts of the process which are concerned with the actual manufacture of a woollen garment form a single art, which is one of those universally acknowledged,—the art of working in wool.

*Y. Soc.* To be sure.

*Str.* Of working in wool, again, there are two divisions, and both these are parts of two arts at once.

*Y. Soc.* How is that?

*Str.* Carding and one half of the use of the comb, and the other processes of wool-working which separate the composite, may be classed together as belonging both to the art

Of wool-working there are two great sections, which fall respectively under the

*Statesman.* of wool-working, and also to one of the two great arts which are of universal application—the art of composition and the art of division.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

art of com-  
position  
and the art  
of division.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* To the latter belong carding and the other processes of which I was just now speaking; the art of discernment or division in wool and yarn, which is effected in one manner with the comb and in another with the hands, is variously described under all the names which I just now mentioned.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

We are  
concerned  
with the  
former, of  
which there  
are two  
parts, one  
which  
twists, and  
another  
which com-  
bines.

*Str.* Again, let us take some process of wool-working which is also a portion of the art of composition, and, dismissing the elements of division which we found there<sup>1</sup>, make two halves, one on the principle of composition, and the other on the principle of division.

*Y. Soc.* Let that be done.

*Str.* And once more, Socrates, we must divide the part which belongs at once both to wool-working and composition, if we are ever to discover satisfactorily the aforesaid art of weaving.

*Y. Soc.* We must.

*Str.* Yes, certainly, and let us call one part of the art the art of twisting threads, the other the art of combining them.

Both warp  
and woof  
are made  
by twisting;  
but the  
thread of  
the warp  
is firm,  
whereas  
the thread  
of the woof  
is loose  
and soft.

*Y. Soc.* Do I understand you, in speaking of twisting, to be referring to manufacture of the warp?

*Str.* Yes, and of the woof too; how, if not by twisting, is the woof made?

*Y. Soc.* There is no other way.

*Str.* Then suppose that you define the warp and the woof, for I think that the definition will be of use to you.

*Y. Soc.* How shall I define them?

*Str.* As thus: A piece of carded wool which is drawn out lengthwise and breadthwise is said to be pulled out.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And the wool thus prepared, when twisted by the spindle, and made into a firm thread, is called the warp, and the art which regulates these operations the art of spinning the warp.

<sup>1</sup> Reading ὅσα δὲ τῆς διακριτικῆς ἦν αὐτόθι, μεθιδόμεν ξύμπαντα.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Statesman.*

*Str.* And the threads which are more loosely spun, having a softness proportioned to the intertexture of the warp and to the degree of force used in dressing the cloth,—the threads which are thus spun are called the woof, and the art which is set over them may be called the art of spinning the woof.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And, now, there can be no mistake about the nature of the part of weaving which we have undertaken to define. For when that part of the art of composition which is employed in the working of wool forms a web by the regular intertexture of warp and woof, the entire woven substance is called by us a woollen garment, and the art which presides over this is the art of weaving.

Weaving is that portion of the art of composition which forms a web by the intertexture of warp and woof.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* But why did we not say at once that weaving is the art of entwining warp and woof, instead of making a long and useless circuit?

*Y. Soc.* I thought, Stranger, that there was nothing useless in what was said.

But could we not have defined it more speedily?—

*Str.* Very likely, but you may not always think so, my sweet friend; and in case any feeling of dissatisfaction should hereafter arise in your mind, as it very well may, let me lay down a principle which will apply to arguments in general.

This question cannot be answered until we have considered the whole nature of excess and defect.

*Y. Soc.* Proceed.

*Str.* Let us begin by considering the whole nature of excess and defect, and then we shall have a rational ground on which we may praise or blame too much length or too much shortness in discussions of this kind.

*Y. Soc.* Let us do so.

*Str.* The points on which I think that we ought to dwell are the following:—

*Y. Soc.* What?

*Str.* Length and shortness, excess and defect; with all of these the art of measurement is conversant.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And the art of measurement has to be divided into two parts, with a view to our present purpose.

There are two divisions of the art of

*Y. Soc.* Where would you make the division?

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

measure-  
ment : the  
first com-  
pares  
excess and  
defect with  
each other ;

the second,  
with the  
principle  
of the  
mean.

The ex-  
cellence of  
the arts  
depends  
on their  
observance  
of the  
mean ; the  
neglect of  
it is their  
ruin.

It is no  
easy  
matter to  
show the  
truth of the  
statement  
that excess

*Str.* As thus : I would make two parts, one having regard to the relativity of greatness and smallness to each other ; and there is another, without which the existence of production would be impossible.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean ?

*Str.* Do you not think that it is only natural for the greater to be called greater with reference to the less alone, and the less less with reference to the greater alone ?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* Well, but is there not also something exceeding and exceeded by the principle of the mean, both in speech and action, and is not this a reality, and the chief mark of difference between good and bad men ?

*Y. Soc.* Plainly.

*Str.* Then we must suppose that the great and small exist and are discerned in both these ways, and not, as we were saying before, only relatively to one another, but there must also be another comparison of them with the mean or ideal standard ; would you like to hear the reason why ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* If we assume the greater to exist only in relation to the less, there will never be any comparison of either with the mean.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And would not this doctrine be the ruin of all the arts and their creations ; would not the art of the Statesman and the aforesaid art of weaving disappear ? For all these arts are on the watch against excess and defect, not as unrealities, but as real evils, which occasion a difficulty in action ; and the excellence or beauty of every work of art is due to this observance of measure.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* But if the science of the Statesman disappears, the search for the royal science will be impossible.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Well, then, as in the case of the Sophist we extorted the inference that not-being had an existence, because here was the point at which the argument eluded our grasp, so in this we must endeavour to show that the greater and less are not only to be measured with one another, but also have to

do with the production of the mean ; for if this is not admitted, neither a statesman nor any other man of action can be an undisputed master of his science.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, we must certainly do again what we did then.

*Str.* But this, Socrates, is a greater work than the other, of which we only too well remember the length. I think, however, that we may fairly assume something of this sort :—

*Y. Soc.* What ?

*Str.* That we shall some day require this notion of a mean with a view to the demonstration of absolute truth ; meanwhile, the argument that the very existence of the arts must be held to depend on the possibility of measuring more or less, not only with one another, but also with a view to the attainment of the mean, seems to afford a grand support and satisfactory proof of the doctrine which we are maintaining ; for if there are arts, there is a standard of measure, and if there is a standard of measure, there are arts ; but if either is wanting, there is neither.

*Y. Soc.* True ; and what is the next step ?

*Str.* The next step clearly is to divide the art of measurement into two parts, as we have said already, and to place in the one part all the arts which measure number, length, depth, breadth, swiftness<sup>1</sup> with their opposites ; and to have another part in which they are measured with the mean, and the fit, and the opportune, and the due, and with all those words, in short, which denote a mean or standard removed from the extremes.

*Y. Soc.* Here are two vast divisions, embracing two very different spheres.

285 *Str.* There are many accomplished men, Socrates, who say, believing themselves to speak wisely, that the art of measurement is universal, and has to do with all things. And this means what we are now saying ; for all things which come within the province of art do certainly in some sense partake of measure. But these persons, because they are not accustomed to distinguish classes according to real forms, jumble together two widely different things, relation to one another, and to a standard, under the idea that they are the same, and

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

and defect  
are relative  
to a mean,  
as well as  
to each  
other.

At present  
we will  
not attempt  
the task ; it  
is enough  
that the  
existence of  
the arts  
depends  
on the  
possibility  
of a mean  
standard.

The art of  
measure-  
ment is  
said by  
many to be  
universal,  
and with  
a certain  
amount of  
truth ; but  
they con-  
fuse the  
two di-  
visions of

<sup>1</sup> Reading ταχύτητας.



Statesman.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

the art and  
also make  
false dis-  
tinctions.

also fall into the converse error of dividing other things not according to their real parts. Whereas the right way is, if a man has first seen the unity of things, to go on with the enquiry and not desist until he has found all the differences contained in it which form distinct classes; nor again should he be able to rest contented with the manifold diversities which are seen in a multitude of things until he has comprehended all of them that have any affinity within the bounds of one similarity and embraced them within the reality of a single kind. But we have said enough on this head, and also of excess and defect; we have only to bear in mind that two divisions of the art of measurement have been discovered which are concerned with them, and not forget what they are.

*Y. Soc.* We will not forget.

*Str.* And now that this discussion is completed, let us go on to consider another question, which concerns not this argument only but the conduct of such arguments in general.

*Y. Soc.* What is this new question?

*Str.* Take the case of a child who is engaged in learning his letters: when he is asked what letters make up a word, should we say that the question is intended to improve his grammatical knowledge of that particular word, or of all words?

*Y. Soc.* Clearly, in order that he may have a better knowledge of all words.

Our enquiry  
about the  
Statesman  
is intended  
to make  
us better  
dialec-  
ticians;  
and the  
illustrations  
and analog-  
ies which  
we employ  
in order to  
throw light  
upon it  
have the  
same pur-  
pose.

*Str.* And is our enquiry about the Statesman intended only to improve our knowledge of politics, or our power of reasoning generally?

*Y. Soc.* Clearly, as in the former example, the purpose is general.

*Str.* Still less would any rational man seek to analyse the notion of weaving for its own sake. But people seem to forget that some things have sensible images, which are readily known, and can be easily pointed out when any one desires to answer an enquirer without any trouble or argument; whereas the greatest and highest truths have no outward image of themselves visible to man, which he who wishes to satisfy the soul of the enquirer can adapt to the

eye of sense<sup>1</sup>, and therefore we ought to train ourselves to give and accept a rational account of them; for immaterial things, which are the noblest and greatest, are shown only in thought and idea, and in no other way, and all that we are now saying is said for the sake of them. Moreover, there is always less difficulty in fixing the mind on small matters than on great.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Let us call to mind the bearing of all this.

*Y. Soc.* What is it?

*Str.* I wanted to get rid of any impression of tediousness which we may have experienced in the discussion about weaving, and the reversal of the universe, and in the discussion concerning the Sophist and the being of not-being. I know that they were felt to be too long, and I reproached myself with this, fearing that they might be not only tedious but irrelevant; and all that I have now said is only designed to prevent the recurrence of any such disagreeables for the future.

*Y. Soc.* Very good. Will you proceed?

*Str.* Then I would like to observe that you and I, remembering what has been said, should praise or blame the length or shortness of discussions, not by comparing them with one another, but with what is fitting, having regard to the part of measurement, which, as we said, was to be borne in mind.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And yet, not everything is to be judged even with a view to what is fitting; for we should only want such a length as is suited to give pleasure, if at all, as a secondary matter; and reason tells us, that we should be contented to make the case or rapidity of an enquiry, not our first, but our second object; the first and highest of all being to assert the great method of division according to species—whether the discourse be shorter or longer is not to the point. No offence should be taken at length, but the longer and shorter are to be employed indifferently, according as either of them is better calculated to sharpen the wits of the auditors. Reason would also say to him who censures the length of discourses

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

The standard by which excess and defect should be determined is what is fitting, but not what is fitting to give pleasure; for the chief aim of an enquiry should be, not to give pleasure, but to assert the method of division according to species.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *Phaedi.* 250 D, E.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Would our  
discourse,  
if shorter,  
have made  
the listeners  
better dia-  
lecticians?

Let us now  
apply our  
example of  
weaving  
to the  
Statesman.

From king-  
ship the  
other arts  
of tending  
herds have  
been separ-  
ated :  
certain  
causal and  
co-oper-  
ative arts  
remain.  
These can-  
not be  
bisected,  
and must  
therefore  
be neatly  
carved.

Thus we  
set aside  
the arts  
which  
provide  
(1) instru-  
ments,—  
under this  
head we  
might  
place  
anything ;

on such occasions and cannot away with their circumlocution, that he should not be in such a hurry to have done with them, when he can only complain that they are tedious, but 287 he should prove that if they had been shorter they would have made those who took part in them better dialecticians, and more capable of expressing the truth of things ; about any other praise and blame, he need not trouble himself—he should pretend not to hear them. But we have had enough of this, as you will probably agree with me in thinking. Let us return to our Statesman, and apply to his case the afore-said example of weaving.

*Y. Soc.* Very good ;—let us do as you say.

*Str.* The art of the king has been separated from the similar arts of shepherds, and, indeed, from all those which have to do with herds at all. There still remain, however, of the causal and co-operative arts those which are immediately concerned with States, and which must first be distinguished from one another.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* You know that these arts cannot easily be divided into two halves ; the reason will be very evident as we proceed.

*Y. Soc.* Then we had better do so.

*Str.* We must carve them like a victim into members or limbs, since we cannot bisect them<sup>1</sup>. For we certainly should divide everything into as few parts as possible.

*Y. Soc.* What is to be done in this case ?

*Str.* What we did in the example of weaving—all those arts which furnished the tools were regarded by us as co-operative.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* So now, and with still more reason, all arts which make any implement in a State, whether great or small, may be regarded by us as co-operative, for without them neither State nor Statesmanship would be possible ; and yet we are not inclined to say that any of them is a product of the kingly art.

*Y. Soc.* No, indeed.

*Str.* The task of separating this class from others is not an

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Phaedr. 265 E.

easy one ; for there is plausibility in saying that anything in the world is the instrument of doing something. But there is another class of possessions in a city, of which I have a word to say.

Statesman.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Y. Soc. What class do you mean ?

Str. A class which may be described as not having this power<sup>1</sup>; that is to say, not like an instrument, framed for production, but designed for the preservation of that which is produced. (2) vessels ;

Y. Soc. To what do you refer ?

Str. To the class of vessels, as they are comprehensively termed, which are constructed for the preservation of things moist and dry, of things prepared in the fire or out of the fire ; this is a very large class, and has, if I am not mistaken, literally nothing to do with the royal art of which we are in search.

Y. Soc. Certainly not.

Str. There is also a third class of possessions to be noted, different from these and very extensive, moving or resting on land or water, honourable and also dishonourable. The whole of this class has one name, because it is intended to be sat upon, being always a seat for something. (3) seats or vehicles ;

Y. Soc. What is it ?

Str. A vehicle, which is certainly not the work of the Statesman, but of the carpenter, potter, and coppersmith.

Y. Soc. I understand.

Str. And is there not a fourth class which is again different, and in which most of the things formerly mentioned are contained,—every kind of dress, most sorts of arms, walls and enclosures, whether of earth or stone, and ten thousand other things ? all of which being made for the sake of defence, may be truly called defences, and are for the most part to be regarded as the work of the builder or of the weaver, rather than of the Statesman. (4) defences ;

Y. Soc. Certainly.

Str. Shall we add a fifth class, of ornamentation and drawing, and of the imitations produced by drawing and music, (5) play-things ;

<sup>1</sup> Or, taking the words in a different context, ' As not having political power —I say another class, because not like an instrument,' &c.

*Statesman.* which are designed for amusement only, and may be fairly comprehended under one name?

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* What is it?

*Str.* Plaything is the name.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* That one name may be fitly predicated of all of them, for none of these things have a serious purpose—amusement is their sole aim.

*Y. Soc.* That again I understand.

(6) materials (metal, wood, &c.);

*Str.* Then there is a class which provides materials for all these, out of which and in which the arts already mentioned fabricate their works;—this manifold class, I say, which is the creation and offspring of many other arts, may I not rank sixth?

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* I am referring to gold, silver, and other metals, and all that wood-cutting and shearing of every sort provides for the art of carpentry and plaiting; and there is the process of barking and stripping the cuticle of plants, and the currier's art, which strips off the skins of animals, and other similar arts which manufacture corks and papyri and cords, and provide for the manufacture of composite species out of simple kinds—the whole class may be termed the primitive and simple possession of man, and with this the kingly science has no concern at all.

*Y. Soc.* True.

(2) food.

*Str.* The provision of food and of all other things which mingle their particles with the particles of the human body, and minister to the body, will form a seventh class, which 289 may be called by the general term of nourishment, unless you have any better name to offer. This, however, appertains rather to the husbandman, huntsman, trainer, doctor, cook, and is not to be assigned to the Statesman's art.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

These seven classes include almost all possessions, except tame animals;

*Str.* These seven classes include nearly every description of property, with the exception of tame animals. Consider;—there was the original material, which ought to have been placed first; next come instruments, vessels, vehicles, defences, playthings, nourishment; small things, which may be included under one of these—as for example, coins, seals

and stamps, are omitted, for they have not in them the character of any larger kind which includes them; but some of them may, with a little forcing, be placed among ornaments, and others may be made to harmonize with the class of implements. The art of herding, which has been already divided into parts, will include all property in tame animals, except slaves.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* The class of slaves and ministers only remains, and I suspect that in this the real aspirants for the throne, who are the rivals of the king in the formation of the political web, will be discovered; just as spinners, carders, and the rest of them, were the rivals of the weaver. All the others, who were termed co-operators, have been got rid of among the occupations already mentioned, and separated from the royal and political science.

*Y. Soc.* I agree.

*Str.* Let us go a little nearer, in order that we may be more certain of the complexion of this remaining class.

*Y. Soc.* Let us do so.

*Str.* We shall find from our present point of view that the greatest servants are in a case and condition which is the reverse of what we anticipated.

*Y. Soc.* Who are they?

*Str.* Those who have been purchased, and have so become possessions; these are unmistakeably slaves, and certainly do not claim royal science.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

*Str.* Again, freemen who of their own accord become the servants of the other classes in a State, and who exchange and equalise the products of husbandry and the other arts, some sitting in the market-place, others going from city to city by land or sea, and giving money in exchange for money or for other productions—the money-changer, the merchant, the ship-owner, the retailer, will not put in any claim to statecraft or politics?

*Y. Soc.* No; unless, indeed, to the politics of commerce.

*Str.* But surely men whom we see acting as hirelings and serfs, and too happy to turn their hand to anything, will not profess to share in royal science?

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

and all  
tame  
animals,  
except  
slaves, have  
been in-  
cluded  
under  
herding.

Thus  
slaves and  
ministers  
alone  
remain;  
and among  
them we  
must look  
for the  
rivals of  
the king.

But slaves  
certainly do  
not claim  
royal  
science;

nor  
traders;

nor  
hirelings,

*Statesman.* *Y. Soc.* Certainly not.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Str.* But what would you say of some other serviceable officials ?

nor state  
officials ;

*Y. Soc.* Who are they, and what services do they perform ?

*Str.* There are heralds, and scribes perfected by practice, and divers others who have great skill in various sorts of business connected with the government of states—what shall we call them ?

*Y. Soc.* They are the officials, and servants of the rulers, as you just now called them, but not themselves rulers.

*Str.* There may be something strange in any servant pretending to be a ruler, and yet I do not think that I could have been dreaming when I imagined that the principal claimants to political science would be found somewhere in this neighbourhood.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

nor  
diviners ;

*Str.* Well, let us draw nearer, and try the claims of some who have not yet been tested : in the first place, there are diviners, who have a portion of servile or ministerial science, and are thought to be the interpreters of the gods to men.

*Y. Soc.* True.

nor priests.

*Str.* There is also the priestly class, who, as the law declares, know how to give the gods gifts from men in the form of sacrifices which are acceptable to them, and to ask on our behalf blessings in return from them. Now both these are branches of the servile or ministerial art.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, clearly.

But here  
we are  
getting on  
the right  
track ; for  
both priest  
and diviner  
are am-  
bitious.

*Str.* And here I think that we seem to be getting on the right track ; for the priest and the diviner are swollen with pride and prerogative, and they create an awful impression of themselves by the magnitude of their enterprises ; in Egypt, the king himself is not allowed to reign, unless he have priestly powers, and if he should be of another class and has thrust himself in, he must get enrolled in the priesthood. In many parts of Hellas, the duty of offering the most solemn propitiatory sacrifices is assigned to the highest magistracies, and here, at Athens, the most solemn and national of the ancient sacrifices are supposed to be celebrated by him who has been chosen by lot to be the King Archon.

*Y. Soc.* Precisely.

291 *Str.* But who are these other kings and priests elected by lot who now come into view followed by their retainers and a vast throng, as the former class disappears and the scene changes?

*Y. Soc.* Whom can you mean?

*Str.* They are a strange crew.

*Y. Soc.* Why strange?

*Str.* A minute ago I thought that they were animals of every tribe; for many of them are like lions and centaurs, and many more like satyrs and such weak and shifty creatures;—Protean shapes quickly changing into one another's forms and natures; and now, Socrates, I begin to see who they are.

*Y. Soc.* Who are they? You seem to be gazing on some strange vision.

*Str.* Yes; every one looks strange when you do not know him; and just now I myself fell into this mistake—at first sight, coming suddenly upon him, I did not recognize the politician and his troop.

*Y. Soc.* Who is he?

*Str.* The chief of Sophists and most accomplished of wizards, who must at any cost be separated from the true king or Statesman, if we are ever to see daylight in the present enquiry.

*Y. Soc.* That is a hope not lightly to be renounced.

*Str.* Never, if I can help it; and, first, let me ask you a question.

*Y. Soc.* What?

*Str.* Is not monarchy a recognized form of government?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And, after monarchy, next in order comes the government of the few?

*Y. Soc.* Of course.

*Str.* Is not the third form of government the rule of the multitude, which is called by the name of democracy?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* And do not these three expand in a manner into five, producing out of themselves two other names?

*Y. Soc.* What are they?

*Str.* There is a criterion of voluntary and involuntary,

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

At last the false politician, the greatest of Sophists and wizards, appears in view, surrounded by his troop who take Protean shapes.

He must be separated from the king at any cost.

There are three chief forms of government; monarchy, the rule of the few, and democracy; these expand into five by the division of monarchy into royalty and



*Statesman*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.tyranny,  
and of the  
government of  
the few  
into aristocracy and  
oligarchy.

poverty and riches, law and the absence of law, which men now-a-days apply to them; the two first they subdivide accordingly, and ascribe to monarchy two forms and two corresponding names, royalty and tyranny.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And the government of the few they distinguish by the names of aristocracy and oligarchy.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Democracy alone, whether rigidly observing the laws 292 or not, and whether the multitude rule over the men of property with their consent or against their consent, always in ordinary language has the same name.

*Y. Soc.* True.

But these  
forms of  
government  
are based on  
false principles.

*Str.* But do you suppose that any form of government which is defined by these characteristics of the one, the few, or the many, of poverty or wealth, of voluntary or compulsory submission, of written law or the absence of law, can be a right one?

*Y. Soc.* Why not?

*Str.* Reflect; and follow me.

*Y. Soc.* In what direction?

*Str.* Shall we abide by what we said at first, or shall we retract our words?

*Y. Soc.* To what do you refer?

*Str.* If I am not mistaken, we said that royal power was a science?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And a science of a peculiar kind, which was selected out of the rest as having a character which is at once judicial and authoritative?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* And there was one kind of authority over lifeless things and another over living animals; and so we proceeded in the division step by step up to this point, not losing the idea of science, but unable as yet to determine the nature of the particular science?

*Y. Soc.* True.

The characteristic of  
a true  
government-

*Str.* Hence we are led to observe that the distinguishing principle of the State cannot be the few or many, the voluntary or involuntary, poverty or riches; but some notion of

science must enter into it, if we are to be consistent with what has preceded. *Statesman.*

*Y. Soc.* And we must be consistent.

*Str.* Well, then, in which of these various forms of States may the science of government, which is among the greatest of all sciences and most difficult to acquire, be supposed to reside? That we must discover, and then we shall see who are the false politicians who pretend to be politicians but are not, although they persuade many, and shall separate them from the wise king. *ment is not that it is of few or many, voluntary or involuntary, but that it is scientific.*

*Y. Soc.* That, as the argument has already intimated, will be our duty.

*Str.* Do you think that the multitude in a State can attain political science?

*Y. Soc.* Impossible.

*Str.* But, perhaps, in a city of a thousand men, there would be a hundred, or say fifty, who could?

*Y. Soc.* In that case political science would certainly be the easiest of all sciences; there could not be found in a city of that number as many really first-rate draught-players, if judged by the standard of the rest of Hellas, and there would certainly not be as many kings. For kings we may truly call those who possess royal science, whether they rule or not, as was shown in the previous argument<sup>1</sup>.

293 *Str.* Thank you for reminding me; and the consequence is that any true form of government can only be supposed to be the government of one, two, or, at any rate, of a few. *The science of government can only be attained by a very few.*

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* And these, whether they rule with the will, or against the will, of their subjects, with written laws or without written laws, and whether they are poor or rich, and whatever be the nature of their rule, must be supposed, according to our present view, to rule on some scientific principle; just as the physician, whether he cures us against our will or with our will, and whatever be his mode of treatment,—incision, burning, or the infliction of some other pain,—whether he practises out of a book or not out of a book, and whether he be rich or poor, whether he purges or reduces

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, 259 A.

*Statesman.* in some other way, or even fattens his patients, is a physician all the same, so long as he exercises authority over them according to rules of art, if he only does them good and heals and saves them. And this we lay down to be the only proper test of the art of medicine, or of any other art of command.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

So long as the governors rule scientifically, it matters not whether they rule with or without law, over willing or unwilling subjects.

*Str.* Then that can be the only true form of government in which the governors are really found to possess science, and are not mere pretenders, whether they rule according to law or without law, over willing or unwilling subjects, and are rich or poor themselves—none of these things can with any propriety be included in the notion of the ruler.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And whether with a view to the public good they purge the State by killing some, or exiling some; whether they reduce the size of the body corporate by sending out from the hive swarms of citizens, or, by introducing persons from without, increase it; while they act according to the rules of wisdom and justice, and use their power with a view to the general security and improvement, the city over which they rule, and which has these characteristics, may be described as the only true State. All other governments are not genuine or real, but only imitations of this, and some of them are better and some of them are worse; the better are said to be well governed, but they are mere imitations like the others.

Young Socrates objects to government without laws.

*Y. Soc.* I agree, Stranger, in the greater part of what you say; but as to their ruling without laws—the expression has a harsh sound.

*Str.* You have been too quick for me, Socrates; I was just going to ask you whether you objected to any of my statements. And now I see that we shall have to consider this notion of there being good government without laws.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

He is answered that the rule of a wise man is better than the

*Str.* There can be no doubt that legislation is in a manner the business of a king, and yet the best thing of all is not that the law should rule, but that a man should rule supposing him to have wisdom and royal power. Do you see why this is?

*Y. Soc.* Why?

*Statesman.*

*Str.* Because the law does not perfectly comprehend what is noblest and most just for all and therefore cannot enforce what is best. The differences of men and actions, and the endless irregular movements of human things, do not admit of any universal and simple rule. And no art whatsoever can lay down a rule which will last for all time.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

rule of  
law ;  
for the  
complexity  
of human  
affairs can-  
not be met  
by legis-  
lation.

*Y. Soc.* Of course not.

*Str.* But the law is always striving to make one ;—like an obstinate and ignorant tyrant, who will not allow anything to be done contrary to his appointment, or any question to be asked—not even in sudden changes of circumstances, when something happens to be better than what he commanded for some one.

Law is like  
an ob-  
stinate and  
ignorant  
tyrant.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly ; the law treats us all precisely in the manner which you describe.

*Str.* A perfectly simple principle can never be applied to a state of things which is the reverse of simple.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* Then if the law is not the perfection of right, why are we compelled to make laws at all ? The reason of this has next to be investigated.

Why then  
are laws  
made ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Let me ask, whether you have not meetings for gymnastic contests in your city, such as there are in other cities, at which men compete in running, wrestling, and the like ?

As the  
training-  
master  
makes  
rules, not  
for each  
particular  
case—that  
would be  
impossible  
—but for  
the gener-  
ality,

*Y. Soc.* Yes ; they are very common among us.

*Str.* And what are the rules which are enforced on their pupils by professional trainers or by others having similar authority ? Can you remember ?

*Y. Soc.* To what do you refer ?

*Str.* The training-masters do not issue minute rules for individuals, or give every individual what is exactly suited to his constitution ; they think that they ought to go more roughly to work, and to prescribe generally the regimen which will benefit the majority.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And therefore they assign equal amounts of exercise to them all ; they send them forth together, and let them rest

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

so too the  
legislator  
enacts what  
is gener-  
ally for the  
best ; for  
he cannot  
sit by each  
man's side  
through  
life and  
direct him.

together from their running, wrestling, or whatever the form of bodily exercise may be.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And now observe that the legislator who has to pre- 295  
side over the herd, and to enforce justice in their dealings  
with one another, will not be able, in enacting for the general  
good, to provide exactly what is suitable for each particular  
case.

*Y. Soc.* He cannot be expected to do so.

*Str.* He will lay down laws in a general form for the  
majority, roughly meeting the cases of individuals ; and  
some of them he will deliver in writing, and others will be  
unwritten ; and these last will be traditional customs of the  
country.

*Y. Soc.* He will be right.

*Str.* Yes, quite right ; for how can he sit at every man's  
side all through his life, prescribing for him the exact par-  
ticulars of his duty ? Who, Socrates, would be equal to such  
a task ? No one who really had the royal science, if he had  
been able to do this, would have imposed upon himself the  
restriction of a written law.

*Y. Soc.* So I should infer from what has now been said.

*Str.* Or rather, my good friend, from what is going to be  
said.

*Y. Soc.* And what is that ?

*Str.* Let us put to ourselves the case of a physician, or  
trainer, who is about to go into a far country, and is expect-  
ing to be a long time away from his patients—thinking that  
his instructions will not be remembered unless they are  
written down, he will leave notes of them for the use of his  
pupils or patients.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* But what would you say, if he came back sooner than  
he had intended, and, owing to an unexpected change of the  
winds or other celestial influences, something else happened  
to be better for them,—would he not venture to suggest this  
new remedy, although not contemplated in his former pre-  
scription ? Would he persist in observing the original law,  
neither himself giving any new commandments, nor the  
patient daring to do otherwise than was prescribed, under

Again, a  
physician,  
who is  
going to a  
foreign  
country,  
will leave  
directions  
in writing  
for his  
patients.  
But if he  
should  
return  
sooner  
than he  
expected  
and find  
a change of  
treatment  
necessary,  
he will

the idea that this course only was healthy and medicinal, all others noxious and heterodox? Viewed in the light of science and true art, would not all such enactments be utterly ridiculous?

*Y. Soc.* Utterly.

*Str.* And if he who gave laws, written or unwritten, determining what was good or bad, honourable or dishonourable, just or unjust, to the tribes of men who flock together in their several cities, and are governed in accordance with them; if, 295 I say, the wise legislator were suddenly to come again, or another like to him, is he to be prohibited from changing them?—would not this prohibition be in reality quite as ridiculous as the other?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* Do you know a plausible saying of the common people which is in point?

*Y. Soc.* I do not recall what you mean at the moment.

*Str.* They say that if any one knows how the ancient laws may be improved, he must first persuade his own State of the improvement, and then he may legislate, but not otherwise.

*Y. Soc.* And are they not right?

*Str.* I dare say. But supposing that he does use some gentle violence for their good, what is this violence to be called? Or rather, before you answer, let me ask the same question in reference to our previous instances.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* Suppose that a skilful physician has a patient, of whatever sex or age, whom he compels against his will to do something for his good which is contrary to the written rules; what is this compulsion to be called? Would you ever dream of calling it a violation of the art, or a breach of the laws of health? Nothing could be more unjust than for the patient to whom such violence is applied, to charge the physician who practises the violence with wanting skill or aggravating his disease.

*Y. Soc.* Most true.

*Str.* In the political art error is not called disease, but evil, or disgrace, or injustice.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

disregard  
his former  
prescription.

The legislator, in like manner, would not hesitate to change his own laws, if he came to life again.

A reformer should carry mankind with him; but even if he use a little violence, what harm?

A physician is not blamed for curing a patient against his will;

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

and we  
should not  
condemn  
any one  
who com-  
pels men  
to act  
more justly.

In govern-  
ment, as in  
seaman-  
ship, art is  
superior  
to law.

The true  
form of  
govern-  
ment, as  
we said,  
is of few  
or of an  
individual  
other  
forms are  
imitations  
of this.

*Str.* And when the citizen, contrary to law and custom, is compelled to do what is juster and better and nobler than he did before, the last and most absurd thing which he could say about such violence is that he has incurred disgrace or evil or injustice at the hands of those who compelled him.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* And shall we say that the violence, if exercised by a rich man, is just, and if by a poor man, unjust? May not any man, rich or poor, with or without laws, with the will of the citizens or against the will of the citizens, do what is for their interest? Is not this the true principle of government, according to which the wise and good man will order the affairs of his subjects? As the pilot, by watching continually 297 over the interests of the ship and of the crew,—not by laying down rules, but by making his art a law,—preserves the lives of his fellow-sailors, even so, and in the self-same way, may there not be a true form of polity created by those who are able to govern in a similar spirit, and who show a strength of art which is superior to the law? Nor can wise rulers ever err while they observing the one great rule of distributing justice to the citizens with intelligence and skill, are able to preserve them, and, as far as may be, to make them better from being worse.

*Y. Soc.* No one can deny what has been now said.

*Str.* Neither, if you consider, can any one deny the other statement.

*Y. Soc.* What was it?

*Str.* We said that no great number of persons, whoever they may be, can attain political knowledge, or order a State wisely, but that the true government is to be found in a small body, or in an individual, and that other States are but imitations of this, as we said a little while ago, some for the better and some for the worse.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean? I cannot have understood your previous remark about imitations.

*Str.* And yet the mere suggestion which I hastily threw out is highly important, even if we leave the question where it is, and do not seek by the discussion of it to expose the error which prevails in this matter.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* The idea which has to be grasped by us is not easy or familiar ; but we may attempt to express it thus :—Supposing the government of which I have been speaking to be the only true model, then the others must use the written laws of this—in no other way can they be saved ; they will have to do what is now generally approved, although not the best thing in the world.

*Y. Soc.* What is this ?

*Str.* No citizen should do anything contrary to the laws, and any infringement of them should be punished with death and the most extreme penalties ; and this is very right and good when regarded as the second best thing, if you set aside the first, of which I was just now speaking. Shall I explain the nature of what I call the second best ?

*Y. Soc.* By all means.

*Str.* I must again have recourse to my favourite images ; through them, and them alone, can I describe kings and rulers.

*Y. Soc.* What images ?

*Str.* The noble pilot and the wise physician, who ‘is worth many another man’—in the similitude of these let us endeavour to discover some image of the king.

*Y. Soc.* What sort of an image ?

298 *Str.* Well, such as this :—Every man will reflect that he suffers strange things at the hands of both of them ; the physician saves any whom he wishes to save, and any whom he wishes to maltreat he maltreats—cutting or burning them, and at the same time requiring them to bring him payments, which are a sort of tribute, of which little or nothing is spent upon the sick man, and the greater part is consumed by him and his domestics ; and the finale is that he receives money from the relations of the sick man or from some enemy of his, and puts him out of the way. And the pilots of ships are guilty of numberless evil deeds of the same kind ; they intentionally play false and leave you ashore when the hour of sailing arrives ; or they cause mishaps at sea and cast away their freight ; and are guilty of other rogueries. Now suppose that we, bearing all this in mind, were to determine, after consideration, that neither of these arts shall any longer be allowed to exercise absolute control either over freemen

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

They copy its laws and punish very severely the infringement of them.—Yet this is not the best thing, but only the second best.

The real nature of this second best may be shown with the help of our favourite images.

Suppose the crimes of physicians and pilots to be such that it is necessary to put some check upon them : an assembly of non-professional persons is called to make minute regulations which must be observed in the practice of



*Statesman.* or over slaves, but that we will summon an assembly either of all the people, or of the rich only, and that anybody who likes, whatever may be his calling, or even if he have no calling, may offer an opinion either about seamanship or about diseases—whether as to the manner in which physic or surgical instruments are to be applied to the patient, or again about the vessels and the nautical implements which are required in navigation, and how to meet the dangers of winds and waves which are incidental to the voyage, how to behave when encountering pirates, and what is to be done with the old-fashioned galleys, if they have to fight with others of a similar build—and that, whatever shall be decreed by the multitude on these points, upon the advice of persons skilled or unskilled, shall be written down on triangular tablets and columns, or enacted although unwritten to be national customs; and that in all future time vessels shall be navigated and remedies administered to the patient after this fashion.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

medicine  
or seaman-  
ship.

*Y. Soc.* What a strange notion!

Pilots and physicians are elected annually and called to account at the end of their year of office, and punished if they have violated any of the written rules.

*Str.* Suppose further, that the pilots and physicians are appointed annually, either out of the rich, or out of the whole people, and that they are elected by lot; and that after their election they navigate vessels and heal the sick according to the written rules.

*Y. Soc.* Worse and worse.

*Str.* But hear what follows:—When the year of office has expired, the pilot or physician has to come before a court of review, in which the judges are either selected from the 29 wealthy classes or chosen by lot out of the whole people; and anybody who pleases may be their accuser, and may lay to their charge, that during the past year they have not navigated their vessels or healed their patients according to the letter of the law and the ancient customs of their ancestors; and if either of them is condemned, some of the judges must fix what he is to suffer or pay.

*Y. Soc.* He who is willing to take a command under such conditions, deserves to suffer any penalty.

Specu-  
lation about  
medicine or  
seaman-

*Str.* Yet once more, we shall have to enact that if any one is detected enquiring into piloting and navigation, or into health and the true nature of medicine, or about the winds,

or other conditions of the atmosphere, contrary to the written rules, and has any ingenious notions about such matters, he is not to be called a pilot or physician, but a cloudy prating sophist;—further, on the ground that he is a corrupter of the young, who would persuade them to follow the art of medicine or piloting in an unlawful manner, and to exercise an arbitrary rule over their patients or ships, any one who is qualified by law may inform against him, and indict him in some court, and then if he is found to be persuading any, whether young or old, to act contrary to the written law, he is to be punished with the utmost rigour; for no one should presume to be wiser than the laws; and as touching healing and health and piloting and navigation, the nature of them is known to all, for anybody may learn the written laws and the national customs. If such were the mode of procedure, Socrates, about these sciences and about generalship, and any branch of hunting, or about painting or imitation in general, or carpentry, or any sort of handicraft, or husbandry, or planting, or if we were to see an art of rearing horses, or tending herds, or divination, or any ministerial service, or draught-playing, or any science conversant with number, whether simple or square or cube, or comprising motion,—I say, if all these things were done in this way according to written regulations, and not according to art, what would be the result?

*Y. Soc.* All the arts would utterly perish, and could never be recovered, because enquiry would be unlawful. And human life, which is bad enough already, would then become utterly unendurable.

300 *Str.* But what, if while compelling all these operations to be regulated by written law, we were to appoint as the guardian of the laws some one elected by a show of hands, or by lot, and he caring nothing about the laws, were to act contrary to them from motives of interest or favour, and without knowledge,—would not this be a still worse evil than the former?

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* To go against the laws, which are based upon long experience, and the wisdom of counsellors who have graciously recommended them and persuaded the multitude to pass

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

ship is to  
be for-  
bidden on  
pain of  
death.

What  
would be  
the con-  
sequence  
of such  
procedure  
to these  
or to  
other arts?

They would  
utterly  
perish.

But the  
conse-  
quence  
if the  
guardians  
of the laws  
broke them  
in their  
own  
interest  
would be  
still worse.  
For laws  
are based  
on ex-  
perience

*Statesman.* them, would be a far greater and more ruinous error than any adherence to written law?

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

and are  
made by  
wise men.

*Str.* Therefore, as there is a danger of this, the next best thing in legislating is not to allow either the individual or the multitude to break the law in any respect whatever.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* The laws would be copies of the true particulars of action as far as they admit of being written down from the lips of those who have knowledge?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly they would.

But in  
certain  
cases there  
may be  
something  
better than  
what the  
law pre-  
scribes,  
and this  
the scien-  
tific ruler  
will have  
in view.

*Str.* And, as we were saying, he who has knowledge and is a true Statesman, will do many things within his own sphere of action by his art without regard to the laws, when he is of opinion that something other than that which he has written down and enjoined to be observed during his absence would be better.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, we said so.

*Str.* And any individual or any number of men, having fixed laws, in acting contrary to them with a view to something better, would only be acting, as far as they are able, like the true Statesman?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* If they had no knowledge of what they were doing, they would imitate the truth, and they would always imitate ill; but if they had knowledge, the imitation would be the perfect truth, and an imitation no longer.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Str.* And the principle that no great number of men are able to acquire a knowledge of any art has been already admitted by us.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, it has.

*Str.* Then the royal or political art, if there be such an art, will never be attained either by the wealthy or by the other mob.

*Y. Soc.* Impossible.

The lower  
forms of  
govern-  
ment are  
better if  
they

*Str.* Then the nearest approach which these lower forms of government can ever make to the true government of the 301 one scientific ruler, is to do nothing contrary to their own written laws and national customs.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* When the rich imitate the true form, such a government is called aristocracy ; and when they are regardless of the laws, oligarchy.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* Or again, when an individual rules according to law in imitation of him who knows, we call him a king ; and if he rules according to law, we give him the same name, whether he rules with opinion or with knowledge.

*Y. Soc.* To be sure.

*Str.* And when an individual truly possessing knowledge rules, his name will surely be the same—he will be called a king ; and thus the five names of governments, as they are now reckoned, become one.

*Y. Soc.* That is true.

*Str.* And when an individual ruler governs neither by law nor by custom, but following in the steps of the true man of science pretends that he can only act for the best by violating the laws, while in reality appetite and ignorance are the motives of the imitation, may not such an one be called a tyrant ?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

*Str.* And this we believe to be the origin of the tyrant and the king, of oligarchies, and aristocracies, and democracies,—because men are offended at the one monarch, and can never be made to believe that any one can be worthy of such authority, or is able and willing in the spirit of virtue and knowledge to act justly and holily to all ; they fancy that he will be a despot who will wrong and harm and slay whom he pleases of us ; for if there could be such a despot as we describe, they would acknowledge that we ought to be too glad to have him, and that he alone would be the happy ruler of a true and perfect State.

*Y. Soc.* To be sure.

*Str.* But then, as the State is not like a beehive, and has no natural head who is at once recognized to be the superior both in body and in mind, mankind are obliged to meet and make laws, and endeavour to approach as nearly as they can to the true form of government.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

observe the  
law.

Thus  
aristocracy  
is better  
than oligarchy,  
royalty  
than  
tyranny.

The lower  
forms of  
government  
arise  
because the  
rule of one  
man is  
regarded  
with  
suspicion.

In them  
law and  
custom are  
supreme.

*Statesman.*STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.What  
wonder if  
there is  
misery  
where  
custom  
rules?  
Yet, in spite  
of it, states  
survive.

*Str.* And when the foundation of politics is in the letter only and in custom, and knowledge is divorced from action, can we wonder, Socrates, at the miseries which there are, and always will be, in States? Any other art, built on such a foundation and thus conducted, would ruin all that it <sup>302</sup> touched. Ought we not rather to wonder at the natural strength of the political bond? For States have endured all this, time out of mind, and yet some of them still remain and are not overthrown, though many of them, like ships at sea, founder from time to time, and perish and have perished and will hereafter perish, through the badness of their pilots and crews, who have the worst sort of ignorance of the highest truths—I mean to say, that they are wholly unacquainted with politics, of which, above all other sciences, they believe themselves to have acquired the most perfect knowledge.

*Y. Soc.* Very true.Which of  
the untrue  
forms of  
govern-  
ment is  
best, which  
worst?

*Str.* Then the question arises:—which of these untrue forms of government is the least oppressive to their subjects, though they are all oppressive; and which is the worst of them? Here is a consideration which is beside our present purpose, and yet having regard to the whole it seems to influence all our actions: we must examine it.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, we must.One of the  
three chief  
forms is  
best and  
worst.

*Str.* You may say that of the three forms, the same is at once the hardest and the easiest.

*Y. Soc.* What do you mean?

*Str.* I am speaking of the three forms of government, which I mentioned at the beginning of this discussion—monarchy, the rule of the few, and the rule of the many.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* If we divide each of these we shall have six, from which the true one may be distinguished as a seventh.

*Y. Soc.* How would you make the division?If we  
divide  
these three  
forms and  
add the  
perfect  
state, there  
will be,  
altogether,  
seven  
forms.

*Str.* Monarchy divides into royalty and tyranny; the rule of the few into aristocracy, which has an auspicious name, and oligarchy; and democracy or the rule of the many, which before was one, must now be divided.

*Y. Soc.* On what principle of division?

*Str.* On the same principle as before, although the name

is now discovered to have a twofold meaning. For the distinction of ruling with law or without law, applies to this as well as to the rest.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* The division made no difference when we were looking for the perfect State, as we showed before. But now that this has been separated off, and, as we said, the others alone are left for us, the principle of law and the absence of law will bisect them all.

*Y. Soc.* That would seem to follow, from what has been said.

*Str.* Then monarchy, when bound by good prescriptions or laws, is the best of all the six, and when lawless is the most bitter and oppressive to the subject.

*Y. Soc.* True.

303 *Str.* The government of the few, which is intermediate between that of the one and many, is also intermediate in good and evil; but the government of the many is in every respect weak and unable to do either any great good or any great evil, when compared with the others, because the offices are too minutely subdivided and too many hold them. And this therefore is the worst of all lawful governments, and the best of all lawless ones. If they are all without the restraints of law, democracy is the form in which to live is best; if they are well ordered, then this is the last which you should choose, as royalty, the first form, is the best, with the exception of the seventh, for that excels them all, and is among States what God is among men.

*Y. Soc.* You are quite right, and we should choose that above all.

*Str.* The members of all these States, with the exception of the one which has knowledge, may be set aside as being not Statesmen but partisans,—upholders of the most monstrous idols, and themselves idols; and, being the greatest imitators and magicians, they are also the greatest of Sophists.

*Y. Soc.* The name of Sophist after many windings in the argument appears to have been most justly fixed upon the politicians, as they are termed.

*Str.* And so our satyric drama has been played out; and the troop of Centaurs and Satyrs, however unwilling to leave

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Monarchy,  
in the form  
of royalty,  
is the best;  
and in the  
form of  
tyranny  
the worst.

The govern-  
ment of the  
few is inter-  
mediate in  
good and  
evil. De-  
mocracy is  
the best of  
lawless and  
the worst  
of lawful  
govern-  
ments. The  
seventh  
form is  
among  
states what  
God is  
among  
men.

The up-  
holders of  
the untrue  
forms of  
govern-  
ment are  
mere parti-  
sans and  
the greatest  
of Sophists.

The im-  
postors  
depart.

*Statesman.* the stage, have at last been separated from the political science.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* So I perceive.

Like  
refiners of  
gold, we  
have now  
got rid of  
the earth  
and dross :  
there  
remain the  
arts of the  
general,  
judge,  
orator,  
which are  
nearly akin  
to States-  
manship,  
and for  
that reason  
difficult to  
separate  
from it.

*Str.* There remain, however, natures still more troublesome, because they are more nearly akin to the king, and more difficult to discern ; the examination of them may be compared to the process of refining gold.

*Y. Soc.* What is your meaning ?

*Str.* The workmen begin by sifting away the earth and stones and the like ; there remain in a confused mass the valuable elements akin to gold, which can only be separated by fire,—copper, silver, and other precious metal ; these are at last refined away by the use of tests, until the gold is left quite pure.

*Y. Soc.* Yes, that is the way in which these things are said to be done.

*Str.* In like manner, all alien and uncongenial matter has been separated from political science, and what is precious and of a kindred nature has been left ; there remain the nobler arts of the general and the judge, and the higher sort of oratory which is an ally of the royal art, and persuades men to do justice, and assists in guiding the helm of States:—  
How can we best clear away all these, leaving him whom we seek alone and unalloyed ? 304

*Y. Soc.* That is obviously what has in some way to be attempted.

The case  
of music  
may help  
us.

*Str.* If the attempt is all that is wanting, he shall certainly be brought to light ; and I think that the illustration of music may assist in exhibiting him. Please to answer me a question.

*Y. Soc.* What question ?

*Str.* There is such a thing as learning music or handicraft arts in general ?

*Y. Soc.* There is.

There is  
an art  
above it,  
which  
decides  
whether it  
shall be  
learnt or  
not.

*Str.* And is there any higher art or science, having power to decide which of these arts are and are not to be learned ;—what do you say ?

*Y. Soc.* I should answer that there is.

*Str.* And do we acknowledge this science to be different from the others ?

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Statesman.*

*Str.* And ought the other sciences to be superior to this, or no single science to any other? Or ought this science to be the overseer and governor of all the others?

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* The latter.

*Str.* You mean to say that the science which judges whether we ought to learn or not, must be superior to the science which is learned or which teaches?

*Y. Soc.* Far superior.

*Str.* And the science which determines whether we ought to persuade or not, must be superior to the science which is able to persuade?

*Y. Soc.* Of course.

*Str.* Very good; and to what science do we assign the power of persuading a multitude by a pleasing tale and not by teaching?

*Y. Soc.* That power, I think, must clearly be assigned to rhetoric.

*Str.* And to what science do we give the power of determining whether we are to employ persuasion or force towards any one, or to refrain altogether?

*Y. Soc.* To that science which governs the arts of speech and persuasion.

*Str.* Which, if I am not mistaken, will be politics?

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Rhetoric seems to be quickly distinguished from politics, being a different species, yet ministering to it.

This art is  
the art of  
politics,  
which is  
also  
superior  
to rhetoric,

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* But what would you think of another sort of power or science?

*Y. Soc.* What science?

*Str.* The science which has to do with military operations against our enemies—is that to be regarded as a science or not?

and to  
general-  
ship,

*Y. Soc.* How can generalship and military tactics be regarded as other than a science?

*Str.* And is the art which is able and knows how to advise when we are to go to war, or to make peace, the same as this or different?

*Y. Soc.* If we are to be consistent, we must say different.



*Statesman.* *Str.* And we must also suppose that this rules the other, if 305  
 STRANGER, we are not to give up our former notion ?

YOUNG  
 SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And, considering how great and terrible the whole art of war is, can we imagine any which is superior to it but the truly royal ?

*Y. Soc.* No other.

*Str.* The art of the general is only ministerial, and therefore not political ?

*Y. Soc.* Exactly.

and to the  
 adminis-  
 tration of  
 justice.

*Str.* Once more let us consider the nature of the righteous judge.

*Y. Soc.* Very good.

*Str.* Does he do anything but decide the dealings of men with one another to be just or unjust in accordance with the standard which he receives from the king and legislator,—showing his own peculiar virtue only in this, that he is not perverted by gifts, or fears, or pity, or by any sort of favour or enmity, into deciding the suits of men with one another contrary to the appointment of the legislator ?

*Y. Soc.* No ; his office is such as you describe.

*Str.* Then the inference is that the power of the judge is not royal, but only the power of a guardian of the law which ministers to the royal power ?

*Y. Soc.* True.

The po-  
 litical or  
 royal art  
 commands  
 all the  
 others ;

*Str.* The review of all these sciences shows that none of them is political or royal. For the truly royal ought not itself to act, but to rule over those who are able to act ; the king ought to know what is and what is not a fitting opportunity for taking the initiative in matters of the greatest importance, whilst others should execute his orders.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* And, therefore, the arts which we have described, as they have no authority over themselves or one another, but are each of them concerned with some special action of their own, have, as they ought to have, special names corresponding to their several actions.

*Y. Soc.* I agree.

*Str.* And the science which is over them all, and has

charge of the laws, and of all matters affecting the State, and truly weaves them all into one, if we would describe under a name characteristic of their common nature, most truly we may call politics.

*Y. Soc.* Exactly so.

*Str.* Then, now that we have discovered the various classes in a State<sup>1</sup>, shall I analyse politics after the pattern which weaving supplied?

306 *Y. Soc.* I greatly wish that you would.

*Str.* Then I must describe the nature of the royal web, and show how the various threads are woven into one piece.

*Y. Soc.* Clearly.

*Str.* A task has to be accomplished, which, although difficult, appears to be necessary.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly the attempt must be made.

*Str.* To assume that one part of virtue differs in kind from another, is a position easily assailable by contentious disputants, who appeal to popular opinion.

*Y. Soc.* I do not understand.

*Str.* Let me put the matter in another way: I suppose that you would consider courage to be a part of virtue?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly I should.

*Str.* And you would think temperance to be different from courage; and likewise to be a part of virtue?

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* I shall venture to put forward a strange theory about them.

*Y. Soc.* What is it?

*Str.* That they are two principles which thoroughly hate one another and are antagonistic throughout a great part of nature.

*Y. Soc.* How singular!

*Str.* Yes, very—for all the parts of virtue are commonly said to be friendly to one another.

*Y. Soc.* Yes.

*Str.* Then let us carefully investigate whether this is universally true, or whether there are not parts of virtue which are at war with their kindred in some respect.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

and weaves  
them to-  
gether in  
the political  
web.

The nature  
of this web  
must now  
be con-  
sidered.

Certain  
parts of  
virtue, such  
as courage  
and temper-  
ance, are  
antago-  
nistic.

Common  
opinion  
however  
does not  
allow this.  
Let us  
investigate  
the matter.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, 287-90. 303-5.

*Statesman.* Y. Soc. Tell me how we shall consider that question.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES. *Str.* We must extend our enquiry to all those things which we consider beautiful and at the same time place in two opposite classes.

Y. Soc. Explain ; what are they ?

*Str.* Acuteness and quickness, whether in body or soul or in the movement of sound, and the imitations of them which painting and music supply, you must have praised yourself before now, or been present when others praised them.

Y. Soc. Certainly.

*Str.* And do you remember the terms in which they are praised ?

Y. Soc. I do not.

*Str.* I wonder whether I can explain to you in words the thought which is passing in my mind.

Y. Soc. Why not ?

We express our admiration for quick and energetic action by applying the epithet 'brave' to it, *Str.* You fancy that this is all so easy : Well, let us consider these notions with reference to the opposite classes of action under which they fall. When we praise quickness and energy and acuteness, whether of mind or body or sound, we express our praise of the quality which we admire by one word, and that one word is manliness or courage.

Y. Soc. How ?

*Str.* We speak of an action as energetic and brave, quick and manly, and vigorous too ; and when we apply the name of which I speak as the common attribute of all these natures, we certainly praise them.

Y. Soc. True.

and for gentle and quiet action by calling it 'calm' or 'temperate.'

*Str.* And do we not often praise the quiet strain of action also ?

Y. Soc. To be sure.

*Str.* And do we not then say the opposite of what we said of the other ?

Y. Soc. How do you mean ?

*Str.* We exclaim How calm ! How temperate ! in admiration of the slow and quiet working of the intellect, and of steadiness and gentleness in action, of smoothness and depth of voice, and of all rhythmical movement and of music in general, when these have a proper solemnity. Of

all such actions we predicate not courage, but a name indicative of order. *Statesman.*

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Str.* But when, on the other hand, either of these is out of place, the names of either are changed into terms of censure.

*Y. Soc.* How so?

*Str.* Too great sharpness or quickness or hardness is termed violence or madness; too great slowness or gentleness is called cowardice or sluggishness; and we may observe, that for the most part these qualities, and the temperance and manliness of the opposite characters, are arrayed as enemies on opposite sides, and do not mingle with one another in their respective actions; and if we pursue the enquiry, we shall find that men who have these different qualities of mind differ from one another.

But when these qualities are in excess, we call them violence or madness, cowardice or sluggishness.— These extremes do not meet in the same persons.

*Y. Soc.* In what respect?

*Str.* In respect of all the qualities which I mentioned, and very likely of many others. According to their respective affinities to either class of actions they distribute praise and blame,—praise to the actions which are akin to their own, blame to those of the opposite party—and out of this many quarrels and occasions of quarrel arise among them.

*Y. Soc.* True.

*Str.* The difference between the two classes is often a trivial concern; but in a state, and when affecting really important matters, becomes of all disorders the most hateful.

*Y. Soc.* To what do you refer?

*Str.* To nothing short of the whole regulation of human life. For the orderly class are always ready to lead a peaceful life, quietly doing their own business; this is their manner of behaving with all men at home, and they are equally ready to find some way of keeping the peace with foreign States. And on account of this fondness of theirs for peace, which is often out of season where their influence prevails, they become by degrees unwarlike, and bring up their young men to be like themselves; they are at the mercy of their enemies; whence in a few years they and their children and the whole city often pass imperceptibly from the condition of freemen into that of slaves.

The gentle are willing to pay any price for peace;

*Statesman.**Y. Soc.* What a cruel fate !STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.the  
courageous  
are always  
anxious  
for war.*Str.* And now think of what happens with the more courageous natures. Are they not always inciting their country to go to war, owing to their excessive love of the military life? they raise up enemies against themselves many and mighty, and either utterly ruin their native-land or enslave and subject it to its foes?*Y. Soc.* That, again, is true.These two  
classes are  
always  
antago-  
nistic.And so we  
have found  
what we  
sought.*Str.* Must we not admit, then, that where these two classes exist, they always feel the greatest antipathy and antagonism towards one another?*Y. Soc.* We cannot deny it.*Str.* And returning to the enquiry with which we began, have we not found that considerable portions of virtue are at variance with one another, and give rise to a similar opposition in the characters who are endowed with them?*Y. Soc.* True.A further  
point.No con-  
structive art  
will use bad  
material,  
if this can  
be avoided.*Str.* Let us consider a further point.*Y. Soc.* What is it?*Str.* I want to know, whether any constructive art will make any, even the most trivial thing, out of bad and good materials indifferently, if this can be helped? does not all art rather reject the bad as far as possible, and accept the good and fit materials, and from these elements, whether like or unlike, gathering them all into one, work out some nature or idea?*Y. Soc.* To be sure.And states-  
manship  
will not  
weave bad  
men into  
the political  
web. She  
will select  
and train  
suitable  
natures,*Str.* Then the true and natural art of statesmanship will never allow any State to be formed by a combination of good and bad men, if this can be avoided; but will begin by testing human natures in play, and after testing them, will entrust them to proper teachers who are the ministers of her purposes—she will herself give orders, and maintain authority; just as the art of weaving continually gives orders and maintains authority over the carders and all the others who prepare the material for the work, commanding the subsidiary arts to execute the works which she deems necessary for making the web.*Y. Soc.* Quite true.*Str.* In like manner, the royal science appears to me to be

the mistress of all lawful educators and instructors, and having this queenly power, will not permit them to train men in what will produce characters unsuited to the political constitution which she desires to create, but only in what will produce such as are suitable. Those which have no share of manliness and temperance, or any other virtuous inclination, and, from the necessity of an evil nature, are violently carried away to godlessness and insolence and injustice, she gets rid of by death and exile, and punishes them with the greatest of disgraces.

*Y. Soc.* That is commonly said.

309 *Str.* But those who are wallowing in ignorance and base-  
ness she bows under the yoke of slavery.

*Y. Soc.* Quite right.

*Str.* The rest of the citizens, out of whom, if they have education, something noble may be made, and who are capable of being united by the statesman, the kingly art blends and weaves together; taking on the one hand those whose natures tend rather to courage, which is the stronger element and may be regarded as the warp, and on the other hand those which incline to order and gentleness, and which are represented in the figure as spun thick and soft, after the manner of the woof—these, which are naturally opposed, she seeks to bind and weave together in the following manner:

*Y. Soc.* In what manner?

*Str.* First of all, she takes the eternal element of the soul and binds it with a divine cord, to which it is akin, and then the animal nature, and binds that with human cords.

*Y. Soc.* I do not understand what you mean.

*Str.* The meaning is, that the opinion about the honourable and the just and good and their opposites, which is true and confirmed by reason, is a divine principle, and when implanted in the soul, is implanted, as I maintain, in a nature of heavenly birth.

*Y. Soc.* Yes; what else should it be?

*Str.* Only the Statesman and the good legislator, having the inspiration of the royal muse, can implant this opinion, and he, only in the rightly educated, whom we were just now describing.

*Y. Soc.* Likely enough.

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

but will  
exterminate  
the evil,

and enslave  
the igno-  
rant.

The rest  
of the  
citizens she  
will weave  
into one,  
combining  
courage,  
which is  
the warp,  
with gentle-  
ness and  
order,  
which form  
the woof.

She binds  
the divine  
element  
with a  
divine, the  
human with  
a human  
cord.  
True  
opinion  
about the  
just and  
good, when  
confirmed  
by reason,  
is a divine  
principle,  
and the  
statesman  
alone can  
implant it in  
the citizen.

*Statesman.* *Str.* But him who cannot, we will not designate by any of the names which are the subject of the present enquiry.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Very right.

The  
courageous  
soul is  
civilized  
by it.

*Str.* The courageous soul when attaining this truth becomes civilized, and rendered more capable of partaking of justice; but when not partaking, is inclined to brutality. Is not that true?

*Y. Soc.* Certainly.

the peace-  
ful is  
rendered  
temperate  
and wise.

*Str.* And again, the peaceful and orderly nature, if sharing in these opinions, becomes temperate and wise, as far as this may be in a State, but if not, deservedly obtains the ignominious name of silliness.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Str.* Can we say that such a connexion as this will lastingly unite the evil with one another or with the good, or that any science would seriously think of using a bond of this kind to join such materials?

*Y. Soc.* Impossible.

*Str.* But in those who were originally of a noble nature, 310 and who have been nurtured in noble ways, and in those only, may we not say that union is implanted by law, and that this is the medicine which art prescribes for them, and of all the bonds which unite the dissimilar and contrary parts of virtue is not this, as I was saying, the divinest?

*Y. Soc.* Very true.

*Str.* Where this divine bond exists there is no difficulty in imagining, or when you have imagined, in creating the other bonds, which are human only.

*Y. Soc.* How is that, and what bonds do you mean?

Where the  
divine bond  
exists it is  
easy to  
create the  
human  
bonds, i.e.  
ties of inter-  
marriage.  
—The  
true object  
of marriage  
is the pro-  
creation of  
children,  
not wealth  
or power  
or rank.

*Str.* Rights of intermarriage, and ties which are formed between States by giving and taking children in marriage, or between individuals by private betrothals and espousals. For most persons form marriage connexions without due regard to what is best for the procreation of children.

*Y. Soc.* In what way?

*Str.* They seek after wealth and power, which in matrimony are objects not worthy even of a serious censure.

*Y. Soc.* There is no need to consider them at all.

*Str.* More reason is there to consider the practice of those who make family their chief aim, and to indicate their error.

*Y. Soc.* Quite true.

*Str.* They act on no true principle at all ; they seek their ease and receive with open arms those who are like themselves, and hate those who are unlike them, being too much influenced by feelings of dislike.

*Y. Soc.* How so ?

*Str.* The quiet orderly class seek for natures like their own, and as far as they can they marry and give in marriage exclusively in this class, and the courageous do the same ; they seek natures like their own, whereas they should both do precisely the opposite.

*Y. Soc.* How and why is that ?

*Str.* Because courage, when untempered by the gentler nature during many generations, may at first bloom and strengthen, but at last bursts forth into downright madness.

*Y. Soc.* Like enough.

*Str.* And then, again, the soul which is over-full of modesty and has no element of courage in many successive generations, is apt to grow too indolent, and at last to become utterly paralyzed and useless.

*Y. Soc.* That, again, is quite likely.

*Str.* It was of these bonds I said that there would be no difficulty in creating them, if only both classes originally held the same opinion about the honourable and good ;—indeed, in this single work, the whole process of royal weaving is comprised—never to allow temperate natures to be separated from the brave, but to weave them together, like the warp and the woof, by common sentiments and honours and reputation, and by the giving of pledges to one another ; and out of them forming one smooth and even web, to entrust to them the offices of State.

*Y. Soc.* How do you mean ?

*Str.* Where one officer only is needed, you must choose a ruler who has both these qualities—when many, you must mingle some of each, for the temperate ruler is very careful and just and safe, but is wanting in thoroughness and go.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly, that is very true.

*Str.* The character of the courageous, on the other hand, falls short of the former in justice and caution, but has the power of action in a remarkable degree, and where either of

*Statesman.*

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

Like should  
not consort  
with like,  
or courage  
will de-  
generate  
into mad-  
ness and  
modesty  
into help-  
lessness.

Royal  
science  
prevents  
this by  
weaving  
together  
the tem-  
perate and  
courage-  
ous.



*Statesman.* these two qualities is wanting, there cities cannot altogether prosper either in their public or private life.

STRANGER,  
YOUNG  
SOCRATES.

*Y. Soc.* Certainly they cannot.

And thus  
the political  
web is  
completed.

*Str.* This then we declare to be the completion of the web of political action, which is created by a direct intertexture of the brave and temperate natures, whenever the royal science has drawn the two minds into communion with one another by unanimity and friendship, and having perfected the noblest and best of all the webs which political life admits, and enfolding therein all other inhabitants of cities, whether slaves or freemen, binds them in one fabric and governs and presides over them, and, in so far as to be happy is vouchsafed to a city, in no particular fails to secure their happiness.

*Y. Soc.* Your picture, Stranger, of the king and statesman, no less than of the Sophist, is quite perfect.

PHILEBUS.



## INTRODUCTION AND ANALYSIS.

THE *Philebus* appears to be one of the later writings of Plato, in which the style has begun to alter, and the dramatic and poetical element has become subordinate to the speculative and philosophical. In the development of abstract thought great advances have been made on the *Protagoras* or the *Phaedrus*, and even on the *Republic*. But there is a corresponding diminution of artistic skill, a want of character in the persons, a laboured march in the dialogue, and a degree of confusion and incompleteness in the general design. As in the speeches of *Thucydides*, the multiplication of ideas seems to interfere with the power of expression. Instead of the equally diffused grace and ease of the earlier dialogues there occur two or three highly-wrought passages (pp. 15, 16, 63) ; instead of the ever-flowing play of humour, now appearing, now concealed, but always present, are inserted a good many bad jests, as we may venture to term them (cp. 17 E, 23 B, D, 28 C, 29 B, 30 E, 34 D, 36 B, 43 A, 46 A, 62 B). We may observe an attempt at artificial ornament (43 E, 53 D, E), and far-fetched modes of expression (48 D, 65 A) ; also clamorous demands on the part of his companions, that *Socrates* shall answer his own questions (54 B, 57 A), as well as other defects of style, which remind us of the *Laws*. The connexion is often abrupt and inharmonious (24 C, &c.), and at 42 D, E, 43 A, 48 A, B, 49, 50, far from clear. Many points require further explanation ; e.g. the reference of pleasure to the indefinite class (31 A), compared with the assertion which almost immediately follows, that pleasure and pain naturally have their seat in the third or mixed class : these two statements are unreconciled. In like manner, the table of goods does not distinguish between the two heads of measure and symmetry (66 A, B) ; and though a hint is given that the divine mind has the first place (22 C), nothing is said of this in

*Philebus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

the final summing up. The relation of the goods to the sciences does not appear; though dialectic may be thought to correspond to the highest good, the sciences and arts and true opinions are enumerated in the fourth class. At p. 50 D, 67 B, we seem to have an intimation of a further discussion, in which some topics lightly passed over were to receive a fuller consideration. The various uses of the word 'mixed,' for the mixed life, the mixed class of elements, the mixture of pleasures, or of pleasure and pain, are a further source of perplexity. Our ignorance of the opinions which Plato is attacking is also an element of obscurity. Many things in a controversy might seem relevant, if we knew to what they were intended to refer. But no conjecture will enable us to supply what Plato has not told us; or to explain, from our fragmentary knowledge of them, the relation in which his doctrine stood to the Eleatic Being or the Megarian good, or to the theories of Aristippus or Antisthenes respecting pleasure. Nor are we able to say how far Plato in the *Philebus* conceives the finite and infinite (which occur both in the fragments of Philolaus and in the Pythagorean table of opposites) in the same manner as contemporary Pythagoreans.

There is little in the characters which is worthy of remark. The Socrates of the *Philebus* is devoid of any touch of Socratic irony, though here, as in the *Phaedrus* (235 C), he twice attributes the flow of his ideas to a sudden inspiration (20 B, 25 B, C). The interlocutor Protarchus, the son of Callias, who has been a hearer of Gorgias (58 A), is supposed to begin as a disciple of the partisans of pleasure, but is drawn over to the opposite side by the arguments of Socrates. The instincts of ingenuous youth are easily induced to take the better part. *Philebus*, who has withdrawn from the argument, is several times brought back again (pp. 18, 19, 22, 28), that he may support pleasure, of which he remains to the end the uncompromising advocate. On the other hand, the youthful group of listeners by whom he is surrounded, '*Philebus*' boys' as they are termed, whose presence is several times intimated (16 A, B, 19 D, 67 B), are described as all of them at last convinced by the arguments of Socrates. They bear a very faded resemblance to the interested audiences of the *Charmides*, *Lysis*, or *Protagoras*. Other signs of relation to external life in the dialogue, or references to contemporary things and persons, with the single

exception of the allusions to the anonymous enemies of pleasure (44 B, C), and the teachers of the flux (43 A), there are none.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

The omission of the doctrine of recollection, derived from a previous state of existence, is a note of progress in the philosophy of Plato. The transcendental theory of pre-existent ideas, which is chiefly discussed by him in the *Meno*, the *Phaedo*, and the *Phaedrus*, has given way to a psychological one. The omission is rendered more significant by his having occasion to speak of memory as the basis of desire. Of the ideas he treats in the same sceptical spirit (15 A, B) which appears in his criticism of them in the *Parmenides* (131 ff.). He touches on the same difficulties and he gives no answer to them. His mode of speaking of the analytical and synthetical processes (16 B ff.) may be compared with his discussion of the same subject in the *Phaedrus* (265, 6); here he dwells on the importance of dividing the genera into all the species, while in the *Phaedrus* he conveys the same truth in a figure, when he speaks of carving the whole, which is described under the image of a victim, into parts or members, 'according to their natural articulation, without breaking any of them.' There is also a difference, which may be noted, between the two dialogues. For whereas in the *Phaedrus*, and also in the *Symposium*, the dialectician is described as a sort of enthusiast or lover, in the *Philebus*, as in all the later writings of Plato, the element of love is wanting; the topic is only introduced, as in the *Republic*, by way of illustration (cp. 53 D, *Rep.* v. 474 D, E). On other subjects of which they treat in common, such as the nature and kinds of pleasure, true and false opinion, the nature of the good, the order and relation of the sciences, the *Republic* is less advanced than the *Philebus*, which contains, perhaps, more metaphysical truth more obscurely expressed than any other Platonic dialogue. Here, as Plato expressly tells us, he is 'forging weapons of another make' (23 B), i. e. new categories and modes of conception, though 'some of the old ones might do again.'

But if superior in thought and dialectical power, the *Philebus* falls very far short of the *Republic* in fancy and feeling. The development of the reason undisturbed by the emotions seems to be the ideal at which Plato aims in his later dialogues. There is no mystic enthusiasm or rapturous contemplation of ideas. Whether we attribute this change to the greater feebleness of

*Philebus.* age, or to the development of the quarrel between philosophy and poetry in Plato's own mind, or perhaps, in some degree, to a carelessness about artistic effect, when he was absorbed in abstract ideas, we can hardly be wrong in assuming, amid such a variety of indications, derived from style as well as subject, that the *Philebus* belongs to the later period of his life and authorship. But in this, as in all the later writings of Plato, there are not wanting thoughts and expressions in which he rises to his highest level (15, 16, 17, 63, 67).

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The plan is complicated, or rather, perhaps, the want of plan renders the progress of the dialogue difficult to follow. A few leading ideas seem to emerge: the relation of the one and many, the four original elements, the kinds of pleasure, the kinds of knowledge, the scale of goods. These are only partially connected with one another. The dialogue is not rightly entitled 'Concerning pleasure' or 'Concerning good,' but should rather be described as treating of the relations of pleasure and knowledge, after they have been duly analyzed, to the good. (1) The question is asked, whether pleasure or wisdom is the chief good, or some nature higher than either; and if the latter, how pleasure and wisdom are related to this higher good. (2) Before we can reply with exactness, we must know the kinds of pleasure and the kinds of knowledge. (3) But still we may affirm generally, that the combined life of pleasure and wisdom or knowledge has more of the character of the good than either of them when isolated. (4) To determine which of them partakes most of the higher nature, we must know under which of the four unities or elements they respectively fall. These are, first, the infinite; secondly, the finite; thirdly, the union of the two; fourthly, the cause of the union. Pleasure is of the first, wisdom or knowledge of the third class, while reason or mind is akin to the fourth or highest.

(5) Pleasures are of two kinds, the mixed and unmixed. Of mixed pleasures there are three classes—(a) those in which both the pleasures and pains are corporeal, as in eating and hunger; (β) those in which there is a pain of the body and pleasure of the mind, as when you are hungry and are looking forward to a feast; (γ) those in which the pleasure and pain are both mental. Of unmixed pleasures there are four kinds: those of sight, hearing, smell, knowledge.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

(6) The sciences are likewise divided into two classes, theoretical and productive : of the latter, one part is pure, the other impure. The pure part consists of arithmetic, mensuration, and weighing. Arts like carpentering, which have an exact measure, are to be regarded as higher than music, which for the most part is mere guess-work. But there is also a higher arithmetic, and a higher mensuration, which is exclusively theoretical ; and a dialectical science, which is higher still and the truest and purest knowledge.

(7) We are now able to determine the composition of the perfect life. First, we admit the pure pleasures and the pure sciences ; secondly, the impure sciences, but not the impure pleasures. We have next to discover what element of goodness is contained in this mixture. There are three criteria of goodness—beauty, symmetry, truth. These are clearly more akin to reason than to pleasure, and will enable us to fix the places of both of them in the scale of good. First in the scale is measure ; the second place is assigned to symmetry ; the third, to reason and wisdom ; the fourth, to knowledge and true opinion ; the fifth, to pure pleasures ; and here the Muse says ‘Enough.’

‘Bidding farewell to Philebus and Socrates,’ we may now consider the metaphysical conceptions which are presented to us. These are (I) the paradox of unity and plurality ; (II) the table of categories or elements ; (III) the kinds of pleasure ; (IV) the kinds of knowledge ; (V) the conception of the good. We may then proceed to examine (VI) the relation of the *Philebus* to the *Republic*, and to other dialogues.

I. The paradox of the one and many originated in the restless dialectic of Zeno, who sought to prove the absolute existence of the one by showing the contradictions that are involved in admitting the existence of the many (cp. *Parm.* 128 ff.). Zeno illustrated the contradiction by well-known examples taken from outward objects. But Socrates seems to intimate that the time had arrived for discarding these hackneyed illustrations ; such difficulties had long been solved by common sense (‘*solvitur ambulando*’) ; the fact of the co-existence of opposites was a sufficient answer to them. He will leave them to Cynics and Eristics ; the youth of Athens may discourse of them to their parents. To no rational man



*Philebus.* could the circumstance that the body is one, but has many members, be any longer a stumbling-block.

INTROD. C-  
TION.

Plato's difficulty seems to begin in the region of ideas. He cannot understand how an absolute unity, such as the Eleatic Being, can be broken up into a number of individuals, or be in and out of them at once. Philosophy had so deepened or intensified the nature of one or Being, by the thoughts of successive generations, that the mind could no longer imagine 'Being' as in a state of change or division. To say that the verb of existence is the copula, or that unity is a mere unit, is to us easy; but to the Greek in a particular stage of thought such an analysis involved the same kind of difficulty as the conception of God existing both in and out of the world would to ourselves. Nor was he assisted by the analogy of sensible objects. The sphere of mind was dark and mysterious to him; but instead of being illustrated by sense, the greatest light appeared to be thrown on the nature of ideas when they were contrasted with sense.

Both here and in the *Parmenides* (129 ff.), where similar difficulties are raised, Plato seems prepared to desert his ancient ground. He cannot tell the relation in which abstract ideas stand to one another, and therefore he transfers the one and many out of his transcendental world, and proceeds to lay down practical rules for their application to different branches of knowledge. As in the *Republic* he supposes the philosopher to proceed by regular steps, until he arrives at the idea of good; as in the *Sophist* and *Politicus* he insists that in dividing the whole into its parts we should bisect in the middle in the hope of finding species; as in the *Phaedrus* (see above) he would have 'no limb broken' of the organism of knowledge;—so in the *Philebus* he urges the necessity of filling up all the intermediate links which occur (compare Bacon's 'media axiomata') in the passage from unity to infinity. With him the idea of science may be said to anticipate science; at a time when the sciences were not yet divided, he wants to impress upon us the importance of classification; neither neglecting the many individuals, nor attempting to count them all, but finding the genera and species under which they naturally fall. Here, then, and in the parallel passages of the *Phaedrus* and of the *Sophist*, is found the germ of the most fruitful notion of modern science.

*Philebus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

At p. 15 Plato describes with ludicrous exaggeration the influence exerted by the one and many on the minds of young men in their first fervour of metaphysical enthusiasm (cp. *Rep.*, Book vii. 539). But they are none the less an everlasting quality of reason or reasoning which never grows old in us. At first we have but a confused conception of them, analogous to the eyes blinking at the light in the *Republic*. To this Plato opposes the revelation from Heaven of the real relations of them, which some Prometheus, who gave the true fire from heaven, is supposed to have imparted to us. Plato is speaking at pp. 15, 16 of two things—(1) the crude notion of the one and many, which powerfully affects the ordinary mind when first beginning to think (15 D–16 A); (2) the same notion when cleared up by the help of dialectic (16 C–E).

To us the problem of the one and many has lost its chief interest and perplexity. We readily acknowledge that a whole has many parts, that the continuous is also the divisible, that in all objects of sense there is a one and many, and that a like principle may be applied by analogy to purely intellectual conceptions. If we attend to the meaning of the words, we are compelled to admit that two contradictory statements are true. But the antinomy is so familiar as to be scarcely observed by us. Our sense of the contradiction, like Plato's, only begins in a higher sphere, when we speak of necessity and free-will, of mind and body, of Three Persons and One Substance, and the like. The world of knowledge is always dividing more and more; every truth is at first the enemy of every other truth. Yet without this division there can be no truth; nor any complete truth without the reunion of the parts into a whole. And hence the coexistence of opposites in the unity of the idea is regarded by Hegel as the supreme principle of philosophy; and the law of contradiction, which is affirmed by logicians to be an ultimate principle of the human mind, is displaced by another law, which asserts the coexistence of contradictories as imperfect and divided elements of the truth. Without entering further into the depths of Hegelianism, we may remark that this and all similar attempts to reconcile antinomies have their origin in the old Platonic problem of the 'One and Many.'

II. 1. The first of Plato's categories or elements is the infinite. This is the negative of measure or limit; the unthinkable, the

*Philebus.* unknowable; of which nothing can be affirmed; the mixture or chaos which preceded distinct kinds in the creation of the world; the first vague impression of sense; the more or less which refuses to be reduced to rule, having certain affinities with evil, with pleasure, with ignorance, and which in the scale of being is farthest removed from the beautiful and good. To a Greek of the age of Plato, the idea of an infinite mind would have been an absurdity. He would have insisted that 'the good is of the nature of the finite,' and that the infinite is a mere negative, which is on the level of sensation, and not of thought. He was aware that there was a distinction between the infinitely great and the infinitely small, but he would have equally denied the claim of either to true existence. Of that positive infinity, or infinite reality, which we attribute to God, he had no conception.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

The Greek conception of the infinite would be more truly described, in our way of speaking, as the indefinite. To us, the notion of infinity is subsequent rather than prior to the finite, expressing not absolute vacancy or negation, but only the removal of limit or restraint, which we suppose to exist not before but after we have already set bounds to thought and matter, and divided them after their kinds. From different points of view, either the finite or infinite may be looked upon respectively both as positive and negative (cp. 'Omnis determinatio est negatio'); and the conception of the one determines that of the other. The Greeks and the moderns seem to be nearly at the opposite poles in their manner of regarding them. And both are surprised when they make the discovery, as Plato has done in the *Sophist*, how large an element negation forms in the framework of their thoughts.

2, 3. The finite element which mingles with and regulates the infinite is best expressed to us by the word 'law.' It is that which measures all things and assigns to them their limit; which preserves them in their natural state, and brings them within the sphere of human cognition. This is described by the terms harmony, health, order, perfection, and the like. All things, in as far as they are good, even pleasures, which are for the most part indefinite, partake of this element. We should be wrong in attributing to Plato the conception of laws of nature derived

from observation and experiment. And yet he has as intense a conviction as any modern philosopher that nature does not proceed by chance. But observing that the wonderful construction of number and figure, which he had within himself, and which seemed to be prior to himself, explained a part of the phenomena of the external world, he extended their principles to the whole, finding in them the true type both of human life and of the order of nature.

Two other points may be noticed respecting the third class. First, that Plato seems to be unconscious of any interval or chasm which separates the finite from the infinite. The one is in various ways and degrees working in the other. Hence he has implicitly answered the difficulty with which he started, of how the one could remain one and yet be divided among many individuals, or 'how ideas could be in and out of themselves,' and the like. Secondly, that in this mixed class we find the idea of beauty. Good, when exhibited under the aspect of measure or symmetry, becomes beauty (64 E). And if we translate his language into corresponding modern terms, we shall not be far wrong in saying that here, as well as in the *Republic*, Plato conceives beauty under the idea of proportion.

4. Last and highest in the list of principles or elements is the cause of the union of the finite and infinite, to which Plato ascribes the order of the world. Reasoning from man to the universe, he argues that as there is a mind in the one, there must be a mind in the other, which he identifies with the royal mind of Zeus. This is the first cause of which 'our ancestors spoke,' as he says, appealing to tradition, in the *Philebus* as well as in the *Timaeus*. The 'one and many' is also supposed to have been revealed by tradition. For the mythical element has not altogether disappeared.

Some characteristic differences may here be noted, which distinguish the ancient from the modern mode of conceiving God.

a. To Plato, the idea of God or mind is both personal and impersonal. Nor in ascribing, as appears to us, both these attributes to him, and in speaking of God both in the masculine and neuter gender, did he seem to himself inconsistent. For the difference between the personal and impersonal was not

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

marked to him as to ourselves. We make a fundamental distinction between a thing and a person, while to Plato, by the help of various intermediate abstractions, such as end, good, cause, they appear almost to meet in one, or to be two aspects of the same. Hence, without any reconciliation or even remark, in the Republic he speaks at one time of God or Gods, and at another time of the Good. So in the Phaedrus he seems to pass unconsciously from the concrete to the abstract conception of the Ideas in the same dialogue. Nor in the Philebus is he careful to show in what relation the idea of the divine mind stands to the supreme principle of measure.

β. Again, to us there is a strongly-marked distinction between a first cause and a final cause. And we should commonly identify a first cause with God, and the final cause with the world, which is His work. But Plato, though not a Pantheist, and very far from confounding God with the world, tends to identify the first with the final cause. The cause of the union of the finite and infinite might be described as a higher law; the final measure which is the highest expression of the good may also be described as the supreme law. Both these conceptions are realized chiefly by the help of the material world; and therefore when we pass into the sphere of ideas can hardly be distinguished.

The four principles are required for the determination of the relative places of pleasure and wisdom. Plato has been saying that we should proceed by regular steps from the one to the many. Accordingly, before assigning the precedence either to good or pleasure, he must first find out and arrange in order the general principles of things. Mind is ascertained to be akin to the nature of the cause, while pleasure is found in the infinite or indefinite class. We may now proceed to divide pleasure and knowledge after their kinds.

III. 1. Plato speaks of pleasure as indefinite, as relative, as a generation, and in all these points of view as in a category distinct from good. For again we must repeat, that to the Greek 'the good is of the nature of the finite,' and, like virtue, either is, or is nearly allied to, knowledge. The modern philosopher would remark that the indefinite is equally real with the definite. Health and mental qualities are in the concrete undefined; they

*Philebus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

are nevertheless real goods, and Plato rightly regards them as falling under the finite class. Again, we are able to define objects or ideas, not in so far as they are in the mind, but in so far as they are manifested externally, and can therefore be reduced to rule and measure. And if we adopt the test of definiteness, the pleasures of the body are more capable of being defined than any other pleasures. As in art and knowledge generally, we proceed from without inwards, beginning with facts of sense, and passing to the more ideal conceptions of mental pleasure, happiness, and the like.

2. Pleasure is depreciated as relative, while good is exalted as absolute. But this distinction seems to arise from an unfair mode of regarding them; the abstract idea of the one is compared with the concrete experience of the other. For all pleasure and all knowledge may be viewed either abstracted from the mind, or in relation to the mind (cp. Aristot. Nic. Ethics, x. 3, 4). The first is an idea only, which may be conceived as absolute and unchangeable, and then the abstract idea of pleasure will be equally unchangeable with that of knowledge. But when we come to view either as phenomena of consciousness, the same defects are for the most part incident to both of them. Our hold upon them is equally transient and uncertain; the mind cannot be always in a state of intellectual tension, any more than capable of feeling pleasure always. The knowledge which is at one time clear and distinct, at another seems to fade away, just as the pleasure of health after sickness, or of eating after hunger, soon passes into a neutral state of unconsciousness and indifference. Change and alternation are necessary for the mind as well as for the body; and in this is to be acknowledged, not an element of evil, but rather a law of nature. The chief difference between subjective pleasure and subjective knowledge in respect of permanence is that the latter, when our feeble faculties are able to grasp it, still conveys to us an idea of unchangeableness which cannot be got rid of.

3. In the language of ancient philosophy, the relative character of pleasure is described as becoming or generation. This is relative to Being or Essence, and from one point of view may be regarded as the Heraclitean flux in contrast with the Eleatic Being; from another, as the transient enjoyment of eating and

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

drinking compared with the supposed permanence of intellectual pleasures. But to us the distinction is unmeaning, and belongs to a stage of philosophy which has passed away. Plato himself seems to have suspected that the continuance or life of things is quite as much to be attributed to a principle of rest as of motion (cp. Charm. 159, 160; Cratyl. 437). A later view of pleasure is found in Aristotle, who agrees with Plato in many points, e.g. in his view of pleasure as a restoration to nature, in his distinction between bodily and mental, between necessary and non-necessary pleasures. But he is also in advance of Plato; for he affirms that pleasure is not in the body at all; and hence not even the bodily pleasures are to be spoken of as generations, but only as accompanied by generation (Nic. Eth. x. 3, 6; I. 8, 10).

4. Plato attempts to identify vicious pleasures with some form of error, and insists that the term false may be applied to them: in this he appears to be carrying out in a confused manner the Socratic doctrine, that virtue is knowledge, vice ignorance. He will allow of no distinction between the pleasures and the erroneous opinions on which they are founded, whether arising out of the illusion of distance or not. But to this we naturally reply with Protarchus, that the pleasure is what it is, although the calculation may be false, or the after-effects painful. It is difficult to acquit Plato, to use his own language, of being a 'tyro in dialectics,' when he overlooks such a distinction. Yet, on the other hand, we are hardly fair judges of confusions of thought in those who view things differently from ourselves.

5. There appears also to be an incorrectness in the notion which occurs both here and in the *Gorgias*, of the simultaneousness of merely bodily pleasures and pains. We may, perhaps, admit, though even this is not free from doubt, that the feeling of pleasurable hope or recollection is, or rather may be, simultaneous with acute bodily suffering. But there is no such coexistence of the pain of thirst with the pleasures of drinking; they are not really simultaneous, for the one expels the other. Nor does Plato seem to have considered that the bodily pleasures, except in certain extreme cases, are unattended with pain. Few philosophers will deny that a degree of pleasure attends eating and drinking; and yet surely we might as well speak of the pains of digestion which follow, as of the pains of hunger and thirst

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

which precede them. Plato's conception is derived partly from the extreme case of a man suffering pain from hunger or thirst, partly from the image of a full and empty vessel. But the truth is rather, that while the gratification of our bodily desires constantly affords some degree of pleasure, the antecedent pains are scarcely perceived by us, being almost done away with by use and regularity.

6. The desire to classify pleasures as accompanied or not accompanied by antecedent pains, has led Plato to place under one head the pleasures of smell and sight, as well as those derived from sounds of music and from knowledge. He would have done better to make a separate class of the pleasures of smell, having no association of mind, or perhaps to have divided them into natural and artificial. The pleasures of sight and sound might then have been regarded as being the expression of ideas. But this higher and truer point of view never appears to have occurred to Plato. Nor has he any distinction between the fine arts and the mechanical; and, neither here nor anywhere, an adequate conception of the beautiful in external things.

7. Plato agrees partially with certain 'surly or fastidious' philosophers, as he terms them, who defined pleasure to be the absence of pain. They are also described as eminent in physics. There is unfortunately no school of Greek philosophy known to us which combined these two characteristics. Antisthenes, who was an enemy of pleasure, was not a physical philosopher; the atomists, who were physical philosophers, were not enemies of pleasure. Yet such a combination of opinions is far from being impossible. Plato's omission to mention them by name has created the same uncertainty respecting them which also occurs respecting the 'friends of the ideas' and the 'materialists' in the Sophist.

On the whole, this discussion is one of the least satisfactory in the dialogues of Plato. While the ethical nature of pleasure is scarcely considered, and the merely physical phenomenon imperfectly analysed, too much weight is given to ideas of measure and number, as the sole principle of good. The comparison of pleasure and knowledge is really a comparison of two elements, which have no common measure, and which cannot be excluded from each other. Feeling is not opposed to know-



*Philebus.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

ledge, and in all consciousness there is an element of both. The most abstract kinds of knowledge are inseparable from some pleasure or pain, which accompanies the acquisition or possession of them: the student is liable to grow weary of them, and soon discovers that continuous mental energy is not granted to men. The most sensual pleasure, on the other hand, is inseparable from the consciousness of pleasure; no man can be happy who, to borrow Plato's illustration, is leading the life of an oyster. Hence (by his own confession) the main thesis is not worth determining; the real interest lies in the incidental discussion. We can no more separate pleasure from knowledge in the *Philebus* than we can separate justice from happiness in the *Republic*.

IV. An interesting account is given in the *Philebus* of the rank and order of the sciences or arts, which agrees generally with the scheme of knowledge in the Sixth Book of the *Republic*. The chief difference is, that the position of the arts is more exactly defined. They are divided into an empirical part and a scientific part, of which the first is mere guess-work, the second is determined by rule and measure. Of the more empirical arts, music is given as an example; this, although affirmed to be necessary to human life (62 B), is depreciated. Music is regarded from a point of view entirely opposite to that of the *Republic*, not as a sublime science, coordinate with astronomy, but as full of doubt and conjecture. According to the standard of accuracy which is here adopted, it is rightly placed lower in the scale than carpentering, because the latter is more capable of being reduced to measure.

The theoretical element of the arts may also become a purely abstract science, when separated from matter, and is then said to be pure and unmixed. The distinction which Plato here makes seems to be the same as that between pure and applied mathematics, and may be expressed in the modern formula—science is art theoretical, art is science practical. In the reason which he gives for the superiority of the pure science of number over the mixed or applied, we can only agree with him in part. He says that the numbers which the philosopher employs are always the same, whereas the numbers which are used in practice represent different sizes or quantities. He does not see that this power of

expressing different quantities by the same symbol is the characteristic and not the defect of numbers, and is due to their abstract nature;—although we admit of course what Plato seems to feel in his distinctions between pure and impure knowledge, that the imperfection of matter enters into the applications of them.

Above the other sciences, as in the Republic, towers dialectic, which is the science of eternal Being, apprehended by the purest mind and reason. The lower sciences, including the mathematical, are akin to opinion rather than to reason, and are placed together in the fourth class of goods. The relation in which they stand to dialectic is obscure in the Republic, and is not cleared up in the Philebus.

V. Thus far we have only attained to the vestibule or antechamber of the good; for there is a good exceeding knowledge, exceeding essence, which, like Glaucon in the Republic (Book vi. 509), we find a difficulty in apprehending. This good is now to be exhibited to us under various aspects and gradations. The relative dignity of pleasure and knowledge has been determined; but they have not yet received their exact position in the scale of goods. Some difficulties occur to us in the enumeration: First, how are we to distinguish the first from the second class of goods, or the second from the third? Secondly, why is there no mention of the supreme mind? Thirdly, the nature of the fourth class. Fourthly, the meaning of the allusion to a sixth class, which is not further investigated.

(1) Plato seems to proceed in his table of goods, from the more abstract to the less abstract; from the subjective to the objective; until at the lower end of the scale we fairly descend into the region of human action and feeling. To him, the greater the abstraction the greater the truth, and he is always tending to see abstractions within abstractions; which, like the ideas in the Parmenides, are always appearing one behind another. Hence we find a difficulty in following him into the sphere of thought which he is seeking to attain. First in his scale of goods he places measure, in which he finds the eternal nature: this would be more naturally expressed in modern language as eternal law, and seems to be akin both to the finite and to the mind or cause, which were two of the elements in the former table. Like the supreme nature in the Timaeus, like the ideal beauty in the

*Philebus.* Symposium or the Phaedrus, or like the ideal good in the Republic, this is the absolute and unapproachable being. But this being is manifested in symmetry and beauty everywhere, in the order of nature and of mind, in the relations of men to one another. For the word 'measure' he now substitutes the word 'symmetry,' as if intending to express measure conceived as relation. He then proceeds to regard the good no longer in an objective form, but as the human reason seeking to attain truth by the aid of dialectic; such at least we naturally infer to be his meaning, when we consider that both here and in the Republic the sphere of *νοῦς* or mind is assigned to dialectic. (2) It is remarkable (see above) that this personal conception of mind is confined to the human mind, and not, as at p. 22 C, extended to the divine. (3) If we may be allowed to interpret one dialogue of Plato by another, the sciences of figure and number are probably classed with the arts and true opinions, because they proceed from hypotheses (cp. Rep. Book vi. 511). (4) The sixth class, if a sixth class is to be added, is playfully set aside by a quotation from Orpheus: Plato means to say that a sixth class, if there be such a class, is not worth considering, because pleasure, having only gained the fifth place in the scale of goods, is already out of the running.

VI. We may now endeavour to ascertain the relation of the *Philebus* to the other dialogues. Here Plato shows the same indifference to his own doctrine of Ideas which he has already manifested in the *Parmenides* and the *Sophist*. The principle of the one and many of which he here speaks, is illustrated by examples in the *Sophist* and *Statesman*. Notwithstanding the differences of style, many resemblances may be noticed between the *Philebus* and *Gorgias*. The theory of the simultaneousness of pleasure and pain is common to both of them (*Phil.* 36 B, *Gorg.* 496 E); there is also a common tendency in them to take up arms against pleasure, although the view of the *Philebus*, which is probably the later of the two dialogues, is the more moderate. At p. 46 A, B, there seems to be an allusion to the passage in the *Gorgias* (494), in which Socrates dilates on the pleasures of itching and scratching. Nor is there any real discrepancy in the manner in which *Gorgias* and his art are spoken of in the two dialogues. For Socrates, at p. 58, is far from implying that the art of rhetoric has a real sphere

of practical usefulness: he only means that the refutation of the claims of Gorgias is not necessary for his present purpose. He is saying in effect: 'Admit, if you please, that rhetoric is the greatest and usefulest of sciences:—this does not prove that dialectic is not the purest and most exact.' From the *Sophist* and *Statesman* we know that his hostility towards the sophists and rhetoricians was not mitigated in later life; although both in the *Statesman* and *Laws* he admits of a higher use of rhetoric.

Reasons have been already given for assigning a late date to the *Philebus*. That the date is probably later than that of the *Republic*, may be further argued on the following grounds:—  
1. The general resemblance to the later dialogues and to the *Laws*: 2. The more complete account of the nature of good and pleasure: 3. The distinction between perception, memory, recollection, and opinion (pp. 34–38) which indicates a great progress in psychology; also between understanding and imagination, which is described under the figure of the scribe and the painter (p. 39). A superficial notion may arise that Plato probably wrote shorter dialogues, such as the *Philebus*, the *Sophist*, and the *Statesman*, as studies or preparations for longer ones. This view may be natural; but on further reflection is seen to be fallacious, because these three dialogues are found to make an advance upon the metaphysical conceptions of the *Republic*. And we can more easily suppose that Plato composed shorter writings after longer ones, than suppose that he lost hold of further points of view which he had once attained.

It is more easy to find traces of the Pythagoreans, Eleatics, Megarians, Cynics, Cyrenaics and of the ideas of Anaxagoras, in the *Philebus*, than to say how much is due to each of them. Had we fuller records of those old philosophers, we should probably find Plato in the midst of the fray attempting to combine Eleatic and Pythagorean doctrines, and seeking to find a truth beyond either Being or number; setting up his own concrete conception of good against the abstract practical good of the Cynics, or the abstract intellectual good of the Megarians, and his own idea of classification against the denial of plurality in unity which is also attributed to them; warring against the Eristics as destructive of truth, as he had formerly fought against the Sophists; taking up a middle position between the Cynics and

*Philebus.* Cyrenaics in his doctrine of pleasure; asserting with more consistency than Anaxagoras the existence of an intelligent mind and cause. Of the Heracliteans, whom he is said by Aristotle to have cultivated in his youth, he speaks in the *Philebus*, as in the *Theaetetus* and *Cratylus*, with irony and contempt. But we have not the knowledge which would enable us to pursue further the line of reflection here indicated; nor can we expect to find perfect clearness or order in the first efforts of mankind to understand the working of their own minds. The ideas which they are attempting to analyse, they are also in process of creating; the abstract universals of which they are seeking to adjust the relations have been already excluded by them from the category of relation.

## ANALYSIS.

The *Philebus*, like the *Cratylus*, is supposed to be the continuation of a previous discussion. An argument respecting the comparative claims of pleasure and wisdom to rank as the chief good has been already carried on between *Philebus* and Socrates. The argument is now transferred to Protarchus, the son of Callias (19 B), a noble Athenian youth, sprung from a family which had spent 'a world of money' on the Sophists (cp. *Apol.* 20 A, B; *Crat.* 391 C; *Protag.* 337 D). *Philebus*, who appears to be the teacher (16 B, 36 D), or elder friend, and perhaps the lover (53 D), of Protarchus, takes no further part in the discussion beyond asserting in the strongest manner his adherence, under all circumstances, to the cause of pleasure.

Steph.  
11

Socrates suggests that they shall have a first and second palm of victory. For there may be a good higher than either pleasure or wisdom, and then neither of them will gain the first prize, but whichever of the two is more akin to this higher good will have a right to the second. They agree, and Socrates opens the game by enlarging on the diversity and opposition which exists among pleasures. For there are pleasures of all kinds, good and bad, wise and foolish—pleasures of the temperate as well as of the intemperate. Protarchus replies that although pleasures may be opposed in so far as they spring from opposite sources, nevertheless as pleasures they are alike. Yes, retorts Socrates, pleasure is like pleasure, as figure is like figure and colour like colour;

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

yet we all know that there is great variety among figures and  
13 colours. Protarchus does not see the drift of this remark; and  
Socrates proceeds to ask how he can have a right to attribute a  
new predicate (i.e. 'good') to pleasures in general, when he  
cannot deny that they are different? What common property in  
all of them does he mean to indicate by the term 'good'? If he  
continues to assert that there is some trivial sense in which  
pleasure is one, Socrates may retort by saying that knowledge is  
14 one, but the result will be that such merely verbal and trivial  
conceptions, whether of knowledge or pleasure, will spoil the  
discussion, and will prove the incapacity of the two disputants.  
In order to avoid this danger, he proposes that they shall beat a  
retreat, and, before they proceed, come to an understanding about  
the 'high argument' of the one and the many.

Protarchus agrees to the proposal, but he is under the im-  
pression that Socrates means to discuss the common question—  
how a sensible object can be one, and yet have opposite attributes,  
such as 'great' and 'small,' 'light' and 'heavy,' or how there can  
be many members in one body, and the like wonders. Socrates  
15 has long ceased to see any wonder in these phenomena; his diffi-  
culties begin with the application of number to abstract unities  
(e.g. 'man,' 'good') and with the attempt to divide them. For  
have these unities of idea any real existence? How, if imperish-  
able, can they enter into the world of generation? How, as units,  
can they be divided and dispersed among different objects? Or  
do they exist in their entirety in each object? These difficulties  
are but imperfectly answered by Socrates in what follows.

We speak of a one and many, which is ever flowing in and out  
of all things, concerning which a young man often runs wild in  
his first metaphysical enthusiasm, talking about analysis and  
16 synthesis to his father and mother and the neighbours, hardly  
sparing even his dog. This 'one in many' is a revelation of the  
order of the world, which some Prometheus first made known to  
our ancestors; and they, who were better men and nearer the  
gods than we are, have handed it down to us. To know how to  
17 proceed by regular steps from one to many, and from many to  
one, is just what makes the difference between eristic and  
dialectic. And the right way of proceeding is to look for one  
idea or class in all things, and when you have found one to look

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

for more than one, and for all that there are, and when you have found them all and regularly divided a particular field of knowledge into classes, you may leave the further consideration of individuals. But you must not pass at once either from unity to infinity, or from infinity to unity. In music, for example, you may begin with the most general notion, but this alone will not make you a musician: you must know also the number and nature of the intervals, and the systems which are framed out of them, and the rhythms of the dance which correspond to them. And when you have a similar knowledge of any other subject, you may be said to know that subject. In speech again there are 18 infinite varieties of sound, and some one who was a wise man, or more than man, comprehended them all in the classes of mutes, vowels, and semivowels, and gave to each of them a name, and assigned them to the art of grammar.

‘But whither, Socrates, are you going? And what has this to do with the comparative eligibility of pleasure and wisdom?’ Socrates replies, that before we can adjust their respective claims, we want to know the number and kinds of both of them. What are they? He is requested to answer the question himself. That he will, if he may be allowed to make one or two 20 preliminary remarks. In the first place he has a dreamy recollection of hearing that neither pleasure nor knowledge is the highest good, for the good should be perfect and sufficient. But 21 is the life of pleasure perfect and sufficient, when deprived of memory, consciousness, anticipation? Is not this the life of an oyster? Or is the life of mind sufficient, if devoid of any particle of pleasure? Must not the union of the two be higher and more 22 eligible than either separately? And is not the element which makes this mixed life eligible more akin to mind than to pleasure? Thus pleasure is rejected and mind is rejected. And yet there may be a life of mind, not human but divine, which conquers still.

But, if we are to pursue this argument further, we shall require 23 some new weapons; and by this, I mean a new classification of existence. (1) There is a finite element of existence, and (2) an infinite, and (3) the union of the two, and (4) the cause of the union. More may be added if they are wanted, but at present we can do without them. And first of the infinite or indefinite:—That is the 24 class which is denoted by the terms more or less, and is always in

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

25 a state of comparison. All words or ideas to which the words  
 'gently,' 'extremely,' and other comparative expressions are ap-  
 plied, fall under this class. The infinite would be no longer  
 infinite, if limited or reduced to measure by number and quantity.  
 The opposite class is the limited or finite, and includes all things  
 which have number and quantity. And there is a third class of  
 generation into essence by the union of the finite and infinite, in  
 which the finite gives law to the infinite ;—under this are compre-  
 26 hended health, strength, temperate seasons, harmony, beauty, and  
 the like. The goddess of beauty saw the universal wantonness of  
 all things, and gave law and order to be the salvation of the soul.  
 But no effect can be generated without a cause, and therefore there  
 27 must be a fourth class, which is the cause of generation ; for the  
 cause or agent is not the same as the patient or effect.

And now, having obtained our classes, we may determine in  
 which our conqueror life is to be placed : Clearly in the third or  
 mixed class, in which the finite gives law to the infinite. And in  
 which is pleasure to find a place ? As clearly in the infinite or in-  
 definite, which alone, as Protarchus thinks (who seems to confuse  
 the infinite with the superlative), gives to pleasure the character of  
 28 the absolute good. Yes, retorts Socrates, and also to pain the  
 character of absolute evil. And therefore the infinite cannot be  
 that which imparts to pleasure the nature of the good. But where  
 shall we place mind ? That is a very serious and awful question,  
 which may be prefaced by another. Is mind or chance the lord  
 of the universe ? All philosophers will say the first, and yet,  
 perhaps, they may be only magnifying themselves. And for this  
 29 reason I should like to consider the matter a little more deeply,  
 even though some lovers of disorder in the world should ridicule  
 my attempt.

Now the elements earth, air, fire, water, exist in us, and they  
 exist in the cosmos ; but they are purer and fairer in the cosmos  
 30 than they are in us, and they come to us from thence. And as we  
 have a soul as well as a body, in like manner the elements of the  
 finite, the infinite, the union of the two, and the cause, are found to  
 exist in us. And if they, like the elements, exist in us, and the  
 three first exist in the world, must not the fourth or cause which  
 is the noblest of them, exist in the world ? And this cause is  
 wisdom or mind, the royal mind of Zeus, who is the king of all, as



*Philebus.* there are other gods who have other noble attributes. Observe  
ANALYSIS. how well this agrees with the testimony of men of old, who affirmed  
 mind to be the ruler of the universe. And remember that mind  
 belongs to the class which we term the cause, and pleasure to the <sup>31</sup>  
 infinite or indefinite class. We will examine the place and origin  
 of both.

What is the origin of pleasure? Her natural seat is the mixed  
 class, in which health and harmony were placed. Pain is the  
 violation, and pleasure the restoration of limit. There is a natural  
 union of finite and infinite, which in hunger, thirst, heat, cold, is <sup>32</sup>  
 impaired—this is painful, but the return to nature, in which the  
 elements are restored to their normal proportions, is pleasant.  
 Here is our first class of pleasures. And another class of pleasures  
 and pains are hopes and fears; these are in the mind only. And  
 inasmuch as the pleasures are unalloyed by pains and the pains  
 by pleasures, the examination of them may show us whether all  
 pleasure is to be desired, or whether this entire desirableness is  
 not rather the attribute of another class. But if pleasures and  
 pains consist in the violation and restoration of limit, may there <sup>33</sup>  
 not be a neutral state, in which there is neither dissolution nor  
 restoration? That is a further question, and admitting, as we  
 must, the possibility of such a state, there seems to be no reason  
 why the life of wisdom should not exist in this neutral state,  
 which is, moreover, the state of the gods, who cannot, without  
 indecency, be supposed to feel either joy or sorrow.

The second class of pleasures involves memory. There are  
 affections which are extinguished before they reach the soul, and  
 of these there is no consciousness, and therefore no memory.  
 And there are affections which the body and soul feel together, <sup>34</sup>  
 and this feeling is termed consciousness. And memory is the  
 preservation of consciousness, and reminiscence is the recovery of  
 consciousness. Now the memory of pleasure, when a man is in <sup>35</sup>  
 pain, is the memory of the opposite of his actual bodily state, and  
 is therefore not in the body, but in the mind. And there may be  
 an intermediate state, in which a person is balanced between  
 pleasure and pain; in his body there is want which is a cause of <sup>36</sup>  
 pain, but in his mind a sure hope of replenishment, which is  
 pleasant. (But if the hope be converted into despair, he has two  
 pains and not a balance of pain and pleasure.) Another question

37 is raised: May not pleasures, like opinions, be true and false? *Philebus.*

In the sense of being real, both must be admitted to be true: nor can we deny that to both of them qualities may be attributed; for 38 pleasures as well as opinions may be described as good or bad. And though we do not all of us allow that there are true and false pleasures, we all acknowledge that there are some pleasures associated with right opinion, and others with falsehood and ignorance. Let us endeavour to analyze the nature of this association.

Opinion is based on perception, which may be correct or mistaken. You may see a figure at a distance, and say first of all, 'This is a man,' and then say, 'No, this is an image made by the shepherds.' And you may affirm this in a proposition to your 39 companion, or make the remark mentally to yourself. Whether the words are actually spoken or not, on such occasions there is a scribe within who registers them, and a painter who paints the images of the things which the scribe has written down in the soul, -at least that is my own notion of the process; and the words and images which are inscribed by them may be either true or false; and they may represent either past, present, or future. And, representing the future, they must also represent the pleasures and 40 pains of anticipation—the visions of gold and other fancies which are never wanting in the mind of man. Now these hopes, as they are termed, are propositions, which are sometimes true, and sometimes false: for the good, who are the friends of the gods, see true pictures of the future, and the bad false ones. And as there may be opinion about things which are not, were not, and will not be, which is opinion still, so there may be pleasure about things which are not, were not, and will not be, which is pleasure still, -that is to say, false pleasure; and only when false, 41 can pleasure, like opinion, be vicious. Against this conclusion Protarchus reclaims.

Leaving his denial for the present, Socrates proceeds to show that some pleasures are false from another point of view. In desire, as we admitted, the body is divided from the soul, and hence pleasures and pains are often simultaneous. And we further admitted that both of them belonged to the infinite class. How, then, 42 can we compare them? Are we not liable, or rather certain, as in the case of sight, to be deceived by distance and relation? In this case the pleasures and pains are not false because based upon

*Philebus.* false opinion, but are themselves false. And there is another illusion: pain has often been said by us to arise out of the derangement—pleasure out of the restoration—of our nature. But in passing from one to the other, do we not experience neutral states, which although they appear pleasurable or painful are really neither? For even if we admit, with the wise man whom 43 Protarchus loves (and only a wise man could have ever entertained such a notion), that all things are in a perpetual flux, still these changes are often unconscious, and devoid either of pleasure or pain. We assume, then, that there are three states—pleasurable, painful, neutral; we may embellish a little by calling them gold, silver, and that which is neither.

ANALYSIS.

But there are certain natural philosophers who will not admit 44 a third state. Their instinctive dislike to pleasure leads them to affirm that pleasure is only the absence of pain. They are noble fellows, and, although we do not agree with them, we may use them as diviners who will indicate to us the right track. They will say, that the nature of anything is best known from the examination of extreme cases, e.g. the nature of hardness from the examination of the hardest things; and that the nature of pleasure will be best understood from an examination of the most intense pleasures. Now these are the pleasures of the body, not of the 45 mind; the pleasures of disease and not of health, the pleasures of the intemperate and not of the temperate. I am speaking, not of the frequency or continuance, but only of the intensity of such pleasures, and this is given them by contrast with the pain or sickness of body which precedes them. Their morbid nature is 46 illustrated by the lesser instances of itching and scratching, respecting which I swear that I cannot tell whether they are a pleasure or a pain. (1) Some of these arise out of a transition from one state of the body to another, as from cold to hot; (2) others are caused by the contrast of an internal pain and an external pleasure in the body: sometimes the feeling of pain predominates, as in itching and tingling, when they are relieved by scratching; sometimes the feeling of pleasure: or the pleasure which they give may 47 be quite overpowering, and is then accompanied by all sorts of unutterable feelings which have a death of delights in them. But there are also mixed pleasures which are in the mind only. For are not love and sorrow as well as anger 'sweeter than honey,' and also 48

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

full of pain? Is there not a mixture of feelings in the spectator of tragedy? and of comedy also? 'I do not understand that last.'

Well, then, with the view of lighting up the obscurity of these mixed feelings, let me ask whether envy is painful. 'Yes.' And yet the envious man finds something pleasing in the misfortunes of others? 'True.' And ignorance is a misfortune? 'Certainly.'

And one form of ignorance is self-conceit—a man may fancy  
49 himself richer, fairer, better, wiser than he is? 'Yes.' And he who thus deceives himself may be strong or weak? 'He may.'

And if he is strong we fear him, and if he is weak we laugh at  
50 him, which is a pleasure, and yet we envy him, which is a pain?

These mixed feelings are the rationale of tragedy and comedy, and equally the rationale of the greater drama of human life<sup>1</sup>. Having shown how sorrow, anger, envy are feelings of a mixed nature, I will reserve the consideration of the remainder for another occasion.

51 Next follow the unmixed pleasures; which, unlike the philosophers of whom I was speaking, I believe to be real. These unmixed pleasures are: (1) The pleasures derived from beauty of form, colour, sound, smell, which are absolutely pure; and in  
52 general those which are unalloyed with pain: (2) The pleasures derived from the acquisition of knowledge, which in themselves are pure, but may be attended by an accidental pain of forgetting; this, however, arises from a subsequent act of reflection, of which we need take no account. At the same time, we admit that the latter pleasures are the property of a very few. To these pure and unmixed pleasures we ascribe measure, whereas all others belong to the class of the infinite, and are liable to every species of excess. And here several questions arise for consideration:—

What is the meaning of pure and impure, of moderate and im-  
53 moderate? We may answer the question by an illustration: Purity of white paint consists in the clearness or quality of the

<sup>1</sup> There appears to be some confusion in this passage. There is no difficulty in seeing that in comedy, as in tragedy, the spectator may view the performance with mixed feelings of pain as well as of pleasure; nor is there any difficulty in understanding that envy is a mixed feeling, which rejoices not without pain at the misfortunes of others, and laughs at their ignorance of themselves. But Plato seems to think further that he has explained the feeling of the spectator in comedy sufficiently by a theory which only applies to comedy in so far as in comedy we laugh at the conceit or weakness of others. He has certainly given a very partial explanation of the ridiculous.

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

white, and this is distinct from the quantity or amount of white paint; a little pure white is fairer than a great deal which is impure. But there is another question:—Pleasure is affirmed by ingenious philosophers to be a generation; they say that there are two natures—one self-existent, the other dependent; the one noble and majestic, the other failing in both these qualities. ‘I do not understand.’ There are lovers and there are loves. ‘Yes, I know, but what is the application?’ The argument is in play, and desires to intimate that there are relatives and there are absolutes, and that the relative is for the sake of the absolute; and genera- 54  
tion is for the sake of essence. Under relatives I class all things done with a view to generation; and essence is of the class of good. But if essence is of the class of good, generation must be of some other class; and our friends, who affirm that pleasure is a generation, would laugh at the notion that pleasure is a good; and at that other notion, that pleasure is produced by generation, which 55  
is only the alternative of destruction. Who would prefer such an alternation to the equable life of pure thought? Here is one absurdity, and not the only one, to which the friends of pleasure are reduced. For is there not also an absurdity in affirming that good is of the soul only; or in declaring that the best of men, if he be in pain, is bad?

And now, from the consideration of pleasure, we pass to that of knowledge. Let us reflect that there are two kinds of knowledge—the one creative or productive, and the other educational and philosophical. Of the creative arts, there is one part purer or more akin to knowledge than the other. There is an element of guess-work and an element of number and measure in them. In 56  
music, for example, especially in flute-playing, the conjectural element prevails; while in carpentering there is more application of rule and measure. Of the creative arts, then, we may make two classes—the less exact and the more exact. And the exacter part of all of them is really arithmetic and mensuration. But arithmetic and mensuration again may be subdivided with reference either to their use in the concrete, or to their nature in the abstract—as they are regarded popularly in building and binding, or theoretically by philosophers. And, borrowing the analogy of 57  
pleasure, we may say that the philosophical use of them is purer than the other. Thus we have two arts of arithmetic, and two of

mensuration. And truest of all in the estimation of every rational man is dialectic, or the science of being, which will forget and disown us, if we forget and disown her.

*Philebus.*

ANALYSIS.

58 'But, Socrates, I have heard Gorgias say that rhetoric is the greatest and usefulest of arts; and I should not like to quarrel either with him or you.' Neither is there any inconsistency, Protarchus, with his statement in what I am now saying; for I am not maintaining that dialectic is the greatest or usefulest, but only that she is the truest of arts; my remark is not quantitative but qualitative, and refers not to the advantage or reputation of either, but to the degree of truth which they attain—here Gorgias will not care to compete; this is what we affirm to be possessed in the  
59 highest degree by dialectic. And do not let us appeal to Gorgias or Philebus or Socrates, but ask, on behalf of the argument, what are the highest truths which the soul has the power of attaining. And is not this the science which has a firmer grasp of them than any other? For the arts generally are only occupied with matters of opinion, and with the production and action and passion of this sensible world. But the highest truth is that which is eternal and unchangeable. And reason and wisdom are concerned with the eternal; and these are the very claimants, if not for the first, at least for the second place, whom I propose as rivals to pleasure.

And now, having the materials, we may proceed to mix them—  
60 first recapitulating the question at issue.

Philebus affirmed pleasure to be the good, and assumed them to be one nature; I affirmed that they were two natures, and declared that knowledge was more akin to the good than pleasure. I said that the two together were more eligible than either taken singly;  
61 and to this we adhere. Reason intimates, as at first, that we should seek the good not in the unmixed life, but in the mixed.

The cup is ready, waiting to be mingled, and here are two fountains, one of honey, the other of pure water, out of which to make the fairest possible mixture. There are pure and impure pleasures—pure and impure sciences. Let us consider the sections of each which have the most of purity and truth; to admit them all  
62 indiscriminately would be dangerous. First we will take the pure sciences; but shall we mingle the impure—the art which uses the false rule and the false measure? That we must, if we are any of us to find our way home; man cannot live upon pure mathematics

*Philebus.* alone. And must I include music, which is admitted to be guess-work? 'Yes, you must, if human life is to have any humanity.' Well, then, I will open the door and let them all in; they shall mingle in an Homeric 'meeting of the waters.' And now we turn to the pleasures; shall I admit them? 'Admit first of all the pure pleasures; secondly, the necessary.' And what shall we say about 63 the rest? First, ask the pleasures—they will be too happy to dwell with wisdom. Secondly, ask the arts and sciences—they reply that the excesses of intemperance are the ruin of them; and that they would rather only have the pleasures of health and temperance, which are the handmaidens of virtue. But still we 64 want truth? That is now added; and so the argument is complete, and may be compared to an incorporeal law, which is to hold fair rule over a living body. And now we are at the vestibule of the good, in which there are three chief elements—truth, symmetry, and beauty. These will be the criterion of the comparative claims 65 of pleasure and wisdom.

Which has the greater share of truth? Surely wisdom; for pleasure is the veriest impostor in the world, and the perjuries of lovers have passed into a proverb.

Which of symmetry? Wisdom again; for nothing is more immoderate than pleasure.

~~Which of beauty?~~ Once more, wisdom; for pleasure is often 66 unseemly, and the greatest pleasures are put out of sight.

Not pleasure, then, ranks first in the scale of good, but measure, and eternal harmony.

Second comes the symmetrical and beautiful and perfect.

Third, mind and wisdom.

Fourth, sciences and arts and true opinions.

Fifth, painless pleasures.

Of a sixth class, I have no more to say. Thus, pleasure and mind may both renounce the claim to the first place. But mind 67 is ten thousand times nearer to the chief good than pleasure. Pleasure ranks fifth and not first, even though all the animals in the world assert the contrary.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

pleasure an evil? a good? the only good?' are the simple forms which the enquiry assumed among the Socratic schools. But at an early stage of the controversy another question was asked: 'Do pleasures differ in kind? and are some bad, some good, and some neither bad nor good?' There are bodily and there are mental pleasures, which were at first confused but afterwards distinguished. A distinction was also made between necessary and unnecessary pleasures; and again between pleasures which had or had not corresponding pains. The ancient philosophers were fond of asking, in the language of their age, 'Is pleasure a "becoming" only, and therefore transient and relative, or do some pleasures partake of truth and Being?' To these ancient speculations the moderns have added a further question:—'Whose pleasure? The pleasure of yourself, or of your neighbour,—of the individual, or of the world?' This little addition has changed the whole aspect of the discussion: the same word is now supposed to include two principles as widely different as benevolence and self-love. Some modern writers have also distinguished between pleasure the test, and pleasure the motive of actions. For the universal test of right actions (how I know them) may not always be the highest or best motive of them (why I do them).

Socrates, as we learn from the *Memorabilia* of Xenophon, first drew attention to the consequences of actions. Mankind were said by him to act rightly when they knew what they were doing, or, in the language of the *Gorgias*, 'did what they would.' He seems to have been the first who maintained that the good was the useful (*Mem.* iv. 6, 8). In his eagerness for generalization, seeking, as Aristotle says, for the universal in *Ethics* (*Metaph.* i. 6. §§ 2, 3), he took the most obvious intellectual aspect of human action which occurred to him. He meant to emphasize, not pleasure, but the calculation of pleasure; neither is he arguing that pleasure is the chief good, but that we should have a principle of choice. He did not intend to oppose 'the useful' to some higher conception, such as the Platonic ideal, but to chance and caprice. The Platonic Socrates pursues the same vein of thought in the *Protagoras* (351 foll.), where he argues against the so-called sophist that pleasure and pain are the final standards and motives of good and evil, and that the salvation of human life depends upon a right estimate of pleasures greater or less when seen near and at a distance. The



*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

testimony of Xenophon is thus confirmed by that of Plato, and we are therefore justified in calling Socrates the first utilitarian; as indeed there is no side or aspect of philosophy which may not with reason be ascribed to him—he is Cynic and Cyrenaic, Platonist and Aristotelian in one. But in the *Phaedo* the Socratic has already passed into a more ideal point of view (pp. 68, 69); and he, or rather Plato speaking in his person, expressly repudiates the notion that the exchange of a less pleasure for a greater can be an exchange of virtue. Such virtue is the virtue of ordinary men who live in the world of appearance; they are temperate only that they may enjoy the pleasures of intemperance, and courageous from fear of danger. Whereas the philosopher is seeking after wisdom and not after pleasure, whether near or distant: he is the mystic, the initiated, who has learnt to despise the body and is yearning all his life long for a truth which will hereafter be revealed to him. In the *Republic* (ix. 582) the pleasures of knowledge are affirmed to be superior to other pleasures, because the philosopher so estimates them; and he alone has had experience of both kinds. (Compare a similar argument urged by one of the latest defenders of Utilitarianism, Mill's *Utilitarianism*, p. 12.) In the *Philebus*, Plato, although he regards the enemies of pleasure with complacency, still further modifies the transcendentalism of the *Phaedo*. For he is compelled to confess, rather reluctantly, perhaps, that some pleasures, i. e. those which have no antecedent pains, claim a place in the scale of goods.

There have been many reasons why not only Plato but mankind in general have been unwilling to acknowledge that 'pleasure is the chief good.' Either they have heard a voice calling to them out of another world; or the life and example of some great teacher has cast their thoughts of right and wrong in another mould; or the word 'pleasure' has been associated in their mind with merely animal enjoyment. They could not believe that what they were always striving to overcome, and the power or principle in them which overcame, were of the same nature. The pleasure of doing good to others and of bodily self-indulgence, the pleasures of intellect and the pleasures of sense, are so different:—Why then should they be called by a common name? Or, if the equivocal or metaphorical use of the word is justified by custom (like the use of other words which at first referred only to

the body, and then by a figure have been transferred to the mind), still, why should we make an ambiguous word the corner-stone of moral philosophy? To the higher thinker the Utilitarian or hedonistic mode of speaking has been at variance with religion and with any higher conception both of politics and of morals. It has not satisfied their imagination; it has offended their taste. To elevate pleasure, 'the most fleeting of all things,' into a general idea seems to such men a contradiction. They do not desire to bring down their theory to the level of their practice. The simplicity of the 'greatest happiness' principle has been acceptable to philosophers, but the better part of the world has been slow to receive it.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

Before proceeding, we may make a few admissions which will narrow the field of dispute; and we may as well leave behind a few prejudices, which intelligent opponents of Utilitarianism have by this time 'agreed to discard' (Phil. 14 D). We admit that Utility is coextensive with right, and that no action can be right which does not tend to the happiness of mankind; we acknowledge that a large class of actions are made right or wrong by their consequences only; we say further that mankind are not too mindful, but that they are far too regardless of consequences, and that they need to have the doctrine of utility habitually inculcated on them. We recognize the value of a principle which can supply a connecting link between Ethics and Politics, and under which all human actions are or may be included. The desire to promote happiness is no mean preference of expediency to right, but one of the highest and noblest motives by which human nature can be animated. Neither in referring actions to the test of utility have we to make a laborious calculation, any more than in trying them by other standards of morals. For long ago they have been classified sufficiently for all practical purposes by the thinker, by the legislator, by the opinion of the world. Whatever may be the hypothesis on which they are explained, or which in doubtful cases may be applied to the regulation of them, we are very rarely, if ever, called upon at the moment of performing them to determine their effect upon the happiness of mankind.

There is a theory which has been contrasted with Utility by Paley and others—the theory of a moral sense: Are our ideas of right and wrong innate or derived from experience? This, perhaps, is another of those speculations which intelligent men might

*Philebus.* 'agree to discard.' For it has been worn threadbare ; and either alternative is equally consistent with a transcendental or with an eudaemonistic system of ethics, with a greatest happiness principle or with Kant's law of duty. Yet to avoid misconception, what appears to be the truth about the origin of our moral ideas may be shortly summed up as follows :—To each of us individually our moral ideas come first of all in childhood through the medium of education, from parents and teachers, assisted by the unconscious influence of language ; they are impressed upon a mind which at first is like a waxen tablet, adapted to receive them ; but they soon become fixed or set, and in after life are strengthened, or perhaps weakened by the force of public opinion. They may be corrected and enlarged by experience, they may be reasoned about, they may be brought home to us by the circumstances of our lives, they may be intensified by imagination, by reflection, by a course of action likely to confirm them. Under the influence of religious feeling or by an effort of thought, any one beginning with the ordinary rules of morality may create out of them for himself ideals of holiness and virtue. They slumber in the minds of most men, yet in all of us there remains some tincture of affection, some desire of good, some sense of truth, some fear of the law. Of some such state or process each individual is conscious in himself, and if he compares his own experience with that of others he will find the witness of their consciences to coincide with that of his own. All of us have entered into an inheritance which we have the power of appropriating and making use of. No great effort of mind is required on our part ; we learn morals, as we learn to talk, instinctively, from conversing with others, in an enlightened age, in a civilized country, in a good home. A well-educated child of ten years old already knows the essentials of morals : 'Thou shalt not steal,' 'thou shalt speak the truth,' 'thou shalt love thy parents,' 'thou shalt fear God.' What more does he want ?

But whence comes this common inheritance or stock of moral ideas ? Their beginning, like all other beginnings of human things, is obscure, and is the least important part of them. Imagine, if you will, that Society originated in the herding of brutes, in their parental instincts, in their rude attempts at self-preservation :—Man is not man in that he resembles, but in that

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

he differs from them. We must pass into another cycle of existence, before we can discover in him by any evidence accessible to us even the germs of our moral ideas. In the history of the world, which viewed from within is the history of the human mind, they have been slowly created by religion, by poetry, by law, having their foundation in the natural affections and in the necessity of some degree of truth and justice in a social state; they have been deepened and enlarged by the efforts of great thinkers who have idealized and connected them—by the lives of saints and prophets who have taught and exemplified them. The schools of ancient philosophy which seem so far from us—Socrates, Plato, Aristotle, the Stoics, the Epicureans, and a few modern teachers, such as Kant and Bentham, have each of them supplied ‘moments’ of thought to the world. The life of Christ has embodied a divine love, wisdom, patience, reasonableness. From his image, however imperfectly handed down to us, the modern world has received a standard more perfect in idea than the societies of ancient times, but also further removed from practice. For there is certainly a greater interval between the theory and practice of Christians than between the theory and practice of the Greeks and Romans; the ideal is more above us, and the aspiration after good has often lent a strange power to evil. And sometimes, as at the Reformation, or French Revolution, when the upper classes of a so-called Christian country have become corrupted by priestcraft, by casuistry, by licentiousness, by despotism, the lower have risen up and re-asserted the natural sense of religion and right.

We may further remark that our moral ideas, as the world grows older, perhaps as we grow older ourselves, unless they have been undermined in us by false philosophy or the practice of mental analysis, or infected by the corruption of society or by some moral disorder in the individual, are constantly assuming a more natural and necessary character. The habit of the mind, the opinion of the world, familiarizes them to us; and they take more and more the form of immediate intuition. The moral sense comes last and not first in the order of their development, and is the instinct which we have inherited or acquired, not the nobler effort of reflection which created them and which keeps them alive. We do not stop to reason about common honesty. When-

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

ever we are not blinded by self-deceit, as for example in judging the actions of others, we have no hesitation in determining what is right and wrong. The principles of morality, when not at variance with some desire or worldly interest of our own, or with the opinion of the public, are hardly perceived by us; but in the conflict of reason and passion they assert their authority and are not overcome without remorse.

Such is a brief outline of the history of our moral ideas. We have to distinguish, first of all, the manner in which they have grown up in the world from the manner in which they have been communicated to each of us. We may represent them to ourselves as flowing out of the boundless ocean of language and thought in little rills, which convey them to the heart and brain of each individual. But neither must we confound the theories or aspects of morality with the origin of our moral ideas. These are not the roots or 'origines' of morals, but the latest efforts of reflection, the lights in which the whole moral world has been regarded by different thinkers and successive generations of men. If we ask: Which of these many theories is the true one? we may answer: All of them—moral sense, innate ideas, *a priori*, *a posteriori* notions, the philosophy of experience, the philosophy of intuition—all of them have added something to our conception of Ethics; no one of them is the whole truth. But to decide how far our ideas of morality are derived from one source or another; to determine what history, what philosophy has contributed to them; to distinguish the original, simple elements from the manifold and complex applications of them, would be a long enquiry too far removed from the question which we are now pursuing.

Bearing in mind the distinction which we have been seeking to establish between our earliest and our most mature ideas of morality, we may now proceed to state the theory of Utility, not exactly in the words, but in the spirit of one of its ablest and most moderate supporters<sup>1</sup>:—'That which alone makes actions either right or desirable is their utility, or tendency to promote the happiness of mankind, or, in other words, to increase the sum of pleasure in the world. But all pleasures are not the same: they differ in quality as well as in quantity, and the pleasure which is superior in quality is incommensurable with the inferior. Neither is the pleasure or

<sup>1</sup> Mill's Utilitarianism.

happiness, which we seek, our own pleasure, but that of others,— *Philebus.*  
of our family, of our country, of mankind. The desire of this, and  
even the sacrifice of our own interest to that of other men, may  
become a passion to a rightly educated nature. The Utilitarian  
finds a place in his system for this virtue and for every other.’  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

Good or happiness or pleasure is thus regarded as the true and only end of human life. To this all our desires will be found to tend, and in accordance with this all the virtues, including justice, may be explained. Admitting that men rest for a time in inferior ends, and do not cast their eyes beyond them, these ends are really dependent on the greater end of happiness, and would not be pursued, unless in general they had been found to lead to it. The existence of such an end is proved, as in Aristotle's time, so in our own, by the universal fact that men desire it. The obligation to promote it is based upon the social nature of man; this sense of duty is shared by all of us in some degree, and is capable of being greatly fostered and strengthened. So far from being inconsistent with religion, the greatest happiness principle is in the highest degree agreeable to it. For what can be more reasonable than that God should will the happiness of all his creatures? and in working out their happiness we may be said to be ‘working together with him.’ Nor is it inconceivable that a new enthusiasm of the future, far stronger than any old religion, may be based upon such a conception.

But then for the familiar phrase of the ‘greatest happiness principle,’ it seems as if we ought now to read ‘the noblest happiness principle,’ ‘the happiness of others principle’—the principle not of the greatest, but of the highest pleasure, pursued with no more regard to our own immediate interest than is required by the law of self-preservation. Transfer the thought of happiness to another life, dropping the external circumstances which form so large a part of our idea of happiness in this, and the meaning of the word becomes indistinguishable from holiness, harmony, wisdom, love. By the slight addition ‘of others,’ all the associations of the word are altered; we seem to have passed over from one theory of morals to the opposite. For allowing that the happiness of others is reflected on ourselves, and also that every man must live before he can do good to others, still the last limitation is a very trifling exception, and the happiness of another is very far from

*Philebus*INTRODUC-  
TION.

compensating for the loss of our own. According to Mr. Mill, he would best carry out the principle of utility who sacrificed his own pleasure most to that of his fellow-men. But if so, Hobbes and Butler, Shaftesbury and Hume, are not so far apart as they and their followers imagine. The thought of self and the thought of others are alike superseded in the more general notion of the happiness of mankind at large. But in this composite good, until society becomes perfected, the friend of man himself has generally the least share, and may be a great sufferer.

And now what objection have we to urge against a system of moral philosophy so beneficent, so enlightened, so ideal, and at the same time so practical,—so Christian, as we may say without exaggeration,—and which has the further advantage of resting morality on a principle intelligible to all capacities? Have we not found that which Socrates and Plato ‘grew old in seeking’? Are we not desirous of happiness, at any rate for ourselves and our friends, if not for all mankind? If, as is natural, we begin by thinking of ourselves first, we are easily led on to think of others; for we cannot help acknowledging that what is right for us is the right and inheritance of others. We feel the advantage of an abstract principle wide enough and strong enough to override all the particularisms of mankind; which acknowledges a universal good, truth, right; which is capable of inspiring men like a passion, and is the symbol of a cause for which they are ready to contend to their life’s end.

And if we test this principle by the lives of its professors, it would certainly appear inferior to **none** as a rule of action. From the days of Eudoxus (Arist. *Ethics*, x. 2) and Epicurus to our own, the votaries of pleasure **have** gained belief for their principles by their practice. Two of the noblest and most disinterested men who have lived in this century, Bentham and J. S. Mill, whose lives were a long devotion to the service of their fellows, have been among the most enthusiastic supporters of utility; while among their contemporaries, some who were of a more mystical turn of mind, have ended rather in aspiration than in action, and have been found unequal to the duties of life. Looking back on them now that they are removed from the scene, we feel that mankind has been the better for them. The world was against them while they lived; but this

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

is rather a reason for admiring than for depreciating them. Nor can any one doubt that the influence of their philosophy on politics—especially on foreign politics, on law, on social life, has been upon the whole beneficial. Nevertheless, they will never have justice done to them, for they do not agree either with the better feeling of the multitude or with the idealism of more refined thinkers. Without Bentham, a great word in the history of philosophy would have remained unspoken. Yet to this day it is rare to hear his name received with any mark of respect such as would be freely granted to the ambiguous memory of some father of the Church. The odium which attached to him when alive has not been removed by his death. For he shocked his contemporaries by egotism and want of taste; and this generation which has reaped the benefit of his labours has inherited the feeling of the last. He was before his own age, and is hardly remembered in this.

While acknowledging the benefits which the greatest happiness principle has conferred upon mankind, the time appears to have arrived, not for denying its claims, but for criticizing them and comparing them with other principles which equally claim to lie at the foundation of ethics. Any one who adds a general principle to knowledge has been a benefactor to the world. But there is a danger that, in his first enthusiasm, he may not recognize the proportions or limitations to which his truth is subjected; he does not see how far he has given birth to a truism, or how that which is a truth to him is a truism to the rest of the world; or may degenerate in the next generation. He believes that to be the whole which is only a part,—to be the necessary foundation which is really only a valuable aspect of the truth. The systems of all philosophers require the criticism of 'the morrow,' when the heat of imagination which forged them has cooled, and they are seen in the temperate light of day. All of them have contributed to enrich the mind of the civilized world; none of them occupy that supreme or exclusive place which their authors would have assigned to them.

We may preface the criticism with a few preliminary remarks:—

Mr. Mill, Mr. Austin, and others, in their eagerness to maintain the doctrine of utility, are fond of repeating that we are in a



*Philebus.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

lamentable state of uncertainty about morals. While other branches of knowledge have made extraordinary progress, in moral philosophy we are supposed by them to be no better than children, and with few exceptions—that is to say, Bentham and his followers—to be no further advanced than men were in the age of Socrates and Plato, who, in their turn, are deemed to be as backward in ethics as they necessarily were in physics. But this, though often asserted, is recanted almost in a breath by the same writers who speak thus dépreciatingly of our modern ethical philosophy. For they are the first to acknowledge that we have not now to begin classifying actions under the head of utility; they would not deny that about the general conceptions of morals there is a practical agreement. There is no more doubt that falsehood is wrong than that a stone falls to the ground, although the first does not admit of the same ocular proof as the second. There is no greater uncertainty about the duty of obedience to parents and to the law of the land than about the properties of triangles. Unless we are looking for a new moral world which has no marrying and giving in marriage, there is no greater disagreement in theory about the right relations of the sexes than about the composition of water. These and a few other simple principles, as they have endless applications in practice, so also may be developed in theory into counsels of perfection.

To what then is to be attributed this opinion which has been often entertained about the uncertainty of morals? Chiefly to this,—that philosophers have not always distinguished the theoretical and the casuistical uncertainty of morals from the practical certainty. There is an uncertainty about details,—whether, for example, under given circumstances such and such a moral principle is to be enforced, or whether in some cases there may not be a conflict of duties: these are the exceptions to the ordinary rules of morality, important, indeed, but not extending to the one thousandth or one ten-thousandth part of human actions. This is the domain of casuistry. Secondly, the aspects under which the most general principles of morals may be presented to us are many and various. The mind of man has been more than usually active in thinking about man. The conceptions of harmony, happiness, right, freedom, benevolence, self-love, have

*Philebus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

all of them seemed to some philosopher or other the truest and most comprehensive expression of morality. There is no difference, or at any rate no great difference, of opinion about the right and wrong of actions, but only about the general notion which furnishes the best explanation or gives the most comprehensive view of them. This, in the language of Kant, is the sphere of the metaphysic of ethics. But these two uncertainties at either end, *ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα καθόλου* and *ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἑκάστα*, leave space enough for an intermediate principle which is practically certain.

The rule of human life is not dependent on the theories of philosophers: we know what our duties are for the most part before we speculate about them. And the use of speculation is not to teach us what we already know, but to inspire in our minds an interest about morals in general, to strengthen our conception of the virtues by showing that they confirm one another, to prove to us, as Socrates would have said, that they are not many, but one. There is the same kind of pleasure and use in reducing morals, as in reducing physics, to a few very simple truths. And not unfrequently the more general principle may correct prejudices and misconceptions, and enable us to regard our fellow-men in a larger and more generous spirit.

The two qualities which seem to be most required in first principles of ethics are, (1) that they should afford a real explanation of the facts, (2) that they should inspire the mind,—should harmonize, strengthen, settle us. We can hardly estimate the influence which a simple principle such as 'Act so as to promote the happiness of mankind,' or 'Act so that the rule on which thou actest may be adopted as a law by all rational beings,' may exercise on the mind of an individual. They will often seem to open a new world to him, like the religious conceptions of faith or the spirit of God. The difficulties of ethics disappear when we do not suffer ourselves to be distracted between different points of view. But to maintain their hold on us, the general principles must also be psychologically true—they must agree with our experience, they must accord with the habits of our minds.

When we are told that actions are right or wrong only in

*Philebus.* so far as they tend towards happiness, we naturally ask what is meant by 'happiness.' For the term in the common use of language is only to a certain extent commensurate with moral good and evil. We should hardly say that a good man could be utterly miserable (Arist. Ethics, i. 10. §§ 12, 13), or place a bad man in the first rank of happiness. But yet, from various circumstances, the measure of a man's happiness may be out of all proportion to his desert. And if we insist on calling the good man alone happy, we shall be using the term in some new and transcendental sense, as synonymous with well-being. We have already seen that happiness includes the happiness of others as well as our own; we must now comprehend unconscious as well as conscious happiness under the same word. There is no harm in this extension of the meaning, but a word which admits of such an extension can hardly be made the basis of a philosophical system. The exactness which is required in philosophy will not allow us to comprehend under the same term two ideas so different as the subjective feeling of pleasure or happiness and the objective reality of a state which receives our moral approval.

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Like Protarchus in the *Philebus*, we can give no answer to the question, 'What is that common quality which in all states of human life we call happiness? which includes the lower and the higher kind of happiness, and is the aim of the noblest, as well as of the meanest of mankind?' If we say 'Not pleasure, not virtue, not wisdom, nor yet any quality which we can abstract from these'—what then? After seeming to hover for a time on the verge of a great truth, we have gained only a truism.

Let us ask the question in another form. What is that which constitutes happiness, over and above the several ingredients of health, wealth, pleasure, virtue, knowledge, which are included under it? Perhaps we answer, 'The subjective feeling of them.' But this is very far from being coextensive with right. Or we may reply that happiness is the whole of which the above-mentioned are the parts. Still the question recurs, 'In what does the whole differ from all the parts?' And if we are unable to distinguish them, happiness will be the mere aggregate of the goods of life.

*Philebus.*

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Again, while admitting that in all right action there is an element of happiness, we cannot help seeing that the utilitarian theory supplies a much easier explanation of some virtues than of others. Of many patriotic or benevolent actions we can give a straightforward account by their tendency to promote happiness. For the explanation of justice, on the other hand, we have to go a long way round. No man is indignant with a thief because he has not promoted the greatest happiness of the greatest number, but because he has done him a wrong. There is an immeasurable interval between a crime against property or life, and the omission of an act of charity or benevolence. Yet of this interval the utilitarian theory takes no cognizance. The greatest happiness principle strengthens our sense of positive duties towards others, but weakens our recognition of their rights. To promote in every way possible the happiness of others may be a counsel of perfection, but hardly seems to offer any ground for a theory of obligation. For admitting that our ideas of obligation are partly derived from religion and custom, yet they seem also to contain other essential elements which cannot be explained by the tendency of actions to promote happiness. Whence comes the necessity of them? Why are some actions rather than others which equally tend to the happiness of mankind imposed upon us with the authority of law? 'You ought' and 'you had better' are fundamental distinctions in human thought; and having such distinctions, why should we seek to efface and unsettle them?

Bentham and Mr. Mill are earnest in maintaining that happiness includes the happiness of others as well as of ourselves. But what two notions can be more opposed in many cases than these? Granting that in a perfect state of the world my own happiness and that of all other men would coincide, in the imperfect state they often diverge, and I cannot truly bridge over the difficulty by saying that men will always find pleasure in sacrificing themselves or in suffering for others. Upon the greatest happiness principle it is admitted that I am to have a share, and in consistency I should pursue my own happiness as impartially as that of my neighbour. But who can decide what proportion should be mine and what his, except on the principle that I am most likely to be deceived in my own

*Philebus.* favour, and had therefore better give the larger share, if not all, to him?

INTRODUC-  
TION.

Further, it is admitted that utility and right coincide, not in particular instances, but in classes of actions. But is it not distracting to the conscience of a man to be told that in the particular case they are opposed? Happiness is said to be the ground of moral obligation, yet he must not do what clearly conduces to his own happiness if it is at variance with the good of the whole. Nay, further, he will be taught that when utility and right are in apparent conflict any amount of utility does not alter by a hair's-breadth the morality of actions, which cannot be allowed to deviate from established law or usage; and that the non-detection of an immoral act, say of telling a lie, which may often make the greatest difference in the consequences, not only to himself, but to all the world, makes none whatever in the act itself.

Again, if we are concerned not with particular actions but with classes of actions, is the tendency of actions to happiness a principle upon which we can classify them? There is a universal law which imperatively declares certain acts to be right or wrong:—can there be any universality in the law which measures actions by their tendencies towards happiness? For an act which is the cause of happiness to one person may be the cause of unhappiness to another; or an act which if performed by one person may increase the happiness of mankind may have the opposite effect if performed by another. Right can never be wrong, or wrong right, but there are no actions which tend to the happiness of mankind which may not under other circumstances tend to their unhappiness. Unless we say not only that all right actions tend to happiness, but that they tend to happiness in the same degree in which they are right (and in that case the word 'right' is plainer), we weaken the absoluteness of our moral standard; we reduce differences in kind to differences in degree; we obliterate the stamp which the authority of ages has set upon vice and crime.

Once more: turning from theory to practice we feel the importance of retaining the received distinctions of morality. Words such as truth, justice, honesty, virtue, love, have a simple meaning; they have become sacred to us,—'the word of God' written on

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

the human heart : to no other words can the same associations be attached. We cannot explain them adequately on principles of utility ; in attempting to do so we rob them of their true character. We give them a meaning often paradoxical and distorted, and generally weaker than their signification in common language. And as words influence men's thoughts, we fear that the hold of morality may also be weakened, and the sense of duty impaired, if virtue and vice are explained only as the qualities which do or do not contribute to the pleasure of the world. In that very expression we seem to detect a false ring, for pleasure is individual not universal ; we speak of eternal and immutable justice, but not of eternal and immutable pleasure ; nor by any refinement can we avoid some taint of bodily sense adhering to the meaning of the word.

Again: the higher the view which men take of life, the more they lose sight of their own pleasure or interest. True religion is not working for a reward only, but is ready to work equally without a reward. It is not 'doing the will of God for the sake of eternal happiness,' but doing the will of God because it is best, whether rewarded or unrewarded. And this applies to others as well as to ourselves. For he who sacrifices himself for the good of others, does not sacrifice himself that they may be saved from the persecution which he endures for their sakes, but rather that they in their turn may be able to undergo similar sufferings, and like him stand fast in the truth. To promote their happiness is not his first object, but to elevate their moral nature. Both in his own case and that of others there may be happiness in the distance, but if there were no happiness he would equally act as he does. We are speaking of the highest and noblest natures ; and a passing thought naturally arises in our minds, 'Whether that can be the first principle of morals which is hardly regarded in their own case by the greatest benefactors of mankind?'

The admissions that pleasures differ in kind, and that actions are already classified ; the acknowledgment that happiness includes the happiness of others, as well as of ourselves ; the confusion (not made by Aristotle) between conscious and unconscious happiness, or between happiness the **energy** and happiness the result of the energy, introduce **uncertainty** and inconsistency into the whole enquiry. We reason readily

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

and cheerfully from a greatest happiness principle. But we find that utilitarians do not agree among themselves about the meaning of the word. Still less can they impart to others a common conception or conviction of the nature of happiness. The meaning of the word is always insensibly slipping away from us, into pleasure, out of pleasure, now appearing as the motive, now as the test of actions, and sometimes varying in successive sentences. And as in a mathematical demonstration an error in the original number disturbs the whole calculation which follows, this fundamental uncertainty about the word vitiates all the applications of it. Must we not admit that a notion so uncertain in meaning, so void of content, so at variance with common language and opinion, does not comply adequately with either of our two requirements? It can neither strike the imaginative faculty, nor give an explanation of phenomena which is in accordance with our individual experience. It is indefinite; it supplies only a partial account of human actions: it is one among many theories of philosophers. It may be compared with other notions, such as the chief good of Plato, which may be best expressed to us under the form of a harmony, or with Kant's obedience to law, which may be summed up under the word 'duty,' or with the Stoical 'Follow nature,' and seems to have no advantage over them. All of these present a **certain** aspect of moral truth. None of them are, or indeed profess to be, the only principle of morals.

And this brings us to speak of the most serious objection to the utilitarian system—its exclusiveness. There is no place for Kant or Hegel, for Plato and Aristotle alongside of it. They do not reject the greatest happiness principle, but it rejects them. Now the phenomena of moral action differ, and some are best explained upon one principle and some upon another: the virtue of justice seems to be naturally connected with one theory of morals, the virtues of temperance and benevolence with another. The characters of men also differ; and some are more attracted by one aspect of the truth, some by another. The firm stoical nature will conceive virtue under the conception of law, the philanthropist under that of doing good, the quietist under that of resignation, the enthusiast under that of faith or love. The upright man of the world will desire above all things that morality

should be plain and fixed, and should use language in its ordinary sense. Persons of an imaginative temperament will generally be dissatisfied with the words 'utility' or 'pleasure': their principle of right is of a far higher character—what or where to be found they cannot always distinctly tell;—deduced from the laws of human nature, says one; resting on the will of God, says another; based upon some transcendental idea which animates more worlds than one, says a third:

ὧν νόμοι πρόκειται ὑψίποδες, οὐρανίαν  
δι' αἰθέρα τεκνωθέντες.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

To satisfy an imaginative nature in any degree, the doctrine of utility must be so transfigured that it becomes altogether different and loses all simplicity.

But why, since there are different characters among men, should we not allow them to envisage morality accordingly, and be thankful to the great men who have provided for all of us modes and instruments of thought? Would the world have been better if there had been no Stoics or Kantists, no Platonists or Cartesians? No more than if the other pole of moral philosophy had been excluded. All men have principles which are above their practice; they admit premises which, if carried to their conclusions, are a sufficient basis of morals. In asserting liberty of speculation we are not encouraging individuals to make right or wrong for themselves, but only conceding that they may choose the form under which they prefer to contemplate them. Nor do we say that one of these aspects is as true and good as another; but that they all of them, if they are not mere sophisms and illusions, define and bring into relief some part of the truth which would have been obscure without their light. Why should we endeavour to bind all men within the limits of a single metaphysical conception? The necessary imperfection of language seems to require that we should view the same truth under more than one aspect.

We are living in the second age of utilitarianism, when the charm of novelty and the fervour of the first disciples has passed away. The doctrine is no longer stated in the forcible paradoxical manner of Bentham, but has to be adapted to meet objections; its corners are rubbed off, and the meaning of its most characteristic expressions is softened. The array of the enemy melts away



*Philebus.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

when we approach him. The greatest happiness of the greatest number was a great original idea when enunciated by Bentham, which leavened a generation and has left its mark on thought and civilization in all succeeding times. His grasp of it had the intensity of genius. In the spirit of an ancient philosopher he would have denied that pleasures differed in kind, or that by happiness he meant anything but pleasure. He would perhaps have revolted us by his thoroughness. The 'guardianship of his doctrine' has passed into other hands; and now we seem to see its weak points, its ambiguities, its want of exactness while assuming the highest exactness, its one-sidedness, its paradoxical explanation of several of the virtues. No philosophy has ever stood this criticism of the next generation, though the founders of all of them have imagined that they were built upon a rock. And the utilitarian system, like others, has yielded to the inevitable analysis. Even in the opinion of 'her admirers she has been terribly damaged' (Phil. 23 A), and is no longer the only moral philosophy, but one among many which have contributed in various degrees to the intellectual progress of mankind.

But because the utilitarian philosophy can no longer claim 'the prize,' we must not refuse to acknowledge the great benefits conferred by it on the world. All philosophies are refuted in their turn, says the sceptic, and he looks forward to all future systems sharing the fate of the past. All philosophies remain, says the thinker; they have done a great work in their own day, and they supply posterity with aspects of the truth and with instruments of thought. Though they may be shorn of their glory, they retain their place in the organism of knowledge.

And still there remain many rules of morals which are better explained and more forcibly inculcated on the principle of utility than on any other. The question Will such and such an action promote the happiness of myself, my family, my country, the world? may check the rising feeling of pride or honour which would cause a quarrel, an estrangement, a war. 'How can I contribute to the greatest happiness of others?' is another form of the question which will be more attractive to the minds of many than a deduction of the duty of benevolence from *a priori* principles. In politics especially hardly any other argument can be allowed to have weight except the happiness of a people. All

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

parties alike profess to aim at this, which though often used only as the disguise of self-interest has a great and real influence on the minds of statesmen. In religion, again, nothing can more tend to mitigate superstition than the belief that the good of man is also the will of God. This is an easy test to which the prejudices and superstitions of men may be brought :—whatever does not tend to the good of men is not of God. And the ideal of the greatest happiness of mankind, especially if believed to be the will of God, when compared with the actual fact, will be one of the strongest motives to do good to others.

On the other hand, when the temptation is to speak falsely, to be dishonest or unjust, or in any way to interfere with the rights of others, the argument that these actions regarded as a class will not conduce to the happiness of mankind, though true enough, seems to have less force than the feeling which is already implanted in the mind by conscience and authority. To resolve this feeling into the greatest happiness principle takes away from its sacred and authoritative character. The martyr will not go to the stake in order that he may promote the happiness of mankind, but for the sake of the truth : neither will the soldier advance to the cannon's mouth merely because he believes military discipline to be for the good of mankind. It is better for him to know that he will be shot, that he will be disgraced, if he runs away—he has no need to look beyond military honour, patriotism, 'England expects every man to do his duty.' These are stronger motives than the greatest happiness of the greatest number, which is the thesis of a philosopher, not the watchword of an army. For in human actions men do not always require broad principles; duties often come home to us more when they are limited and defined, and sanctioned by custom and public opinion.

Lastly, if we turn to the history of ethics, we shall find that our moral ideas have originated not in utility but in religion, in law, in conceptions of nature, of an ideal good, and the like. And many may be inclined to think that this conclusively disproves the claim of utility to be the basis of morals. But the utilitarian will fairly reply (see above) that we must distinguish the origin of ethics from the principles of them—the historical germ from the later growth of reflection. And he may also truly add that for two thousand years and more, utility, if not the originating, has been

*Philebus.*  
INTRODUC-  
TION.

the great corrective principle in law, in politics, in religion, leading men to ask how evil may be diminished and good increased—by what course of policy the public interest may be promoted, and to understand that God wills the happiness, not of some of his creatures and in this world only, but of all of them and in every stage of their existence.

‘What is the place of happiness or utility in a system of moral philosophy?’ is analogous to the question asked in the *Philebus*, ‘What rank does pleasure hold in the scale of goods?’ Admitting the greatest happiness principle to be true and valuable, and the necessary foundation of that part of morals which relates to the consequences of actions, we still have to consider whether this or some other general notion is the highest principle of human life. We may try them in this comparison by three tests—definiteness, comprehensiveness, and motive power.

There are three subjective principles of morals,—sympathy, benevolence, self-love. But sympathy seems to rest morality on feelings which differ widely even in good men; benevolence and self-love torture one half of our virtuous actions into the likeness of the other. The greatest happiness principle, which includes both, has the advantage over all these in comprehensiveness, but the advantage is purchased at the expense of definiteness.

Again, there are the legal and political principles of morals—freedom, equality, rights of persons; ‘Every man to count for one and no man for more than one,’ ‘Every man equal in the eye of the law and of the legislator.’ There is also the other sort of political morality, which if not beginning with ‘Might is right,’ at any rate seeks to deduce our ideas of justice from the necessities of the state and of society. According to this view the greatest good of men is obedience to law: the best human government is a rational despotism, and the best idea which we can form of a divine being is that of a despot acting not wholly without regard to law and order. To such a view the present mixed state of the world, not wholly evil or wholly good, is supposed to be a witness. More we might desire to have, but are not permitted. Though a human tyrant would be intolerable, a divine tyrant is a very tolerable governor of the universe. This is the doctrine of Thrasymachus adapted to the public opinion of modern times.

There is yet a third view which combines the two :—freedom is

obedience to the law, and the greatest order is also the greatest freedom ; ' Act so that thy action may be the law of every intelligent being.' This view is noble and elevating ; but it seems to err, like other transcendental principles of ethics, in being too abstract. For there is the same difficulty in connecting the idea of duty with particular duties as in bridging the gulf between *φαινόμενα* and *ὄντα* ; and when, as in the system of Kant, this universal idea or law is held to be independent of space and time, such a *μάταιον εἶδος* becomes almost unmeaning.

*Philebus.*

INTRODUCTION.

Once more there are the religious principles of morals :—the will of God revealed in Scripture and in nature. No philosophy has supplied a sanction equal in authority to this, or a motive equal in strength to the belief in another life. Yet about these too we must ask What will of God ? how revealed to us, and by what proofs ? Religion, like happiness, is a word which has great influence apart from any consideration of its content : it may be for great good or for great evil. But true religion is the synthesis of religion and morality, beginning with divine perfection in which all human perfection is embodied. It moves among ideas of holiness, justice, love, wisdom, truth ; these are to God, in whom they are personified, what the Platonic ideas are to the idea of good. It is the consciousness of the will of God that all men should be as he is. It lives in this world and is known to us only through the phenomena of this world, but it extends to worlds beyond. Ordinary religion which is alloyed with motives of this world may easily be in excess, may be fanatical, may be interested, may be the mask of ambition, may be perverted in a thousand ways. But of that religion which combines the will of God with our highest ideas of truth and right there can never be too much. This impossibility of excess is the note of divine moderation.

So then, having briefly passed in review the various principles of moral philosophy, we may now arrange our goods in order, though, like the reader of the *Philebus*, we have a difficulty in distinguishing the different aspects of them from one another, or defining the point at which the human passes into the divine.

First, the eternal will of God in this world and in another,—justice, holiness, wisdom, love, without succession of acts (*οὐχ ἡ γένεσις πρόσεστιν*), which is known to us in part only, and revered by us as divine perfection.

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

Secondly, human perfection, or the fulfilment of the will of God in this world, and co-operation with his laws revealed to us by reason and experience, in nature, history, and in our own minds.

Thirdly, the elements of human perfection,—virtue, knowledge, and right opinion.

Fourthly, the external conditions of perfection,—health and the goods of life.

Fifthly, beauty and happiness,—the inward enjoyment of that which is best and fairest in this world and in the human soul.

THE *Philebus* is probably the latest in time of the writings of Plato with the exception of the *Laws*. We have in it therefore the last development of his philosophy. The extreme and one-sided doctrines of the Cynics and Cyrenaics are included in a larger whole (pp. 20, 21, 44, &c.) ; the relations of pleasure and knowledge to each other and to the good are authoritatively determined (63 ff.) ; the Eleatic Being and the Heraclitean Flux no longer divide the empire of thought (25 ff.) ; the Mind of Anaxagoras has become the Mind of God and of the World. The great distinction between pure and applied science for the first time has a place in philosophy ; the natural claim of dialectic to be the Queen of the Sciences is once more affirmed. This latter is the bond of union which pervades the whole or nearly the whole of the Platonic writings. And here as in several other dialogues (*Phaedrus* 265, *Rep.* 534 ff., *Symp.* 210 ff., &c.) it is presented to us in a manner playful yet also serious, and sometimes as if the thought of it were too great for human utterance and came down from heaven direct (16 C, 25 B). It is the organization of knowledge wonderful to think of at a time when knowledge itself could hardly be said to exist. It is this more than any other element which distinguishes Plato, not only from the presocratic philosophers, but from Socrates himself.

We have not yet reached the confines of Aristotle, but we make a somewhat nearer approach to him in the *Philebus* than in the earlier Platonic writings. The germs of logic are beginning to appear, but they are not collected into a whole, or made a separate science or system. Many thinkers of many different schools have to be interposed between the *Parmenides* or *Philebus* of Plato,

and the Physics or Metaphysics of Aristotle. It is this interval upon which we have to fix our minds if we would rightly understand the character of the transition from one to the other. Plato and Aristotle do not dovetail into one another ; nor does the one begin where the other ends ; there is a gulf between them not to be measured by time, which in the fragmentary state of our knowledge it is impossible to bridge over. It follows that the one cannot be interpreted by the other. At any rate, it is not Plato who is to be interpreted by Aristotle, but Aristotle by Plato. Of all philosophy and of all art the true understanding is to be sought not in the afterthoughts of posterity, but in the elements out of which they have arisen. For the previous stage is a tendency towards the ideal at which they are aiming ; the later is a declination or deviation from them, or even a perversion of them. No man's thoughts were ever so well expressed by his disciples as by himself.

*Philebus.*

INTRODUCTION.

But although Plato in the *Philebus* does not come into any close connexion with Aristotle, he is now a long way from himself and from the beginnings of his own philosophy. At the time of his death he left his system still incomplete ; or he may be more truly said to have had no system, but to have lived in the successive stages or moments of metaphysical thought which presented themselves from time to time. The earlier discussions about universal ideas and definitions seem to have died away ; the correlation of ideas has taken their place. The flowers of rhetoric and poetry have lost their freshness and charm ; and a technical language has begun to supersede and overgrow them. But the power of thinking tends to increase with age, and the experience of life to widen and deepen. The good is summed up under categories which are not *summa genera*, but heads or gradations of thought. The question of pleasure and the relation of bodily pleasures to mental, which is hardly treated of elsewhere in Plato, is here analysed with great subtlety. The mean or measure is now made the first principle of good. Some of these questions reappear in Aristotle, as does also the distinction between metaphysics and mathematics. But there are many things in Plato which have been lost in Aristotle ; and many things in Aristotle not to be found in Plato. The most remarkable deficiency in Aristotle is the disappearance of the Platonic dialectic, which in

*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

the Aristotelian school is only used in a comparatively unimportant and trivial sense. The most remarkable additions are the invention of the Syllogism, the conception of happiness as the foundation of morals, the reference of human actions to the standard of the better mind of the world, or of the one 'sensible man' or 'superior person.' His conception of *οὐσία*, or essence, is not an advance upon Plato, but a return to the poor and meagre abstractions of the Eleatic philosophy. The dry attempt to reduce the presocratic philosophy by his own rather arbitrary standard of the four causes, contrasts unfavourably with Plato's general discussion of the same subject (*Sophist* 242, 243). To attempt further to sum up the differences between the two great philosophers would be out of place here. Any real discussion of their relation to one another must be preceded by an examination into the nature and character of the Aristotelian writings and the form in which they have come down to us. This enquiry is not really separable from an investigation of Theophrastus as well as Aristotle and of the remains of other schools of philosophy as well as of the Peripatetics. But, without entering on this wide field, even a superficial consideration of the logical and metaphysical works which pass under the name of Aristotle, whether we suppose them to have come directly from his hand or to be the tradition of his school, is sufficient to show how great was the mental activity which prevailed in the latter half of the fourth century B.C.; what eddies and whirlpools of controversies were surging in the chaos of thought, what transformations of the old philosophies were taking place everywhere, what eclecticism and syncretisms and realisms and nominalisms were affecting the mind of Hellas. The decline of philosophy during this period is no less remarkable than the loss of freedom; and the two are not unconnected with each other. But of the multitudinous sea of opinions which were current in the age of Aristotle we have no exact account. We know of them from allusions only. And we cannot with advantage fill up the void of our knowledge by conjecture: we can only make allowance for our ignorance.

There are several passages in the *Philebus* which are very characteristic of Plato, and which we shall do well to consider not only in their connexion, but apart from their connexion as inspired

sayings or oracles which receive their full interpretation only from the history of philosophy in later ages. The more serious attacks on traditional beliefs which are often veiled under an unusual simplicity or irony are of this kind. Such, for example, is the excessive and more than human awe which Socrates expresses about the names of the gods (12 C), which may be not unaptly compared with the importance attached by mankind to theological terms in other ages; for this also may be comprehended under the satire of Socrates. Let us observe the religious and intellectual enthusiasm which shines forth in the following, 'The power and faculty of loving the truth, and of doing all things for the sake of the truth' (58 E): or, again, the singular acknowledgment in 23 C, which may be regarded as the anticipation of a new logic, that 'In going to war for mind I must have weapons of a different make from those which I used before, although some of the old ones may do again.' Let us pause awhile to reflect on a sentence (29 A) which is full of meaning to reformers of religion or to the original thinker of all ages: 'Shall we then agree with them of old time, and merely reassert the notions of others without risk to ourselves; or shall we venture also to share in the risk and bear the reproach which will await us': i.e. if we assert mind to be the author of nature. Let us note the remarkable words (30 C), 'That in the divine nature of Zeus there is the soul and mind of a King, because there is in him the power of the cause,' a saying in which theology and philosophy are blended and reconciled; not omitting to observe the deep insight into human nature which is shown by the repetition of the same thought (28 C) 'All philosophers are agreed that mind is the king of heaven and earth' with the ironical addition, 'in this way truly they magnify themselves.' Nor let us pass unheeded the indignation felt by the generous youth (29 A) at the 'blasphemy' of those who say that Chaos and Chance Medley created the world; or the significance of the words 'those who said of old time that mind rules the universe' (30 D); or the pregnant observation (43 C) that 'we are not always conscious of what we are doing or of what happens to us,' a chance expression to which if philosophers had attended they would have escaped many errors in psychology. We may contrast the contempt which is poured upon the verbal difficulty of the one and many, and the seriousness with



*Philebus.*INTRODUC-  
TION.

which the unity of opposites is regarded from the higher point of view of abstract ideas (14 C, 15): or compare the simple manner in which the question of cause and effect (p. 27) and their mutual dependence is regarded by Plato (to which modern science has returned in Mill and Bacon), and the cumbrous fourfold division of causes in the *Physics* and *Metaphysics* of Aristotle, for which it has puzzled the world to find a use in so many centuries. When we consider the backwardness of knowledge in the age of Plato, the boldness with which he looks forward into the distance, the many questions of modern philosophy which are anticipated in his writings, may we not truly describe him in his own words as a 'spectator of all time and of all existence'?

## PHILEBUS.

## PERSONS OF THE DIALOGUE.

SOCRATES.

PROTARCHUS.

PHILEBUS.

**Steph.** *Socrates.* OBSERVE, Protarchus, the nature of the position *Philebus.*  
**II** which you are now going to take from Philebus, and what  
 the other position is which I maintain, and which, if you do  
 not approve of it, is to be controverted by you. Shall you  
 and I sum up the two sides?

*Protarchus.* By all means.

*Soc.* Philebus was saying that enjoyment and pleasure and  
 delight, and the class of feelings akin to them, are a good to  
 every living being, whereas I contend, that not these, but  
 wisdom and intelligence and memory, and their kindred,  
 right opinion and true reasoning, are better and more  
 desirable than pleasure for all who are able to partake of  
 them, and that to all such who are or ever will be they are  
 the most advantageous of all things. Have I not given,  
 Philebus, a fair statement of the two sides of the argument?

*Philebus.* Nothing could be fairer, Socrates.

*Soc.* And do you, Protarchus, accept the position which is  
 assigned to you?

*Pro.* I cannot do otherwise, since our excellent Philebus  
 has left the field.

*Soc.* Surely the truth about these matters ought, by all  
 means, to be ascertained.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Shall we further agree—

*Pro.* To what?

*SOCRATES,*  
*PROTARCHUS,*  
*PHILEBUS*  
 Philebus,  
 who is now  
 to be suc-  
 ceeded by  
 Protarchus,  
 maintains  
 that  
 pleasure  
 is the good.  
 Socrates  
 prefers  
 wisdom

Which of  
 these two  
 positions is  
 the truer?

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

*Soc.* That you and I must now try to indicate some state and disposition of the soul which has the property of making all men happy.

*Pro.* Yes, by all means.

*Soc.* And you say that pleasure, and I say that wisdom, is such a state?

*Pro.* True.

In the course of our enquiry something superior both to pleasure and to wisdom may appear. In that case, if pleasure be more akin to this superior nature, pleasure must be adjudged conqueror: but if wisdom, wisdom.

*Soc.* And what if there be a third state, which is better than either? Then both of us are vanquished—are we not? But if this life, which really has the power of making men happy, turn out to be more akin to pleasure than to wisdom, the life of pleasure may still have the advantage over the life of wisdom.

12

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Or suppose that the better life is more nearly allied to wisdom, then wisdom conquers, and pleasure is defeated;—do you agree?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And what do you say, Philebus?

*Phi.* I say, and shall always say, that pleasure is easily the conqueror; but you must decide for yourself, Protarchus.

*Pro.* You, Philebus, have handed over the argument to me, and have no longer a voice in the matter?

*Phi.* True enough. Nevertheless I would clear myself and deliver my soul of you; and I call the goddess herself to witness that I now do so.

*Pro.* You may appeal to us; we too will be the witnesses of your words. And now, Socrates, whether Philebus is pleased or displeased, we will proceed with the argument.

*Soc.* Then let us begin with the goddess herself, of whom Philebus says that she is called Aphrodite, but that her real name is Pleasure.

*Pro.* Very good.

We will begin with pleasure, which is one, but also has many varieties, some of them being mutually opposed.

*Soc.* The awe which I always feel, Protarchus, about the names of the gods is more than human—it exceeds all other fears. And now I would not sin against Aphrodite by naming her amiss; let her be called what she pleases. But Pleasure I know to be manifold, and with her, as I was just now saying, we must begin, and consider what her nature is. She has one name, and therefore you would imagine that she

is one ; and yet surely she takes the most varied and even unlike forms. For do we not say that the intemperate has pleasure, and that the temperate has pleasure in his very temperance,—that the fool is pleased when he is full of foolish fancies and hopes, and that the wise man has pleasure in his wisdom? and how foolish would any one be who affirmed that all these opposite pleasures are severally alike!

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Why, Socrates, they are opposed in so far as they spring from opposite sources, but they are not in themselves opposite. For must not pleasure be of all things most absolutely like pleasure,—that is, like itself?

Pleasures are opposed when springing from opposite sources : in themselves they are all alike.

*Soc.* Yes, my good friend, just as colour is like colour ;—in so far as colours are colours, there is no difference between them ; and yet we all know that black is not only unlike, but even absolutely opposed to white : or again, as figure is like figure. for all figures are comprehended under one class ; and yet particular figures may be absolutely opposed to one  
13 another, and there is an infinite diversity of them. And we might find similar examples in many other things ; therefore do not rely upon this argument, which would go to prove the unity of the most extreme opposites. And I suspect that we shall find a similar opposition among pleasures.

*Pro.* Very likely ; but how will this invalidate the argument?

But this proves only that all pleasures are pleasures, and not that all pleasures are good.

*Soc.* Why, I shall reply, that dissimilar as they are, you apply to them a new predicate, for you say that all pleasant things are good ; now although no one can argue that pleasure is not pleasure, he may argue, as we are doing, that pleasures are oftener bad than good ; but you call them all good, and at the same time are compelled, if you are pressed, to acknowledge that they are unlike. And so you must tell us what is the identical quality existing alike in good and bad pleasures, which makes you designate all of them as good.

*Pro.* What do you mean, Socrates? Do you think that any one who asserts pleasure to be the good, will tolerate the notion that some pleasures are good and others bad?

*Soc.* And yet you will acknowledge that they are different from one another, and sometimes opposed?

*Philebus.**Pro.* Not in so far as they are pleasures.SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.We shall  
not be able  
to proceed,  
if obvious  
facts are  
ignored.*Soc.* That is a return to the old position, Protarchus, and so we are to say (are we?) that there is no difference in pleasures, but that they are all alike; and the examples which have just been cited do not pierce our dull minds, but we go on arguing all the same, like the weakest and most inexperienced reasoners? <sup>1</sup>*Pro.* What do you mean?*Soc.* Why, I mean to say, that in self-defence I may, if I like, follow your example, and assert boldly that the two things most unlike are most absolutely alike; and the result will be that you and I will prove ourselves to be very tyros in the art of disputing; and the argument will be blown away and lost. Suppose that we put back, and return to the old position; then perhaps we may come to an understanding with one another.*Pro.* How do you mean?*Soc.* Shall I, Protarchus, have my own question asked of me by you?*Pro.* What question?To say that  
there are no  
differences  
between  
pleasures,  
is as absurd  
as to say  
that there  
are no  
differences  
between  
sciences.*Soc.* Ask me whether wisdom and science and mind, and those other qualities which I, when asked by you at first what is the nature of the good, affirmed to be good, are not in the same case with the pleasures of which you spoke.*Pro.* What do you mean?*Soc.* The sciences are a numerous class, and will be found to present great differences. But even admitting that, like the pleasures, they are opposite as well as different, should I <sup>14</sup> be worthy of the name of dialectician if, in order to avoid this difficulty, I were to say (as you are saying of pleasure) that there is no difference between one science and another; —would not the argument founder and disappear like an idle tale, although we might ourselves escape drowning by clinging to a fallacy?*Pro.* May none of this befall us, except the deliverance! Yet I like the even-handed justice which is applied to both our arguments. Let us assume, then, that there are many and diverse pleasures, and many and different sciences.<sup>1</sup> Probably corrupt.

*Soc.* And let us have no concealment, Protarchus, of the differences between my good and yours ; but let us bring them to the light in the hope that, in the process of testing them, they may show whether pleasure is to be called the good, or wisdom, or some third quality ; for surely we are not now simply contending in order that my view or that yours may prevail, but I presume that we ought both of us to be fighting for the truth.

*Pro.* Certainly we ought.

*Soc.* Then let us have a more definite understanding and establish the principle on which the argument rests.

*Pro.* What principle ?

*Soc.* A principle about which all men are always in a difficulty, and some men sometimes against their will.

*Pro.* Speak plainer.

*Soc.* The principle which has just turned up, which is a marvel of nature ; for that one should be many or many one, are wonderful propositions ; and he who affirms either is very open to attack.

*Pro.* Do you mean, when a person says that I, Protarchus, am by nature one and also many, dividing the single 'me' into many 'me's,' and even opposing them as great and small, light and heavy, and in ten thousand other ways ?

*Soc.* Those, Protarchus, are the common and acknowledged paradoxes about the one and many, which I may say that everybody has by this time agreed to dismiss as childish and obvious and detrimental to the true course of thought ; and no more favour is shown to that other puzzle, in which a person proves the members and parts of anything to be divided, and then confessing that they are all one, says laughingly in disproof of his own words : Why, here is a miracle, the one is many and infinite, and the many are only one.

*Pro.* But what, Socrates, are those other marvels connected with this subject which, as you imply, have not yet become  
15 common and acknowledged ?

*Soc.* When, my boy, the one does not belong to the class of things that are born and perish, as in the instances which we were giving, for in those cases, and when unity is of this concrete nature, there is, as I was saying, a universal consent

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

We have  
lighted  
upon the  
old prob-  
lem of the  
One and  
Many.

The co-  
existence  
of the One  
and Many  
in concrete  
objects  
presents no  
difficulty.

Our  
troubles  
begin with  
abstract  
unities.

*Philebus.* that no refutation is needed ; but when the assertion is made that man is one, or ox is one, or beauty one, or the good one, *SOCRATES,* then the interest which attaches to these and similar unities *PROTARCHUS.* and the attempt which is made to divide them gives birth to a controversy.

*Pro.* Of what nature ?

What is the relation of ideas and phenomena ?

*Soc.* In the first place, as to whether these unities have a real existence ; and then how each individual unity, being always the same, and incapable either of generation or of destruction, but retaining a permanent individuality, can be conceived either as dispersed and multiplied in the infinity of the world of generation, or as still entire and yet divided from itself, which latter would seem to be the greatest impossibility of all, for how can one and the same thing be at the same time in one and in many things ? These, Protarchus, are the real difficulties, and this is the one and many to which they relate ; they are the source of great perplexity if ill decided, and the right determination of them is very helpful.

*Pro.* Then, Socrates, let us begin by clearing up these questions.

*Soc.* That is what I should wish.

*Pro.* And I am sure that all my other friends will be glad to hear them discussed ; Philebus, fortunately for us, is not disposed to move, and we had better not stir him up with questions.

*Soc.* Good ; and where shall we begin this great and multifarious battle, in which such various points are at issue ? Shall we begin thus ?

*Pro.* How ?

The co-existence of one and many is a consequence of thought. —The enthusiasm of young men when they first discover the puzzle.

*Soc.* We say that the one and many become identified by thought, and that now, as in time past, they run about together, in and out of every word which is uttered, and that this union of them will never cease, and is not now beginning, but is, as I believe, an everlasting quality of thought itself, which never grows old. Any young man, when he first tastes these subtleties, is delighted, and fancies that he has found a treasure of wisdom ; in the first enthusiasm of his joy he leaves no stone, or rather no thought unturned, now rolling up the many into the one, and kneading them together, now unfolding and dividing them ; he puzzles himself first and

above all, and then he proceeds to puzzle his neighbours, whether they are older or younger, or of his own age—that makes no difference; neither father nor mother does he spare; no human being who has ears is safe from him, hardly even his dog, and a barbarian would have no chance of escaping him, if an interpreter could only be found.

*Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Considering, Socrates, how many we are, and that all of us are young men, is there not a danger that we and Philebus may all set upon you, if you abuse us? We understand what you mean; but is there no charm by which we may dispel all this confusion, no more excellent way of arriving at the truth? If there is, we hope that you will guide us into that way, and we will do our best to follow, for the enquiry in which we are engaged, Socrates, is not unimportant.

What we want is to find a path to the truth.

*Soc.* The reverse of unimportant, my boys, as Philebus calls you, and there neither is nor ever will be a better than my own favourite way, which has nevertheless already often deserted me and left me helpless in the hour of need.

*Pro.* Tell us what that is.

*Soc.* One which may be easily pointed out, but is by no means easy of application; it is the parent of all the discoveries in the arts.

*Pro.* Tell us what it is.

*Soc.* A gift of heaven, which, as I conceive, the gods tossed among men by the hands of a new Prometheus, and therewith a blaze of light; and the ancients, who were our betters and nearer the gods than we are, handed down the tradition, that whatever things are said to be are composed of one and many, and have the finite and infinite implanted in them: seeing, then, that such is the order of the world, we too ought in every enquiry to begin by laying down one idea of that which is the subject of enquiry; this unity we shall find in everything. Having found it, we may next proceed to look for two, if there be two, or, if not, then for three or some other number, subdividing each of these units, until at last the unity with which we began is seen not only to be one and many and infinite, but also a definite number; the infinite must not be suffered to approach the many until the entire number of the species intermediate

Socrates' favourite method is to proceed from unity to infinity, from the one to the many, by regular steps, omitting none of the intermediate species.

We must go on defining while anything remains to be defined.



*Philebus.* between unity and infinity has been discovered,—then, and not till then, we may rest from division, and without further troubling ourselves about the endless individuals may allow them to drop into infinity. This, as I was saying, is the way of considering and learning and teaching one another, which the gods have handed down to us. But the wise men 17 of our time are either too quick or too slow in conceiving plurality in unity. Having no method, they make their one and many anyhow, and from unity pass at once to infinity; the intermediate steps never occur to them. And this, I repeat, is what makes the difference between the mere art of disputation and true dialectic.

*Pro.* I think that I partly understand you, Socrates, but I should like to have a clearer notion of what you are saying.

*Soc.* I may illustrate my meaning by the letters of the alphabet, Protarchus, which you were made to learn as a child.

The true method applied to grammar,

*Pro.* How do they afford an illustration?

*Soc.* The sound which passes through the lips whether of an individual or of all men is one and yet infinite.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And yet not by knowing either that sound is one or that sound is infinite are we perfect in the art of speech, but the knowledge of the number and nature of sounds is what makes a man a grammarian.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And the knowledge which makes a man a musician is of the same kind.

*Pro.* How so?

*Soc.* Sound is one in music as well as in grammar?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And there is a higher note and a lower note, and a note of equal pitch :—may we affirm so much?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* But you would not be a real musician if this was all that you knew; though if you did not know this you would know almost nothing of music.

*Pro.* Nothing.

*Soc.* But when you have learned what sounds are high and what low, and the number and nature of the intervals

and to music.

and their limits or proportions, and the systems compounded out of them, which our fathers discovered, and have handed down to us who are their descendants under the name of harmonies; and the affections corresponding to them in the movements of the human body, which when measured by numbers ought, as they say, to be called rhythms and measures; and they tell us that the same principle should be applied to every one and many;—when, I say, you have learned all this, then, my dear friend, you are perfect; and you may be said to understand any other subject, when you have a similar grasp of it. But the infinity of kinds and the infinity of individuals which there is in each of them, when not classified, creates in every one of us a state of infinite ignorance; and he who never looks for number in anything, will not himself be looked for in the number of famous men.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

18 *Pro.* I think that what Socrates is now saying is excellent, Philebus.

*Phi.* I think so too, but how do his words bear upon us and upon the argument?

*Soc.* Philebus is right in asking that question of us, Protarchus.

*Pro.* Indeed he is, and you must answer him.

*Soc.* I will; but you must let me make one little remark first about these matters; I was saying, that he who begins with any individual unity, should proceed from that, not to infinity, but to a definite number, and now I say conversely, that he who has to begin with infinity should not jump to unity, but he should look about for some number representing a certain quantity, and thus out of all end in one. And now let us return for an illustration of our principle to the case of letters.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* Some god or divine man, who in the Egyptian legend is said to have been Theuth, observing that the human voice was infinite, first distinguished in this infinity a certain number of vowels, and then other letters which had sound, but were not pure vowels (i. e. the semivowels); these too exist in a definite number; and lastly, he distinguished a third class of letters which we now call mutes, without voice and without sound, and divided these, and likewise the two other

If a man has to start with infinity, he should not jump at once to unity, but should proceed first to some definite quantity. - An illustration of this process taken from grammar.

*Philebus.* classes of vowels and semivowels, into the individual sounds, and told the number of them, and gave to each and all of them the name of letters; and observing that none of us could learn any one of them and not learn them all, and in consideration of this common bond which in a manner united them, he assigned to them all a single art, and this he called the art of grammar or letters.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

*Phi.* The illustration, Protarchus, has assisted me in understanding the original statement, but I still feel the defect of which I just now complained.

*Soc.* Are you going to ask, Philebus, what this has to do with the argument?

*Phi.* Yes, that is a question which Protarchus and I have been long asking.

*Soc.* Assuredly you have already arrived at the answer to the question which, as you say, you have been so long asking?

*Phi.* How so?

*Soc.* Did we not begin by enquiring into the comparative eligibility of pleasure and wisdom?

*Phi.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And we maintain that they are each of them one?

*Phi.* True.

*Soc.* And the precise question to which the previous discussion desires an answer is, how they are one and also many [i. e. how they have one genus and many species], and are not at once infinite, and what number of species is to be assigned to either of them before they pass into infinity<sup>1</sup>.

*Pro.* That is a very serious question, Philebus, to which 19 Socrates has ingeniously brought us round, and please to consider which of us shall answer him; there may be something ridiculous in my being unable to answer, and therefore imposing the task upon you, when I have undertaken the whole charge of the argument, but if neither of us were able to answer, the result methinks would be still more ridiculous. Let us consider, then, what we are to do:—Socrates, if I understood him rightly, is asking whether there are not kinds of pleasure, and what is the number and nature of them, and the same of wisdom.

<sup>1</sup> i. e. into the infinite number of individuals.

We wish to compare pleasure and wisdom. If then we would follow the true method of investigation, we must seek to discover the number and nature of their kinds.

*Soc.* Most true, O son of Callias; and the previous argument showed that if we are not able to tell the kinds of everything that has unity, likeness, sameness, or their opposites, none of us will be of the smallest use in any enquiry.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

*Pro.* That seems to be very near the truth, Socrates. Happy would the wise man be if he knew all things, and the next best thing for him is that he should know himself. Why do I say so at this moment? I will tell you. You, Socrates, have granted us this opportunity of conversing with you, and are ready to assist us in determining what is the best of human goods. For when Philebus said that pleasure and delight and enjoyment and the like were the chief good, you answered --No, not those, but another class of goods; and we are constantly reminding ourselves of what you said, and very properly, in order that we may not forget to examine and compare the two. And these goods, which in your opinion are to be designated as superior to pleasure, and are the true objects of pursuit, are mind and knowledge and understanding and art, and the like. There was a dispute about which were the best, and we playfully threatened that you should not be allowed to go home until the question was settled; and you agreed, and placed yourself at our disposal. And now, as children say, what has been fairly given cannot be taken back; cease then to fight against us in this way.

*Soc.* In what way?

20 *Phi.* Do not perplex us, and keep asking questions of us to which we have not as yet any sufficient answer to give; let us not imagine that a general puzzling of us all is to be the end of our discussion, but if we are unable to answer, do you answer, as you have promised. Consider, then, whether you will divide pleasure and knowledge according to their kinds; or you may let the matter drop, if you are able and willing to find some other mode of clearing up our controversy.

Philebus and Protarchus confess themselves incapable of doing this. They therefore ask help of Socrates.

*Soc.* If you say that, I have nothing to apprehend, for the words 'if you are willing' dispel all my fear; and, moreover, a god seems to have recalled something to my mind.

*Phi.* What is that?

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Socrates  
has heard  
some one  
say that  
neither  
pleasure  
nor wisdom  
is the good,  
but some  
third thing.  
If this be  
brought to  
light, there  
will be no  
need to dis-  
tinguish the  
kinds of  
pleasure  
and  
wisdom.

Let us first  
admit that  
the good is  
perfect, and  
sufficient,  
and above  
all things  
to be  
desired.

Next let us  
separate  
the life of  
pleasure  
from the  
life of wis-  
dom, and  
examine  
each apart.

*Soc.* I remember to have heard long ago certain discus-  
sions about pleasure and wisdom, whether awake or in a  
dream I cannot tell; they were to the effect that neither the  
one nor the other of them was the good, but some third  
thing, which was different from them, and better than either.  
If this be clearly established, then pleasure will lose the  
victory, for the good will cease to be identified with her :—  
Am I not right?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And there will cease to be any need of distinguishing  
the kinds of pleasures, as I am inclined to think, but this will  
appear more clearly as we proceed.

*Pro.* Capital, Socrates; pray go on as you propose.*Soc.* But, let us first agree on some little points.*Pro.* What are they?*Soc.* Is the good perfect or imperfect?*Pro.* The most perfect, Socrates, of all things.*Soc.* And is the good sufficient?*Pro.* Yes, certainly, and in a degree surpassing all other  
things.

*Soc.* And no one can deny that all percipient beings desire  
and hunt after good, and are eager to catch and have the  
good about them, and care not for the attainment of anything  
which is not accompanied by good.

*Pro.* That is undeniable.

*Soc.* Now let us part off the life of pleasure from the life  
of wisdom, and pass them in review.

*Pro.* How do you mean?

*Soc.* Let there be no wisdom in the life of pleasure, nor  
any pleasure in the life of wisdom, for if either of them is the  
chief good, it cannot be supposed to want anything, but if  
either is shown to want anything, then it cannot really be  
the chief good.

*Pro.* Impossible.*Soc.* And will you help us to test these two lives?*Pro.* Certainly.*Soc.* Then answer.*Pro.* Ask.

*Soc.* Would you choose, Protarchus, to live all your life  
long in the enjoyment of the greatest pleasures?

*Pro.* Certainly I should.

*Soc.* Would you consider that there was still anything wanting to you if you had perfect pleasure?

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* Reflect; would you not want wisdom and intelligence and forethought, and similar qualities? would you not at any rate want sight?

*Pro.* Why should I? Having pleasure I should have all things.

*Soc.* Living thus, you would always throughout your life enjoy the greatest pleasures?

*Pro.* I should.

*Soc.* But if you had neither mind, nor memory, nor knowledge, nor true opinion, you would in the first place be utterly ignorant of whether you were pleased or not, because you would be entirely devoid of intelligence.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And similarly, if you had no memory you would not recollect that you had ever been pleased, nor would the slightest recollection of the pleasure which you feel at any moment remain with you; and if you had no true opinion you would not think that you were pleased when you were; and if you had no power of calculation you would not be able to calculate on future pleasure, and your life would be the life, not of a man, but of an oyster or 'pulmo marinus.' Could this be otherwise?

*Pro.* No.

*Soc.* But is such a life eligible?

*Pro.* I cannot answer you, Socrates; the argument has taken away from me the power of speech.

*Soc.* We must keep up our spirits;—let us now take the life of mind and examine it in turn.

*Pro.* And what is this life of mind?

*Soc.* I want to know whether any one of us would consent to live, having wisdom and mind and knowledge and memory of all things, but having no sense of pleasure or pain, and wholly unaffected by these and the like feelings?

*Pro.* Neither life, Socrates, appears eligible to me, nor is likely, as I should imagine, to be chosen by any one else.

22 *Soc.* What would you say, Protarchus, to both of these

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Pleasure without knowledge is pleasure of which we are unconscious,—the life of an oyster.

And knowledge, without pleasure, is equally undesirable.

*Philebus.* in one, or to one that was made out of the union of the two ?

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS. *Pro.* Out of the union, that is, of pleasure with mind and wisdom ?

*Soc.* Yes, that is the life which I mean.

The mixed  
life of  
pleasure  
and wisdom  
is to be  
preferred.  
*Pro.* There can be no difference of opinion ; not some but all would surely choose this third rather than either of the other two, and in addition to them.

*Soc.* But do you see the consequence ?

*Pro.* To be sure I do. The consequence is, that two out of the three lives which have been proposed are neither sufficient nor eligible for man or for animal.

*Soc.* Then now there can be no doubt that neither of them has the good, for the one which had would certainly have been sufficient and perfect and eligible for every living creature or thing that was able to live such a life ; and if any of us had chosen any other, he would have chosen contrary to the nature of the truly eligible, and not of his own free will, but either through ignorance or from some unhappy necessity.

*Pro.* Certainly that seems to be true.

*Soc.* And now have I not sufficiently shown that Philebus' goddess is not to be regarded as identical with the good ?

*Phi.* Neither is your 'mind' the good, Socrates, for that will be open to the same objections.

'And so  
pleasure,'  
says  
Socrates,  
'is not the  
same with  
the good.'—  
'Nor your  
mind,'  
rejoins  
Philebus.—  
'Not my  
mind, cer-  
tainly, but  
the divine,  
Yes And  
I might  
add that  
the excel-  
lence of the  
mixed life  
is due  
rather to  
wisdom  
than to  
pleasure.'  
*Soc.* Perhaps, Philebus, you may be right in saying so of my 'mind' ; but of the true, which is also the divine mind far otherwise. However, I will not at present claim the first place for mind as against the mixed life ; but we must come to some understanding about the second place. For you might affirm pleasure and I mind to be the cause of the mixed life ; and in that case although neither of them would be the good, one of them might be imagined to be the cause of the good. And I might proceed further to argue in opposition to Philebus, that the element which makes this mixed life eligible and good, is more akin and more similar to mind than to pleasure. And if this is true, pleasure cannot be truly said to share either in the first or second place, and does not, if I may trust my own mind, attain even to the third.

*Pro.* Truly, Socrates, pleasure appears to me to have had  
23 a fall; in fighting for the palm, she has been smitten by  
the argument, and is laid low. I must say that mind would  
have fallen too, and may therefore be thought to show  
discretion in not putting forward a similar claim. And if  
pleasure were deprived not only of the first but of the  
second place, she would be terribly damaged in the eyes  
of her admirers, for not even to them would she still appear  
as fair as before.

*Philebus.*  
*SOCRATES,*  
*PROTARCHUS.*

*Soc.* Well, but had we not better leave her now, and  
not pain her by applying the crucial test, and finally  
detecting her?

*Pro.* Nonsense, Socrates.

*Soc.* Why? because I said that we had better not pain  
pleasure, which is an impossibility?

*Pro.* Yes, and more than that, because you do not seem  
to be aware that none of us will let you go home until you  
have finished the argument.

*Soc.* Heavens! Protarchus, that will be a tedious business,  
and just at present not at all an easy one. For in going  
to war in the cause of mind, who is aspiring to the second  
prize, I ought to have weapons of another make from those  
which I used before; some, however, of the old ones may  
do again. And must I then finish the argument?

In support-  
ing the  
claims of  
mind to the  
second  
place,  
some new  
weapons  
will be re-  
quired.

*Pro.* Of course you must.

*Soc.* Let us be very careful in laying the foundation.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* Let us divide all existing things into two, or rather,  
if you do not object, into three classes.

*Pro.* Upon what principle would you make the division?

*Soc.* Let us take some of our newly-found notions.

*Pro.* Which of them?

*Soc.* Were we not saying that God revealed a finite element  
of existence, and also an infinite?

All things  
may be  
divided  
into three  
or four  
classes:  
(1) the  
finite,  
(2) the in-  
finite,  
(3) the  
union of  
the two,  
and  
(4) the  
cause of  
the union.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Let us assume these two principles, and also a third,  
which is compounded out of them; but I fear that I am  
ridiculously clumsy at these processes of division and  
enumeration.

*Pro.* What do you mean, my good friend?



*Philebus.**Soc.* I say that a fourth class is still wanted.SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*Pro.* What will that be?*Soc.* Find the cause of the third or compound, and add this as a fourth class to the three others.*Pro.* And would you like to have a fifth class or cause of resolution as well as a cause of composition?*Soc.* Not, I think, at present; but if I want a fifth at some future time you shall allow me to have it.*Pro.* Certainly.*Soc.* Let us begin with the first three; and as we find two out of the three greatly divided and dispersed, let us endeavour to reunite them, and see how in each of them there is a one and many.*Pro.* If you would explain to me a little more about them, 24 perhaps I might be able to follow you.*Soc.* Well, the two classes are the same which I mentioned before, one the finite, and the other the infinite; I will first show that the infinite is in a certain sense many, and the finite may be hereafter discussed.*Pro.* I agree.The class  
of the  
infinite  
contains all  
things into  
which the  
more and  
the less  
enter; for  
the more  
and the  
less are  
without  
limit and  
measure.*Soc.* And now consider well; for the question to which I invite your attention is difficult and controverted. When you speak of hotter and colder, can you conceive any limit in those qualities? Does not the more and less, which dwells in their very nature, prevent their having any end? for if they had an end, the more and less would themselves have an end.*Pro.* That is most true.*Soc.* Ever, as we say, into the hotter and the colder there enters a more and a less.*Pro.* Yes.*Soc.* Then, says the argument, there is never any end of them, and being endless they must also be infinite.*Pro.* Yes, Socrates, that is exceedingly true.*Soc.* Yes, my dear Protarchus, and your answer reminds me that such an expression as 'exceedingly,' which you have just uttered, and also the term 'gently,' have the same significance as more or less; for whenever they occur they do not allow of the existence of quantity—they are always introducing degrees into actions, instituting a comparison

of a more or a less excessive or a more or a less gentle, and at each creation of more or less, quantity disappears. For, as I was just now saying, if quantity and measure did not disappear, but were allowed to intrude in the sphere of more and less and the other comparatives, these last would be driven out of their own domain. When definite quantity is once admitted, there can be no longer a 'hotter' or a 'colder' (for these are always progressing, and are never in one stay); but definite quantity is at rest, and has ceased to progress. Which proves that comparatives, such as the hotter and the colder, are to be ranked in the class of the infinite.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Your remark certainly has the look of truth, Socrates; but these subjects, as you were saying, are difficult to follow at first. I think, however, that if I could hear the argument repeated by you once or twice, there would be a substantial agreement between us.

*Soc.* Yes, and I will try to meet your wish; but, as I would rather not waste time in the enumeration of endless particulars, let me know whether I may not assume as a note of the infinite—

25 *Pro.* What?

*Soc.* I want to know whether such things as appear to us to admit of more or less, or are denoted by the words 'exceedingly,' 'gently,' 'extremely,' and the like, may not be referred to the class of the infinite, which is their unity, for, as was asserted in the previous argument, all things that were divided and dispersed should be brought together, and have the mark or seal of some one nature, if possible, set upon them—do you remember?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And all things which do not admit of more or less, but admit their opposites, that is to say, first of all, equality, and the equal, or again, the double, or any other ratio of number and measure—all these may, I think, be rightly reckoned by us in the class of the limited or finite; what do you say?

*Pro.* Excellent, Socrates.

*Soc.* And now what nature shall we ascribe to the third or compound kind?

But all things which admit of equality, number and measure, fall under the class of the finite.

*Philebus.**Pro.* You, I think, will have to tell me that.SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*Soc.* Rather God will tell you, if there be any God who will listen to my prayers.*Pro.* Offer up a prayer, then, and think.*Soc.* I am thinking, Protarchus, and I believe that some God has befriended us.*Pro.* What do you mean, and what proof have you to offer of what you are saying?*Soc.* I will tell you, and do you listen to my words.*Pro.* Proceed.*Soc.* Were we not speaking just now of hotter and colder?*Pro.* True.*Soc.* Add to them drier, wetter, more, less, swifter, slower, greater, smaller, and all that in the preceding argument we placed under the unity of more and less.*Pro.* In the class of the infinite, you mean?*Soc.* Yes; and now mingle this with the other.*Pro.* What is the other?The union  
of finite  
and infinite  
gives rise  
to the  
third class,*Soc.* The class of the finite which we ought to have brought together as we did the infinite; but, perhaps, it will come to the same thing if we do so now;—when the two are combined, a third will appear.*Pro.* What do you mean by the class of the finite?*Soc.* The class of the equal and the double, and any class which puts an end to difference and opposition, and by introducing number creates harmony and proportion among the different elements.*Pro.* I understand; you seem to me to mean that the various opposites, when you mingle with them the class of the finite, take certain forms.*Soc.* Yes, that is my meaning.*Pro.* Proceed.*Soc.* Does not the right participation in the finite give health—in disease, for instance?*Pro.* Certainly.*Soc.* And whereas the high and low, the swift and the 26 slow are infinite or unlimited, does not the addition of the principles aforesaid introduce a limit, and perfect the whole frame of music?*Pro.* Yes, certainly.under  
which are  
included  
health and  
harmony  
and beauty  
and the  
seasons  
and every  
sort of  
good.

*Soc.* Or, again, when cold and heat prevail, does not the introduction of them take away excess and indefiniteness, and infuse moderation and harmony? *Philebus.*  
*SOCRATES,*  
*PROTARCHUS.*

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And from a like admixture of the finite and infinite come the seasons, and all the delights of life?

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* I omit ten thousand other things, such as beauty and health and strength, and the many beauties and high perfections of the soul: O my beautiful Philebus, the goddess, methinks, seeing the universal wantonness and wickedness of all things, and that there was in them no limit to pleasures and self-indulgence, devised the limit of law and order, whereby, as you say, Philebus, she torments, or as I maintain, delivers the soul.—What think you, Protarchus?

*Pro.* Her ways are much to my mind, Socrates.

*Soc.* You will observe that I have spoken of three classes?

*Pro.* Yes, I think that I understand you: you mean to say that the infinite is one class, and that the finite is a second class of existences; but what you would make the third I am not so certain.

*Soc.* That is because the amazing variety of the third class is too much for you, my dear friend; but there was not this difficulty with the infinite, which also comprehended many classes, for all of them were sealed with the note of more and less, and therefore appeared one.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And the finite or limit had not many divisions, and we readily acknowledged it to be by nature one?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* Yes, indeed; and when I speak of the third class, understand me to mean any offspring of these, being a birth into true being, effected by the measure which the limit introduces.

*Pro.* I understand.

*Soc.* Still there was, as we said, a fourth class to be investigated, and you must assist in the investigation; for does not everything which comes into being, of necessity come into being through a cause?

The third class takes an amazing variety of forms, and is therefore more difficult to conceive than the two first classes.

The fourth class is the cause of the union of finite and infinite.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Yes, certainly; for how can there be anything which has no cause?

*Soc.* And is not the agent the same as the cause in all except name; the agent and the cause may be rightly called one?

*Pro.* Very true.

27

*Soc.* And the same may be said of the patient, or effect; we shall find that they too differ, as I was saying, only in name—shall we not?

*Pro.* We shall.

*Soc.* The agent or cause always naturally leads, and the patient or effect naturally follows it?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then the cause and what is subordinate to it in generation are not the same, but different?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Did not the things which were generated, and the things out of which they were generated, furnish all the three classes?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the creator or cause of them has been satisfactorily proven to be distinct from them,—and may therefore be called a fourth principle?

*Pro.* So let us call it.

*Soc.* Quite right; but now, having distinguished the four, I think that we had better refresh our memories by recapitulating each of them in order.

*Pro.* By all means.

Order of  
the classes :  
(1) the in-  
finite ;  
(2) the  
finite ;  
(3) the  
union of  
these ;  
(4) the  
cause of  
the union.

*Soc.* Then the first I will call the infinite or unlimited, and the second the finite or limited; then follows the third, an essence compound and generated; and I do not think that I shall be far wrong in speaking of the cause of mixture and generation as the fourth.

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And now what is the next question, and how came we hither? Were we not enquiring whether the second place belonged to pleasure or wisdom?

*Pro.* We were.

*Soc.* And now, having determined these points, shall we not be better able to decide about the first and second place, which was the original subject of dispute?

*Pro.* I dare say.

*Soc.* We said, if you remember, that the mixed life of pleasure and wisdom was the conqueror—did we not ?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And we see what is the place and nature of this life and to what class it is to be assigned ?

*Pro.* Beyond a doubt.

*Soc.* This is evidently comprehended in the third or mixed class ; which is not composed of any two particular ingredients, but of all the elements of infinity, bound down by the finite, and may therefore be truly said to comprehend the conqueror life.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* And what shall we say, Philebus, of your life which is all sweetness ; and in which of the aforesaid classes is that to be placed ? Perhaps you will allow me to ask you a question before you answer ?

*Phi.* Let me hear.

*Soc.* Have pleasure and pain a limit, or do they belong to the class which admits of more and less ?

*Phi.* They belong to the class which admits of more, Socrates ; for pleasure would not be perfectly good if she were not infinite in quantity and degree.

28 *Soc.* Nor would pain, Philebus, be perfectly evil. And therefore the infinite cannot be that element which imparts to pleasure some degree of good. But now—admitting, if you like, that pleasure is of the nature of the infinite—in which of the aforesaid classes, O Protarchus and Philebus, can we without irreverence place wisdom and knowledge and mind ? And let us be careful, for I think that the danger will be very serious if we err on this point.

*Phi.* You magnify, Socrates, the importance of your favourite god.

*Soc.* And you, my friend, are also magnifying your favourite goddess ; but still I must beg you to answer the question.

*Pro.* Socrates is quite right, Philebus, and we must submit to him.

*Phi.* And did not you, Protarchus, propose to answer in my place ?

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

To the  
third  
belongs  
the mixed  
life of  
pleasure  
and  
wisdom.

Pleasure  
and also  
pain belong  
to the first  
class.

To which  
does mind  
belong ?

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS,  
PHILEBUS.

*Pro.* Certainly I did ; but I am now in a great strait, and I must entreat you, Socrates, to be our spokesman, and then we shall not say anything wrong or disrespectful of your favourite.

*Soc.* I must obey you, Protarchus ; nor is the task which you impose a difficult one ; but did I really, as Philebus implies, disconcert you with my playful solemnity, when I asked the question to what class mind and knowledge belong ?

*Pro.* You did, indeed, Socrates.

To the highest, as philosophers declare. But they are interested witnesses, and therefore further proof is needed.

*Soc.* Yet the answer is easy, since all philosophers assert with one voice that mind is the king of heaven and earth—in reality they are magnifying themselves. And perhaps they are right. But still I should like to consider the class of mind, if you do not object, a little more fully.

*Phi.* Take your own course, Socrates, and never mind length ; we shall not tire of you.

*Soc.* Very good ; let us begin then, Protarchus, by asking a question.

*Pro.* What question ?

First, we agree that the world is governed by mind, and not by chance.

*Soc.* Whether all this which they call the universe is left to the guidance of unreason and chance medley, or, on the contrary, as our fathers have declared, ordered and governed by a marvellous intelligence and wisdom.

*Pro.* Wide asunder are the two assertions, illustrious Socrates, for that which you were just now saying to me appears to be blasphemy ; but the other assertion, that mind orders all things, is worthy of the aspect of the world, and of the sun, and of the moon, and of the stars and of the whole circle of the heavens ; and never will I say or think otherwise.

*Soc.* Shall we then 'agree with them of old time in maintaining<sup>1</sup> this doctrine,—not merely reasserting the notions of others, without risk to ourselves,—but shall we share in <sup>29</sup> the danger, and take our part of the reproach which will await us, when an ingenious individual declares that all is disorder ?

*Pro.* That would certainly be my wish.

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'maintain in accordance with our previous statements.' but cf. *supra* 28 D, and *infra* 30 D.

*Soc.* Then now please to consider the next stage of the argument.

*Pro.* Let me hear.

*Soc.* We see that the elements which enter into the nature of the bodies of all animals, fire, water, air, and, as the storm-tossed sailor cries, 'land' [i. e. earth], reappear in the constitution of the world.

*Pro.* The proverb may be applied to us ; for truly the storm gathers over us, and we are at our wit's end.

*Soc.* There is something to be remarked about each of these elements.

*Pro.* What is it ?

*Soc.* Only a small fraction of any one of them exists in us, and that of a mean sort, and not in any way pure, or having any power worthy of its nature. One instance will prove this of all of them ; there is fire within us, and in the universe.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And is not our fire small and weak and mean ? But the fire in the universe is wonderful in quantity and beauty, and in every power that fire has.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* And is the fire in the universe nourished and generated and ruled by the fire in us, or is the fire in you and me, and in other animals, dependent on the universal fire ?

*Pro.* That is a question which does not deserve an answer.

*Soc.* Right ; and you would say the same, if I am not mistaken, of the earth which is in animals and the earth which is in the universe, and you would give a similar reply about all the other elements ?

*Pro.* Why, how could any man who gave any other be deemed in his senses ?

*Soc.* I do not think that he could—but now go on to the next step. When we saw those elements of which we have been speaking gathered up in one, did we not call them a body ?

*Pro.* We did.

*Soc.* And the same may be said of the cosmos, which for the same reason may be considered to be a body, because made up of the same elements.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Philebas.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Next, our bodies are dependent on the body of the universe, whence the elements, which compose them, are derived.



*Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS

*Soc.* But is our body nourished wholly by this body, or is this body nourished by our body, thence deriving and having the qualities of which we were just now speaking?

*Pro.* That again, Socrates, is a question which does not deserve to be asked.

*Soc.* Well, tell me, is this question worth asking? 30

*Pro.* What question?

*Soc.* May our body be said to have a soul?

*Pro.* Clearly.

*Soc.* And whence comes that soul, my dear Protarchus, unless the body of the universe, which contains elements like those in our bodies but in every way fairer, had also a soul? Can there be another source?

*Pro.* Clearly, Socrates, that is the only source.

*Soc.* Why, yes, Protarchus; for surely we cannot imagine that of the four classes, the finite, the infinite, the composition of the two, and the cause, the fourth, which enters into all things, giving to our bodies souls, and the art of self-management, and of healing disease, and operating in other ways to heal and organize, having too all the attributes of wisdom;—we cannot, I say, imagine that whereas the self-same elements exist, both in the entire heaven and in great provinces of the heaven, only fairer and purer, this last should not also in that higher sphere have designed the noblest and fairest things?

*Pro.* Such a supposition is quite unreasonable.

*Soc.* Then if this be denied, should we not be wise in adopting the other view and maintaining that there is in the universe a mighty infinite and an adequate limit, of which we have often spoken, as well as a presiding cause of no mean power, which orders and arranges years and seasons and months, and may be justly called wisdom and mind?

*Pro.* Most justly.

*Soc.* And wisdom and mind cannot exist without soul?

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And in the divine nature of Zeus would you not say that there is the soul and mind of a king, because there is in him the power of the cause? And other gods have other attributes, by which they are pleased to be called.

*Pro.* Very true.

And,  
following  
out the  
analogy,  
we must  
conclude  
that our  
souls and  
minds come  
from the  
soul or  
mind of  
the Uni-  
verse,

which is the  
supreme  
cause.

*Soc.* Do not then suppose that these words are rashly spoken by us, O Protarchus, for they are in harmony with the testimony of those who said of old time that mind rules the universe.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And they furnish an answer to my enquiry (cp. 28 A); for they imply that mind is the parent of that class of the four which we called the cause of all; and I think that you now have my answer.

Thus mind is shown to belong to the fourth or causal class.

*Pro.* I have indeed, and yet I did not observe that you had answered.

*Soc.* A jest is sometimes refreshing, Protarchus, when it interrupts earnest.

31 *Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* I think, friend, that we have now pretty clearly set forth the class to which mind belongs and what is the power of mind.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And the class to which pleasure belongs has also been long ago discovered?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And let us remember, too, of both of them, (1) that mind was akin to the cause and of this family; and (2) that pleasure is infinite and belongs to the class which neither has, nor ever will have in itself, a beginning, middle, or end of its own.

*Pro.* I shall be sure to remember.

*Soc.* We must next examine what is their place and under what conditions they are generated. And we will begin with pleasure, since her class was first examined; and yet pleasure cannot be rightly tested apart from pain.

How do pleasures and pains originate?

*Pro.* If this is the road, let us take it.

*Soc.* I wonder whether you would agree with me about the origin of pleasure and pain.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* I mean to say that their natural seat is in the mixed class.

*Pro.* And would you tell me again, sweet Socrates, which of the aforesaid classes is the mixed one?

*Soc.* I will, my fine fellow, to the best of my ability.

*Philebus.* *Pro.* Very good.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS

*Soc.* Let us then understand the mixed class to be that which we placed third in the list of four.

*Pro.* That which followed the infinite and the finite ; and in which you ranked health, and, if I am not mistaken, harmony.

*Soc.* Capital ; and now will you please to give me your best attention ?

*Pro.* Proceed ; I am attending.

In the body  
they arise  
through  
the restor-  
ation and  
dissolution  
of the  
harmony of  
finite and  
infinite.

*Soc.* I say that when the harmony in animals is dissolved, there is also a dissolution of nature and a generation of pain.

*Pro.* That is very probable.

*Soc.* And the restoration of harmony and return to nature is the source of pleasure, if I may be allowed to speak in the fewest and shortest words about matters of the greatest moment.

*Pro.* I believe that you are right, Socrates ; but will you try to be a little plainer ?

*Soc.* Do not obvious and every-day phenomena furnish the simplest illustration ?

*Pro.* What phenomena do you mean ?

*Soc.* Hunger, for example, is a dissolution and a pain.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Whereas eating is a replenishment and a pleasure ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* Thirst again is a destruction and a pain, but the effect of moisture replenishing the dry place is a pleasure : once more, the unnatural separation and dissolution caused by heat is painful, and the natural restoration and refrigeration is pleasant.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And the unnatural freezing of the moisture in an animal is pain, and the natural process of resolution and return of the elements to their original state is pleasure. And would not the general proposition seem to you to hold, that the destroying of the natural union of the finite and infinite, which, as I was observing before, make up the class of living beings, is pain, and that the process of return of all things to their own nature is pleasure ?

*Pro.* Granted ; what you say has a general truth.

*Soc.* Here then is one kind of pleasures and pains originating severally in the two processes which we have described?

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Good.

*Soc.* Let us next assume that in the soul herself there is an antecedent hope of pleasure which is sweet and refreshing, and an expectation of pain, fearful and anxious.

In the soul there are pleasures and pains of expectation corresponding to these.

*Pro.* Yes; this is another class of pleasures and pains, which is of the soul only, apart from the body, and is produced by expectation.

*Soc.* Right; for in the analysis of these, pure, as I suppose them to be, the pleasures being unalloyed with pain and the pains with pleasure, methinks that we shall see clearly whether the whole class of pleasure is to be desired, or whether this quality of entire desirableness is not rather to be attributed to another of the classes which have been mentioned; and whether pleasure and pain, like heat and cold, and other things of the same kind, are not sometimes to be desired and sometimes not to be desired, as being not in themselves good, but only sometimes and in some instances admitting of the nature of good.

*Pro.* You say most truly that this is the track which the investigation should pursue.

*Soc.* Well, then, assuming that pain ensues on the dissolution, and pleasure on the restoration of the harmony, let us now ask what will be the condition of animated beings who are neither in process of restoration nor of dissolution. And mind what you say: I ask whether any animal who is in that condition can possibly have any feeling of pleasure or pain, great or small?

But besides dissolution and restoration, there is a neutral state of the body,

*Pro.* Certainly not.

33 *Soc.* Then here we have a third state, over and above that of pleasure and of pain?

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And do not forget that there is such a state; it will make a great difference in our judgment of pleasure, whether we remember this or not. And I should like to say a few words about it.

*Pro.* What have you to say?

*Soc.* Why, you know that if a man chooses the life of

in which, if he pleases,

*Philebus.* wisdom, there is no reason why he should not live in this neutral state.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS. *Pro.* You mean that he may live neither rejoicing nor sorrowing?

the man  
who  
chooses the  
life of  
wisdom  
may live,  
like the  
Gods,  
having  
neither  
joy nor  
sorrow.  
*Soc.* Yes; and if I remember rightly, when the lives were compared, no degree of pleasure, whether great or small, was thought to be necessary to him who chose the life of thought and wisdom.

*Pro.* Yes, certainly, we said so.

*Soc.* Then he will live without pleasure; and who knows whether this may not be the most divine of all lives?

*Pro.* If so, the gods, at any rate, cannot be supposed to have either joy or sorrow.

*Soc.* Certainly not—there would be a great impropriety in the assumption of either alternative. But whether the gods are or are not indifferent to pleasure is a point which may be considered hereafter if in any way relevant to the argument, and whatever is the conclusion we will place it to the account of mind in her contest for the second place, should she have to resign the first.

*Pro.* Just so.

Let us con-  
sider the  
pleasures of  
memory.  
*Soc.* The other class of pleasures, which as we were saying is purely mental, is entirely derived from memory.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* I must first of all analyze memory, or rather perception which is prior to memory, if the subject of our discussion is ever to be properly cleared up.

*Pro.* How will you proceed?

Some  
affections  
of the body  
do not  
reach the  
soul; those  
which do  
are con-  
scious  
affections.  
*Soc.* Let us imagine affections of the body which are extinguished before they reach the soul, and leave her unaffected; and again, other affections which vibrate through both soul and body, and impart a shock to both and to each of them.

*Pro.* Granted.

*Soc.* And the soul may be truly said to be oblivious of the first but not of the second?

*Pro.* Quite true.

*Soc.* When I say oblivious, do not suppose that I mean forgetfulness in a literal sense; for forgetfulness is the exit of memory, which in this case has not yet entered; and to

speak of the loss of that which is not yet in existence, and never has been, is a contradiction ; do you see ? *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* Then just be so good as to change the terms.

*Pro.* How shall I change them ?

34 *Soc.* Instead of the oblivion of the soul, when you are describing the state in which she is unaffected by the shocks of the body, say unconsciousness.

*Pro.* I see.

*Soc.* And the union or communion of soul and body in one feeling and motion would be properly called consciousness ?

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* Then now we know the meaning of the word ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And memory may, I think, be rightly described as the preservation of consciousness ?

*Pro.* Right.

*Soc.* But do we not distinguish memory from recollection ?

*Pro.* I think so.

*Soc.* And do we not mean by recollection the power which the soul has of recovering, when by herself, some feeling which she experienced when in company with the body ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And when she recovers of herself the lost recollection of some consciousness or knowledge, the recovery is termed recollection and reminiscence ?

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* There is a reason why I say all this.

*Pro.* What is it ?

*Soc.* I want to attain the plainest possible notion of pleasure and desire, as they exist in the mind only, apart from the body ; and the previous analysis helps to show the nature of both.

*Pro.* Then now, Socrates, let us proceed to the next point.

*Soc.* There are certainly many things to be considered in discussing the generation and whole complexion of pleasure. At the outset we must determine the nature and seat of desire.

*Pro.* Ay ; let us enquire into that, for we shall lose nothing.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Memory is the preservation of conscious affections ; recollection is the recovery of them.

These preliminary remarks will help us to understand the nature of pleasure and desire.

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.What is  
desire?—  
The wish  
for re-  
plenish-  
ment.

*Soc.* Nay, Protarchus, we shall surely lose the puzzle if we find the answer.

*Pro.* A fair retort ; but let us proceed.

*Soc.* Did we not place hunger, thirst, and the like, in the class of desires ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And yet they are very different ; what common nature have we in view when we call them by a single name ?

*Pro.* By heavens, Socrates, that is a question which is not easily answered ; but it must be answered.

*Soc.* Then let us go back to our examples.

*Pro.* Where shall we begin ?

*Soc.* Do we mean anything when we say 'a man thirsts' ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* We mean to say that he 'is empty' ?

*Pro.* Of course.

*Soc.* And is not thirst desire ?

*Pro.* Yes, of drink.

*Soc.* Would you say of drink, or of replenishment with 35 drink ?

*Pro.* I should say, of replenishment with drink.

*Soc.* Then he who is empty desires, as would appear, the opposite of what he experiences ; for he is empty and desires to be full ?

*Pro.* Clearly so.

*Soc.* But how can a man who is empty for the first time, attain either by perception or memory to any apprehension of replenishment, of which he has no present or past experience ?

*Pro.* Impossible.

*Soc.* And yet he who desires, surely desires something ?

*Pro.* Of course.

*Soc.* He does not desire that which he experiences, for he experiences thirst, and thirst is emptiness ; but he desires replenishment ?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Then there must be something in the thirsty man which in some way apprehends replenishment ?

*Pro.* There must.

But how  
can a man,  
when first  
empty,  
desire  
replenish-  
ment of  
which he  
has no ex-  
perience ?

Yet he does  
desire it,

*Soc.* And that cannot be the body, for the body is supposed to be emptied? *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Yes.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* The only remaining alternative is that the soul apprehends the replenishment by the help of memory; as is obvious, for what other way can there be?

not however with his body, but with his mind by the help of memory.

*Pro.* I cannot imagine any other.

*Soc.* But do you see the consequence?

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* That there is no such thing as desire of the body.

*Pro.* Why so?

*Soc.* Why, because the argument shows that the endeavour of every animal is to the reverse of his bodily state.

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the impulse which leads him to the opposite of what he is experiencing proves that he has a memory of the opposite state.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And the argument, having proved that memory attracts us towards the objects of desire, proves also that the impulses and the desires and the moving principle in every living being have their origin in the soul.

The mind, then, is the seat of desire.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* The argument will not allow that our body either hungers or thirsts or has any similar experience.

*Pro.* Quite right.

*Soc.* Let me make a further observation; the argument appears to me to imply that there is a kind of life which consists in these affections.

*Pro.* Of what affections, and of what kind of life, are you speaking?

*Soc.* I am speaking of being emptied and replenished, and of all that relates to the preservation and destruction of living beings, as well as of the pain which is felt in one of these states and of the pleasure which succeeds to it.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And what would you say of the intermediate state?

*Pro.* What do you mean by 'intermediate'?

*Soc.* I mean when a person is in actual suffering and yet remembers past pleasures which, if they would only return,

There is an intermediate life, which combines a bodily pain



*Philebus.*  
*SOCRATES,*  
*PROTARCHUS.*

with the  
 mental  
 pleasure of  
 hope.

would relieve him; but as yet he has them not. May we not say of him, that he is in an intermediate state?

36

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Would you say that he was wholly pained or wholly pleased?

*Pro.* Nay, I should say that he has two pains; in his body there is the actual experience of pain, and in his soul longing and expectation.

*Soc.* What do you mean, Protarchus, by the two pains? May not a man who is empty have at one time a sure hope of being filled, and at other times be quite in despair?

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And has he not the pleasure of memory when he is hoping to be filled, and yet in that he is empty is he not at the same time in pain?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then man and the other animals have at the same time both pleasure and pain?

*Pro.* I suppose so.

But when  
 the hope is  
 turned into  
 despair,  
 there is a  
 double  
 pain.

*Soc.* But when a man is empty and has no hope of being filled, there will be the double experience of pain. You observed this and inferred that the double experience was the single case possible.

*Pro.* Quite true, Socrates.

*Soc.* Shall the enquiry into these states of feeling be made the occasion of raising a question?

*Pro.* What question?

A ques-  
 tion.—Can  
 there be  
 false plea-  
 sures, as  
 there are  
 false  
 opinions?  
 'No,' re-  
 joins Pro-  
 tarchus;  
 'opinions  
 may be  
 false, but  
 not plea-  
 sures.'

*Soc.* Whether we ought to say that the pleasures and pains of which we are speaking are true or false? or some true and some false?

*Pro.* But how, Socrates, can there be false pleasures and pains?

*Soc.* And how, Protarchus, can there be true and false fears, or true and false expectations, or true and false opinions?

*Pro.* I grant that opinions may be true or false, but not pleasures.

*Soc.* What do you mean? I am afraid that we are raising a very serious enquiry.

*Pro.* There I agree.

*Soc.* And yet, my boy, for you are one of Philebus' boys (cp. 16 A), the point to be considered, is, whether the enquiry is relevant to the argument. *Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Surely.

*Soc.* No tedious and irrelevant discussion can be allowed ; what is said should be pertinent.

*Pro.* Right.

*Soc.* I am always wondering at the question which has now been raised.

*Pro.* How so ?

*Soc.* Do you deny that some pleasures are false, and others true ?

*Pro.* To be sure I do.

*Soc.* Would you say that no one ever seemed to rejoice and yet did not rejoice, or seemed to feel pain and yet did not feel pain, sleeping or waking, mad or lunatic ?

*Pro.* So we have always held, Socrates.

37 *Soc.* But were you right ? Shall we enquire into the truth of your opinion ? Socrates  
proceeds to  
discuss the  
question.

*Pro.* I think that we should.

*Soc.* Let us then put into more precise terms the question which has arisen about pleasure and opinion. Is there such a thing as opinion ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And such a thing as pleasure ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And an opinion must be of something ?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And a man must be pleased by something ?

*Pro.* Quite correct.

*Soc.* And whether the opinion be right or wrong, makes no difference ; it will still be an opinion ? All plea-  
sures and  
opinions,  
whether  
right or  
wrong, are  
real.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And he who is pleased, whether he is rightly pleased or not, will always have a real feeling of pleasure ?

*Pro.* Yes ; that is also quite true.

*Soc.* Then, how can opinion be both true and false, and pleasure true only, although pleasure and opinion are both equally real ?

*Pro.* Yes ; that is the question.

*Philebus.* *Soc.* You mean that opinion admits of truth and falsehood, and hence becomes not merely opinion, but opinion of a certain quality; and this is what you think should be examined?

*Pro.* Yes.

But do pleasures, like opinions, admit of quality? Certainly they do.

*Soc.* And further, even if we admit the existence of qualities in other objects, may not pleasure and pain be simple and devoid of quality?

*Pro.* Clearly.

*Soc.* But there is no difficulty in seeing that pleasure and pain as well as opinion have qualities, for they are great or small, and have various degrees of intensity; as was indeed said long ago by us.

*Pro.* Quite true.

*Soc.* And if badness attaches to any of them, Protarchus, then we should speak of a bad opinion or of a bad pleasure?

*Pro.* Quite true, Socrates.

*Soc.* And if rightness attaches to any of them, should we not speak of a right opinion or right pleasure; and in like manner of the reverse of rightness?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And if the thing opined be erroneous, might we not say that the opinion, being erroneous, is not right or rightly opined?

*Pro.* Certainly.

False pleasures are pleasures based on false opinion.

*Soc.* And if we see a pleasure or pain which errs in respect of its object, shall we call that right or good, or by any honourable name?

*Pro.* Not if the pleasure is mistaken; how could we?

*Soc.* And surely pleasure often appears to accompany an opinion which is not true, but false?

*Pro.* Certainly it does; and in that case, Socrates, as we <sup>38</sup> were saying, the opinion is false, but no one could call the actual pleasure false.

*Soc.* How eagerly, Protarchus, do you rush to the defence of pleasure!

*Pro.* Nay, Socrates, I only repeat what I hear.

How do these differ from pleasures based on true opinion?

*Soc.* And is there no difference, my friend, between that pleasure which is associated with right opinion and knowledge, and that which is often found in all of us associated with falsehood and ignorance?

*Pro.* There must be a very great difference between them. *Philebus.*

*Soc.* Then, now let us proceed to contemplate this difference. *SOCRATES,*  
*PROTARCHUS.*

*Pro.* Lead, and I will follow.

*Soc.* Well, then, my view is—

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* We agree—do we not?—that there is such a thing as false, and also such a thing as true opinion?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And pleasure and pain, as I was just now saying, are often consequent upon these—upon true and false opinion, I mean.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And do not opinion and the endeavour to form an opinion always spring from memory and perception? *Opinions spring from memory and perception,*

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Might we imagine the process to be something of this nature?

*Pro.* Of what nature?

*Soc.* An object may be often seen at a distance not very clearly, and the seer may want to determine what it is which he sees.

*Pro.* Very likely.

*Soc.* Soon he begins to interrogate himself.

*Pro.* In what manner?

*Soc.* He asks himself—‘What is that which appears to be standing by the rock under the tree?’ This is the question which he may be supposed to put to himself when he sees such an appearance.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* To which he may guess the right answer, saying as if in a whisper to himself—‘It is a man.’

*Pro.* Very good.

*Soc.* Or again, he may be misled, and then he will say—‘No, it is a figure made by the shepherds.’

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And if he has a companion, he repeats his thought to him in articulate sounds, and what was before an opinion, has now become a proposition.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Philebus.* *Soc.* But if he be walking alone when these thoughts occur to him, he may not unfrequently keep them in his mind for a considerable time.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* Well, now, I wonder whether you would agree in my explanation of this phenomenon.

*Pro.* What is your explanation?

*Soc.* I think that the soul at such times is like a book.

*Pro.* How so?

*Soc.* Memory and perception meet, and they and their attendant feelings seem to me almost to write down words in the soul, and when the inscribing feeling writes truly, then true opinion and true propositions which are the expressions of opinion, come into our souls—but when the scribe within us writes falsely, the result is false.

*Pro.* I quite assent and agree to your statement.

*Soc.* I must bespeak your favour also for another artist, who is busy at the same time in the chambers of the soul.

*Pro.* Who is he?

*Soc.* The painter, who, after the scribe has done his work, draws images in the soul of the things which he has described.

*Pro.* But when and how does he do this?

*Soc.* When a man, besides receiving from sight or some other sense certain opinions or statements, sees in his mind the images of the subjects of them;—is not this a very common mental phenomenon?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And the images answering to true opinions and words are true, and to false opinions and words false; are they not?

*Pro.* They are.

*Soc.* If we are right so far, there arises a further question.

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* Whether we experience the feeling of which I am speaking only in relation to the present and the past, or in relation to the future also?

*Pro.* I should say in relation to all times alike.

*Soc.* Have not purely mental pleasures and pains been described already as in some cases anticipations of the bodily

which  
write down  
in the soul  
propo-  
sitions  
relating to  
objects  
perceived.  
Imagin-  
ation at the  
same time  
draws  
pictures of  
them.  
These  
propo-  
sitions and  
pictures  
may be  
true or  
false.

Do the  
propo-  
sitions and  
pictures  
refer to the  
future, as  
well as to  
the past and  
present?

ones ; from which we may infer that anticipatory pleasures and pains have to do with the future ? *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Most true.

*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*

*Soc.* And do all those writings and paintings which, as we were saying a little while ago, are produced in us, relate to the past and present only, and not to the future ?

*Pro.* To the future, very much.

Certainly  
they do ;  
and then  
they are  
hopes.

*Soc.* When you say 'Very much,' you mean to imply that all these representations are hopes about the future, and that mankind are filled with hopes in every stage of existence ?

*Pro.* Exactly.

*Soc.* Answer me another question.

*Pro.* What question ?

*Soc.* A just and pious and good man is the friend of the gods ; is he not ?

*Pro.* Certainly he is.

*Soc.* And the unjust and utterly bad man is the reverse ?

40 *Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And all men, as we were saying just now, are always filled with hopes ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And these hopes, as they are termed, are propositions which exist in the minds of each of us ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And the fancies of hope are also pictured in us ; a man may often have a vision of a heap of gold, and pleasures ensuing, and in the picture there may be a likeness of himself mightily rejoicing over his good fortune.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And may we not say that the good, being friends of the gods, have generally true pictures presented to them, and the bad false pictures ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* The bad, too, have pleasures painted in their fancy as well as the good ; but I presume that they are false pleasures.

*Pro.* They are.

*Soc.* The bad then commonly delight in false pleasures, and the good in true pleasures ?

*Pro.* Doubtless.

And the  
good have  
true hopes  
presented  
to their  
minds by  
the gods,  
the bad  
have false  
pleasures  
painted in  
their  
fancies.

*Philebus.*  
 SOCRATES,  
 PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* Then upon this view there are false pleasures in the souls of men which are a ludicrous imitation of the true, and there are pains of a similar character?

*Pro.* There are.

*Soc.* And did we not allow that a man who had an opinion at all had a real opinion, but often about things which had no existence either in the past, present, or future?

*Pro.* Quite true.

*Soc.* And this was the source of false opinion and opining; am I not right?

*Pro.* Yes.

But these  
 false  
 pleasures  
 have a real  
 existence.

*Soc.* And must we not attribute to pleasure and pain a similar real but illusory character?

*Pro.* How do you mean?

*Soc.* I mean to say that a man must be admitted to have real pleasure who is pleased with anything or anyhow; and he may be pleased about things which neither have nor have ever had any real existence, and, more often than not, are never likely to exist.

*Pro.* Yes, Socrates, that again is undeniable.

*Soc.* And may not the same be said about fear and anger and the like; are they not often false?

*Pro.* Quite so.

Opinions  
 are only  
 bad if they  
 are false :  
 Is this the  
 case with  
 pleasures?  
 —Pro-  
 tarchus  
 reclaims  
 against the  
 notion.

*Soc.* And can opinions be good or bad except in as far as they are true or false?

*Pro.* In no other way.

*Soc.* Nor can pleasures be conceived to be bad except in as far as they are false.

*Pro.* Nay, Socrates, that is the very opposite of the truth; for no one would call pleasures and pains bad because they are false, but by reason of some other great corruption to which they are liable.

*Soc.* Well, of pleasures which are corrupt and caused by corruption we will hereafter speak, if we care to continue the enquiry; for the present I would rather show by another argument that there are many false pleasures existing or coming into existence in us, because this may assist our final decision.

*Pro.* Very true; that is to say, if there are such pleasures.

*Soc.* I think that there are, Protarchus; but this is an

opinion which should be well assured, and not rest upon a mere assertion. *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Very good.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* Then now, like wrestlers, let us approach and grasp this new argument.

*Pro.* Proceed.

*Soc.* We were maintaining a little while since, that when desires, as they are termed, exist in us, then the body has separate feelings apart from the soul—do you remember? *Recapitulation.*

*Pro.* Yes, I remember that you said so.

*Soc.* And the soul was supposed to desire the opposite of the bodily state, while the body was the source of any pleasure or pain which was experienced.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Then now you may infer what happens in such cases.

*Pro.* What am I to infer?

*Soc.* That in such cases pleasures and pains come simultaneously; and there is a juxtaposition of the opposite sensations which correspond to them, as has been already shown.

*Pro.* Clearly.

*Soc.* And there is another point to which we have agreed.

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* That pleasure and pain both admit of more and less, and that they are of the class of infinites.

*Pro.* Certainly, we said so.

*Soc.* But how can we rightly judge of them?

*Pro.* How can we?

*Soc.* Is it our intention to judge of their comparative importance and intensity, measuring pleasure against pain, and pain against pain, and pleasure against pleasure?

*Pro.* Yes, such is our intention, and we shall judge of them accordingly.

42 *Soc.* Well, take the case of sight. Does not the nearness or distance of magnitudes obscure their true proportions, and make us opine falsely; and do we not find the same illusion happening in the case of pleasures and pains?

*Pro.* Yes, Socrates, and in a degree far greater.

*Soc.* Then what we are now saying is the opposite of what we were saying before.



*Philebus.**Pro.* What was that?SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*Soc.* Then the opinions were true and false, and infected the pleasures and pains with their own falsity.*Pro.* Very true.Pleasures  
and pains  
are often  
false, be-  
cause they  
are seen at  
various  
distances  
and in  
various  
relations.*Soc.* But now it is the pleasures which are said to be true and false because they are seen at various distances, and subjected to comparison; the pleasures appear to be greater and more vehement when placed side by side with the pains, and the pains when placed side by side with the pleasures.*Pro.* Certainly, and for the reason which you mention.*Soc.* And suppose you part off from pleasures and pains the element which makes them appear to be greater or less than they really are: you will acknowledge that this element is illusory, and you will never say that the corresponding excess or defect of pleasure or pain is real or true.*Pro.* Certainly not.These are  
not the  
only in-  
stances of  
false  
pleasures  
and pains.  
Pleasure  
and pain  
may arise  
from  
certain  
changes in  
the bodily  
constitu-  
tion.*Soc.* Next let us see whether in another direction we may not find pleasures and pains existing and appearing in living beings, which are still more false than these.*Pro.* What are they, and how shall we find them?*Soc.* If I am not mistaken, I have often repeated that pains and aches and suffering and uneasiness of all sorts arise out of a corruption of nature caused by concretions, and dissolutions, and repletions, and evacuations, and also by growth and decay?*Pro.* Yes, that has been often said.*Soc.* And we have also agreed that the restoration of the natural state is pleasure?*Pro.* Right.*Soc.* But now let us suppose an interval of time at which the body experiences none of these changes.*Pro.* When can that be, Socrates?*Soc.* Your question, Protarchus, does not help the argument.*Pro.* Why not, Socrates?*Soc.* Because it does not prevent me from repeating mine.*Pro.* And what was that?*Soc.* Why, Protarchus, admitting that there is no such interval, I may ask what would be the necessary consequence if there were?

*Pro.* You mean, what would happen if the body were not changed either for good or bad ? *Philebus.*

*Soc.* Yes.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Why then, Socrates, I should suppose that there would be neither pleasure nor pain.

43 *Soc.* Very good ; but still, if I am not mistaken, you do assert that we must always be experiencing one of them ; that is what the wise tell us ; for, say they, all things are ever flowing up and down.

Such changes are always going on, though they are not always perceptible; only the greatest are accompanied by pleasure and pain.

*Pro.* Yes, and their words are of no mean authority.

*Soc.* Of course, for they are no mean authorities themselves ; and I should like to avoid the brunt of their argument. Shall I tell you how I mean to escape from them ? And you shall be the partner of my flight.

*Pro.* How ?

*Soc.* To them we will say : ' Good ; but are we, or living things in general, always conscious of what happens to us—for example, of our growth, or the like ? Are we not, on the contrary, almost wholly unconscious of this and similar phenomena ? ' You must answer for them.

*Pro.* The latter alternative is the true one.

*Soc.* Then we were not right in saying, just now, that motions going up and down cause pleasures and pains ?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* A better and more unexceptionable way of speaking will be—

*Pro.* What ?

*Soc.* If we say that the great changes produce pleasures and pains, but that the moderate and lesser ones do neither.

*Pro.* That, Socrates, is the more correct mode of speaking.

*Soc.* But if this be true, the life to which I was just now referring again appears.

Thus the neutral life reappears.

*Pro.* What life ?

*Soc.* The life which we affirmed to be devoid either of pain or of joy.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* We may assume then that there are three lives, one pleasant, one painful, and the third which is neither ; what say you ?

*Pro.* I should say as you do that there are three of them

*Philebus.* *Soc.* But if so, the negation of pain will not be the same with pleasure.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Certainly not.

This  
neutral life,  
though  
painless,  
is not  
pleasant.

*Soc.* Then when you hear a person saying, that always to live without pain is the pleasantest of all things, what would you understand him to mean by that statement?

*Pro.* I think that by pleasure he must mean the negative of pain.

*Soc.* Let us take any three things; or suppose that we embellish a little and call the first gold, the second silver, and there shall be a third which is neither.

*Pro.* Very good.

*Soc.* Now, can that which is neither be either gold or silver?

*Pro.* Impossible.

*Soc.* No more can that neutral or middle life be rightly or reasonably spoken or thought of as pleasant or painful.

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And yet, my friend, there are, as we know, persons 44 who say and think so.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And do they think that they have pleasure when they are free from pain?

*Pro.* They say so.

*Soc.* And they must think or they would not say that they have pleasure.

*Pro.* I suppose not.

*Soc.* And yet if pleasure and the negation of pain are of distinct natures, they are wrong.

*Pro.* But they are undoubtedly of distinct natures.

*Soc.* Then shall we take the view that they are three, as we were just now saying, or that they are two only—the one being a state of pain, which is an evil, and the other a cessation of pain, which is of itself a good, and is called pleasant?

*Pro.* But why, Socrates, do we ask the question at all? I do not see the reason.

*Soc.* You, Protarchus, have clearly never heard of certain enemies of our friend Philebus.

*Pro.* And who may they be?

Yet some  
people  
think that  
it is.

*Soc.* Certain persons who are reputed to be masters in natural philosophy, who deny the very existence of pleasure.

*Philebus.*

*Pro.* Indeed!

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* They say that what the school of Philebus calls pleasures are all of them only avoidances of pain.

They are certain physical philosophers who affirm pleasure to be only the absence of pain.

*Pro.* And would you, Socrates, have us agree with them?

*Soc.* Why, no, I would rather use them as a sort of diviners, who divine the truth, not by rules of art, but by an instinctive repugnance and extreme detestation which a noble nature has of the power of pleasure, in which they think that there is nothing sound, and her seductive influence is declared by them to be witchcraft, and not pleasure. This is the use which you may make of them. And when you have considered the various grounds of their dislike, you shall hear from me what I deem to be true pleasures. Having thus examined the nature of pleasure from both points of view, we will bring her up for judgment.

The grounds of their dislike to pleasure may throw light on our present enquiry.

*Pro.* Well said.

*Soc.* Then let us enter into an alliance with these philosophers and follow in the track of their dislike. I imagine that they would say something of this sort; they would begin at the beginning, and ask whether, if we wanted to know the nature of any quality, such as hardness, we should be more likely to discover it by looking at the hardest things, rather than at the least hard? You, Protarchus, shall answer these severe gentlemen as you answer me.

The nature of things is best seen in their greatest instances.

*Pro.* By all means, and I reply to them, that you should look at the greatest instances.

*Soc.* Then if we want to see the true nature of pleasures  
45 as a class, we should not look at the most diluted pleasures, but at the most extreme and most vehement?

*Pro.* In that every one will agree.

*Soc.* And the obvious instances of the greatest pleasures, as we have often said, are the pleasures of the body?

The greatest pleasures are of the body, not in a healthy,

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And are they felt by us to be or become greater, when we are sick or when we are in health? And here we must be careful in our answer, or we shall come to grief.

*Pro.* How will that be?

*Philebus.* *Soc.* Why, because we might be tempted to answer, 'When we are in health.'

*SOCRALES,*  
*PROTARCHUS.* *Pro.* Yes, that is the natural answer.

*Soc.* Well, but are not those pleasures the greatest of which mankind have the greatest desires?

*Pro.* True.

but in a  
morbid  
state.

*Soc.* And do not people who are in a fever, or any similar illness, feel cold or thirst or other bodily affections more intensely? Am I not right in saying that they have a deeper want and greater pleasure in the satisfaction of their want?

*Pro.* That is obvious as soon as it is said.

*Soc.* Well, then, shall we not be right in saying, that if a person would wish to see the greatest pleasures he ought to go and look, not at health, but at disease? And here you must distinguish:—do not imagine that I mean to ask whether those who are very ill have more pleasures than those who are well, but understand that I am speaking of the magnitude of pleasure; I want to know where pleasures are found to be most intense. For, as I say, we have to discover what is pleasure, and what they mean by pleasure who deny her very existence.

*Pro.* I think I follow you.

The  
pleasures  
of wanton-  
ness are  
more  
intense  
than those  
of temper-  
ance.

*Soc.* You will soon have a better opportunity of showing whether you do or not, Protarchus. Answer now, and tell me whether you see, I will not say more, but more intense and excessive pleasures in wantonness than in temperance? Reflect before you speak.

*Pro.* I understand you, and see that there is a great difference between them; the temperate are restrained by the wise man's aphorism of 'Never too much,' which is their rule, but excess of pleasure possessing the minds of fools and wantons becomes madness and makes them shout with delight.

*Soc.* Very good, and if this be true, then the greatest pleasures and pains will clearly be found in some vicious state of soul and body, and not in a virtuous state.

*Pro.* Certainly.

46

*Soc.* And ought we not to select some of these for examination, and see what makes them the greatest?

*Pro.* To be sure we ought.

*Soc.* Take the case of the pleasures which arise out of certain disorders. *Philebus.*

*Pro.* What disorders?

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* The pleasures of unseemly disorders, which our severe friends utterly detest.

*Pro.* What pleasures?

*Soc.* Such, for example, as the relief of itching and other ailments by scratching, which is the only remedy required. For what in Heaven's name is the feeling to be called which is thus produced in us?—Pleasure or pain?

Morbid pleasures are such as those of scratching, which are of a mixed character.

*Pro.* A villainous mixture of some kind, Socrates, I should say.

*Soc.* I did not introduce the argument, O Protarchus, with any personal reference to Philebus, but because, without the consideration of these and similar pleasures, we shall not be able to determine the point at issue.

*Pro.* Then we had better proceed to analyze this family of pleasures.

*Soc.* You mean the pleasures which are mingled with pain?

*Pro.* Exactly.

*Soc.* There are some mixtures which are of the body, and only in the body, and others which are of the soul, and only in the soul; while there are other mixtures of pleasures with pains, common both to soul and body, which in their composite state are called sometimes pleasures and sometimes pains.

Mixed pleasures may be of the body, of the soul, or common to both.

*Pro.* How is that?

*Soc.* Whenever, in the restoration or in the derangement of nature, a man experiences two opposite feelings; for example, when he is cold and is growing warm, or again, when he is hot and is becoming cool, and he wants to have the one and be rid of the other;—the sweet has a bitter, as the common saying is, and both together fasten upon him and create irritation and in time drive him to distraction.

*Pro.* That description is very true to nature.

*Soc.* And in these sorts of mixtures the pleasures and pains are sometimes equal, and sometimes one or other of them predominates?

Either element may predominate in the mixture.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Of cases in which the pain exceeds the pleasure, an example is afforded by itching, of which we were just now

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.Instances  
of mixed  
pleasures :  
(1) of the  
body only  
—the relief  
of itching  
by scratch-  
ing ;

speaking, and by the tingling which we feel when the boiling and fiery element is within, and the rubbing and motion<sup>1</sup> only relieves the surface, and does not reach the parts affected ; then if you put them to the fire, and as a last resort apply cold to them, you may often produce the most intense pleasure or pain in the inner parts, which contrasts and mingles with the pain or pleasure, as the case may be, of the outer parts ; and this is due to the forcible separation of 47 what is united, or to the union of what is separated, and to the juxtaposition of pleasure and pain.

*Pro.* Quite so.

*Soc.* Sometimes the element of pleasure prevails in a man, and the slight undercurrent of pain makes him tingle, and causes a gentle irritation ; or again, the excessive infusion of pleasure creates an excitement in him,—he even leaps for joy, he assumes all sorts of attitudes, he changes all manner of colours, he gasps for breath, and is quite amazed, and utters the most irrational exclamations.

*Pro.* Yes, indeed.

*Soc.* He will say of himself, and others will say of him, that he is dying with these delights ; and the more dissipated and good-for-nothing he is, the more vehemently he pursues them in every way ; of all pleasures he declares them to be the greatest ; and he reckons him who lives in the most constant enjoyment of them to be the happiest of mankind.

*Pro.* That, Socrates, is a very true description of the opinions of the majority about pleasures.

(2) common  
to body  
and mind—  
vacuity  
accom-  
panied by  
hope ;

*Soc.* Yes, Protarchus, quite true of the mixed pleasures, which arise out of the communion of external and internal sensations in the body ; there are also cases in which the mind contributes an opposite element to the body<sup>2</sup>, whether of pleasure or pain, and the two unite and form one mixture. Concerning these I have already remarked, that when a man is empty he desires to be full, and has pleasure in hope and pain in vacuity. But now I must further add what I omitted before, that in all these and similar emotions in which body and mind are opposed (and they are innumerable), pleasure and pain coalesce in one.

<sup>1</sup> Reading with the MSS. *κινήσει*.<sup>2</sup> Reading *περί δὲ τῶν ἐν αἷς ψυχῇ σώματι τὰναντία ξυμβάλλεται*.

*Pro.* I believe that to be quite true.

*Philebus.*

*Soc.* There still remains one other sort of admixture of pleasures and pains.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* What is that?

(3) of the  
mind  
only—

*Soc.* The union which, as we were saying, the mind often experiences of purely mental feelings.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* Why, do we not speak of anger, fear, desire, sorrow, love, emulation, envy, and the like, as pains which belong to the soul only?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And shall we not find them also full of the most wonderful pleasures? need I remind you of the anger

*a.* anger;

‘Which stirs even a wise man to violence,  
And is sweeter than honey and the honeycomb?’

48 And you remember how pleasures mingle with pains in lamentation and bereavement?

*b.* sorrow;

*Pro.* Yes, there is a natural connexion between them.

*Soc.* And you remember also how at the sight of tragedies the spectators smile through their tears?

*c.* the  
mixed  
feelings  
with which  
spectators  
regard  
tragedy  
and  
comedy;

*Pro.* Certainly I do.

*Soc.* And are you aware that even at a comedy the soul experiences a mixed feeling of pain and pleasure?

*Pro.* I do not quite understand you.

*Soc.* I admit, Protarchus, that there is some difficulty in recognizing this mixture of feelings at a comedy.

*Pro.* There is, I think.

*Soc.* And the greater the obscurity of the case the more desirable is the examination of it, because the difficulty in detecting other cases of mixed pleasures and pains will be less.

*Pro.* Proceed.

*Soc.* I have just mentioned envy; would you not call that a pain of the soul?

*d.* envy.

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And yet the envious man finds something in the misfortunes of his neighbours at which he is pleased?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And ignorance, and what is termed clownishness, are surely an evil?



*Philebus.**Pro.* To be sure.SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS*Soc.* From these considerations learn to know the nature of the ridiculous.From envy  
we proceed  
to the con-  
sideration  
of the  
ridiculous.*Pro.* Explain.The sense  
of the  
ridiculous  
is excited  
by self-  
deception,*Soc.* The ridiculous is in short the specific name which is used to describe the vicious form of a certain habit; and of vice in general it is that kind which is most at variance with the inscription at Delphi.*Pro.* You mean, Socrates, 'Know thyself.'*Soc.* I do; and the opposite would be, 'Know not thyself.'*Pro.* Certainly.*Soc.* And now, O Protarchus, try to divide, this into three.*Pro.* Indeed I am afraid that I cannot.*Soc.* Do you mean to say that I must make the division for you?*Pro.* Yes, and what is more, I beg that you will.*Soc.* Are there not three ways in which ignorance of self may be shown?*Pro.* What are they?which may  
be shown  
(1) about  
money,  
(2) about  
beauty,*Soc.* In the first place, about money; the ignorant may fancy himself richer than he is.*Pro.* Yes, that is a very common error.*Soc.* And still more often he will fancy that he is taller or fairer than he is, or that he has some other advantage of person which he really has not.*Pro.* Of course.and (3)  
about  
wisdom  
and virtue.*Soc.* And yet surely by far the greatest number err about the goods of the mind; they imagine themselves to be much better men than they are.*Pro.* Yes, that is by far the commonest delusion.*Soc.* And of all the virtues, is not wisdom the one which the mass of mankind are always claiming, and which most arouses in them a spirit of contention and lying conceit of wisdom?*Pro.* Certainly.*Soc.* And may not all this be truly called an evil condition?*Pro.* Very evil.

*Soc.* But we must pursue the division a step further, Pro-  
tarchus, if we would see in envy of the childish sort a  
singular mixture of pleasure and pain.

*Pro.* How can we make the further division which you  
suggest?

*Soc.* All who are silly enough to entertain this lying  
conceit of themselves may of course be divided, like the rest  
of mankind, into two classes—one having power and might;  
and the other the reverse.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Let this, then, be the principle of division; those of  
them who are weak and unable to revenge themselves, when  
they are laughed at, may be truly called ridiculous, but those  
who can defend themselves may be more truly described as  
strong and formidable; for ignorance in the powerful is  
hateful and horrible, because hurtful to others both in reality  
and in fiction, but powerless ignorance may be reckoned, and  
in truth is, ridiculous.

*Pro.* That is very true, but I do not as yet see where is the  
admixture of pleasures and pains.

*Soc.* Well, then, let us examine the nature of envy.

*Pro.* Proceed.

*Soc.* Is not envy an unrighteous pleasure, and also an  
unrighteous pain?

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* There is nothing envious or wrong in rejoicing at the  
misfortunes of enemies?

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* But to feel joy instead of sorrow at the sight of our  
friends' misfortunes—is not that wrong?

*Pro.* Undoubtedly.

*Soc.* Did we not say that ignorance was always an evil?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And the three kinds of vain conceit in our friends  
which we enumerated—the vain conceit of beauty, of wisdom,  
and of wealth, are ridiculous if they are weak, and detestable  
when they are powerful: May we not say, as I was saying  
before, that our friends who are in this state of mind, when  
harmless to others, are simply ridiculous?

*Pro.* They are ridiculous.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Those who  
deceive  
themselves  
may be  
powerful  
or power-  
less: in  
the latter  
case they  
are ridicu-  
lous.

But how is  
there a  
combin-  
ation of  
pleasure  
and pain  
in the  
ridiculous?

We laugh  
at a friend's  
misfortunes  
through  
envy.  
Laughter is  
pleasant,  
envy is  
painful.

*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* And do we not acknowledge this ignorance of theirs to be a misfortune?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And do we feel pain or pleasure in laughing at it?

*Pro.* Clearly we feel pleasure.

*Soc.* And was not envy the source of this pleasure which 50 we feel at the misfortunes of friends?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then the argument shows that when we laugh at the folly of our friends, pleasure, in mingling with envy, mingles with pain, for envy has been acknowledged by us to be mental pain, and laughter is pleasant; and so we envy and laugh at the same instant.

*Pro.* True.

Combina-  
tions of  
pleasure  
and pain  
take place,  
not only  
on the  
stage, but  
in human  
life, and  
arise out  
of many  
other  
causes  
besides  
sorrow,  
envy, and  
anger.

*Soc.* And the argument implies that there are combinations of pleasure and pain in lamentations, and in tragedy and comedy, not only on the stage, but on the greater stage of human life; and so in endless other cases.

*Pro.* I do not see how any one can deny what you say, Socrates, however eager he may be to assert the opposite opinion.

*Soc.* I mentioned anger, desire, sorrow, fear, love, emulation, envy, and similar emotions, as examples in which we should find a mixture of the two elements so often named; did I not?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* We may observe that our conclusions hitherto have had reference only to sorrow and envy and anger.

*Pro.* I see.

*Soc.* Then many other cases still remain?

*Pro.* Certainly.

But these  
instances  
will  
suffice.

*Soc.* And why do you suppose me to have pointed out to you the admixture which takes place in comedy? Why but to convince you that there was no difficulty in showing the mixed nature of fear and love and similar affections; and I thought that when I had given you the illustration, you would have let me off, and have acknowledged as a general truth that the body without the soul, and the soul without the body, as well as the two united, are susceptible of all sorts of admixtures of pleasures and pains; and so further

discussion would have been unnecessary. And now I want to know whether I may depart; or will you keep me here until midnight? I fancy that I may obtain my release without many words;—if I promise that to-morrow I will give you an account of all these cases. But at present I would rather sail in another direction, and go to other matters which remain to be settled, before the judgment can be given which Philebus demands.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Very good, Socrates; in what remains take your own course.

*Soc.* Then after the mixed pleasures the unmixed should have their turn; this is the natural and necessary order.

After the mixed pleasures we must consider the unmixed or true.

51 *Pro.* Excellent.

*Soc.* These, in turn, then, I will now endeavour to indicate; for with the maintainers of the opinion that all pleasures are a cessation of pain, I do not agree, but, as I was saying, I use them as witnesses, that there are pleasures which seem only and are not, and there are others again which have great power and appear in many forms, yet are intermingled with pains, and are partly alleviations of agony and distress, both of body and mind.

*Pro.* Then what pleasures, Socrates, should we be right in conceiving to be true?

*Soc.* True pleasures are those which are given by beauty of colour and form, and most of those which arise from smells; those of sound, again, and in general those of which the want is painless and unconscious, and of which the fruition is palpable to sense and pleasant and unalloyed with pain.

True pleasures are given (1) by beauty of form,

*Pro.* Once more, Socrates, I must ask what you mean.

*Soc.* My meaning is certainly not obvious, and I will endeavour to be plainer. I do not mean by beauty of form such beauty as that of animals or pictures, which the many would suppose to be my meaning; but, says the argument, understand me to mean straight lines and circles, and the plane or solid figures which are formed out of them by turning-lathes and rulers and measurers of angles; for these I affirm to be not only relatively beautiful, like other things, but they are eternally and absolutely beautiful, and they have peculiar pleasures, quite unlike the pleasures of scratching.

*Philebus.* And there are colours which are of the same character, and have similar pleasures; now do you understand my meaning?

(2) colour, *Pro.* I am trying to understand, Socrates, and I hope that you will try to make your meaning clearer.

(3) sound; *Soc.* When sounds are smooth and clear, and have a single pure tone, then I mean to say that they are not relatively but absolutely beautiful, and have natural pleasures associated with them.

*Pro.* Yes, there are such pleasures.

(4) by sweet smells, *Soc.* The pleasures of smell are of a less ethereal sort, but they have no necessary admixture of pain; and all pleasures, however and wherever experienced, which are unattended by pains, I assign to an analogous class. Here then are two kinds of pleasures.

*Pro.* I understand.

and (5) by knowledge. *Soc.* To these may be added the pleasures of knowledge, if 52 no hunger of knowledge and no pain caused by such hunger precede them.

*Pro.* And this is the case.

*Soc.* Well, but if a man who is full of knowledge loses his knowledge, are there not pains of forgetting?

*Pro.* Not necessarily, but there may be times of reflection, when he feels grief at the loss of his knowledge.

*Soc.* Yes, my friend, but at present we are enumerating only the natural perceptions, and have nothing to do with reflection.

*Pro.* In that case you are right in saying that the loss of knowledge is not attended with pain.

*Soc.* These pleasures of knowledge, then, are unmixed with pain; and they are not the pleasures of the many but of a very few.

*Pro.* Quite true.

Excessive pleasures are infinite; moderate pleasures have measure or limit. *Soc.* And now, having fairly separated the pure pleasures and those which may be rightly termed impure, let us further add to our description of them, that the pleasures which are in excess have no measure, but that those which are not in excess have measure; the great, the excessive, whether more or less frequent, we shall be right in referring to the class of the infinite, and of the more and less, which pours through

body and soul alike; and the others we shall refer to the class which has measure. *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Quite right, Socrates.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Soc.* Still there is something more to be considered about pleasures.

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* When you speak of purity and clearness, or of excess, abundance, greatness and sufficiency, in what relation do these terms stand to truth?

*Pro.* Why do you ask, Socrates?

*Soc.* Because, Protarchus, I should wish to test pleasure and knowledge in every possible way, in order that if there be a pure and impure element in either of them, I may present the pure element for judgment, and then they will be more easily judged of by you and by me and by all of us.

We must select the pure and not the impure kinds of pleasure and knowledge for comparison.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* Let us investigate all the pure kinds; first selecting for consideration a single instance.

*Pro.* What instance shall we select?

53 *Soc.* Suppose that we first of all take whiteness.

*Pro.* Very good.

*Soc.* How can there be purity in whiteness, and what purity? Is that purest which is greatest or most in quantity, or that which is most unadulterated and freest from any admixture of other colours?

Purity is given, not by quantity, but by quality.

*Pro.* Clearly that which is most unadulterated.

*Soc.* True, Protarchus; and so the purest white, and not the greatest or largest in quantity, is to be deemed truest and most beautiful?

*Pro.* Right.

*Soc.* And we shall be quite right in saying that a little pure white is whiter and fairer and truer than a great deal that is mixed.

*Pro.* Perfectly right.

*Soc.* There is no need of adducing many similar examples in illustration of the argument about pleasure; one such is sufficient to prove to us that a small pleasure or a small amount of pleasure, if pure or unalloyed with pain, is always pleasanter and truer and fairer than a great pleasure or a great amount of pleasure of another kind.

*Philebus.* *Pro.* Assuredly ; and the instance you have given is quite sufficient.

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Wise men  
say that  
pleasure is  
a genera-  
tion.  
What does  
this mean ?

*Soc.* But what do you say of another question :—have we not heard that pleasure is always a generation, and has no true being ? Do not certain ingenious philosophers teach this doctrine, and ought not we to be grateful to them ?

*Pro.* What do they mean ?

*Soc.* I will explain to you, my dear Protarchus, what they mean, by putting a question.

*Pro.* Ask, and I will answer.

There are  
two na-  
tures, the  
absolute  
and the  
relative :  
the latter is  
for the  
sake of the  
former.

*Soc.* I assume that there are two natures, one self-existent, and the other ever in want of something.

*Pro.* What manner of natures are they ?

*Soc.* The one majestic ever, the other inferior.

*Pro.* You speak riddles.

*Soc.* You have seen loves good and fair, and also brave lovers of them.

*Pro.* I should think so.

*Soc.* Search the universe for two terms which are like these two and are present everywhere.

*Pro.* Yet a third time I must say<sup>1</sup>, Be a little plainer, Socrates.

*Soc.* There is no difficulty, Protarchus ; the argument is only in play, and insinuates that some things are for the sake of something else (relatives), and that other things are the ends to which the former class subserve (absolutes).

*Pro.* Your many repetitions make me slow to understand.

*Soc.* As the argument proceeds, my boy, I dare say that 54 the meaning will become clearer.

*Pro.* Very likely.

*Soc.* Here are two new principles.

*Pro.* What are they ?

*Soc.* One is the generation of all things, and the other is essence.

*Pro.* I readily accept from you both generation and essence.

Gener-  
ation is  
relative to

*Soc.* Very right ; and would you say that generation is for the sake of essence, or essence for the sake of generation ?

<sup>1</sup> Reading τὸ πλεον ἔρ' ἐρῶ (conj. Badham).

*Pro.* You want to know whether that which is called essence is, properly speaking, for the sake of generation?

*Soc.* Yes.

*Pro.* By the gods, I wish that you would repeat your question.

*Soc.* I mean, O my Protarchus, to ask whether you would tell me that ship-building is for the sake of ships, or ships for the sake of ship-building? and in all similar cases I should ask the same question.

*Pro.* Why do you not answer yourself, Socrates?

*Soc.* I have no objection, but you must take your part.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* My answer is, that all things instrumental, remedial, material, are given to us with a view to generation, and that each generation is relative to, or for the sake of, some being or essence, and that the whole of generation is relative to the whole of essence.

*Pro.* Assuredly.

*Soc.* Then pleasure, being a generation, must surely be for the sake of some essence?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And that for the sake of which something else is done must be placed in the class of good, and that which is done for the sake of something else, in some other class, my good friend.

*Pro.* Most certainly.

*Soc.* Then pleasure, being a generation, will be rightly placed in some other class than that of good?

*Pro.* Quite right.

*Soc.* Then, as I said at first, we ought to be very grateful to him who first pointed out that pleasure was a generation only, and had no true being at all; for he is clearly one who laughs at the notion of pleasure being a good.

*Pro.* Assuredly.

*Soc.* And he would surely laugh also at those who make generation their highest end.

*Pro.* Of whom are you speaking, and what do they mean?

*Soc.* I am speaking of those who when they are cured of hunger or thirst or any other defect by some process of generation are delighted at the process as if it were pleasure;

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

essence,  
which is an  
absolute.

Absolutes  
are to be  
placed in  
the class of  
good, rela-  
tives in  
some other  
class.  
Thus  
pleasure,  
which is a  
generation  
and rela-  
tive, is not  
a good.  
(Many  
thanks to  
him who  
first pointed  
this out.)

It is absurd  
to make  
pleasure  
consist in



*Philebus.*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.generation  
and de-  
struction ;

and they say that they would not wish to live without these and other feelings of a like kind which might be mentioned.

*Pro.* That is certainly what they appear to think.

55

*Soc.* And is not destruction universally admitted to be the opposite of generation ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Then he who chooses thus, would choose generation and destruction rather than that third sort of life, in which, as we were saying, was neither pleasure nor pain, but only the purest possible thought.

*Pro.* He who would make us believe pleasure to be a good is involved in great absurdities, Socrates.

*Soc.* Great, indeed ; and there is yet another of them.

*Pro.* What is it ?

and absurd  
to say  
(1) that in  
the body  
there is  
nothing  
good ;  
(2) that the  
only good  
of the soul  
is pleasure ;  
(3) that a  
man is  
vicious  
when in  
pain and  
virtuous  
when he is  
pleased.

And now  
for know-  
ledge : Are  
some kinds  
purer than  
others ?

*Soc.* Is there not an absurdity in arguing that there is nothing good or noble in the body, or in anything else, but that good is in the soul only, and that the only good of the soul is pleasure ; and that courage or temperance or understanding, or any other good of the soul, is not really a good ? —and is there not yet a further absurdity in our being compelled to say that he who has a feeling of pain and not of pleasure is bad at the time when he is suffering pain, even though he be the best of men ; and again, that he who has a feeling of pleasure, in so far as he is pleased at the time when he is pleased, in that degree excels in virtue ?

*Pro.* Nothing, Socrates, can be more irrational than all this.

*Soc.* And now, having subjected pleasure to every sort of test, let us not appear to be too sparing of mind and knowledge : let us ring their metal bravely, and see if there be unsoundness in any part, until we have found out what in them is of the purest nature ; and then the truest elements both of pleasure and knowledge may be brought up for judgment.

*Pro.* Right.

Knowledge  
is (1) pro-  
ductive and  
(2) educa-  
tional ;  
of the  
former

*Soc.* Knowledge has two parts,—the one productive, and the other educational ?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And in the productive or handicraft arts, is not one part more akin to knowledge, and the other less ; and may

not the one part be regarded as the pure, and the other as the impure?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Let us separate the superior or dominant elements in each of them.

*Pro.* What are they, and how do you separate them?

*Soc.* I mean to say, that if arithmetic, mensuration, and weighing be taken away from any art, that which remains will not be much.

*Pro.* Not much, certainly.

*Soc.* The rest will be only conjecture, and the better use of the senses which is given by experience and practice, in addition to a certain power of guessing, which is commonly  
56 called art, and is perfected by attention and pains.

*Pro.* Nothing more, assuredly.

*Soc.* Music, for instance, is full of this empiricism; for sounds are harmonized, not by measure, but by skilful conjecture; the music of the flute is always trying to guess the pitch of each vibrating note, and is therefore mixed up with much that is doubtful and has little which is certain.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* And the same will be found to hold good of medicine and husbandry and piloting and generalship.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* The art of the builder, on the other hand, which uses a number of measures and instruments, attains by their help to a greater degree of accuracy than the other arts.

*Pro.* How is that?

*Soc.* In ship-building and house-building, and in other branches of the art of carpentering, the builder has his rule, lathe, compass, line, and a most ingenious machine for straightening wood.

*Pro.* Very true, Socrates.

*Soc.* Then now let us divide the arts of which we were speaking into two kinds,—the arts which, like music, are less exact in their results, and those which, like carpentering, are more exact.

*Pro.* Let us make that division.

*Soc.* Of the latter class, the most exact of all are those which we just now spoke of as primary.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

there is a  
pure and  
impure  
sort.

The pure  
elements  
in the pro-  
ductive  
arts are  
arithmetic,  
mensura-  
tion, and  
weighing ;  
the rest is  
guesswork  
and ex-  
perience.

Music,  
medicine,  
etc. are  
less accu-  
rate than  
the art of  
building.

Arts may  
be divided  
into more  
and less  
exact.

*Philebus.*SOCRATES;  
PROTARCHUS.Of arith-  
metic and  
mensu-  
ration,  
which  
belong to  
the former  
class, there  
are two  
kinds,—  
one pure,  
the other  
impure.*Pro.* I see that you mean arithmetic, and the kindred arts of weighing and measuring.*Soc.* Certainly, Protarchus; but are not these also distinguishable into two kinds?*Pro.* What are the two kinds?*Soc.* In the first place, arithmetic is of two kinds, one of which is popular, and the other philosophical.*Pro.* How would you distinguish them?*Soc.* There is a wide difference between them, Protarchus; some arithmeticians reckon unequal units; as for example, two armies, two oxen, two very large things or two very small things. The party who are opposed to them insist that every unit in ten thousand must be the same as every other unit.*Pro.* Undoubtedly there is, as you say, a great difference among the votaries of the science; and there may be reasonably supposed to be two sorts of arithmetic.*Soc.* And when we compare the art of mensuration which is used in building with philosophical geometry, or the art 57 of computation which is used in trading with exact calculation, shall we say of either of the pairs that it is one or two?*Pro.* On the analogy of what has preceded, I should be of opinion that they were severally two.*Soc.* Right; but do you understand why I have discussed the subject?*Pro.* I think so, but I should like to be told by you.Thus we  
see that as  
of pleasure,  
so of know-  
ledge, there  
are two  
sorts, and  
one is  
purer than  
the other.*Soc.* The argument has all along been seeking a parallel to pleasure, and true to that original design, has gone on to ask whether one sort of knowledge is purer than another, as one pleasure is purer than another.*Pro.* Clearly; that was the intention.*Soc.* And has not the argument in what has preceded, already shown that the arts have different provinces, and vary in their degrees of certainty?*Pro.* Very true.*Soc.* And just now did not the argument first designate a particular art by a common term, thus making us believe in the unity of that art; and then again, as if speaking of two different things, proceed to enquire whether the art as

pursued by philosophers, or as pursued by non-philosophers, has more of certainty and purity ? *Philebus.*

*Pro.* That is the very question which the argument is asking.

*Soc.* And how, Protarchus, shall we answer the enquiry ?

*Pro.* O Socrates, we have reached a point at which the difference of clearness in different kinds of knowledge is enormous.

*Soc.* Then the answer will be the easier.

*Pro.* Certainly ; and let us say in reply, that those arts into which arithmetic and mensuration enter, far surpass all others ; and that of these the arts or sciences which are animated by the pure philosophic impulse are infinitely superior in accuracy and truth.

*Soc.* Then this is your judgment ; and this is the answer which, upon your authority, we will give to all masters of the art of misinterpretation ?

*Pro.* What answer ?

*Soc.* That there are two arts of arithmetic, and two of mensuration ; and also several other arts which in like manner have this double nature, and yet only one name.

*Pro.* Let us boldly return this answer to the masters of whom you speak, Socrates, and hope for good luck,

*Soc.* We have explained what we term the most exact arts or sciences.

*Pro.* Very good.

*Soc.* And yet, Protarchus, dialectic will refuse to acknowledge us, if we do not award to her the first place.

58 *Pro.* And pray, what is dialectic ?

*Soc.* Clearly the science which has to do with all that knowledge of which we are now speaking ; for I am sure that all men who have a grain of intelligence will admit that the knowledge which has to do with being and reality, and sameness and unchangeableness, is by far the truest of all. But how would you decide this question, Protarchus ?

*Pro.* I have often heard Gorgias maintain, Socrates, that the art of persuasion far surpassed every other ; this, as he says, is by far the best of them all, for to it all things submit, not by compulsion, but of their own free will. Now, I should not like to quarrel either with you or with him.

*SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*

The purer sort consists of those arts into which mathematics enter ; and of mathematics themselves there is a purer and an impurer kind.

Where shall we place dialectic, the truest of sciences ?

Protarchus is afraid that he will offend Gorgias, if he assigns

*Philebus.*

*Soc.* You mean to say that you would like to desert, if you were not ashamed?

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* As you please.

the first  
place to  
dialectic,  
and So-  
crates, if to  
rhetoric.

*Soc.* May I not have led you into a misapprehension?

*Pro.* How?

Socrates  
assures him  
that if he  
does not  
deny that  
rhetoric is  
the most  
useful of  
arts and  
sciences,  
Gorgias  
will not  
quarrel  
with him  
for saying  
that dia-  
lectic is the  
truest.

*Soc.* Dear Protarchus, I never asked which was the greatest or best or usefulest of arts or sciences, but which had clearness and accuracy, and the greatest amount of truth, however humble and little useful an art. And as for Gorgias, if you do not deny that his art has the advantage in usefulness to mankind, he will not quarrel with you for saying that the study of which I am speaking is superior in this particular of essential truth; as in the comparison of white colours, a little whiteness, if that little be only pure, was said to be superior in truth to a great mass which is impure. And now let us give our best attention and consider well, not the comparative use or reputation of the sciences, but the power or faculty, if there be such, which the soul has of loving the truth, and of doing all things for the sake of it; let us search into the pure element of mind and intelligence, and then we shall be able to say whether the science of which I have been speaking is most likely to possess the faculty, or whether there be some other which has higher claims.

*Pro.* Well, I have been considering, and I can hardly think that any other science or art has a firmer grasp of the truth than this.

Dialectic  
differs from  
the gener-  
ality of  
arts which  
have to do  
with the  
changeable  
and there-  
fore never  
attain  
certainty.

*Soc.* Do you say so because you observe that the arts in 59 general and those engaged<sup>1</sup> in them make use of opinion, and are resolutely engaged in the investigation of matters of opinion? Even he who supposes himself to be occupied with nature is really occupied with the things of this world, how created, how acting or acted upon. Is not this the sort of enquiry in which his life is spent?

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* He is labouring, not after eternal being, but about things which are becoming, or which will or have become.

*Pro.* Very true.

<sup>1</sup> Reading ἔσοι.

*Soc.* And can we say that any of these things which neither are nor have been nor will be unchangeable, when judged by the strict rule of truth ever become certain ?

*Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Impossible.

*Soc.* How can anything fixed be concerned with that which has no fixedness ?

*Pro.* How indeed ?

*Soc.* Then mind and science when employed about such changing things do not attain the highest truth ?

*Pro.* I should imagine not.

*Soc.* And now let us bid farewell, a long farewell, to you or me or Philebus or Gorgias, and urge on behalf of the argument a single point.

*Pro.* What point ?

*Soc.* Let us say that the stable and pure and true and unalloyed has to do with the things which are eternal and unchangeable and unmixed, or if not, at any rate what is most akin to them has ; and that all other things are to be placed in a second or inferior class.

Being concerned with the eternal and unchangeable, it ranks first.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* And of the names expressing cognition, ought not the fairest to be given to the fairest things ?

*Pro.* That is natural.

*Soc.* And are not mind and wisdom the names which are to be honoured most ?

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And these names may be said to have their truest and most exact application when the mind is engaged in the contemplation of true being ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And these were the names which I adduced of the rivals of pleasure ?

*Pro.* Very true, Socrates.

*Soc.* In the next place, as to the mixture, here are the ingredients, pleasure and wisdom, and we may be compared to artists who have their materials ready to their hands.

*Pro.* Yes.

*Soc.* And now we must begin to mix them ?

*Pro.* By all means.

The fairest names should be given to the fairest things—therefore mind and wisdom are to be assigned to the contemplation of true being.

*Philebus.*

*Soc.* But had we not better have a preliminary word and refresh our memories ?

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Of what ?

Before  
mixing let  
us sum up.

*Soc.* Of that which I have already mentioned. Well says the proverb, that we ought to repeat twice and even thrice 60 that which is good.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* Well then, by Zeus, let us proceed, and I will make what I believe to be a fair summary of the argument.

*Pro.* Let me hear.

By Philebus  
pleasure  
was af-  
firmed to  
be the  
good :  
Socrates  
preferred  
wisdom.

*Soc.* Philebus says that pleasure is the true end of all living beings, at which all ought to aim, and moreover that it is the chief good of all, and that the two names 'good' and 'pleasant' are correctly given to one thing and one nature ; Socrates, on the other hand, begins by denying this, and further says, that in nature as in name they are two, and that wisdom partakes more than pleasure of the good. Is not and was not this what we were saying, Protarchus ?

*Pro.* Certainly.

We agreed  
that the  
good must  
be charac-  
terised  
by self-  
sufficiency ;

*Soc.* And is there not and was there not a further point which was conceded between us ?

*Pro.* What was it ?

*Soc.* That the good differs from all other things.

*Pro.* In what respect ?

*Soc.* In that the being who possesses good always everywhere and in all things has the most perfect sufficiency, and is never in need of anything else.

*Pro.* Exactly.

but we  
found that  
both  
pleasure  
and wisdom  
by them-  
selves are  
devoid of  
this quality.

*Soc.* And did we not endeavour to make an imaginary separation of wisdom and pleasure, assigning to each a distinct life, so that pleasure was wholly excluded from wisdom, and wisdom in like manner had no part whatever in pleasure ?

*Pro.* We did.

*Soc.* And did we think that either of them alone would be sufficient ?

*Pro.* Certainly not.

*Soc.* And if we erred in any point, then let any one who will, take up the enquiry again and set us right ; and assuming memory and wisdom and knowledge and true

opinion to belong to the same class, let him consider whether he would desire to possess or acquire,—I will not say pleasure, however abundant or intense, if he has no real perception that he is pleased, nor any consciousness of what he feels, nor any recollection, however momentary, of the feeling,—but would he desire to have anything at all, if these faculties were wanting to him? And about wisdom I ask the same question; can you conceive that any one would choose to have all wisdom absolutely devoid of pleasure, rather than with a certain degree of pleasure, or all pleasure devoid of wisdom, rather than with a certain degree of wisdom?

*Pro.* Certainly not, Socrates; but why repeat such questions any more?

61 *Soc.* Then the perfect and universally eligible and entirely good cannot possibly be either of them?

*Pro.* Impossible.

*Soc.* Then now we must ascertain the nature of the good more or less accurately, in order, as we were saying, that the second place may be duly assigned?

*Pro.* Right.

*Soc.* Have we not found a road which leads towards the good?

*Pro.* What road?

*Soc.* Supposing that a man had to be found, and you could discover in what house he lived, would not that be a great step towards the discovery of the man himself?

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And now reason intimates to us, as at our first beginning, that we should seek the good, not in the unmixed life but in the mixed.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* There is greater hope of finding that which we are seeking in the life which is well mixed than in that which is not?

*Pro.* Far greater.

*Soc.* Then now let us mingle, Protarchus, at the same time offering up a prayer to Dionysus or Hephaestus, or whoever is the god who presides over the ceremony of mingling.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Neither therefore ranks first. And before the second place can be assigned, we must discover the nature of the good.

Reason tells us that we should look for it in the mixed class.



*Philebus.**Pro.* By all means.SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.Let us  
then  
mingle  
pleasure  
and  
wisdom.

*Soc.* Are not we the cup-bearers? and here are two fountains which are flowing at our side: one, which is pleasure, may be likened to a fountain of honey; the other, wisdom, a sober draught in which no wine mingles, is of water unpleasant but healthful; out of these we must seek to make the fairest of all possible mixtures.

*Pro.* Certainly.Shall we  
mingle all  
kinds of  
them, or  
the pure  
only?

*Soc.* Tell me first;—should we be most likely to succeed if we mingled every sort of pleasure with every sort of wisdom?

*Pro.* Perhaps we might.

*Soc.* But I should be afraid of the risk, and I think that I can show a safer plan.

*Pro.* What is it?

*Soc.* One pleasure was supposed by us to be truer than another, and one art to be more exact than another.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* There was also supposed to be a difference in sciences; some of them regarding only the transient and perishing, and others the permanent and imperishable and everlasting and immutable; and when judged by the standard of truth, the latter, as we thought, were truer than the former.

*Pro.* Very good and right.

*Soc.* If, then, we were to begin by mingling the sections of each class which have the most of truth, will not the union suffice to give us the loveliest of lives, or shall we still want some elements of another kind?

*Pro.* I think that we ought to do what you suggest.

62

*Soc.* Let us suppose a man who understands justice, and has reason as well as understanding about the true nature of this and of all other things.

*Pro.* We will suppose such a man.We cannot  
exclude the  
impure  
kinds of  
knowledge,  
for they  
are re-  
quired by

*Soc.* Will he have enough of knowledge if he is acquainted only with the divine circle and sphere, and knows nothing of our human spheres and circles, but uses only divine circles and measures in the building of a house?

*Pro.* The knowledge which is only superhuman, Socrates, is ridiculous in man.

*Soc.* What do you mean? Do you mean that you are to throw into the cup and mingle the impure and uncertain art which uses the false measure and the false circle?

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

*Pro.* Yes, we must, if any of us is ever to find his way home.

the needs  
of every-  
day life.

*Soc.* And am I to include music, which, as I was saying just now, is full of guesswork and imitation, and is wanting in purity?

*Pro.* Yes, I think that you must, if human life is to be a life at all.

*Soc.* Well, then, suppose that I give way, and, like a doorkeeper who is pushed and overborne by the mob, I open the door wide, and let knowledge of every sort stream in, and the pure mingle with the impure?

*Pro.* I do not know, Socrates, that any great harm would come of having them all, if only you have the first sort.

*Soc.* Well, then, shall I let them all flow into what Homer poetically terms 'a meeting of the waters'?

*Pro.* By all means.

All the  
sciences  
may be  
admitted,  
but the  
pleasures  
require  
more con-  
sideration.

*Soc.* There—I have let them in, and now I must return to the fountain of pleasure. For we were not permitted to begin by mingling in a single stream the true portions of both according to our original intention; but the love of all knowledge constrained us to let all the sciences flow in together before the pleasures.

*Pro.* Quite true.

*Soc.* And now the time has come for us to consider about the pleasures also, whether we shall in like manner let them go all at once, or at first only the true ones.

*Pro.* It will be by far the safer course to let flow the true ones first.

*Soc.* Let them flow, then; and now, if there are any necessary pleasures, as there were arts and sciences necessary, must we not mingle them?

*Pro.* Yes; the necessary pleasures should certainly be allowed to mingle.

First, let  
us have  
the true  
ones;  
secondly,  
we must  
have the  
necessary.

63 *Soc.* The knowledge of the arts has been admitted to be innocent and useful always; and if we say of pleasures in like manner that all of them are good and innocent for all of us at all times, we must let them all mingle?

*Philebus.**Pro.* What shall we say about them, and what course shall we take?SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.*Soc.* Do not ask me, Protarchus; but ask the daughters of pleasure and wisdom to answer for themselves.Let us  
consult the  
pleasures  
and  
wisdom.*Pro.* How?*Soc.* Tell us, O beloved—shall we call you pleasures or by some other name?—would you rather live with or without wisdom? I am of opinion that they would certainly answer as follows:*Pro.* How?The  
pleasures  
say that  
they cannot  
live alone  
or without  
knowledge;*Soc.* They would answer, as we said before, that for any single class to be left by itself pure and isolated is not good, nor altogether possible; and that if we are to make comparisons of one class with another and choose, there is no better companion than knowledge of things in general, and likewise the perfect knowledge, if that may be, of ourselves in every respect<sup>1</sup>.*Pro.* And our answer will be:—In that ye have spoken well.*Soc.* Very true. And now let us go back and interrogate wisdom and mind: Would you like to have any pleasures in the mixture? And they will reply:—‘What pleasures do you mean?’*Pro.* Likely enough.and wis-  
dom, that  
she desires  
only true  
and vir-  
tuous  
pleasures,  
not all of  
them.*Soc.* And we shall take up our parable and say: Do you wish to have the greatest and most vehement pleasures for your companions in addition to the true ones? ‘Why, Socrates,’ they will say, ‘how can we? seeing that they are the source of ten thousand hindrances to us; they trouble the souls of men, which are our habitation, with their madness; they prevent us from coming to the birth, and are commonly the ruin of the children which are born to us, causing them to be forgotten and unheeded; but the true and pure pleasures, of which you spoke, know to be of our family, and also those pleasures which accompany health and temperance, and which every Virtue, like a goddess, has in her train to follow her about wherever she goes,—minge these and not the others; there would be great want<sup>1</sup> Reading αὐτῶν ἑμῶν.

64 of sense in any one who desires to see a fair and perfect mixture, and to find in it what is the highest good in man and in the universe, and to divine what is the true form of good—there would be great want of sense in his allowing the pleasures, which are always in the company of folly and vice, to mingle with mind in the cup.’—Is not this a very rational and suitable reply, which mind has made, both on her own behalf, as well as on the behalf of memory and true opinion?

*Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS

*Pro.* Most certainly.

*Soc.* And still there must be something more added, which is a necessary ingredient in every mixture.

Truth is  
an indis-  
pensable  
element  
in the  
mixture.

*Pro.* What is that?

*Soc.* Unless truth enter into the composition, nothing can truly be created or subsist.

*Pro.* Impossible.

*Soc.* Quite impossible; and now you and Philebus must tell me whether anything is still wanting in the mixture, for to my way of thinking the argument is now completed, and may be compared to an incorporeal law, which is going to hold fair rule over a living body.

*Pro.* I agree with you, Socrates.

*Soc.* And may we not say with reason that we are now at the vestibule of the habitation of the good?

We are  
now at the  
vestibule  
of the  
good.

*Pro.* I think that we are.

*Soc.* What, then, is there in the mixture which is most precious, and which is the principal cause why such a state is universally beloved by all? When we have discovered it, we will proceed to ask whether this omnipresent nature is more akin to pleasure or to mind.

What is  
the most  
precious  
element  
in the  
mixture?

*Pro.* Quite right; in that way we shall be better able to judge.

*Soc.* And there is no difficulty in seeing the cause which renders any mixture either of the highest value or of none at all.

*Pro.* What do you mean?

*Soc.* Every man knows it.

*Pro.* What?

*Soc.* He knows that any want of measure and symmetry in any mixture whatever must always of necessity be fatal,

*Philebus.*  
SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

both to the elements and to the mixture, which is then not a mixture, but only a confused medley which brings confusion on the possessor of it.

Measure,  
which is  
the essence  
of beauty  
and virtue.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* And now the power of the good has retired into the region of the beautiful ; for measure and symmetry are beauty and virtue all the world over.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* Also we said that truth was to form an element in the mixture.

*Pro.* Certainly.

65

Symmetry,  
beauty, and  
truth are  
the cause  
of the  
mixture  
and of the  
good in it.

*Soc.* Then, if we are not able to hunt the good with one idea only, with three we may catch our prey ; Beauty, Symmetry, Truth are the three, and these taken together we may regard as the single cause of the mixture, and the mixture as being good by reason of the infusion of them.

*Pro.* Quite right.

*Soc.* And' now, Protarchus, any man could decide well enough whether pleasure or wisdom is more akin to the highest good, and more honourable among gods and men.

*Pro.* Clearly, and yet perhaps the argument had better be pursued to the end.

Of each of  
these three  
elements  
wisdom has  
a larger  
share than  
pleasure.

*Soc.* We must take each of them separately in their relation to pleasure and mind, and pronounce upon them ; for we ought to see to which of the two they are severally most akin.

*Pro.* You are speaking of beauty, truth, and measure ?

*Soc.* Yes, Protarchus, take truth first, and, after passing in review mind, truth, pleasure, pause awhile and make answer to yourself,—as to whether pleasure or mind is more akin to truth.

*Pro.* There is no need to pause, for the difference between them is palpable ; pleasure is the veriest impostor in the world ; and it is said that in the pleasures of love, which appear to be the greatest, perjury is excused by the gods ; for pleasures, like children, have not the least particle of reason in them ; whereas mind is either the same as truth, or the most like truth, and the truest.

*Soc.* Shall we next consider measure, in like manner, and

ask whether pleasure has more of this than wisdom, or wisdom than pleasure? *Philebus.*

*Pro.* Here is another question which may be easily answered; for I imagine that nothing can ever be more immoderate than the transports of pleasure, or more in conformity with measure than mind and knowledge.

*Soc.* Very good; but there still remains the third test: Has mind a greater share of beauty than pleasure, and is mind or pleasure the fairer of the two?

*Pro.* No one, Socrates, either awake or dreaming, ever saw or imagined mind or wisdom to be in aught unseemly, at any time, past, present, or future.

*Soc.* Right.

*Pro.* But when we see some one indulging in pleasures, 66 perhaps in the greatest of pleasures, the ridiculous or disgraceful nature of the action makes us ashamed; and so we put them out of sight, and consign them to darkness, under the idea that they ought not to meet the eye of day.

*Soc.* Then, Protarchus, you will proclaim everywhere, by word of mouth to this company, and by messengers bearing the tidings far and wide, that pleasure is not the first of possessions, nor yet the second, but that in measure, and the mean, and the suitable, and the like, the eternal nature has been found. The order of goods :—  
(1) measure, the eternal nature ;

*Pro.* Yes, that seems to be the result of what has been now said.

*Soc.* In the second class is contained the symmetrical and beautiful and perfect or sufficient, and all which are of that family. (2) the symmetrical and perfect ;

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* And if you reckon in the third class mind and wisdom, you will not be far wrong, if I divine aright. (3) mind and wisdom ;

*Pro.* I dare say.

*Soc.* And would you not put in the fourth class the goods which we were affirming to appertain specially to the soul—sciences and arts and true opinions as we called them? These come after the third class, and form the fourth, as they are certainly more akin to good than pleasure is. (4) sciences, arts, and true opinions ;

*Pro.* Surely.

*Soc.* The fifth class are the pleasures which were defined (5) pure pleasures.

*Philebus.* by us as painless, being the pure pleasures of the soul herself,  
*SOCRATES,* as we termed them, which accompany, some the sciences,  
*PROTARCHUS.* and some the senses<sup>1</sup>.

*Pro.* Perhaps.

*Soc.* And now, as Orpheus says,

‘With the sixth generation cease the glory of my song.’

Here, at the sixth award, let us make an end; all that remains is to set the crown on our discourse.

*Pro.* True.

Final 10-  
capitu-  
lation.

*Soc.* Then let us sum up and reassert what has been said, thus offering the third libation to the saviour Zeus.

*Pro.* How?

*Soc.* Philebus affirmed that pleasure was always and absolutely the good.

*Pro.* I understand; this third libation, Socrates, of which you spoke, meant a recapitulation.

*Soc.* Yes, but listen to the sequel; convinced of what I have just been saying, and feeling indignant at the doctrine, which is maintained, not by Philebus only, but by thousands of others, I affirmed that mind was far better and far more excellent, as an element of human life, than pleasure.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* But, suspecting that there were other things which were also better, I went on to say that if there was anything better than either, then I would claim the second place for mind over pleasure, and pleasure would lose the second place as well as the first.

*Pro.* You did.

*Soc.* Nothing could be more satisfactorily shown than the 67 unsatisfactory nature of both of them.

*Pro.* Very true.

*Soc.* The claims both of pleasure and mind to be the absolute good have been entirely disproven in this argument, because they are both wanting in self-sufficiency and also in adequacy and perfection.

*Pro.* Most true.

*Soc.* But, though they must both resign in favour of

<sup>1</sup> Reading ἐπιστήμας, τὰς δὲ κ.τ.λ.

another, mind is ten thousand times nearer and more akin to the nature of the conqueror than pleasure.

*Pro.* Certainly.

*Soc.* And, according to the judgment which has now been given, pleasure will rank fifth.

*Pro.* True.

*Soc.* But not first; no, not even if all the oxen and horses and animals in the world by their pursuit of enjoyment proclaim her to be so;—although the many trusting in them, as diviners trust in birds, determine that pleasures make up the good of life, and deem the lusts of animals to be better witnesses than the inspirations of divine philosophy.

*Pro.* And now, Socrates, we tell you that the truth of what you have been saying is approved by the judgment of all of us.

*Soc.* And will you let me go?

*Pro.* There is a little which yet remains, and I will remind you of it, for I am sure that you will not be the first to go away from an argument.

*Philebus.*

SOCRATES,  
PROTARCHUS.

Pleasure is the last and lowest of goods, and not first, even if asserted to be so by all the animals in the world.











T

PRESIDENT'S  
SECRETARIAT  
LIBRARY

T

